NFPA 72®

National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code®

2025 Edition

NFPA, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471
An International Codes and Standards Organization

IMPORTANT NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS CONCERNING NFPA® STANDARDS

NFPA® codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards"), of which the document contained herein is one, are developed through a consensus standards development process approved by the American National Standards Institute. This process brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve consensus on fire and other safety issues. While the NFPA administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, it does not independently test, evaluate, or verify the accuracy of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in NFPA Standards.

The NFPA disclaims liability for any personal injury, property, or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance on NFPA Standards. The NFPA also makes no guaranty or warranty as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published herein.

In issuing and making NFPA Standards available, the NFPA is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity. Nor is the NFPA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using this document should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances.

The NFPA has no power, nor does it undertake, to police or enforce compliance with the contents of NFPA Standards. Nor does the NFPA list, certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for compliance with this document. Any certification or other statement of compliance with the requirements of this document shall not be attributable to the NFPA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

REVISION SYMBOLS IDENTIFYING CHANGES FROM THE PREVIOUS EDITION

Text revisions are shaded. A Δ before a section number indicates that words within that section were deleted and a Δ to the left of a table or figure number indicates a revision to an existing table or figure. When a chapter was heavily revised, the entire chapter is marked throughout with the Δ symbol. Where one or more sections were deleted, a • is placed between the remaining sections. Chapters, annexes, sections, figures, and tables that are new are indicated with an *N*.

Note that these indicators are a guide. Rearrangement of sections may not be captured in the markup, but users can view complete revision details in the First and Second Draft Reports located in the archived revision information section of each code at www.nfpa.org/docinfo. Any subsequent changes from the NFPA Technical Meeting, Tentative Interim Amendments, and Errata are also located there.

ALERT: THIS STANDARD HAS BEEN MODIFIED BY A TIA OR ERRATA

NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards") may be superseded at any time by the issuance of a new edition, be amended with the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments (TIAs), or be corrected by Errata. This updating considers the then-current and available information on incidents, materials, technologies, innovations, and methods that develop over time. Therefore, any previous edition may no longer represent the current NFPA Standard on the subject matter. NFPA encourages the use of the most current edition of any NFPA Standard [as it may be amended by TIA(s) or Errata]. An official NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document, with any issued TIAs and Errata. Visit the "Codes & Standards" section at www.nfpa.org for more information.

ADDITIONAL IMPORTANT NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS CONCERNING NFPA® STANDARDS

Updating of NFPA Standards

Users of NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards") should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the issuance of a new edition, may be amended with the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments (TIAs), or be corrected by Errata. It is intended that through regular revisions and amendments, participants in the NFPA standards development process consider the then-current and available information on incidents, materials, technologies, innovations, and methods as these develop over time and that NFPA Standards reflect this consideration. Therefore, any previous edition of this document no longer represents the current NFPA Standard on the subject matter addressed. NFPA encourages the use of the most current edition of any NFPA Standard [as it may be amended by TIA(s) or Errata] to take advantage of current experience and understanding. An official NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document, including any issued TIAs and Errata then in effect.

To determine whether an NFPA Standard has been amended through the issuance of TIAs or corrected by Errata, visit the "Codes & Standards" section at www.nfpa.org.

Interpretations of NFPA Standards

A statement, written or oral, that is not processed in accordance with Section 6 of the Regulations Governing the Development of NFPA Standards shall not be considered the official position of NFPA or any of its Committees and shall not be considered to be, nor be relied upon as, a Formal Interpretation.

Patents

The NFPA does not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights referenced in, related to, or asserted in connection with an NFPA Standard. The users of NFPA Standards bear the sole responsibility for determining the validity of any such patent rights, as well as the risk of infringement of such rights, and the NFPA disclaims liability for the infringement of any patent resulting from the use of or reliance on NFPA Standards.

NFPA adheres to the policy of the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) regarding the inclusion of patents in American National Standards ("the ANSI Patent Policy"), and hereby gives the following notice pursuant to that policy:

NOTICE: The user's attention is called to the possibility that compliance with an NFPA Standard may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. NFPA takes no position as to the validity of any such patent rights or as to whether such patent rights constitute or include essential patent claims under the ANSI Patent Policy. If, in connection with the ANSI Patent Policy, a patent holder has filed a statement of willingness to grant licenses under these rights on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms and conditions to applicants desiring to obtain such a license, copies of such filed statements can be obtained, on request, from NFPA. For further information, contact the NFPA at the address listed below.

Law and Regulations

Users of NFPA Standards should consult applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations. NFPA does not, by the publication of its codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and these documents may not be construed as doing so.

Copyrights

NFPA Standards are copyrighted. They are made available for a wide variety of both public and private uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation, standardization, and the promotion of safe practices and methods. By making these documents available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, the NFPA does not waive any rights in copyright to these documents.

Use of NFPA Standards for regulatory purposes should be accomplished through adoption by reference. The term "adoption by reference" means the citing of title, edition, and publishing information only. Any deletions, additions, and changes desired by the adopting authority should be noted separately in the adopting instrument. In order to assist NFPA in following the uses made of its documents, adopting authorities are requested to notify the NFPA (Attention: Secretary, Standards Council) in writing of such use. For technical assistance and questions concerning adoption of NFPA Standards, contact NFPA at the address below.

For Further Information

All questions or other communications relating to NFPA Standards and all requests for information on NFPA procedures governing its codes and standards development process, including information on the procedures for requesting Formal Interpretations, for proposing Tentative Interim Amendments, and for proposing revisions to NFPA standards during regular revision cycles, should be sent to NFPA headquarters, addressed to the attention of the Secretary, Standards Council, NFPA, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101; email: stds_admin@nfpa.org.

For more information about NFPA, visit the NFPA website at www.nfpa.org. All NFPA codes and standards can be viewed at no cost at www.nfpa.org/docinfo.

Copyright © 2024 National Fire Protection Association®. All Rights Reserved.

NFPA 72®

National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code®

2025 Edition

This edition of *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, was prepared by the Technical Committees on Emergency Communication Systems, Fundamentals of Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Signaling Systems, Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Protected Premises Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Public Emergency Reporting Systems, Supervising Station Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, and Testing and Maintenance of Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, released by the Correlating Committee on Signaling Systems for the Protection of Life and Property and acted on by the NFPA membership during the 2024 NFPA Technical Meeting held June 20, 2024. It was issued by the Standards Council on August 29, 2024, with an effective date of September 18, 2024, and supersedes all previous editions.

This document has been amended by one or more Tentative Interim Amendments (TIAs) and/or Errata. See "Codes & Standards" at www.nfpa.org for more information.

This edition of *NFPA 72* was approved as an American National Standard on September 18, 2024.

Origin and Development of *NFPA 72*

The development of NFPA's signaling standards dates back to 1898 with the appointment of the Committee on Thermo-Electric Fire Alarms. The 1905 edition of NBFU 71A, *Rules and Requirements of the National Board of Fire Underwriters for the Construction, Installation, and Use of Signaling Systems Used for the Transmission of Signals Affecting the Fire Hazard as Recommended by the National Fire Protection Association*, and related documents dating back to 1903 were among the first of numerous signaling standards published in conjunction with the National Fire Protection Association. The descendants of these earlier standards were consolidated into the *National Fire Alarm Code, NFPA 72*.

The first edition of the *National Fire Alarm Code*, published in 1993, was a consolidation of the 1989 edition of NFPA 71, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Signaling Systems for Central Station Service*; the 1990 edition of NFPA 72, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Protective Signaling Systems*; the 1990 edition of NFPA 72E, *Standard on Automatic Fire Detectors*; the 1989 edition of NFPA 72G, *Guide for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Notification Appliances for Protective Signaling Systems*; the 1988 edition of NFPA 72H, *Guide for Testing Procedures for Local, Auxiliary, Remote Station, and Proprietary Protective Signaling Systems*; and the 1989 edition of NFPA 74, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Household Fire Warning Equipment*. Many of the requirements of these standards were identical or very similar. The recommendations that were taken from the guides (NFPA 72G and NFPA 72H) were changed to mandatory requirements.

The 1996 edition of *NFPA 72* incorporated many changes of a technical nature. These changes related to the Americans with Disabilities Act, software testing, fire modeling, and communications.

The 1999 edition represented a major change in code content and organization. The chapters were arranged to facilitate user friendliness and provide a logical structure. A new chapter on public fire reporting was added, and many technical revisions were made. Annex B (formerly Appendix B) was streamlined to facilitate ease of use, many unenforceable terms were removed, and Chapter 3 was reorganized to facilitate a more logical approach.

The 2002 edition reflected an extensive editorial revision of the Code to comply with the latest edition of the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents*. These revisions included the addition of three administrative chapters at the beginning of the Code: Administration, Referenced Publications, and Definitions. Eight technical chapters followed the administrative chapters in the same sequence as in the 1999 edition. Other editorial revisions included the breakout of paragraphs with multiple requirements into individually numbered paragraphs for each requirement, the minimization of use of exceptions, the use of consistent headings for sections and section subdivisions, and reorganization to limit paragraph numbering to six digits.

NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code, NFPA, and National Fire Protection Association are registered trademarks of the National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, Massachusetts 02169.

The 2002 edition contained a number of technical revisions throughout the Code, including the following:

(1) A major revision of the power supply requirements
(2) A new requirement addressing impairments to fire alarm systems
(3) Additional requirements concerning the review and approval of performance-based detection system designs
(4) Revision of the rules for system survivability from attack by fire
(5) The introduction of rules for an alternate approach for audible signaling
(6) The addition of requirements to address performance-based designs for visible signaling
(7) The relocation of testing and maintenance requirements for single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems to the testing and maintenance chapter
(8) Revisions to re-establish the prescriptive rules for household fire-warning equipment from the 1996 edition of the Code

The 2007 edition contained several technical revisions including many to accommodate new technology and to take advantage of new research. Changes were made to better address the integration of mass notification systems and other systems with fire alarm systems. Revisions were also made in several areas of the Code for clarity and to enhance its usability.

Some of the more significant revisions in the 2007 edition addressed protection of fire alarm control units (FACUs), personnel qualifications, heat detector response time, smoke detector spacing, smoke detection in ducts, detectors that use multiple sensing inputs, video image smoke and flame detection, synchronization of visible notification appliances, exit marking audible notification appliances, tactile notification appliances, different types of protected premises fire alarm systems, and in-building enhancement systems for fire fighter radio communications. The 2007 edition also included significant changes to the requirements for smoke alarms in residential applications, revisions to require the interconnection of smoke alarms for existing occupancies, revisions to require additional smoke alarms for larger dwelling units, and revisions to allow voice messages to be included as a part of the smoke alarm notification signal.

Revisions in the 2007 edition to enhance and clarify the Code included those that address suppression system inputs to the fire alarm system, emergency/voice alarm communications systems, fire alarm system interface with elevator systems, and the means to indicate central station service. In addition, a complete revision of the record of completion form along with examples of filled-out forms were provided.

The 2007 edition also included the addition of two new annexes — one to provide guidance for the design of mass notification systems and one to replace previous annex material for the design of fire service interfaces with a separate industry standard.

The 2010 edition of the Code presented a major change in the scope and organization of the document. This was reflected in the new title, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*. The broader scope of the Code included emergency communications systems (ECSs) in addition to the traditional scope of fire alarm systems. A new chapter on ECSs was added to provide requirements for a variety of systems used for communication of information in various emergency situations. The ECS chapter included new systems such as in-building mass notification systems, wide area mass notification systems, distributed recipient mass notifications systems, two-way radio communications enhancement systems, and area of refuge ECSs. The ECS chapter also included two systems formerly in the chapter on protected premises fire alarm systems: (in-building fire) emergency voice/alarm communications systems and two-way in-building wired (telephone) emergency services communication systems.

Two other new chapters were added in the 2010 edition. A new chapter on circuits and pathways included requirements and information formerly located in the chapters on fundamentals of fire alarm systems and the chapter on protected premises fire alarm systems. This new chapter provided circuit and pathway performance (class) designations and pathway survivability level designations as well as general wiring requirements presented in a format that allowed use by any type of system covered in the Code. The new chapter on emergency control functions and interfaces included requirements and information formerly contained in the chapter of protected premises fire alarm systems. In this chapter, the term *fire safety function* generally was replaced with the term *emergency control function* to reflect the potentially broader application beyond just fire alarm systems. This new chapter also included new provisions for first-responder-use elevators and elevators for occupant-controlled evacuation.

The 2010 edition was reorganized substantially to accommodate the new chapters in a logical order with reserved chapter numbers included to minimize the potential for further renumbering in the future. The overall organization included administrative chapters, support chapters, and system chapters as well as numerous annexes for usability.

Significant revisions were also made throughout the 2010 edition to reflect the broader application of the Code to ECSs. These included revisions in the chapter on fundamentals to address power supply requirements, signal priorities, signal distinction and documentation requirements; revisions to the protected premises chapter to better accommodate non-fire-alarm systems in combination systems; revisions to the supervising station chapter and public emergency reporting system chapter to allow their use for ECSs; and revisions to the testing and maintenance chapter to incorporate requirements for the inspection, testing, and maintenance of mass notification systems and two-way radio communications enhancement systems.

In addition to the content of the new chapters, the 2010 edition included significant technical changes. These included new requirements for signaling to the deaf and hard of hearing, new requirements and guidance for the design, installation, and testing of voice communications systems to ensure voice intelligibility, and extensive revision of requirements for the installation of smoke detectors in both level and sloped joist and beam ceiling applications.

Revisions to the supervising station chapter in the 2010 edition included the retirement of four legacy transmission technologies no longer being installed: active multiplex transmission systems, McCulloh systems, directly connected noncoded systems, and private microwave systems. The subsection on other transmission technologies was relocated to become the default subsection for supervising stations communications methods.

Modifications in the 2010 edition to the chapter on single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarms systems included new provisions to address the interconnection of smoke alarms using wireless technology, new provisions for signaling to those with hearing loss, and new requirements and guidance for the placement of smoke alarms and smoke detectors.

The 2010 edition included two new guidance annexes, Annex C on system performance and design and Annex D on speech intelligibility.

The 2013 edition of the Code was built on the organizational changes made in the 2010 edition. A new Chapter 7, Documentation, was added to improve the usability of the document and provided a central location for all the documentation requirements of the Code. In some cases, the documentation provisions were contained directly in the new chapter. In other cases, references were provided to the locations of documentation requirements contained in other chapters. As an example, the new chapter contained the minimum documentation requirements that applied to any system covered by the Code, while additional document requirements that might apply from other parts of the Code or from other governing laws, codes, or standards were listed with an appropriate reference. The record of completion and record of inspection, testing, and maintenance forms were included at the end of the chapter and were completely revised to be easier to use with a basic form for straightforward systems and supplemental forms for more complex systems.

Chapter 10, Fundamentals, was reorganized for the 2013 edition to provide a more user-friendly flow of requirements. In addition, requirements for circuit monitoring found in the previous edition of Chapter 10 were relocated to Chapter 12, Circuits and Pathways, a more logical location.

Extensive usability changes also were made in the inspection and testing tables of Chapter 14, Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance. The visual inspection table was updated, adding new inspection methods for each component along with the inspection frequency. The test methods and test frequency tables were combined into a single table so that the test method appeared along with the test frequency for each component. The component listings in both tables were reorganized and coordinated so that components and equipment were easier to find.

The 2013 edition of the Code also included many technical updates. Among those updates were changes in Chapter 10 requiring supervising station operators and fire alarm system service providers to report certain conditions of system impairment to the authority having jurisdiction. Requirements for inspection, testing, and service personnel qualifications were updated to better reflect the level of qualification needed for each type of activity.

Changes were also made in Chapter 18, Notification Appliances, requiring documentation of the locations that require audible notification appliances as well as documentation of the audibility levels that must be produced. Area of coverage requirements were added for visible notification appliances. Changes were made in Chapter 21, Emergency Control Function Interfaces, to address requirements for elevator recall when sprinklers are installed in elevator pits. The requirements for occupant evacuation elevators were completely revised to coordinate with changes made in ASME A17.1/B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*. Changes were made in Chapter 24, Emergency Communications Systems (ECSs), to address the use of microphones and of textual and graphical visible notification appliances for primary or supplemental notification, and to update the requirements for emergency command centers. Changes were made in Chapter 26, Supervising Station Alarm Systems, to address alarm signal verification, alarm signal content, and restoration of signals. Those changes were made in part to help emergency responders better manage issues related to unwanted alarms. In addition, new definitions for unwanted alarms were added to more precisely identify the sources of such alarms. Changes were also made to update the communications methods addressed in Chapter 26. Among them were changes to the supervision interval requirements for communications paths and changes to the types of transmission means that can be used for the second channel of a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT). Changes were made in Chapter 29, Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Signaling Systems, to address the connection of sprinkler waterflow switches to multiple-station alarms and to add new requirements addressing the smoke alarm resistance to common nuisance sources.

The 2016 edition made many changes relative to documentation. Chapter 7 revised and added items to the minimum documentation, documentation for new ECSs, and software documentation requirements; and addressed review of electronic documentation media formats. Requirements for documentation of qualifications for the system designer and personnel who program systems were more clearly addressed while providing for the allowance for system design trainees. New criteria were added for plans examiners and inspectors.

Perhaps the most significant changes to the Code pertained to wiring. The 2016 edition added Class N, which addressed Ethernet infrastructures for alarm and signaling systems, and provided pathway performance and installation criteria. Class A and Class X pathway separation requirements were revised to address emergency control function interface devices controlled by the fire alarm system on those circuits. Level 2 and Level 3 pathway survivability requirements were revised, which provided flexibility of use and addressed other fire-resistive methods.

The 2016 edition of the Code added language relative to recalled equipment observed during inspection and testing and clarified the intent of periodic visual inspections relative to building or other changes that could affect the performance of the system. With the exception of reference and requirements pertaining to survivability, requirements for the design, installation, testing, and maintenance of in-building emergency radio communications enhancement systems were relocated to NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

Chapter 17 revised the requirements for total coverage and expanded its annex language to address general consideration for elevator shafts and enclosed stairways. The requirements for placement of smoke detectors used for door release were also revised to provide additional flexibility in locating detectors.

Chapter 24 was restructured, providing greater user friendliness while expanding the section on risk analysis. Emphasis was placed on the importance of effective message development. Annex G, Guidelines for Emergency Communication Strategies for Buildings and Campuses, which is based on the National Institute of Standards and Technology and Fire Protection Research Foundation research, was added to the 2016 edition.

Language was changed in Chapter 26 to require multiple communication paths used for performance-based technologies or two transmission means for a DACT to be arranged to avoid a single point of failure.

Chapter 29 added requirements pertaining to remote resetting and silencing of a FACU from other than the protected premises for a minimum of 4 minutes from the initial activation of the fire alarm signal. Smart phones and Internet access to almost any device made remote access to residential equipment possible. The ability to establish remote access to a fire alarm system was addressed. Also, a new requirement established that all equipment necessary to transmit an alarm signal must be provided with a minimum of 24 hours of secondary power capacity where a communication or transmission means other than DACT is used.

The 2019 edition reflected a number of changes. The requirements for fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators (OEE) were completely revised to coordinate with changes made in ASME A17.1/CSA B44. The requirements for occupant evacuation operation (OEO) were revised extensively. Annex text, including a new figure, was added for clarification (elevator system interface with the building fire alarm system based on Section 2.27.11 of ASME A17.1 and Section 21.6 of *NFPA 72*). In addition to the requirements for area of refuge (area of rescue assistance), Chapter 24 was revised to include requirements for stairway communications systems, elevator landing communications systems, and occupant evacuation elevator lobby communications systems. A review was accomplished and revisions made to ensure alignment of *NFPA 72* with the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents*. For many years, when codes required visual (or visible) notification in addition to audible notification, strobe lights meeting the requirements of Chapter 18 were used. With the availability of newer LED products that can be used for fire alarms, the terms *strobe*, *light*, and *visible* were essentially changed to *visual notification appliance*. The terms *speaker* and *high power speaker array (HPSA)* were changed to *loudspeaker* and *high power loudspeaker array (HPLA)* for consistency.

Perhaps the most significant change to the Code pertained to carbon monoxide. In August 2015, the Standards Council voted to relocate material from NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, to various chapters of *NFPA 72*. These requirements were incorporated into Chapter 17 for carbon monoxide detectors; Chapter 14 for installation, testing, and maintenance; Chapter 29 for carbon monoxide alarms; and a new Annex H, Carbon Monoxide. Chapter 29 was greatly expanded, and a significant amount of annex text was added for explanation. NFPA 720 was withdrawn as the requirements were moved to *NFPA 72*.

Chapter 14 was greatly modified to incorporate valve-regulated lead-acid (VRLA) batteries. Inspection and testing requirements were revised in Table 14.3.1 and Table 14.4.3.2. Annex language was also expanded to address use and testing of such batteries. Several new terms were introduced and defined in Chapter 3.

The 2022 edition provided a new Chapter 11, Cybersecurity, and a new Annex J, Guidelines for Cybersecurity. These provided criteria and guidance for protection of fire alarm and signaling systems from cyberattacks.

A new Annex I, Color-Coded Tagging Program, introduced a green, yellow, and red color-coded tagging program that provided "at a glance" details of the apparent condition of the fire alarm and signaling system. Tagging is a common visual system in place in many states and jurisdictions.

Another area of focus pertained to pathway survivability, defined as "the ability of any conductor, optical fiber, radio carrier, or other means for transmitting system information to remain operational during fire conditions." For many applications, pathway survivability is required to ensure that the conducting means between Point A (e.g., FACU) and Point B (i.e., the notification area) is not compromised by a fire somewhere along that path such that notification is impaired. The Code defined four levels of survivability and established which level is required for a given application. One level might require

interconnecting conductors, cables, or other physical pathways to be protected by metal raceways or metal armored cables, while another level might require a 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable, fire-rated cable system [electrical circuit protective system(s)], fire-rated enclosure or protected area, or other performance alternative. The 2022 edition of the Code provided a fifth option that reduces the 2-hour rated application criteria to 1-hour rated application criteria; Chapter 24 provided specific requirements that must be followed to enable use of the 1-hour application.

A major addition to the 2022 edition of the Code pertained to remote access to fire alarm and signaling systems for operations that could include resetting, silencing, or operation of emergency control functions. Remote access is permitted to be enabled remotely to perform diagnostics and update software.

Numerous changes to several areas within the Code affected detector technology and methods. Photoelectric and ionization detectors will likely be relegated to history and replaced with newer technology single- or multiple-criteria detectors. These detectors will lead to a paradigm shift in vocabulary and operation and will provide greater resistance to false triggers.

The 2025 edition expands the requirements in Chapter 11 and incorporates the information previously contained in Annex J, which has been deleted. The revised language and annex material clarify requirements for the protection of fire alarm and signaling systems from cyber attacks.

Chapter 17 addresses the emerging technology of acoustic leak detectors and thermal image fire detectors. Acoustic leak detectors work by detecting the sound produced by a pressurized gas release. Thermal image fire detectors are different from non-imaging radiant energy detectors that were previously included in the Code.

The spacing of smoke detectors has been clarified to be unchanged on ceilings up to 40 ft (12.2 m) in height, after which performance-based design spacing must be used.

A new notification mode, restricted audible mode operation (RAMO), recognizes the need for notification options in areas where loud sounds might be detrimental to typical occupants of the notification zones, such as facilities that service people with autism spectrum disorder, neurodiverse individuals, or other occupants with sensitivity to sound, light, or other stimuli. The new mode permits a RAMO notification zone to apply private mode audible levels.

Detailed instructions for the calculations of voltage drop in DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits and circuit loss in AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits have been provided to standardize the calculation procedure in Chapter 18.

Chapter 26 contains significant changes related to auxiliary service providers (ASPs) and communications technologies. The new section on ASPs ensures that fire protection signals that pass from the protected premises through the ASPs servers are processed in a reliable and supervised manner and do not bypass the supervising station. Changes to the communications technologies requirements begin to address the new technical advancements and a variety of methods of transmitting and processing important fire alarm system signals to supervising stations while providing continued recognition of legacy transmitting methods still in use. The revisions are intended to address changes that reflect both existing and performance-based technologies considered reasonably reliable and acceptable for the important task of transmitting fire alarm signals to supervising stations and ultimately for notification of and action by emergency response agencies.

Chapter 29 now directs the user to NFPA 715, *Standard for the Installation of Fuel Gases Detection and Warning Equipment*, for fuel gas detection. The requirements for notification of persons with hearing loss, the elderly, school age children, and impaired persons have been simplified to provide 520 Hz notification appliances or tactile notification appliances. Smoke alarm spacing relative to cooking appliances has been substantially changed to consider smoke alarms listed for resistance to nuisance sources.

Correlating Committee on Signaling Systems for the Protection of Life and Property

Merton W. Bunker, Jr., *Chair*
Merton Bunker & Associates, LLC, VA [SE]

Patrick Bakaj, *Administrative Secretary*
National Fire Protection Association, MA

Douglas M. Aiken, Lakes Region Mutual Fire Aid, NH [U]
Rep. IMSA Educational Foundation

Andrew G. Berezowski, Honeywell Inc., CT [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Art Black, Carmel Fire Protection, CA [E]

Louis Chavez, UL LLC, IL [RT]

Shane M. Clary, Bay Alarm Company, CA [IM]
Rep. The Monitoring Association

Raymond A. Grill, Ray Grill Consulting PLLC, VA [SE]

Rick Heffernan, SDi, NJ [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.

Kyle Krueger, National Electrical Contractors- Milwaukee Chapter, DC [IM]
Rep. National Electrical Contractors Association

Peter A. Larrimer, US Department of Veterans Affairs, PA [U]

David J. LeBlanc, JENSEN HUGHES, MA [SE]

Wayne D. Moore, Self Employed, RI [SE]

Lynn Nielson, City of Henderson, NV [E]

Thomas F. Norton, Norel Service Company, Inc., MA [IM]
Rep. US Naval Historical Center

Thomas J. Parrish, Telgian Corporation, MI [SE]

Rodger Reiswig, Johnson Controls, VA [M]

Robert P. Schifiliti, R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., MA [SE]

Brad Stroud, Texas Instruments, Inc., TX [U]

Jeffery G. Van Keuren, Edwards/Carrier, FL [M]

Alternates

Daniel Besson, Leland Township Fire & Rescue, MI [E]
(Voting Alt.)

Matthew Buehrer, Buehrer Alarm Systems Consulting LLC, AZ [M]
(Alt. to Rick Heffernan)

David J. Hendershot, Main Electric Construction Inc., ND [IM]
(Alt. to Kyle Krueger)

Fred Leber, AML Encore Corporation, Canada [SE]
(Alt. to Raymond A. Grill)

Maria B. Marks, Siemens Industry, Inc., MD [M]
(Alt. to Andrew G. Berezowski)

Allan P. Sanedrin, UL LLC, IL [RT]
(Alt. to Louis Chavez)

Morris L. Stoops, Carrier, KS [M]
(Alt. to Jeffery G. Van Keuren)

Nonvoting

Laurence J. Dallaire, Amazon Web Services, VA [U]
Rep. TC on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm Systems

J. David Kerr, Melissa Fire Department, TX [E]
Rep. TC on Testing & Maintenance of Fire Alarm Systems

William E. Koffel, Koffel Associates, Inc., MD [SE]
Rep. TC on Emergency Communication Systems

David O. Lowrey, City of Boulder Fire Rescue, CO [E]
Rep. TC on Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems

Leo F. Martin, Jr., Martin Electrical Code Consultants, MA [SE]
Rep. TC on Public Fire Reporting Systems

Daniel J. O'Connor, JENSEN HUGHES, IL [SE]
Rep. TC on Supervising Station Fire Alarm Systems

Cory Ogle, Code Consultants, Inc., MO [SE]
Rep. TC on Household Fire Alarm Systems

Jack Poole, Poole Fire Protection, Inc., KS [SE]
Rep. TC on Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems

Andrew W. Poole, Poole Fire Protection, Inc., KS [SE]
Rep. TC on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm Systems

Martin H. Reiss, Retired-JENSEN HUGHES, MA [O]
(Member Emeritus)

Dean K. Wilson, JENSEN HUGHES, PA [O]
(Member Emeritus)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the installation, performance, maintenance, testing, and use of signaling components and signaling systems for the protection of life, property and mission continuity.

Technical Committee on Testing and Maintenance of Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems

J. David Kerr, *Chair*
Melissa Fire Department, TX [E]

Charles Berra, Sprinkler Fitters LU 268 JAC, MO [L]
Rep. United Assn. of Journeymen & Apprentices of the Plumbing & Pipe Fitting Industry

John CC Biggs, Intrepid, CA [IM]
Rep. California Automatic Fire Alarm Association Inc.

Anthony Bloodworth, Siemens Industries, Inc., IL [M]

Charles E. Brockett, AXA XL Risk Consultancy/ Global Asset Protection Services, LLC, TX [I]

Scott D. Carlson, Fire Defense Equipment Company, Inc., MI [IM]

Louis Chavez, UL LLC, IL [RT]

Franklin Chenoweth, Fireline Corporation, MD [M]
Rep. Fire Suppression Systems Association

Jack P. Coffelt, ServiceTrade/Asurio, NC [M]
Rep. National Fire Sprinkler Association

Scott D. Corrin, C T Services, CA [SE]

Rick Heffernan, SDi, NJ [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Herbert B. Hurst, Jr., Savannah River Nuclear Solutions, LLC, SC [U]

Bill Isemann, Guardian Fire Protection Services LLC, MD [IM]
Rep. National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors

E. J. Kleintop, Johnson Controls, PA [M]

Peter A. Larrimer, US Department of Veterans Affairs, PA [U]

Joshua P. McDonald, American Fire Sprinkler Association (AFSA), TX [IM]

Grady Medcalf, Comcast, FL [IM]
Rep. Electronic Security Association

Daniel Morrin, Jr., NECCO Security Company Inc., PA [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.

James Murphy, Vector Security Inc., PA [IM]
Rep. The Monitoring Association

Katherine A. Pothier, Fisher Engineering, Inc., GA [SE]

Christopher Rawson, International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers (IBEW), IL [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers

Joe Scibetta, BuildingReports, GA [M]

Michael J. Slattery, AFA Protective Systems, Inc., MA [IM]

Timothy M. Soverino, Nantucket, MA [U]
Rep. International Municipal Signal Association

Charles K. Stormer, US General Services Administration, IL [U]
Rep. US General Services Administration

Brad Stroud, Texas Instruments, Inc., TX [U]

Alternates

Paul Akins, Davis Ulmer Fire Protection, NY [IM]
(Alt. to Bill Isemann)

Scott Bailey, Koorsen Fire & Security, IN [M]
(Alt. to Franklin Chenoweth)

Shane Courbier, Gentex Corporation, MI [M]
(Alt. to Rick Heffernan)

John August Denhardt, American Fire Sprinkler Association (AFSA), TX [IM]
(Alt. to Joshua P. McDonald)

Matthew Jackson, AFA Protective Systems Inc., NJ [IM]
(Alt. to Michael J. Slattery)

Neal Kelly, Fire Defense Equipment Company, Inc., MI [IM]
(Alt. to Scott D. Carlson)

Brian Patrick Kirtley, Comcast Xfinity Home, TX [IM]
(Alt. to Grady Medcalf)

Ariana Kistner, City of Rockwall Fire Department, TX [E]
(Voting Alt.)

Peter Leszczak, US Department of Veterans Affairs, CT [U]
(Alt. to Peter A. Larrimer)

Tammy Mayo, Telgian, AZ [M]
(Alt. to Daniel Morrin, Jr.)

Troy O'Neal, Siemens, TX [M]
(Alt. to Anthony Bloodworth)

Vincent Powers, National Fire Sprinkler Association (NFSA), MD [M]
(Alt. to Jack P. Coffelt)

Steven Criag Schwartz, Consolidated Fire Protection, CA [IM]
(Alt. to John CC Biggs)

Michael D. Sides, Global Asset Protection Services, LLC, FL [I]
(Alt. to Charles E. Brockett)

Je Weon Sung, US General Services Administration, WA [U]
(Alt. to Charles K. Stormer)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents and requirements for the inspection, testing, and maintenance of fire alarm and signaling systems and associated components, for both new and existing systems. This Committee shall not have responsibility for inspection, testing, and maintenance of single- and multiple-station alarms and household signaling systems.

Technical Committee on Supervising Station Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems

Daniel J. O'Connor, *Chair*
JENSEN HUGHES, IL [SE]

Raymond E. Bigelow, Medway, MA [U]
Rep. International Municipal Signal Association

Art Black, Carmel Fire Protection, CA [E]

Richard M. Bryant, Fox Valley Fire & Safety Company, IL [IM]

Christopher Creamer, UL LLC, IL [RT]

Robert Deardorff, FM Approvals, MA [I]

Pamela DeMeo, North Collier Fire, FL [E]

Jason Dupuis, Cintas Fire Protection F19, CA [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.

Donald Fess, Harvard University, MA [U]

Leonard Hanna, Aes Corporation, MA [M]

Richard G. Kluge, Ericsson, NJ [U]
Rep. Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions

Scott M. May, Bosch Security Systems, NY [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Matthew J. Mertens, North Shore Fire Department, WI [E]

Anthony Mucci, Johnson Controls, FL [IM]
Rep. The Monitoring Association

Scott Newman, Walgreens, IL [U]

Warren E. Olsen, Fire Safety Consultants, Inc., IL [E]
Rep. Illinois Fire Inspectors Association

Richard Jay Roberts, Honeywell Fire Safety, IL [M]

Michael G. Slossar, Amazon/Ring, NJ [U]
Rep. Electronic Security Association

Sean P. Titus, Fike Corporation, MO [M]
Rep. Fire Suppression Systems Association

Leo J. Watts, Signal Communications Corporation, MA [M]

Joshua David Wingfield, Keltron Corporation, MA [M]

Iman Yavari, LRI Engineering Inc, Fire Protection and Building Code Engineers, Canada [SE]

Alternates

Shane M. Clary, Bay Alarm Company, CA [M]
(Alt. to Jason Dupuis)

Martin J. Farraher, Siemens Industry, Inc., IL [M]
(Alt. to Sean P. Titus)

Laurie Licavoli, Pattonville Fire District, MO [E]
(Alt. to Pamela DeMeo)

Charles Mason, JENSEN HUGHES, RI [SE]
(Alt. to Daniel J. O'Connor)

Thomas J. Parrish, Telgian Corporation, MI [U]
(Voting Alt.)

Steven P. Sargent, Keltron Corporation, MA [M]
(Alt. to Joshua David Wingfield)

Randy H. Schubert, Ericsson, NJ [U]
(Alt. to Richard G. Kluge)

Michael Sherman, AES Corporation, MA [M]
(Alt. to Leonard Hanna)

Kile Unterzuber, Protective Resources, Inc., NC [IM]
(Voting Alt.)

Deane E. Walker, Grayslake Fire Protection District, IL [E]
(Alt. to Warren E. Olsen)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the installation and operation of equipment for the transmission and receipt of signals from a protected premises to a supervising station, including the supervising station facilities.

Technical Committee on Public Emergency Reporting Systems

Leo F. Martin, Jr., *Chair*
Martin Electrical Code Consultants, MA [SE]

Robert E. Lapham, *Secretary*
Signal Communications Corporation, MA [M]

Leo J. Watts, *Secretary (Alternate)*
Signal Communications Corporation, MA [M]
(Alt. to Robert E. Lapham)

Douglas M. Aiken, Lakes Region Mutual Fire Aid, NH [E]
Anthony W. Cole, Wal-Mart Stores, Inc., CA [U]
Michael Scott Custer, Fort Detrick Fire Department, MD [E]
Daniel R. Dinwiddie, L W Bills Company, MA [M]
Romeo G. Dupuis, Manchester VA Hospital, NH [U]
Donald Gottfried, New York City Department of Buildings, NY [E]
Samuel Iannucci, Chubb Group of Insurance Companies, PA [I]
Brian Patrick Kirtley, Comcast Xfinity Home, TX [IM]
Rep. Electronic Security Association
Jeffrey G. Knight, City of Newton Fire Department, MA [U]
Rep. International Municipal Signal Association
Gregory D. Lapin, Digital Design Laboratories, IL [SE]
Max McLeod, Siemens Industry, Inc., AL [M]
Robert E. Myers, MC Dean, VA [IM]
Isa Y. Saah, GHD, VA [SE]
Ryan Sandler, ADT Commercial LLC/Red Hawk Fire Security, CA [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.
Deborah L. Shaner, Shaner Life Safety, CO [SE]
Stephen Smith, Advanced Signal Corporation, MA [IM]
Thomas R. Waldron, Coffman Engineers, CA [SE]
Christopher Willms, Sea Girt Fire Company #1, NJ [E]

Alternates

Hans Kristensen, Woodstock Fire/Rescue Department, IL [U]
(Alt. to Jeffrey G. Knight)
Rodger Reiswig, Johnson Controls, VA [IM]
(Alt. to Brian Patrick Kirtley)
Ellen Salib, Siemens, NJ [M]
(Alt. to Max McLeod)
David Michael Szymanski, Ahern Fire Protection, WI [M]
(Alt. to Ryan Sandler)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the proper configuration, performance, installation, and operation of public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems. The Committee scope shall include systems that use a communication infrastructure that is publicly owned, operated, and controlled. Reporting of alarms by voice over the public switched telephone network utilizing the Universal Emergency Number 9-1-1, or any other telephone number that can be dialed, is outside the scope of this committee.

Technical Committee on Protected Premises Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems

Jack Poole, *Chair*
Poole Fire Protection, Inc., KS [SE]

Leonard Belliveau, Jr., *Secretary*
Protection Engineers, LLC, MA [SE]

Christopher Mark Barrieau, Johnson Controls, MA [M]
Donald C. Birchler, FP&C Consultants KC, LLC, MO [SE]
Robert Bourke, Wayne Alarm Systems, MA [IM]
Rep. The Monitoring Association
Merton W. Bunker, Jr., Merton Bunker & Associates, LLC, VA [SE]
Eric Camiel, JENSEN HUGHES, MA [SE]
Robert Cole, Intertek Testing Services, GA [RT]
Rep. Intertek Testing Services
David Correia, Honeywell International, CT [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Laura E. Doyle, US General Services Administration, DC [U]
Steven T. Dunham, Midwest Alarm Services, IA [IM]
Paul M. Dwyer, FM Approvals, MA [I]
Peter M. Goldring, Goldring Protection, NJ [IM]
Scott D. Harris, AFA Protective Systems, Inc., NY [IM]
William K. Hopple, Hopple & Company, CA [IM]
Daniel J. Horon, CADgraphics, Incorporated, FL [M]
Brian Jarvis, US Department of Defense, AE [U]
Paul T. Kahle, Code Consultants, Inc., MO [SE]
Jeffrey M. Klein, Potter Electric Signal Company, MO [M]
Peter Leszczak, US Department of Veterans Affairs, CT [U]
Scott T. Martorano, The Viking Corporation, MI [M]
Rep. National Fire Sprinkler Association
Jebediah J. Novak, Cedar Rapids Electrical JATC, IA [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Todd Marc Pearson, SLS Consulting, LLC, MA [SE]
Christopher Russell, Security Solutions NW, WA [IM]
Rep. Electronic Security Association
Allan P. Sanedrin, UL LLC, IL [RT]
Frank Savino, United Fire Protection Corporation, NJ [M]
Rep. Fire Suppression Systems Association
Donald Struck, Siemens Fire Safety, NJ [M]
Jeffery G. Van Keuren, Edwards/Carrier, FL [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.
Sagiv Weiss-Ishai, San Francisco Fire Department, CA [E]
Carl F. Willms, Fire Safety Consultants, Inc., NJ [SE]

Alternates

Vincent Baroncini, Siemens, Inc., NJ [M]
(Alt. to Donald Struck)
Martin Chiarizio, Johnson Controls, MA [M]
(Alt. to Christopher Mark Barrieau)
Brett W. Christianson, FP&C Consultants KC, LLC, MO [SE]
(Alt. to Donald C. Birchler)
Joseph Dafin, US General Services Administration, MD [U]
(Alt. to Laura E. Doyle)
Joshua W. Elvove, Self, CO [SE]
(Alt. to Carl F. Willms)
Jacob P. Hemke, Code Consultants, Inc., MO [SE]
(Alt. to Paul T. Kahle)
Theodore Ivers, UL LLC, NY [RT]
(Alt. to Allan P. Sanedrin)
Walter J. Kessler, Jr., FM Approvals, MA [I]
(Alt. to Paul M. Dwyer)
Tim Knisely, Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc. (AFAA), PA [M]
(Alt. to Jeffery G. Van Keuren)
Mark LaBua, AFA Protective Systems Inc., NY [IM]
(Alt. to Scott D. Harris)
Peter A. Larrimer, US Department of Veterans Affairs, PA [U]
(Alt. to Peter Leszczak)
Andre Lickefett, Minimax GmbH, Germany [M]
(Alt. to Scott T. Martorano)
Michael McIsaac, Potter Electric Signal Company, MN [M]
(Alt. to Jeffrey M. Klein)
Christian Pierson, US Department of State, MD [U]
(Alt. to Brian Jarvis)
Lou Richard, Comcast, PA [IM]
(Alt. to Christopher Russell)
Larry D. Rietz, JENSEN HUGHES, CO [SE]
(Alt. to Eric Camiel)
Sean P. Titus, Fike Corporation, MO [M]
(Alt. to Frank Savino)
Michael Jered Yanofsky, Honeywell, CT [M]
(Alt. to David Correia)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the installation and operation of protected premises fire alarm and signaling systems, including their interconnection with initiating devices, notification appliances, and other related building control equipment, within the protected premises.

Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems

Andrew W. Poole, *Chair*
Poole Fire Protection, Inc., KS [SE]

Robert F. Accosta, Jr., Arup, NY [SE]
Cory Blair, Genesis Building Systems, OH [IM]
Jan Braam, Carrier, FL [M]
Rep. Carrier/UTC
Matthew Buehrer, Buehrer Alarm Systems Consulting LLC, AZ [IM]
Rep. Electronic Security Association
Terry W. Davis, Lubbock Fire Marshals Office, TX [E]
Tyler Drage, Front Range Fire Rescue, CO [E]
David Dressler, Minnesota Statewide Limited Energy JATC, MN [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Michael L. Edwards, US Architect of the Capitol, DC [U]
Reese Freeman, James Lane Fire Protection, TX [IM]
Rep. National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors
Paul Jennison, Forsyth County Georgia, GA [U]
Doug Kline, Nowak Supply Fire Systems, IN [M]
Rep. Fire Suppression Systems Association
Timothy J. Lawyer, JENSEN HUGHES, CA [SE]
Steven P. Lewis, RFI Enterprises, CA [IM]
David Madole, University of Texas at Austin, TX [U]
Bob D. Morgan, Fort Worth Fire Department, TX [E]
Christopher Moye, Guardian Security Systems, WA [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.
David Newhouse, Gentex Corporation, MI [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Isaac I. Papier, Papier Consulting Group LLC, IL [SE]
Maurice M. Pilette, Mechanical Designs Ltd., MA [SE]
Robert P. Schifiliti, R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., MA [SE]
Michael T. Schmitt, Illinois Fire Inspectors Association (IFIA), IL [E]
Paul R. Strelecki, Siemens Building Technologies, Inc., NJ [M]
John R. Swanson, National Fire Sprinkler Association (NFSA), MN [M]
John William Wilkus, US Army Corps of Engineers, KS [U]

Alternates

Chase A. Browning, Medford Fire Department, OR [M]
(Alt. to John R. Swanson)
Maxwell French, Code Red Consultants, MA [SE]
(Alt. to Maurice M. Pilette)
Raymond A. Grill, Ray Grill Consulting PLLC, VA [SE]
(Alt. to Robert F. Accosta, Jr.)
Mark C. Hamilton, Siemens, Inc., NJ [M]
(Alt. to Paul R. Strelecki)
Mark Murrell, Hiller Companies, AZ [IM]
(Alt. to Reese Freeman)
Leon Newsome, Eaton Corporation, FL [M]
(Alt. to David Newhouse)
Warren E. Olsen, Fire Safety Consultants, Inc., IL [E]
(Alt. to Michael T. Schmitt)
Scott E. Panowitz, BFPE International, MD [M]
(Alt. to Doug Kline)
Jack Poole, Poole Fire Protection, Inc., KS [SE]
(Alt. to Andrew W. Poole)
Brian Robertson, Comcast, FL [IM]
(Alt. to Matthew Buehrer)
Morris L. Stoops, Carrier, KS [M]
(Alt. to Jan Braam)
Sheryl A. Tricocci, Johnson Controls, GA [M]
(Alt. to Christopher Moye)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the installation and operation of notification appliances for fire alarm and signaling systems.

Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems

Laurence J. Dallaire, *Chair*
Amazon Web Services, VA [U]

Justin D. Merrick, *Secretary*
S&S Sprinkler Company, LLC, AL [IM]

Alhassan Kamel Taha Ahmed, WSP Middle East, Saudi Arabia [SE]
Wayne J. Aho, Jr., Siemens, Industry Inc., NJ [M]
Shar Beddow, Greater Naples Fire Dept/LCFMA, FL [E]
Mark S. Boone, AEGIS Insurance Services Limited, NJ [U]
Rep. Edison Electric Institute
Michael James Brennan, RSCC Wire and Cable LLC, IL [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
John M. Cholin, J. M. Cholin Consultants Inc., NJ [SE]
John August Denhardt, American Fire Sprinkler Association (AFSA), TX [IM]
Scott A. Frazer, Performance Design Technologies, TN [SE]
James W. Gaut, Marriott Vacations Worldwide, FL [U]
Jim Goggin, Protectowire Company, Inc., MA [M]
Todd Gustafson, Mircom Group Of Companies, IL [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.
Marty Heller, Shambaugh and Son, IN [M]
Rep. National Fire Sprinkler Association
Noel Hernberger, Electrical JATC for Soouthern Nevada, NV [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Mark Hopkins, TERPconsulting, MD [SE]
Alex Keller, Fire Protection Specialists, WI [IM]
Rep. National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors
Fahad Khan, Summit Fire Consulting, TX [SE]
Kelly M. Kidwell, Smithsonian Institution, MD [U]
Scott R. Lang, Honeywell International, IL [M]
Matthew Lausch, JENSEN HUGHES, VA [SE]
Larry W. Mann, Central Station, Inc., AL [IM]
Rep. Electronic Security Association
Chris Marrion, Marrion Fire & Risk Consulting PE, LLC, NY [SE]
Samuel M. Miller, BP America Inc., TX [U]
James W. Mottorn, II, Bosch Security Systems, NY [M]
Abhay Nadgir, Carrier/Kidde-Fenwal, Inc., MA [M]
Rep. Fire Suppression Systems Association
David M. Nelson, Volunteer Technology Systems, TN [IM]
Rep. National Independent Fire Alarm Distributors Assn.
Lynn Nielson, City of Henderson, NV [E]
Samuel Rokowski, Maddox Electric Company, Inc., FL [IM]
Mohammed A. Saeefan, Saudi Aramco, Saudi Arabia [U]
Raja Sajad Hussain, SHE Fire Safety Consultancy, United Arab Emirates [SE]
Kenneth R. Schneider, UA - ITF, MO [L]
Rep. United Assn. of Journeymen & Apprentices of the Plumbing & Pipe Fitting Industry
Michael D. Sides, Global Asset Protection Services, LLC, FL [I]
Mark Swerdin, Zurich Services Corporation, NY [I]
Nicole Thomson, State of Alaska, FL [E]
David Waite, FM Approvals, MA [I]
Jason E. Webb, Potter Electric Signal Company, MO [M]

Alternates

Scott Bailey, Koorsen Fire & Security, IN [M]
(Alt. to Abhay Nadgir)
Charles Berra, Sprinkler Fitters LU 268 JAC, MO [L]
(Alt. to Kenneth R. Schneider)
Cecil Bilbo, Jr., Academy of Fire Sprinkler Technology, Inc., IL [M]
(Alt. to Marty Heller)
Charles E. Brockett, AXA XL Risk Consultancy/ Global Asset Protection Services, LLC, TX [I]
(Alt. to Michael D. Sides)
Wilson W. Cheung, Potter Electric Signal Company, MO [M]
(Alt. to Jason E. Webb)
Tommy L. Farr, JATC of Southern Nevada, NV [L]
(Alt. to Noel Hernberger)
Kevin Ryan Hall, American Fire Sprinkler Association (AFSA), MD [IM]
(Voting Alt.)
Robert Kasiski, FM Global, RI [I]
(Alt. to David Waite)
Henry J. Kozlowski, Zurich Services Corporation, RI [I]
(Alt. to Mark Swerdin)
Chad Austin Maddox, Maddox Electric Company, Inc., FL [IM]
(Alt. to Samuel Rokowski)
Grady Medcalf, Comcast, FL [IM]
(Alt. to Larry W. Mann)
David E. Mills, UL LLC, IL [RT]
(Voting Alt.)
Travis Nelson, Jensen Hughes Associates, Inc., TX [SE]
(Alt. to Matthew Lausch)
Mark F. Platfoot, Performance Design Technologies, TN [SE]
(Alt. to Scott A. Frazer)
Craig Schraad, Keller Fire & Safety, KS [IM]
(Alt. to Alex Keller)
Michael Stone, Johnson Controls, NH [M]
(Alt. to Michael James Brennan)
Brian E. Swanick, Siemens Industry, Inc., NJ [M]
(Alt. to Wayne J. Aho, Jr.)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the installation and operation of initiating devices for fire alarm and signaling systems.

Technical Committee on Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Signaling Systems

Cory Ogle, *Chair*
Code Consultants, Inc., MO [SE]

David E. Christian, *Secretary*
Gentex Corporation, MI [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.

Richard Jay Roberts, *Nonvoting Secretary*
Honeywell Fire Safety, IL [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.
(Alt. to David E. Christian)

George Bish, Amazon/Ring Protect Inc., NC [M]

Thomas G. Cleary, National Institute of Standards & Technology (NIST), MD [RT]

Timothy K. Dedear, City of Farmers Branch Fire Department, TX [E]

Wendy B. Gifford, Consultant, IL [SE]

Daniel T. Gottuk, Gottuk Engineering, MD [SE]

Greg L. Hansen, Vivint Inc., UT [M]

Matthew Jakusz, ADT LLC, FL [M]

Jeffery P. McBride, EBL Engineers, LLC, MD [SE]

Thomas H. Miller, Hansen Engineering Services, IL [SE]

David E. Mills, UL LLC, IL [RT]

Paul Murphy, Borough Of Atlantic Highlands, NJ [E]

Jeffrey L. Okun, Nuko Security, Inc., LA [IM]

Stephen M. Olenick, Combustion Science & Engineering, Inc., MD [SE]

Larry Ratzlaff, Carrier/Kidde Safety, IL [M]

Eric Sacco, Siemens Building Technologies Division, NJ [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Robert A. Schmidt, Marriott International, Inc., MD [U]

Richard M. Simpson, Vector Security Inc., PA [IM]
Rep. The Monitoring Association

Walter W. Wray, Miami-Dade Fire Rescue HQ, FL [E]

Alternates

Brian Cohen, Marriott, MD [U]
(Alt. to Robert A. Schmidt)

Rick Heffernan, SDi, NJ [M]
(Alt. to Eric Sacco)

Nasir Hussain, Combustion Science & Engineering, Inc., MD [SE]
(Alt. to Stephen M. Olenick)

Paul T. Kahle, Code Consultants, Inc., MO [SE]
(Alt. to Cory Ogle)

Tyler W. McCurdy, Amazon/Ring Protect, Inc., UT [M]
(Alt. to George Bish)

Keith Mirra, Vector Security Inc., MD [IM]
(Alt. to Richard M. Simpson)

Kim R. Mniszewski, FX Engineering, Inc., IL [SE]
(Alt. to Thomas H. Miller)

Ken Mott, Carrier/UTC/Kidde Safety, CO [M]
(Alt. to Larry Ratzlaff)

Timothy A. Rader, ADT Security Services, Inc., FL [M]
(Alt. to Matthew Jakusz)

Steven Wardle, Vivint Inc., UT [M]
(Alt. to Greg L. Hansen)

Nonvoting

Arthur S. Lee, US Consumer Product Safety Commission, MD [C]
Rep. US Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC)

Maurice M. Pilette, Mechanical Designs Ltd., MA [SE]
Rep. TC on Residential Sprinkler Systems

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the performance, installation, operation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and use of single- and multiple-station alarms and household signaling systems.

Technical Committee on Fundamentals of Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems

David O. Lowrey, *Chair*
City of Boulder Fire Rescue, CO [E]
Rep. Fire Marshal's Association of Colorado

Kimberly A. Gruner, *Secretary*
Fike Corporation, MO [M]
Rep. Fire Suppression Systems Association

Ed Vaillancourt, *Nonvoting Secretary*
E & M International, Inc., NM [M]
Rep. Fire Suppression Systems Association
(Alt. to Kimberly A. Gruner)

Zainul Abedeen, WSP Middle East, United Arab Emirates [SE]

Laura Bennett-Hourigan, Walt Disney World Parks & Resorts, FL [U]

Andrew G. Berezowski, Honeywell Inc., CT [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association

Brian Boeglin, Comcast Xfinity Home, CA [IM]
Rep. Electronic Security Association

Robert A. Bonifas, Alarm Detection Systems, Inc., IL [IM]
Rep. The Monitoring Association

Shane M. Clary, Bay Alarm Company, CA [IM]

Manuelita E. David, JENSEN HUGHES, CA [SE]

Daniel G. Decker, Safety Systems, Inc., MI [IM]

William Denney, Hochiki America Corporation, CA [M]

James DiTaranto, Commercial Electrical Systems, FL [IM]

Myron Lee Draper, US Department of Veterans Affairs, MD [U]

Tommy L. Farr, JATC of Southern Nevada, NV [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers

David W. Frable, US General Services Administration, IL [U]

Kevin M. Green, Pyro-Comm Systems, Inc., CA [IM]

Paul Hail, Saudi Aramco, AK [U]

Jeffrey S. Hancock, Valero, TX [U]

John Houlihan, Fire Command Systems, Inc., MA [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.

Husam Adnan Innabi, AAENGCO/FSEC, MI [SE]

Scott Jacobs, ISC Electronic Systems, Inc., CA [IM]

Bill Johns, P.E., Los Angeles City Fire Department, CA [E]

Jon Kapis, Coffman Engineers, CA [SE]

Walter J. Kessler, Jr., FM Approvals, MA [I]

Fred Leber, AML Encore Corporation, Canada [SE]

Richard A. Malady, Fire Fighter Sales & Service Company, PA [IM]
Rep. National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors

Michael Marchi, Miami-Dade Fire Rescue Department, FL [E]

Charlie McDaniel, AXA XL Risk Consultants/Global Asset Protection Services, LLC, WV [I]
Rep. Global Asset Protection Services, LLC

Nicholas Moriarty, Code Unlimited, NV [SE]

James M. Mundy, Jr., Asset Protection Associates, Ltd., NY [SE]

Thomas F. Norton, Norel Service Company, Inc., MA [IM]
Rep. US Naval Historical Center

James R. Richardson, Lisle Woodridge Fire District, IL [E]

John R. Schertel, Jr., Bosch Security Systems, LLC, MI [M]

Justin A. Schwartz, US Army Corps of Engineers, VA [U]

Jim Surber, United States Air Force, OK [U]

Sheryl A. Tricocci, Johnson Controls, GA [M]

Todd W. Warner, Brooks Equipment Company, Inc., NC [M]
Rep. Fire Equipment Manufacturers' Association

Daniel R. Wilkerson, City Of Huntsville, AL [E]

Todd Zhong, UL Canada, Canada [RT]

Alternates

Bruce L. Abell, US Army Corps of Engineers, VA [U]
(Alt. to Justin A. Schwartz)

Reese Freeman, James Lane Fire Protection, TX [IM]
(Alt. to Richard A. Malady)

Timothy C. Fritz, UL LLC, IL [RT]
(Alt. to Todd Zhong)

Scott Kincaid, Brooks Equipment Company, NC [M]
(Alt. to Todd W. Warner)

William E. Koffel, Koffel Associates, Inc., MD [SE]
(Voting Alt.)

Maria B. Marks, Siemens Industry, Inc., MD [M]
(Alt. to Andrew G. Berezowski)

Kurt Nakata, Front Range Fire Rescue, CO [E]
(Alt. to David O. Lowrey)

Timothy R. Oates, Johnson Controls, PA [M]
(Alt. to Daniel Pickett)

Sean Ramsey, US Coast Guard, DC [E]
(Alt. to John H. Miller)

James Spence, Pyro-Comm Systems, Inc., CA [IM]
(Alt. to Kevin M. Green)

Juan Carlos Villars, SLS Fire Consulting, Inc., NY [M]
(Alt. to John Houlihan)

William F. Wayman, Jr., JENSEN HUGHES, MD [SE]
(Alt. to Manuelita E. David)

Albert R. Wickham, Alarm Detection Systems Inc., IL [IM]
(Alt. to Robert A. Bonifas)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This Committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on common system fundamentals for fire alarm and signaling systems, requirements for approvals, power supplies, equipment performance, system documentation, and compatibility.

Technical Committee on Emergency Communication Systems

William E. Koffel, *Chair*
Koffel Associates, Inc., MD [SE]

Matthew Batbouta, GHD, VA [SE]
Mark H. Buschman, US Department of Defense, MD [U]
Joseph R. Cervantes, Space Age Electronics, MA [M]
Joseph Dafin, US General Services Administration, MD [U]
Riley Fields, Ring Protect Inc., OK [IM]
Rep. Electronic Security Association
Raymond N. Hansen, US Department of the Air Force, FL [U]
Bryan Lawrence Hoskins, Oklahoma State University, OK [SE]
Waymon Jackson, University of Texas at Austin, TX [U]
Scott Lacey, Lacey Fire Protection Engineering, TX [SE]
Derek D. Mathews, UL LLC, IL [RT]
Wayne D. Moore, Self Employed, RI [SE]
Brian Mosberian, Phoenix Fire Department, AZ [E]
Denise L. Pappas, Keltron Corporation, VA [M]
Rep. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Thomas J. Parrish, Telgian Corporation, MI [SE]
Michael Jack Prill, North Metro Fire Rescue, CO [E]
Joseph Ranaudo, AFA Protective Systems, Inc., NY [IM]
Rodger Reiswig, Johnson Controls, VA [M]
Larry D. Rietz, JENSEN HUGHES, CO [SE]
Joseph Ripp, Interface Engineering, OR [M]
Rep. Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc.
Jeffrey A. Scott, FP&C Consultants KC LLC, MO [SE]
Andrew J. Shear, Diversified Electronic Technologies, Inc./United Life Safety Systems, NC [IM]
Adrian Silva, City of San Diego, CA [E]
James P. Simpson, Electrical Training Alliance, MN [L]
Rep. International Brotherhood of Electrical Workers
Morris L. Stoops, Carrier, KS [M]
Jason A. Volk, Alertus Technologies, MD [M]
Richard B. Wagoner, DFW International Airport, TX [U]
Andrew B. Woodward, Arup, MA [SE]

Alternates

Tiffney Arlene-Cates Chen, US Department of Defense, MD [U]
(Alt. to Mark H. Buschman)
Brett W. Christianson, FP&C Consultants KC, LLC, MO [SE]
(Alt. to Jeffrey A. Scott)
Laura E. Doyle, US General Services Administration, DC [U]
(Alt. to Joseph Dafin)
Carlos Gomez, UL LLC, IL [RT]
(Alt. to Derek D. Mathews)
Raymond A. Grill, Ray Grill Consulting PLLC, VA [SE]
(Alt. to Andrew B. Woodward)
Jim Loftus, Siemens, NJ [M]
(Alt. to Joseph Ripp)
David Madole, University of Texas at Austin, TX [U]
(Alt. to Waymon Jackson)
Michael Naber, JENSEN HUGHES, CO [SE]
(Alt. to Larry D. Rietz)
Peter Namisnak, Bosch Security Systems, LLC, NY [M]
(Alt. to Denise L. Pappas)
Michael Pallett, Pallett Corner Consulting, Canada [SE]
(Alt. to Wayne D. Moore)
Jason D. Rolf, Minnesota Statewide JATC, MN [L]
(Alt. to James P. Simpson)
Michael Stone, Johnson Controls, NH [M]
(Alt. to Rodger Reiswig)
Jim Surber, United States Air Force, OK [U]
(Alt. to Raymond N. Hansen)
Alvaro Varela, DFW International Airport, TX [U]
(Alt. to Richard B. Wagoner)
Abed Yassine, Alertus Technologies, LLC, MD [M]
(Alt. to Jason A. Volk)

Patrick Bakaj, NFPA Staff Liaison

This list represents the membership at the time the Committee was balloted on the final text of this edition. Since that time, changes in the membership may have occurred. A key to classifications is found at the back of the document.

NOTE: Membership on a committee shall not in and of itself constitute an endorsement of the Association or any document developed by the committee on which the member serves.

Committee Scope: This committee shall have primary responsibility for documents on the risk analysis, design, application, installation, and performance of emergency communications systems and their components. Public emergency services communications systems covered by NFPA 1221 are outside the scope of this committee except where they interface with in-building bi-directional amplifiers and where trouble and supervisory signals are intended to be monitored by the building fire alarm system.

Contents

Chapter 1 Administration **72–** 21
1.1 Scope. **72–** 21
1.2 Purpose. **72–** 21
1.3 Application. **72–** 21
1.4 Retroactivity. **72–** 21
1.5 Equivalency. **72–** 22
1.6 Units and Formulas. **72–** 22
1.7 Code Adoption Requirements. **72–** 22

Chapter 2 Referenced Publications **72–** 22
2.1 General. **72–** 22
2.2 NFPA Publications. **72–** 22
2.3 Other Publications. **72–** 22
2.4 References for Extracts in Mandatory Sections. ... **72–** 23

Chapter 3 Definitions **72–** 23
3.1 General. **72–** 23
3.2 NFPA Official Definitions. **72–** 23
3.3 General Definitions. **72–** 24

Chapter 4 Reserved **72–** 39

Chapter 5 Reserved **72–** 39

Chapter 6 Reserved **72–** 39

Chapter 7 Documentation **72–** 40
7.1 Application. **72–** 40
7.2 Minimum Required Documentation. **72–** 40
7.3 Design (Layout) Documentation. **72–** 40
7.4 Shop Drawings (Installation Documentation). **72–** 41
7.5 Completion Documentation. **72–** 42
7.6 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Documentation. **72–** 44
7.7 Records, Record Retention, and Record Maintenance. **72–** 44
7.8 Forms. **72–** 45

Chapter 8 Reserved **72–** 76

Chapter 9 Reserved **72–** 76

Chapter 10 Fundamentals **72–** 76
10.1 Application. **72–** 76
10.2 Purpose. **72–** 76
10.3 Equipment. **72–** 76
10.4 Design and Installation. **72–** 76
10.5 Personnel Qualifications. **72–** 76
10.6 Power Supplies. **72–** 78
10.7 Signal Priority. **72–** 82
10.8 Detection and Signaling of Conditions. **72–** 82
10.9 Responses. **72–** 82
10.10 Distinctive Signals. **72–** 82
10.11 Alarm Signals. **72–** 83
10.12 Fire Alarm Notification Appliance Deactivation. .. **72–** 83
10.13 Carbon Monoxide Notification Appliance Deactivation. **72–** 83
10.14 Supervisory Signals. **72–** 84
10.15 Trouble Signals. **72–** 84
10.16 Emergency Control Function Status Indicators. ... **72–** 85
10.17 Notification Appliance Circuits and Supervised Notification Appliance Control Circuits. **72–** 85
10.18 Annunciation and Annunciation Zoning. **72–** 85
10.19 Monitoring Integrity of In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems. **72–** 85
10.20 Documentation and Notification. **72–** 86
10.21 Impairments. **72–** 86
10.22 Unwanted Alarms. **72–** 86

Chapter 11 Cybersecurity **72–** 87
11.1 Cybersecurity Provisions. **72–** 87
11.2 Network Connectable Equipment Software Development and Production Environments. **72–** 87
11.3 Security Levels for Network Connectable Equipment. **72–** 87
11.4 Interconnecting Conductors, Cables, or Other Physical Pathways. **72–** 87
11.5 Network Connectable Equipment Using Shared Pathways. **72–** 87
11.6 Unused Physical Data Ports. **72–** 87
11.7 Data Connections to External Networks. **72–** 87
11.8 Network Connectable Equipment Cybersecurity Software Updates. **72–** 87
11.9 Notification of Termination of Cybersecurity Update Support. **72–** 88
11.10 Cybersecurity for System Support Tools. **72–** 88
11.11 Evidence of Compliance. **72–** 88
11.12 Documentation. **72–** 88

Chapter 12 Circuits and Pathways **72–** 89
12.1 Application. **72–** 89
12.2 General. **72–** 89
12.3 Pathway Class Designations. **72–** 89
12.4 Pathway Survivability. **72–** 90
12.5 Shared Pathway Designations. **72–** 90
12.6 Monitoring Integrity and Circuit Performance of Installation Conductors and Other Signaling Channels. **72–** 90
12.7 Nomenclature. **72–** 91

Chapter 13 Reserved **72–** 91

Chapter 14 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance **72–** 92
14.1 Application. **72–** 92
14.2 General. **72–** 92
14.3 Inspection. **72–** 93
14.4 Testing. **72–** 93
14.5 Maintenance. **72–** 109
14.6 Records. **72–** 109

Chapter 15 Reserved **72–** 109

Chapter 16 Reserved **72–** 109

Chapter 17 Initiating Devices **72–** 110
17.1 Application. **72–** 110
17.2 Purpose. **72–** 110
17.3 Performance-Based Design. **72–** 110
17.4 General Requirements. **72–** 110
17.5 Requirements for Smoke and Heat Detectors. **72–** 110
17.6 Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors. **72–** 111
17.7 Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors. **72–** 113
17.8 Radiant-Energy-Sensing Fire Detectors. **72–** 120
17.9 Combination, Multi-Criteria, and Multi-Sensor Detectors. **72–** 121
17.10 Gas Detection. **72–** 122
17.11 Acoustic Leak Detection. **72–** 122
17.12 Thermal Image Fire Detection. **72–** 122
17.13 Other Fire Detectors. **72–** 123
17.14 Carbon Monoxide Detectors. **72–** 123
17.15 Sprinkler Waterflow Alarm-Initiating Devices. **72–** 123
17.16 Detection of Operation of Other Automatic Extinguishing Systems. **72–** 124

17.17 Manually Actuated Alarm-Initiating Devices. 72– 124
17.18 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device. . 72– 124
17.19 Supervisory-Signal-Initiating Devices. 72– 124

Chapter 18 Notification Appliances 72– 126
18.1 Application. 72– 126
18.2 Purpose. 72– 126
18.3 General. 72– 126
18.4 Audible Characteristics. 72– 127
18.5 Visual Characteristics — Public Mode. 72– 131
18.6 Visual Characteristics — Private Mode. 72– 134
18.7 Supplementary Visual Signaling Method. 72– 134
18.8 Textual Audible Appliances. 72– 134
18.9 Textual and Graphical Visual Appliances. 72– 134
18.10 Tactile Appliances. 72– 135

Chapter 19 Reserved 72– 135

Chapter 20 Reserved 72– 135

Chapter 21 Emergency Control Function Interfaces 72– 136
21.1 Application. 72– 136
21.2 General. 72– 136
21.3 Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation. 72– 136
21.4 Elevator Power Shutdown. 72– 138
21.5 Fire Service Access Elevators. 72– 138
21.6 Occupant Evacuation Elevators (OEE). 72– 138
21.7 Heating, Ventilating and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems. 72– 139
21.8 High Volume Low Speed (HVLS) Fans. 72– 140
21.9 Door and Shutter Release. 72– 140
21.10 Electrically Locked Doors. 72– 140
21.11 Exit Marking Audible Notification Systems. 72– 140

Chapter 22 Reserved 72– 140

Chapter 23 Protected Premises Alarm and Signaling Systems 72– 141
23.1 Application. 72– 141
23.2 General. 72– 141
23.3 System Features. 72– 141
23.4 System Performance and Integrity. 72– 141
23.5 Performance of Initiating Device Circuits (IDCs). 72– 142
23.6 Performance of Signaling Line Circuits (SLCs). .. 72– 142
23.7 Performance of Notification Appliance Circuits (NACs). 72– 144
23.8 System Requirements. 72– 144
23.9 In-Building Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications. 72– 149
23.10 Fire Alarm Systems Using Tone. 72– 149
23.11 Suppression System Actuation. 72– 149
23.12 Off-Premises Signals. 72– 150
23.13 Guard's Tour Supervisory Service. 72– 150
23.14 Suppressed (Exception Reporting) Signal System. 72– 150
23.15 Protected Premises Emergency Control Functions. 72– 150
23.16 Special Requirements for Low-Power Radio (Wireless) Systems. 72– 150

Chapter 24 Emergency Communications Systems (ECSs) 72– 153
24.1 Application. 72– 153
24.2 Purpose. 72– 153
24.3 General. 72– 153
24.4 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems (EVACS). 72– 155
24.5 In-Building Mass Notification Systems. 72– 157
24.6 Wide-Area Mass Notification Systems. 72– 162
24.7 Distributed Recipient Mass Notification Systems (DRMNS). 72– 163
24.8 Two-Way, In-Building Wired Emergency Services Communications Systems. 72– 163
24.9 Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement Systems. 72– 164
24.10 Two-Way Emergency Communications Systems for Rescue Assistance. 72– 164
24.11 Information, Command, and Control. 72– 165
24.12 Performance-Based Design of Mass Notification Systems. 72– 166
24.13 Documentation for ECSs. 72– 166

Chapter 25 Reserved 72– 167

Chapter 26 Supervising Station Alarm Systems 72– 167
26.1 Application. 72– 167
26.2 General. 72– 167
26.3 Central Station Service Alarm Systems. 72– 169
26.4 Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm Systems. ... 72– 171
26.5 Remote Supervising Station Alarm Systems. 72– 174
26.6 Communications Methods for Supervising Station Alarm Systems. 72– 175

Chapter 27 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems 72– 184
27.1 Application. 72– 184
27.2 General. 72– 184
27.3 Management and Maintenance. 72– 184
27.4 Communications Methods. 72– 184
27.5 Alarm Processing Equipment. 72– 185
27.6 Alarm Boxes. 72– 190
27.7 Public Cable Plant. 72– 193
27.8 Emergency Communications Systems (ECS). 72– 196

Chapter 28 Reserved 72– 196

Chapter 29 Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Signaling Systems 72– 197
29.1 Application. 72– 197
29.2 Purpose. 72– 197
29.3 Basic Requirements. 72– 197
29.4 Remote Annunciation. 72– 197
29.5 Notification. 72– 197
29.6 Assumptions. 72– 198
29.7 Carbon Monoxide Detection. 72– 198
29.8 Detection and Notification. 72– 198
29.9 Power Supplies. 72– 199
29.10 Equipment Performance. 72– 201
29.11 Installation. 72– 203
29.12 Optional Functions. 72– 205
29.13 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance. 72– 205
29.14 Markings and Instructions. 72– 205

Annex A Explanatory Material 72– 207

Annex B Engineering Guide for Automatic Fire Detector Spacing 72– 350

Annex C System Performance and Design Guide 72– 392

Annex D Speech Intelligibility 72– 394

Annex E Sample Ordinance Adopting *NFPA 72* 72– 405

Annex F Wiring Diagrams and Guide for Testing Fire Alarm Circuits 72– 406

Annex G **Guidelines for Emergency Communication Strategies for Buildings and Campuses** **72–** 414

Annex H **Carbon Monoxide** **72–** 419

Annex I **Color-Coded Tagging Program** **72–** 421

Annex J **Informational References** **72–** 425

Index **72–** 432

NFPA 72

National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code®

2025 Edition

IMPORTANT NOTE: This NFPA document is made available for use subject to important notices and legal disclaimers. These notices and disclaimers appear in all publications containing this document and may be found under the heading "Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning NFPA Standards." They can also be viewed at www.nfpa.org/disclaimers or obtained on request from NFPA.

UPDATES, ALERTS, AND FUTURE EDITIONS: New editions of NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides (i.e., NFPA Standards) are released on scheduled revision cycles. This edition may be superseded by a later one, or it may be amended outside of its scheduled revision cycle through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments (TIAs). An official NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document, together with all TIAs and Errata in effect. To verify that this document is the current edition or to determine if it has been amended by TIAs or Errata, please consult the National Fire Codes® Subscription Service or the "List of NFPA Codes & Standards" at www.nfpa.org/docinfo. In addition to TIAs and Errata, the document information pages also include the option to sign up for alerts for individual documents and to be involved in the development of the next edition.

NOTICE: An asterisk (*) following the number or letter designating a paragraph indicates that explanatory material on the paragraph can be found in Annex A.

A reference in brackets [ ] following a section or paragraph indicates material that has been extracted from another NFPA document. Extracted text may be edited for consistency and style and may include the revision of internal paragraph references and other references as appropriate. Requests for interpretations or revisions of extracted text shall be sent to the technical committee responsible for the source document.

Information on referenced and extracted publications can be found in Chapter 2 and Annex J.

Chapter 1 Administration

1.1 Scope.

1.1.1 *NFPA 72* covers the application, installation, location, performance, inspection, testing, and maintenance of fire alarm systems, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, fire and carbon monoxide detection and warning equipment, and emergency communications systems (ECS), and their components.

1.1.2 The provisions of this chapter apply throughout the Code unless otherwise noted.

1.1.3 For the purposes of carbon monoxide detection, this standard is primarily concerned with life safety, not property protection.

1.2* Purpose.

1.2.1 The purpose of this Code shall be to define the means of signal initiation, transmission, notification, and annunciation; the levels of performance; and the reliability of the various types of fire alarm systems, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, fire and carbon monoxide detection and warning equipment, emergency communications systems, and their components.

1.2.2 This Code defines the features associated with these systems and also provides information necessary to modify or upgrade an existing system to meet the requirements of a particular system classification.

1.2.3 This Code establishes minimum required levels of performance, extent of redundancy, and quality of installation but does not establish the only methods by which these requirements are to be achieved.

1.2.4* This Code shall not be interpreted to require a level of protection that is greater than that which would otherwise be required by the applicable building or fire code.

1.3 Application.

1.3.1 Alarm systems shall be classified as follows:

(1) Fire alarm systems
  (a) Household fire alarm systems
  (b) Protected premises (local) fire alarm systems
(2) Carbon monoxide detection equipment and systems
  (a) Single and multiple station carbon monoxide alarms
  (b) Carbon monoxide detectors and their related systems and components
(3) Supervising station alarm systems
  (a) Central station (service) alarm systems
  (b) Remote supervising station alarm systems
  (c) Proprietary supervising station alarm systems
(4) Public emergency alarm reporting systems

1.3.2 Emergency communications systems shall be classified as follows:

(1) One-way emergency communications systems
  (a) Distributed recipient mass notification systems
  (b) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems
  (c) In-building mass notification systems
  (d) Wide-area mass notification systems
(2) Two-way emergency communications systems
  (a) In-building emergency communications systems

1.3.3 Any reference or implied reference to a particular type of hardware shall be for the purpose of clarity and shall not be interpreted as an endorsement.

1.3.4 The intent and meaning of the terms used in this Code shall be, unless otherwise defined herein, the same as those of *NFPA 70*.

1.3.5 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 12, 14, 17, 18, 21, 23, 24, 26, and 27 shall apply unless otherwise noted in the specific chapter. Chapter 29 is designed to stand alone unless it specifically references an earlier chapter.

1.4 Retroactivity.

1.4.1 Unless otherwise required elsewhere in this Code, the provisions of this document shall not apply to facilities, equipment, structures, or installations that were existing or approved for construction or installation prior to the effective date of the document.

1.4.2 In those cases where it is determined by the authority having jurisdiction that the existing situation involves a distinct hazard to life or property, retroactive application of the provisions of this document shall be permitted.

1.5 Equivalency.

1.5.1 Nothing in this Code shall prevent the use of systems, methods, devices, or appliances of equivalent or superior quality, strength, fire resistance, effectiveness, durability, and safety over those prescribed by this Code.

1.5.2 Technical documentation shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction to demonstrate equivalency.

1.5.3 The systems, methods, devices, or appliances that are found equivalent shall be approved.

1.6 Units and Formulas.

1.6.1 The units of measure in this Code shall be presented in US Customary Units (inch-pound units).

1.6.2 Where presented, the International System of Units (SI) shall follow the inch-pound units in parentheses.

1.6.3 Where both systems of units are presented, either system shall be acceptable for satisfying the requirements in this Code.

1.6.4 Where both systems of units are presented, users of this Code shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Shall utilize only one set of units consistently
(2) Shall not alternate between units

Δ **1.6.5*** The values presented for measurements in this Code shall be expressed with a degree of precision appropriate for practical application and enforcement.

1.6.6 Where extracted text contains values expressed in only one system of units, the values in the extracted text shall be retained without conversion to preserve the values established by the responsible technical committee in the source document.

1.7 Code Adoption Requirements. This Code shall be administered and enforced by the authority having jurisdiction designated by the governing authority. *(See Annex E for sample wording for enabling legislation.)*

Chapter 2 Referenced Publications

2.1 General. The documents or portions thereof listed in this chapter are referenced within this Code and shall be considered part of the requirements of this document.

Δ **2.2 NFPA Publications.** National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471.

NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers,* 2022 edition.

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems,* 2025 edition.

NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems,* 2023 edition.

NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines,* 2024 edition.

NFPA 70®, National Electrical Code®, 2023 edition.

NFPA 75, *Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment,* 2024 edition.

NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems,* 2024 edition.

NFPA *101®, Life Safety Code®,* 2024 edition.

NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems,* 2025 edition.

NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems,* 2025 edition.

NFPA 170, *Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols,* 2024 edition.

NFPA 601, *Standard for Security Services in Fire Loss Prevention,* 2020 edition.

NFPA 715, *Standard for the Installation of Fuel Gases Detection and Warning Equipment,* 2023 edition.

NFPA 855, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Energy Storage Systems,* 2023 edition.

NFPA 1031, *Standard for Professional Qualifications for Fire Inspector and Plan Examiner,* 2014 edition.

NFPA 1225, *Standard for Emergency Services Communications,* 2022 edition.

NFPA 1660, *Standard for Emergency, Continuity, and Crisis Management: Preparedness, Response, and Recovery,* 2024 edition.

2.3 Other Publications.

Δ **2.3.1 ASA Publications.** Acoustical Society of America, 1305 Walt Whitman Road, Suite 110, Melville, NY 11747-4300.

ANSI/ASA S1.4, *Electroacoustics — Sound Level Meters — Part 1: Specifications,* 2014.

ANSI/ASA S3.41, *Audible Emergency Evacuation (E2) and Evacuation Signals with Relocation Instructions (ESRI),* 2015.

2.3.2 ASCE Publications. American Society of Civil Engineers, 1801 Alexander Bell Drive, Reston, VA 20191.

ASCE/SEI 7, *Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures,* 2022.

2.3.3 ASME Publications. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990.

ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators,* 2019.

2.3.4 ICC Publications. International Code Council, 500 New Jersey Avenue, NW, 6th Floor, Washington, DC 20001.

ICC/ANSI A117.1, *Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities,* 2017.

2.3.5 IEEE Publications. IEEE Operations Center, 445 Hoes Lane, Piscataway, NJ 08854-4141.

IEEE 450, *Recommended Practice for Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Vented Lead-Acid Batteries for Stationary Applications,* 2020.

IEEE 1106, *Recommended Practice for Installation, Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Vented Nickel-Cadmium Batteries for Stationary Applications,* 2015.

ANSI/IEEE C2, *National Electrical Safety Code,* 2023.

N **2.3.6 ISA Publications.** International Society of Automation, 3252 S. Miami Boulevard, #102, Durham, NC 27703.

ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-3-3, *Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems, Part 3-3: System Security Requirements and Security Levels,* 2013.

ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-4-2, *Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems, Part 4-2: Technical Security Requirements for IACS Components*, 2018.

2.3.7 ISO Publications. International Organization for Standardization, ISO Central Secretariat, BIBC II, Chemin de Blandonnet 8, CP 401, 1214 Vernier, Geneva, Switzerland.

ISO 7731, *Ergonomics — Danger signals for public and work areas — Auditory danger signals*, 2003 (reconfirmed 2015).

ISO/IEC 27001, *Information security management systems*, 2022.

N **2.3.8 NIST Publications.** National Institute of Standards and Technology, 100 Bureau Drive, Gaithersburg, MD 20899-1070.

"Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity," Version 1.1, 2018.

Δ **2.3.9 Ericsson Group Publications.** Ericsson Group, 6300 Legacy Drive, Plano, TX 75024.

GR-506-CORE, *Signaling for Analog Interface,* 2011.

GR-909-CORE, *Generic Criteria for Fiber in the Loop Systems,* 2004.

2.3.10 TIA Publications. Telecommunications Industry Association, 1310 North Courthouse Road, Suite 890, Arlington, VA 22201.

ANSI/TIA 568.3, *Optical Fiber Cabling and Components Standard*, 2022.

Δ **2.3.11 UL Publications.** Underwriters Laboratories Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096.

UL 217, *Smoke Alarms*, 2020, revised 2022.

UL 268, *Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2023.

UL 827, *Central-Station Alarm Services*, 2014, revised 2021.

UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2022, revised 2023.

UL 985, *Household Fire Warning System Units*, 2015, revised 2022.

UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories*, 2023.

UL 1730, *Smoke Detector Monitors and Accessories for Individual Living Units of Multifamily Residences and Hotel/Motel Rooms*, 2006, revised 2022.

UL 1971, *Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, 2002, revised 2018.

UL 1981, *Central-Station Automation Systems*, 2014, revised 2023.

UL 2017, *General-Purpose Signaling Devices and Systems*, 2008, revised 2018.

UL 2034, *Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms,* 2017, revised 2022.

UL 2075, *Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors,* 2013, revised 2023.

UL 2525, *Two-Way Emergency Communications Systems for Rescue Assistance*, 2020.

UL 2572, *Mass Notification Systems*, 2016, revised 2018.

CAN/UL 2900-2-3, *Software Cybersecurity for Network-Connectable Products, Part 2-3: Particular Requirements for Security and Life Safety Signaling Systems*, 2020.

UL 60950-1, *Information Technology Equipment — Safety — Part 1: General Requirements*, 2007, revised 2019.

UL 62368-1, *Audio/Video, Information and Communication Technology Equipment — Part 1: Safety Requirements,* 2019, revised 2021.

2.3.12 Other Publications.

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, 11th edition, Merriam-Webster, Inc., Springfield, MA, 2020.

2.4 References for Extracts in Mandatory Sections.

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems,* 2025 edition.

NFPA 70®, National Electrical Code®, 2023 edition.

NFPA *101®, Life Safety Code®,* 2024 edition.

NFPA 654, *Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing, and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids,* 2020 edition.

NFPA 715, *Standard for the Installation of Fuel Gases Detection and Warning Equipment,* 2023 edition.

NFPA 1225, *Standard for Emergency Services Communications,* 2022 edition.

NFPA 5000®, Building Construction and Safety Code®, 2024 edition.

Chapter 3 Definitions

Δ **3.1 General.**

N **3.1.1** The definitions contained in this chapter shall apply to the terms used in this Code.

N **3.1.2** Where terms are not defined in this chapter or within another chapter, they shall be defined using their ordinarily accepted meanings within the context in which they are used.

N **3.1.3** *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th edition, shall be the source for the ordinarily accepted meaning.

3.2 NFPA Official Definitions.

3.2.1* Approved. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

3.2.2* Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). An organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcing the requirements of a code or standard, or for approving equipment, materials, an installation, or a procedure.

3.2.3* Code. A standard that is an extensive compilation of provisions covering broad subject matter or that is suitable for adoption into law independently of other codes and standards.

3.2.4 Labeled. Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials, and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

3.2.5* Listed. Equipment, materials, or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services, and whose listing states that either the equipment, material, or service meets appropriate designated standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

3.2.6 Shall. Indicates a mandatory requirement.

3.2.7 Should. Indicates a recommendation or that which is advised but not required.

3.3 General Definitions.

3.3.1 Accessible (as applied to equipment). Capable of being reached for operation, renewal, and inspection. [**70,** 2023] (SIG-FUN)

3.3.2 Accessible (as applied to wiring methods). Capable of being removed or exposed without damaging the building structure or finish or not permanently closed in or blocked by the structure, other electrical equipment, other building systems, or finish of the building. [**70,** 2023] (SIG-FUN)

3.3.3 Accessible, Readily (Readily Accessible). Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal, or inspections without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to take actions such as to use tools (other than keys), to climb over or under, to remove obstacles, or to resort to portable ladders, and so forth. [**70,** 2023] (SIG-FUN)

3.3.4 Accessible Spaces (as applied to detection coverage in Chapter 17). Spaces or concealed areas of construction that can be entered via openable panels, doors, hatches, or other readily movable construction elements. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.5 Acknowledge. An action performed by a person to confirm that a message or signal has been received. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.6* Acoustically Distinguishable Space (ADS). An emergency communications system notification zone, or subdivision thereof, that might be an enclosed or otherwise physically defined space, or that might be distinguished from other spaces because of different acoustical, environmental, or use characteristics, such as reverberation time and ambient sound pressure level. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.7 Active Multiplex System. A multiplexing system in which signaling devices such as transponders are employed to transmit status signals of each initiating device or initiating device circuit within a prescribed time interval so that the lack of receipt of such a signal can be interpreted as a trouble signal. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.8 Addressable Device. A fire alarm system component, with an input, output, or combination function, that is discretely identified by a unique address. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.9 Adverse Condition. Any condition occurring in a communications or transmission channel that interferes with the proper transmission or interpretation, or both, of status change signals at the supervising station. *(See also 3.3.277.10, Trouble Signal.)* (SIG-SSS)

3.3.10 Air Sampling–Type Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.11 Alarm. An indication of the existence of a condition that requires immediate response. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.11.1 *Carbon Monoxide Alarm.* A single-or multiple-station alarm responsive to carbon monoxide (CO). (SIG-HOU)

3.3.12 Alarm Box.

3.3.12.1 *Auxiliary Alarm Box.* An alarm box that can only be operated from one or more remote initiating devices or an auxiliary alarm system used to send an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.12.2 *Combination Fire Alarm and Guard's Tour Box.* A manually operated box capable of transmitting a fire alarm signal and a separate guard patrol tour supervisory signal. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.12.3* *Manual Fire Alarm Box.* A manually operated device used to initiate a fire alarm signal. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.12.4 *Master Alarm Box.* A publicly accessible alarm box that can also be operated by one or more remote initiating devices or an auxiliary alarm system used to send an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.12.5 *Publicly Accessible Alarm Box.* An enclosure, accessible to the public, housing a manually operated transmitter used to send an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.13 Alarm Repeater System. A device or system for the purpose of automatically retransmitting alarm information received by the alarm processing equipment. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.14 Alarm Service. The service required following the receipt of an alarm signal. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.15 Alarm Signal. See 3.3.277, Signal.

3.3.16 Alarm System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System; 3.3.307, Supervising Station Alarm Systems; 3.3.234, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System; 3.3.99.1.2, In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications System; and 3.3.99.1.3, In-Building Mass Notification System.

3.3.17 Alarm Verification Feature. A feature of automatic fire detection and alarm systems to reduce unwanted alarms wherein smoke detectors report alarm conditions for a minimum period of time, or confirm alarm conditions within a given time period after being reset, in order to be accepted as a valid alarm initiation signal. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.18 Alert Tone. An attention-getting signal to alert occupants of the pending transmission of a voice message. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.19 Analog Initiating Device (Sensor). See 3.3.152, Initiating Device.

3.3.20* Ancillary Functions. Nonemergency activations of the fire alarm or mass notification audible, visual, and textual output circuits. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.21 Annunciator. A unit containing one or more indicator lamps, alphanumeric displays, or other equivalent means in which each indication provides status information about a circuit, condition, or location. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.22 Apartment Building. A building or portion thereof containing three or more dwelling units with independent cooking and bathroom facilities. (SIG-HOU) [**5000**, 2024]

3.3.23 Audible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.194, Notification Appliance.

3.3.24 Authorized Personnel. See 3.3.213, Personnel.

3.3.25 Automatic Extinguishing System Supervisory Device. See 3.3.152, Initiating Device.

3.3.26 Automatic Fire Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.27 Automatic Fire Extinguishing or Suppression System Operation Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.28 Autonomous Control Unit (ACU). See 3.3.71, Control Unit.

3.3.29 Auxiliary Alarm System. See 3.3.234, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.30 Auxiliary Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

N **3.3.31* Auxiliary Service Provider (ASP).** An entity or service that receives signals from a protected premises fire alarm system, modifies or manipulates the signals, and directs the signals to the supervising station and is positioned in the network topology such that signals cannot reach the supervising station without the entity or service. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.32* Average Ambient Sound Level. The root mean square, A-weighted, sound pressure level measured over the period of time that any person is present, or a 24-hour period, whichever time period is the lesser. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.33* Backbone. A part of a network that acts as a common infrastructure to which the branch parts are connected. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.34* Battery. Two or more cells connected together electrically. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.1 ***Battery Capacity.*** The electrical energy available from a fully charged battery expressed in ampere-hours. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.2 ***Battery Charger.*** A device used to restore and maintain the charge of a secondary battery in which electrical energy is converted to chemical energy. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.2.1 ***Float Charge.*** A constant-voltage charge applied to a battery to maintain it in a fully charged condition. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.2.2 ***Fully Charged.*** A condition synonymous with 100 percent state of charge. *[See also 3.3.34.2.3, State of Charge (SOC).]* (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.2.3 ***State of Charge (SOC).*** The stored or remaining capacity of a battery at a given time expressed as a percentage of its rated capacity. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.2.4 ***Trickle Charge.*** A continuous, low-rate, constant-current charge given to a cell or battery to keep the unit fully charged. *(See also 3.3.34.2.1, Float Charge.)* (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.3 ***Battery Load Test.*** A controlled discharge of a battery at a specified rate for a given period of time until a final voltage is achieved to determine battery capacity. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.4 ***Battery Unit.*** See 3.3.45.3, Unit (Multi-Cell). (SIG-TMS)

3.3.34.5 ***Rechargeable Battery.*** An electrochemical cell capable of being discharged and then recharged. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.35 Beam Construction. See 3.3.44, Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.36 Building Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.37 Building System Information Unit (BSIU). A computer-based electronic device that is intended to display building information and execute system control functions, including fire system information display and control. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.38 Carbon Monoxide Detection System. A system or portion of a combination system that consists of a control unit, components, and circuits arranged to monitor and annunciate the status of carbon monoxide alarm initiating devices and to initiate the appropriate response to those signals. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.38.1 ***Combination Carbon Monoxide Detection System.*** A carbon monoxide detection system in which components are used, in whole or in part, in common with a non–carbon monoxide signaling system, and in which components are not used as part of a fire alarm system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.38.2 ***Household Carbon Monoxide Detection System.*** A system of devices that uses a control unit to produce an alarm signal in the household for the purpose of notifying the occupants of the presence of concentrations of carbon monoxide that could pose a life safety risk. (SIG-HOU)

N **3.3.39 Carbon Monoxide Source.** Equipment or a permanently installed appliance, fireplace, or process used inside a building that produces or emits carbon monoxide gas. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.40 Carrier. High-frequency energy that can be modulated by voice or signaling impulses. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.41 Carrier System. A means of conveying a number of channels over a single path by modulating each channel on a different carrier frequency and demodulating at the receiving point to restore the signals to their original form. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.42* Ceiling. The upper surface of a space, regardless of height. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.42.1 ***Level Ceilings.*** Ceilings that have a slope of less than or equal to 1 in 8. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.42.2 ***Sloping Ceiling.*** A ceiling that has a slope of more than 1 in 8. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.42.3* ***Sloping Peaked-Type Ceiling.*** A ceiling in which the ceiling slopes in two directions from the highest point. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.42.4* ***Sloping Shed-Type Ceiling.*** A ceiling in which the high point is at one side with the slope extending toward the opposite side. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.43 Ceiling Height. The height from the continuous floor of a room to the continuous ceiling of a room or space. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.44 Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.44.1 ***Beam Construction.*** Ceilings that have solid structural or solid nonstructural members projecting down from the ceiling surface more than 4 in. (100 mm) and spaced more than 36 in. (910 mm), center to center. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.44.2 ***Girder.*** A support for beams or joists that runs at right angles to the beams or joists. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.44.3* ***Smooth Ceiling.*** A ceiling surface uninterrupted by continuous projections, such as solid joists, beams, or ducts, extending more than 4 in. (100 mm) below the ceiling surface. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.44.4 ***Solid Joist Construction.*** Ceilings that have solid structural or solid nonstructural members projecting down from the ceiling surface for a distance of more than 4 in. (100 mm) and spaced at intervals of 36 in. (910 mm) or less, center to center. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.45 Cell (as applied to batteries). The basic electrochemical unit, characterized by an anode and a cathode, used to receive, store, and deliver electrical energy. [**70,** 2023] (SIG-TMS)

3.3.45.1 ***Primary (Dry) Cell.*** A nonrechargeable electrochemical cell requiring periodic replacement, such as a 9-volt alkaline cell. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.45.2 ***Starved Electrolyte Cell.*** A cell in which liquid electrolyte is immobilized, also known as an absorbed glass mat (AGM) cell or a gelled electrolyte cell (gel cell). (SIG-TMS)

3.3.45.2.1 ***Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) Cell.*** A cell in which the liquid electrolyte is immobilized in fiberglass or polymeric fiber separators. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.45.2.2 ***Gelled Electrolyte Cell (Gel Cell).*** A cell in which the electrolyte is immobilized by addition of a gelling agent. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.45.3 ***Unit (Multi-Cell).*** Multiple cells in a single container, such as a 12-volt unit composed of six 2-volt cells. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.45.4* ***Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Cell.*** A sealed lead-acid cell with a valve that opens to the atmosphere when the internal pressure in the cell exceeds atmospheric pressure by a preselected amount. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.46 Central Station. See 3.3.306.1, Central Supervising Station.

3.3.47 Central Station Alarm System. See 3.3.307.1, Central Station Service Alarm System.

3.3.48 Central Station Service. See 3.3.308, Supervising Station Service.

3.3.49 Central Station Service Alarm System. See 3.3.307, Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

3.3.50 Central Supervising Station. See 3.3.306, Supervising Station.

3.3.51 Certified. See 3.2.5, Listed, for certified equipment.

3.3.52 Channel. A path for voice or signal transmission that uses modulation of light or alternating current within a frequency band. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.52.1 ***Communications Channel.*** A circuit or path connecting a subsidiary station(s) to a supervising station(s) over which signals are carried. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.52.2* ***Radio Channel.*** A band of frequencies of a width sufficient to allow its use for radio communications. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.52.3 ***Transmission Channel.*** A circuit or path connecting transmitters to supervising stations or subsidiary stations on which signals are carried. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.53 Circuit. Either a means of providing power or a connection path between locations *[see 3.3.210, Path (Pathways)].* (SIG-PRO)

3.3.54 Circuit Interface. See 3.3.157, Interface.

3.3.55 Cloud Chamber Smoke Detection. See 3.3.290, Smoke Detection.

3.3.56* Coded. An audible or visual signal that conveys several discrete bits or units of information. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.57 Combination Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.58 Combination Emergency Communications Systems. See 3.3.100, Emergency Communications Systems — Combination.

3.3.59 Combination Fire Alarm and Guard's Tour Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

3.3.60 Combination System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.61 Common Talk Mode. See 3.3.318, Talk Mode.

Δ **3.3.62* Communications Center.** A building or portion of a building that is specifically configured for the primary purpose of providing emergency communications services or public safety answering point (PSAP) services to one or more public safety agencies under the authority or authorities having jurisdiction. [**1225,** 2022] (SIG-PRS)

3.3.63 Communications Channel. See 3.3.52, Channel.

3.3.64 Communications Circuit. Any signaling path of an emergency communications system that carries voice, audio, data, or other signals. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.65 Communications Cloud. The area in the communications path that is supported by providers of communications services not governed under the scope of *NFPA 72* in which signals travel between a protected property and a monitoring station. Depending on the type of transmission that is used, signals can travel on a single defined route or through various routes depending on what is available when the signal is initiated. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.66 Communications, Radio (as applied to Chapter 27).

3.3.66.1 ***One-Way Radio Communications.*** A communications channel on which alarm boxes only transmit signals and are incapable of receiving responses. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.66.2 ***Two-Way Radio Communications.*** A communications channel on which alarm boxes and the communications center both transmit and receive signals. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.67* Condition. A situation, environmental state, or equipment state of a fire alarm or signaling system. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.67.1 ***Abnormal (Off-Normal) Condition.*** A situation, environmental state, or equipment state that warrants some type of signal, notification, communication, response, action, or service. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.67.1.1* ***Alarm Condition.*** An abnormal condition that poses an immediate threat to life, property, or mission. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.67.1.2* ***Pre-Alarm Condition.*** An abnormal condition that poses a potential threat to life, property, or mission, and time is available for investigation. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.67.1.3* ***Supervisory Condition.*** An abnormal condition in connection with the supervision of other systems, processes, or equipment. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.67.1.4* ***Trouble Condition.*** An abnormal condition in a system due to a fault. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.67.2 ***Normal Condition.*** Circuits, systems, and components are functioning as designed and no abnormal condition exists. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.68 Constantly Attended. Attended 24 hours a day and 365 days a year. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.69 Contiguous Property. See 3.3.226, Property.

3.3.70 Control Equipment. Equipment listed as either a control unit or control unit accessory. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.71 Control Unit. A system component that monitors inputs and controls outputs through various types of circuits. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.71.1* ***Autonomous Control Unit (ACU).*** The primary control unit for an in-building mass notification system. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.71.2 ***Emergency Communications Control Unit (ECCU).*** A system capable of sending mass notification messages to individual buildings, zones of buildings, individual outdoor loudspeaker arrays, or zones of outdoor loudspeaker arrays; or a building, multiple buildings, outside areas, or a combination of these. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.71.3 ***Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU).*** See 3.3.117, Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU).

3.3.71.4 ***Wireless Control Unit.*** A component that transmits/receives and processes wireless signals. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.72 Cybersecurity. The protection of systems from theft or damage of data, or damage to hardware or software, as well as from unauthorized command or control or access to any information of any services the systems provide. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.73 Day-Care Home. A building or portion of a building in which more than 3 but not more than 12 clients receive care, maintenance, and supervision, by other than their relative(s) or legal guardian(s), for less than 24 hours per day. [***101,*** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.74 Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Control Unit. See 3.3.117, Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU).

3.3.75 Dedicated Function Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.76 Deficiency. A condition that interferes with the service or reliability for which the part, system, or equipment was intended. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.77 Delinquency Signal. See 3.3.277, Signal.

3.3.78* Design Professional. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed, or other professional with qualifications or credentials acceptable to the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.79 Detector. A device suitable for connection to a circuit that has a sensor that responds to a physical stimulus such as gas, heat, light, sound, or smoke. (SIG-IDS)

N **3.3.79.1*** ***Acoustic Leak Detector.*** A device that detects the presence of a gas leak through detection of the sound produced by a pressurized gas release. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.2 ***Air-Sampling-Type Detector.*** A detector that draws air and particulate from the protected area into a sampling network that runs to the detector. An aspiration fan in the detector housing draws air from the protected area back to the detector through air sampling ports, piping, or tubing. At the detector, the air is analyzed for fire products. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.3* ***Automatic Fire Detector.*** A device designed to detect the presence of a fire signature and to initiate action. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.4 ***Automatic Fire Extinguishing or Suppression System Operation Detector.*** A device that automatically detects the operation of a fire extinguishing or suppression system by means appropriate to the system employed. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.5 ***Carbon Monoxide Detector.*** A device that contains electrical components, a carbon monoxide sensing means, and connections for electrical power and signaling circuits. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.6* ***Combination Detector.*** A device that either responds to more than one of the fire phenomena or employs more than one operating principle to sense one of these phenomena. This device has listings for each sensing method employed. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.7 ***Electrical Conductivity Heat Detector.*** A line-type or spot-type sensing element in which resistance varies as a function of temperature. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.8 ***Fire–Gas Detector.*** A device that detects gases produced by a fire. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.9* ***Fixed-Temperature Detector.*** A device that responds when its operating element becomes heated to a predetermined level. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.10* ***Flame Detector.*** A radiant-energy-sensing fire detector that detects the radiant energy emitted by a flame. *(Refer to A.17.8.2.)* (SIG-IDS)

N **3.3.79.11** ***Fuel Gas Detector.*** A device having a sensor that responds to fuel gas that is connected to an alarm control unit. [**715,** 2023] (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.12 ***Gas Detector.*** A device that detects the presence of a specified gas concentration. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.13 ***Heat Detector.*** A fire detector that detects either abnormally high temperature or rate-of-temperature rise, or both. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.14* ***Line-Type Detector.*** A device in which detection is continuous along a path. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.15* ***Multi-Criteria Detector.*** A device that contains multiple sensors that separately respond to physical stimulus such as heat, smoke, or fire gases, or employs more than one sensor to sense the same stimulus. This sensor is capable of generating only one alarm signal from the sensors employed in the design either independently or in combination. The sensor output signal is mathematically evaluated to determine when an alarm signal is warranted. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. This detector has a single listing that establishes the primary function of the detector. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.16* ***Multi-Sensor Detector.*** A device that contains multiple sensors that separately respond to physical stimulus such as heat, smoke, or fire gases, or employs more than one sensor to sense the same stimulus. A device capable of generating multiple alarm signals from any one of the sensors employed in the design, independently or in combination. The sensor output signals are mathematically evaluated to determine when an alarm signal is warranted. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. This device has listings for each sensing method employed. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.17 ***Other Fire Detectors.*** Devices that detect a phenomenon other than heat, smoke, flame, or gases produced by a fire. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.18 ***Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Tubing Heat Detector.*** A line-type detector comprising small-diameter tubing, usually copper, that is installed on the ceiling or high on the walls throughout the protected area. The tubing is terminated in a detector unit containing diaphragms and associated contacts set to actuate at a predetermined pressure. The system is sealed except for calibrated vents that compensate for normal changes in temperature. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.19 ***Projected-Beam-Type Detector.*** A type of photoelectric light obscuration smoke detector wherein the beam spans the protected area. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.20 ***Radiant-Energy-Sensing Fire Detector.*** A device that detects radiant energy, such as ultraviolet, visible, or infrared, that is emitted as a product of combustion reaction and obeys the laws of optics. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.21* ***Rate Compensation Detector.*** A device that responds when the temperature of the air surrounding the device reaches a predetermined level, regardless of the rate-of-temperature rise. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.22* ***Rate-of-Rise Detector.*** A device that responds when the temperature rises at a rate exceeding a predetermined value. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.23 ***Smoke Detector.*** A device that detects visible or invisible particles of combustion. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.24* ***Spark/Ember Detector.*** A radiant-energy-sensing fire detector that is designed to detect sparks or embers. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.79.25* ***Spot-Type Detector.*** A device in which the detecting element is concentrated at a particular location. (SIG-IDS)

N **3.3.79.26** ***Thermal Image Fire Detector.*** An initiating device that senses overheated combustible material by imaging in the long-wave infrared wavelengths (i.e., far infrared) using a focal plane array. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.80* Device (Class N). A supervised component of a life safety system that communicates with other components of life safety systems and that collects environmental data or performs specific input or output functions necessary to the operation of the life safety system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.81 Digital Alarm Communicator Receiver (DACR). A system component that accepts and displays signals from digital alarm communicator transmitters (DACTs) sent over a managed facilities-based voice network. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.82 Digital Alarm Communicator System (DACS). A system in which signals are transmitted from a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) located at the protected premises through a managed facilities-based voice network to a digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR). (SIG-SSS)

3.3.83* Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT). A fire alarm system component at the protected premises to which a fire alarm control unit or a group of control units are connected that transmits signals via loop start technology. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.84 Digital Alarm Radio Receiver (DARR). A system component composed of two subcomponents: one that receives and decodes radio signals, the other that annunciates the decoded data. These two subcomponents can be coresident at the central station or separated by means of a data transmission channel. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.85 Digital Alarm Radio System (DARS). A system in which signals are transmitted from a digital alarm radio transmitter (DART) located at a protected premises through a radio channel to a digital alarm radio receiver (DARR). (SIG-SSS)

3.3.86 Digital Alarm Radio Transmitter (DART). A system component that is connected to or an integral part of a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) that is used to provide an alternate radio transmission channel. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.87 Display. The visible representation of output data, other than printed copy. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.88 Distributed Recipient Mass Notification System (DRMNS). See 3.3.99, Emergency Communications System (ECS).

3.3.89 Dormitory. A building or a space in a building in which group sleeping accommodations are provided for more than 16 persons who are not members of the same family in one room, or a series of closely associated rooms, under joint occupancy and single management, with or without meals, but without individual cooking facilities. [***101***, 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.90* Double Doorway. A single opening that has no intervening wall space or door trim separating the two doors. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.91 Downlink. The radio signal from the base station transmitter to the portable public safety subscriber receiver. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.92 Dwelling Unit. One or more rooms arranged for complete, independent housekeeping purposes, with space for eating, living, and sleeping; facilities for cooking; and provisions for sanitation. [**5000,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.93 Effective Masked Threshold. The minimum sound level at which the tone signal is audible in ambient noise. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.94 Electrical Conductivity Heat Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.95 Electromechanical Releasing Device. Mechanical devices, including fusible links, electrically monitored for contact closure to initiate a signal to the FACU. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.96* Ember. A particle of solid material that emits radiant energy due either to its temperature or the process of combustion on its surface. *(See also 3.3.296, Spark.)* (SIG-IDS)

3.3.97 Emergency Command Center. See 3.3.101, Emergency Communications System — Emergency Command Center.

3.3.98 Emergency Communications Control Unit (ECCU). See 3.3.71, Control Unit.

3.3.99* Emergency Communications System (ECS). A system for the protection of life by indicating the existence of an emergency situation and communicating information necessary to facilitate an appropriate response and action. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.99.1 ***One-Way Emergency Communications System.*** Systems intended to broadcast information, in an emergency, to people in one or more specified indoor or outdoor areas. It is intended that emergency messages be conveyed either by audible, visual, or textual means, or any combination thereof. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.99.1.1 ***Distributed Recipient Mass Notification System (DRMNS).*** A system meant to communicate directly to targeted individuals and groups that might not be in a contiguous area. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.99.1.2 ***In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications System.*** Dedicated manual or automatic equipment for originating and distributing voice instructions, as well as alert and evacuation signals pertaining to a fire emergency, to the occupants of a building. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.99.1.3 ***In-Building Mass Notification System.*** A system used to provide information and instructions to people in a building(s) or other space using intelligible voice communications and including visual signals, text, graphics, tactile, or other communication methods. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.99.1.4 ***Wide-Area Mass Notification System.*** A system installed to provide real-time information to outdoor areas that could have the capability to communicate with other notification systems provided for a campus, military base, municipality, or similar single or multiple contiguous areas. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.99.2 ***Two-Way Emergency Communications System.*** A system in one of two categories: those systems that are anticipated to be used by building occupants [area of refuge two-way emergency communications systems (ECSs), elevator landing two-way ECSs, occupant evacuation elevator lobby two-way ECSs, and stairway communications systems], and those systems that are to be used by firefighters, police, and other emergency services personnel. Two-way ECSs are used to both exchange information and to communicate information such as, but not limited to, instructions, acknowledgement of receipt of messages, condition of local environment, and condition of persons, and to give assurance that help is on the way. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.100 Emergency Communications Systems — Combination. Various emergency communications systems such as fire alarm, mass notification, firefighter communications, area of refuge communications, elevator communications, or others that can be served through a single control system or through an interconnection of several control systems. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.101* Emergency Communications System — Emergency Command Center. The room(s) or area(s) staffed during any emergency event by assigned emergency management staff. The room or area contains system communications and control equipment serving one or more buildings where responsible authorities receive information from premises sources or systems or from (higher level) regional or national sources or systems and then disseminate appropriate information to individuals, a building, multiple buildings, outside campus areas, or a combination of these in accordance with the emergency response plan established for the premises. The room or area contains the controls and indicators from which the emergency communications systems located in the room or area can be manually controlled as required by the emergency response plan and the emergency management coordinator. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.102* Emergency Control Function Interface Device. A listed fire alarm or signaling system component that directly interfaces with the system that operates the emergency control function. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.103* Emergency Control Functions. Building, fire, and emergency control elements or systems that are initiated by the fire alarm or signaling system and either increase the level of life safety for occupants or control the spread of the harmful effects of fire or other dangerous products. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.104 Emergency Personnel. See 3.3.213, Personnel.

Δ **3.3.105* Emergency Response Agency (ERA).** Organizations providing law enforcement, emergency medical, fire, rescue, communications, and related support services. [**1225,** 2022] (SIG-SSS)

Δ **3.3.106* Emergency Response Facility (ERF).** A structure or a portion of a structure that houses emergency response agency equipment or personnel for response to events. [**1225,** 2022] (SIG-PRS)

3.3.107 Emergency Response Plan. A documented set of actions to address the planning for, management of, and response to natural, technological, and man-made disasters and other emergencies. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.108* Endpoint (Class N). The end of a pathway where a single addressable device or a control unit is connected. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.109* Evacuation. The withdrawal of occupants from a building. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.110 Evacuation Signal. See 3.3.277, Signal.

3.3.111 Executive Software. See 3.3.293, Software.

3.3.112 Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.194, Notification Appliance.

3.3.113 FACP. Fire Alarm Control Panel. See 3.3.117, Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU).

3.3.114 False Alarm. See 3.3.332, Unwanted Alarm.

3.3.115 Field of View. The virtual cone that extends out from the detector within which the effective sensitivity of the detector is at least 50 percent of its on-axis, listed, or approved sensitivity. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.116 Fire Alarm Control Interface (FACI). See 3.3.157, Interface.

3.3.117* Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU). A component of the fire alarm system that receives signals from initiating devices or other fire alarm control units and processes these signals to determine part or all of the required fire alarm system output function(s). (SIG-PRO)

3.3.117.1 ***Master Fire Alarm Control Unit.*** A fire alarm control unit that serves the protected premises or portion of the protected premises as a local fire alarm control unit and accepts inputs from other fire alarm control units. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.117.2 ***Protected Premises (Local) Control Unit.*** A fire alarm control unit that serves the protected premises or a portion of the protected premises. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.117.2.1* ***Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Control Unit.*** A protected premises fire alarm control unit that is intended to operate specifically identified emergency control function(s). (SIG-PRO)

3.3.117.2.2 ***Releasing Service Fire Alarm Control Unit.*** A protected premises fire alarm control unit specifically listed for releasing service that is part of a fire suppression system and which provides control outputs to release a fire suppression agent based on either automatic or manual input. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.118 Fire Alarm/Evacuation Signal Tone Generator. A device that produces a fire alarm/evacuation tone upon command. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.119 Fire Alarm Signal. See 3.3.277, Signal.

3.3.120 Fire Alarm System. A system or portion of a combination system that consists of components and circuits arranged to monitor and annunciate the status of fire alarm or supervisory signal-initiating devices and to initiate the appropriate response to those signals. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.120.1* ***Combination System.*** A fire alarm system in which components are used, in whole or in part, in common with a non-fire signaling system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.120.2 ***Household Fire Alarm System.*** A system of devices that uses a fire alarm control unit to produce an alarm signal in the household for the purpose of notifying the occupants of the presence of a fire so that they will evacuate the premises. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.120.3 ***Municipal Fire Alarm System.*** A public emergency alarm reporting system. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.120.4* ***Protected Premises (Local) Fire Alarm System.*** A fire alarm system located at the protected premises. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.120.4.1 ***Building Fire Alarm System.*** A protected premises fire alarm system that includes any of the features identified in 23.3.5.1 and that serves the general fire alarm needs of a building or buildings and provides notification. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.120.4.2 ***Dedicated Function Fire Alarm System.*** A protected premises fire alarm system installed specifically to perform emergency control function(s) where a building fire alarm system is not required. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.120.4.3 ***Releasing Fire Alarm System.*** A protected premises fire alarm system that is part of a fire suppression system and/or that provides control inputs to a fire suppression system related to the fire suppression system's sequence of operations and outputs for other signaling and notification. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.121* Fire Command Center. The principal attended or unattended room or area where the status of the detection, alarm communications, control systems, and other emergency systems is displayed and from which the system(s) can be manually controlled. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.122 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device. A device connected to a control unit that monitors the fire extinguisher in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 10. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.123 Fire Warden. A building staff member or a tenant trained to perform assigned duties in the event of a fire emergency. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.124 Fire Warning Equipment. Any detector, alarm, device, or material related to single- and multiple-station alarms or household fire alarm systems. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.125 Fire–Gas Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.126 Fixed-Temperature Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.127 Flame. A body or stream of gaseous material involved in the combustion process and emitting radiant energy at specific wavelength bands determined by the combustion chemistry of the fuel. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.128 Flame Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.129 Flame Detector Sensitivity. The distance along the optical axis of the detector at which the detector can detect a fire of specified size and fuel within a given time frame. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.130 Frequency. Minimum and maximum time between events. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.130.1 ***Weekly Frequency.*** Fifty-two times per year, once per calendar week. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.130.2 ***Monthly Frequency.*** Twelve times per year, once per calendar month. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.130.3 ***Quarterly Frequency.*** Four times per year with a minimum of 2 months, maximum of 4 months. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.130.4 ***Semiannual Frequency.*** Twice per year with a minimum of 4 months, maximum of 8 months. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.130.5 ***Annual Frequency.*** Once per year with a minimum of 9 months, maximum 15 months. (SIG-TMS)

N **3.3.131 Fuel-Burning Equipment.** Any device that burns solid, liquid, or gaseous fuel or a combination thereof. (SIG-HOU)

N **3.3.132 Fuel Gas Warning Equipment.** Any detector, alarm, device, or material related to single- and multiple-station alarms or household fuel gas detection systems. [**715,** 2023] (SIG-IDS)

3.3.133 Gateway. A device that is used in the transmission of serial data (digital or analog) from the fire alarm control unit to other building system control units, equipment, or networks and/or from other building system control units to the fire alarm control unit. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.134 Girder. See 3.3.44, Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.135 Guard's Tour Reporting Station. A device that is manually or automatically initiated to indicate the route being followed and the timing of a guard's tour. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.136 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal. See 3.3.277, Signal.

3.3.137 Guest Room. An accommodation combining living, sleeping, sanitary, and storage facilities within a compartment. [***101*,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.138 Guest Suite. An accommodation with two or more contiguous rooms comprising a compartment, with or without doors between such rooms, that provides living, sleeping, sanitary, and storage facilities. [***101*,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.139* Hearing Loss. A full or partial decrease in the ability to detect or comprehend sounds. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.139.1 ***Profound Hearing Loss.*** A hearing threshold of greater than 90 dB. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.140 Heat Alarm. A single- or multiple-station alarm responsive to heat. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.140.1 ***Mechanically Powered, Single-Station Heat Alarm.*** A single-station heat alarm employing a mechanical power source. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.141 Heat Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.142 High Power Loudspeaker Array (HPLA). An array that provides capability for voice and tone communications to large outdoor areas. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.143 High Volume Low Speed (HVLS) Fan. A ceiling fan that is approximately 6 ft (1.8 m) to 24 ft (7.3 m) in diameter with a rotational speed of approximately 30 to 70 revolutions per minute. [**13,** 2025] (SIG-PRO)

3.3.144 Hotel. A building or groups of buildings under the same management in which there are sleeping accommodations for more than 16 persons and primarily used by transients for lodging with or without meals. [***101*,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.145 Household Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.146 Hunt Group. A group of associated telephone lines within which an incoming call is automatically routed to an idle (not busy) telephone line for completion. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.147* Identified (as applied to equipment). Recognizable as suitable for the specific purpose, function, use, environment, application, and so forth, where described in a particular *Code* requirement. [**70,** 2023] (SIG-PRS)

3.3.148* Immediately (as used in Chapter 26). Performed without unreasonable delay. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.149* Impairment. An abnormal condition, during either a planned or emergency event, where a system, component, or function is inoperable. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.150* In Writing. A form of correspondence formatted as a letter or document that can be verified upon request. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.151 In-Building Mass Notification System. See 3.3.99, Emergency Communications System (ECS).

3.3.152 Initiating Device. A system component that originates transmission of a signal indicating a change-of-state condition. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.152.1 ***Analog Initiating Device (Sensor).*** An initiating device that transmits a signal indicating varying degrees of condition as contrasted with a conventional initiating device, which can only indicate an on–off condition. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.152.2* ***Automatic Extinguishing System Supervisory Device.*** A device that responds to abnormal conditions that could affect the proper operation of an automatic sprinkler system, other fire-extinguishing system(s) or fire-suppression system(s). (SIG-IDS)

3.3.152.3 ***Nonrestorable Initiating Device.*** A device in which the sensing element is designed to be destroyed in the process of operation. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.152.4 ***Restorable Initiating Device.*** A device in which the sensing element is not ordinarily destroyed in the process of operation, whose restoration can be manual or automatic. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.152.5 ***Supervisory Signal Initiating Device.*** An initiating device in which the change of state signals an off-normal condition that requires action in connection with guard tours or maintenance of related systems. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.153 Initiating Device Circuit. A circuit to which automatic or manual initiating devices are connected where the signal received does not identify the individual device operated. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.154 Inspection Personnel. See 3.3.213, Personnel.

3.3.155 Intelligibility. The quality or condition of being intelligible. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.156* Intelligible. Capable of being understood; comprehensible; clear. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.157 Interface.

3.3.157.1 ***Circuit Interface.*** A circuit component that interfaces initiating devices or control circuits, or both; notification appliances or circuits, or both; system control outputs; and other signaling line circuits to a signaling line circuit. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.157.1.1 ***Emergency Control Function Interface.*** The interface between the fire alarm system emergency control function interface device and the component controlling the emergency control function. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.157.1.2 ***Signaling Line Circuit Interface.*** A system component that connects a signaling line circuit to any combination of initiating devices, initiating device circuits, notification appliances, notification appliance circuits, system control outputs, and other signaling line circuits. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.157.2* ***Fire Alarm Control Interface.*** An interface that coordinates signals to and from the fire alarm system and other systems. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.158 Ionization Smoke Detection. See 3.3.290, Smoke Detection.

3.3.159 Leg Facility. The portion of a communications channel that connects not more than one protected premises to a primary or secondary trunk facility. The leg facility includes the portion of the signal transmission circuit from its point of connection with a trunk facility to the point where it is terminated within the protected premises at one or more transponders. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.160 Level Ceilings. See 3.3.42, Ceiling.

3.3.161 Life Safety Network. A type of combination system that transmits fire and emergency communications system data to at least one other life safety system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.162 Line-Type Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.163 Living Area. Any normally occupiable space in a residential occupancy, other than sleeping rooms or rooms that are intended for combination sleeping/living, bathrooms, toilet compartments, kitchens, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces, and similar areas. [***101*****,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.164 Loading Capacity. The maximum number of discrete elements of fire alarm systems permitted to be used in a particular configuration. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.165 Local Energy–Type Auxiliary Alarm System. See 3.3.234, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.166* Local Operating Console (LOC). Equipment used by authorized personnel and emergency responders to activate and operate an in-building mass notification system. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.167 Lodging or Rooming House. A building or portion thereof that does not qualify as a one- or two-family dwelling, that provides sleeping accommodations for a total of 16 or fewer people on a transient or permanent basis, without personal care services, with or without meals, but without separate cooking facilities for individual occupants. [***101*****,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.168 Loss of Power. The reduction of available voltage at the load below the point at which equipment can function as designed. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.169 Low-Power Radio Transmitter/Transceiver. Any device that communicates with associated control/receiving equipment or other transceivers by low-power radio signals. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.170 Maintenance. Work, including, but not limited to, repair, replacement, and service, performed to ensure that equipment operates properly. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.171 Malicious Alarm. See 3.3.332.1, Malicious Alarm.

Δ **3.3.172* Managed Facilities-Based Voice Network (MFVN).** A physical facilities-based network capable of transmitting real-time signals with formats unchanged that is managed, operated, and maintained by the regulated communications carrier to ensure service quality and reliability from the subscriber location to the supervising station via the public-switched telephone network (PSTN) or interconnection points with other MFVN peer networks. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.173 Manual Fire Alarm Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

3.3.174* Manufacturer's Published Instructions. Published installation and operating documentation provided for each product or component. The documentation includes directions and necessary information for the intended installation, maintenance, and operation of the product or component. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.175* Mass Notification Priority Mode. The mode of operation whereby all fire alarm occupant notification is superseded by emergency mass notification action. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.176* Mass Notification System. See 3.3.99.1.3, In-Building Mass Notification System. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.177 Master Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

3.3.178 Master Control Station (Two-Way Emergency Communications Systems for Rescue Assistance). A system component providing an operator interface to receive and view calls from remote call stations and initiate two-way communications between the master control station operator and persons at the call station location. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.179 Master Fire Alarm Control Unit. See 3.3.117, Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU).

3.3.180* Minimum Hearing Distance. The closest distance that an occupant's ear can be to an audible appliance. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.181 Multi-Criteria Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.182 Multiple-Station Alarm. A single-station alarm capable of being interconnected to one or more additional alarms so that the actuation of one causes the appropriate alarm signal to operate in all interconnected alarms. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.183 Multiplexing. A signaling method characterized by simultaneous or sequential transmission, or both, and reception of multiple signals on a signaling line circuit, a transmission channel, or a communications channel, including means for positively identifying each signal. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.184 Multi-Sensor Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.185 Municipal Fire Alarm Box (Street Box). A publicly accessible alarm box. *(See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.)*

3.3.186 Municipal Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.187 Net-Centric Alerting System (NCAS). A net-centric alerting system incorporates web-based management and alert activation application through which all operators and administrators could gain access to the system's capabilities based on the users' permissions and the defined access policy. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.188 Network.

3.3.188.1 ***Wired Network (Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems).*** The method of communications used in a public emergency alarm reporting system that consists of two or more points that are connected by physical conductors. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.188.2 ***Wireless Network (Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems).*** The method of communications used in a public emergency alarm reporting system that consists of two or more points that are not connected by physical conductors. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.189 Network Architecture. The physical and logical design of a network, and the inherent ability of the design to carry data from one point to another. (SIG-ECS)

N **3.3.190* Network Connectable Equipment.** System components that connect to the internet or external systems through wired or wireless pathways using various protocols.

3.3.191 Noncontiguous Property. See 3.3.226, Property.

3.3.192* Nonrequired. A system component or group of components that is installed at the option of the owner, and is not installed due to a building or fire code requirement. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.193 Nonrestorable Initiating Device. See 3.3.152, Initiating Device.

3.3.194 Notification Appliance. A fire alarm system component such as a bell, horn, loudspeaker, visual notification appliance, or text display that provides audible, tactile, or visual outputs, or any combination thereof. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.194.1 ***Audible Notification Appliance.*** A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of hearing. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.194.1.1 ***Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance.*** An audible notification appliance that marks building exits and areas of refuge by the sense of hearing for the purpose of evacuation or relocation. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.194.1.2* ***Textual Audible Notification Appliance.*** A notification appliance that conveys a stream of audible information. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.194.2 ***Tactile Notification Appliance.*** A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of touch or vibration. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.194.3 ***Visual Notification Appliance.*** A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of sight. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.194.3.1* ***Textual Visual Notification Appliance.*** A notification appliance that conveys a stream of visual information that displays an alphanumeric or pictorial message. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.195 Notification Appliance Circuit. A circuit or path directly connected to a notification appliance(s). (SIG-PRO)

3.3.196 Notification Zone. See 3.3.346, Zone.

3.3.197 Nuisance Alarm. See 3.3.332.2, Nuisance Alarm.

3.3.198* Observation. A suggested correction, improvement, or enhancement to the fire alarm or signaling system that is not considered to be an impairment or deficiency. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.199* Occupiable. A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.200 Occupiable Area. An area of a facility occupied by people on a regular basis. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.201* Octave Band. The bandwidth of a filter that comprises a frequency range of a factor of 2. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.201.1 ***One-Third Octave Band.*** The bandwidth of a filter that comprises a frequency range of a factor of $2^{1/3}$. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.202 Off-Hook. To access a communications network in preparation for connecting a telephone. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.203 One-Third Octave Band. See 3.3.201, Octave Band.

3.3.204 One-Way Emergency Communications System. See 3.3.99, Emergency Communications System (ECS).

3.3.205 On-Hook. To disconnect from a managed facilities-based voice network. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.206 Operating Mode.

3.3.206.1 ***Private Operating Mode.*** Audible or visual signaling only to those persons directly concerned with the implementation and direction of emergency action initiation and procedure in the area protected by the fire alarm system. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.206.2 ***Public Operating Mode.*** Audible or visual signaling to occupants or inhabitants of the area protected by the fire alarm system. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.207 Other Fire Detectors. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.208* Ownership. Any property or building or its contents under legal control by the occupant, by contract, or by holding of a title or deed. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.209 Paging System. A system intended to page one or more persons by such means as voice over loudspeaker, coded audible signals or visual signals, or lamp annunciators. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.210 Path (Pathways). Any circuit, conductor, optical fiber, radio carrier, or other means connecting two or more locations. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.211 Pathway Survivability. The ability of any conductor, optical fiber, radio carrier, or other means for transmitting system information to remain operational during fire conditions. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.212 Permanent Visual Record (Recording). An immediately readable, not easily alterable, print, slash, or punch record of all occurrences of status change. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.213 Personnel.

N **3.3.213.1** ***Authorized Personnel.*** The property owner, or designated representative appointed or selected by the property owner, who performs certain duties. (SIG-FUN)

N **3.3.213.2** ***Emergency Personnel.*** Person(s) who have been trained in emergency response. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.213.3 ***Inspection Personnel.*** Individuals who conduct a visual examination of a system or portion thereof to verify that it appears to be in operating condition, in proper loca-

tion, and is free of physical damage or conditions that impair operation. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.213.4 ***Service Personnel.*** Individuals who perform those procedures, adjustments, replacement of components, system programming, and maintenance as described in the manufacturer's service instructions that can affect any aspect of the performance of the system. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.213.5 ***System Designer.*** Individual responsible for the development of fire alarm or signaling system plans and specifications in accordance with this Code. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.213.6 ***System Installer.*** Individual responsible for the proper installation of fire alarm or signaling systems in accordance with plans, specifications, and manufacturer's requirements. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.213.7 ***Testing Personnel.*** Individuals who perform procedures used to determine the status of a system as intended by conducting acceptance, reacceptance, or periodic physical checks on systems. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.214 Photoelectric Light Obscuration Smoke Detection. See 3.3.290, Smoke Detection.

3.3.215 Photoelectric Light-Scattering Smoke Detection. See 3.3.290, Smoke Detection.

3.3.216 Plant. One or more buildings under the same ownership or control on a single property. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.217 Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Tubing Heat Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.218 Positive Alarm Sequence. An automatic sequence that results in an alarm signal, even when manually delayed for investigation, unless the system is reset. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.219 Power Supply. A source of electrical operating power, including the circuits and terminations connecting it to the dependent system components. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.220 Primary Battery (Dry Cell). A nonrechargeable battery requiring periodic replacement. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.221 Primary Trunk Facility. That part of a transmission channel connecting all leg facilities to a supervising or subsidiary station. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.222 Prime Contractor. The listed central station or listed alarm service local company that is contractually responsible for providing central station services to a subscriber as required by this Code. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.223 Private Operating Mode. See 3.3.206, Operating Mode.

3.3.224 Profound Hearing Loss. See 3.3.139, Hearing Loss.

3.3.225 Projected-Beam-Type Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.226 Property.

3.3.226.1 ***Contiguous Property.*** A single-owner or single-user protected premises on a continuous plot of ground, including any buildings thereon, that is not separated by a public thoroughfare, transportation right-of-way, property owned or used by others, or body of water not under the same ownership. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.226.2 ***Noncontiguous Property.*** An owner- or user-protected premises where two or more protected premises, controlled by the same owner or user, are separated by a public thoroughfare, body of water, transportation right-of-way, or property owned or used by others. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.227 Proprietary Supervising Station. See 3.3.306, Supervising Station.

3.3.228 Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System. See 3.3.307, Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

3.3.229 Proprietary Supervising Station Service. See 3.3.308, Supervising Station Service.

3.3.230 Protected Premises. The physical location protected by a fire alarm system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.231 Protected Premises (Local) Control Unit. See 3.3.117, Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU).

3.3.232 Protected Premises (Local) Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.233 Public Address System. An electronic amplification system with a mixer, amplifier, and loudspeakers, used to reinforce a given sound and distributing the "sound" to the general public around a building. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.234 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. A system of alarm-initiating devices, transmitting and receiving equipment, and communications infrastructure — other than a public telephone network — used to communicate with the communications center to provide any combination of manual or auxiliary alarm service. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.234.1* ***Auxiliary Alarm System.*** A protected premises fire alarm system or other emergency system at the protected premises and the system used to connect the protected premises system to a public emergency alarm reporting system for transmitting an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.234.1.1 ***Local Energy–Type Auxiliary Alarm System.*** An auxiliary system that employs a locally complete arrangement of parts, initiating devices, relays, power supply, and associated components to automatically activate a master box or auxiliary box over circuits that are electrically isolated from the public emergency alarm reporting system circuits. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.234.2 ***Type A Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.*** A system in which an alarm from an alarm box is received and is retransmitted to an emergency response facility either manually or automatically. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.234.3 ***Type B Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.*** A system in which an alarm from an alarm box is automatically transmitted to an emergency response facility and, if used, is transmitted to supplementary alerting devices. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.235 Public Operating Mode. See 3.3.206, Operating Mode.

3.3.236 Public Safety Agency. A fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agency. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.237 Public Safety Radio Enhancement System. A system installed to assure the effective operation of radio communication systems used by fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agencies. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.238 Public Safety Radio System. A radio communication system used by fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agencies. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.239 Public Switched Telephone Network. See 3.3.314, Switched Telephone Network.

3.3.240 Publicly Accessible Alarm Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

3.3.241* Qualified. A competent and capable person or company that has met the requirements and training for a given field acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.242 Radiant-Energy-Sensing Fire Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.243 Radio Alarm Repeater Station Receiver (RARSR). A system component that receives radio signals and resides at a repeater station that is located at a remote receiving location. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.244 Radio Alarm Supervising Station Receiver (RASSR). A system component that receives data and annunciates that data at the supervising station. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.245 Radio Alarm System (RAS). A system in which signals are transmitted from a radio alarm transmitter (RAT) located at a protected premises through a radio channel to two or more radio alarm repeater station receivers (RARSR) and that are annunciated by a radio alarm supervising station receiver (RASSR) located at the supervising station. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.246 Radio Alarm Transmitter (RAT). A system component at the protected premises to which initiating devices or groups of devices are connected that transmits signals indicating a status change of the initiating devices. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.247 Radio Channel. See 3.3.52, Channel.

3.3.248 Radio Communications. See 3.3.66, Communications, Radio.

Δ **3.3.249 Radio Frequency.** A measurement representing the oscillation rate of the electromagnetic radiation spectrum or electromagnetic radio waves. [**1225,** 2022] (SIG-PRS)

3.3.250 Rate Compensation Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.251 Rate-of-Rise Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.252 Record Drawings. Drawings (as-built) that document the location of all devices, appliances, wiring sequences, wiring methods, and connections of the components of the system as installed. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.253 Record of Completion. A document that acknowledges the features of installation, operation (performance), service, and equipment with representation by the property owner, system installer, system supplier, service organization, and the authority having jurisdiction. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.254 Releasing Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.120, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.255 Releasing Service Fire Alarm Control Unit. See 3.3.117, Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU).

3.3.256 Relocation. The directed movement of occupants from one area to another area within the same building. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.257* Remote Access. Communications between a remote device and a component of a fire alarm or signaling system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.258 Remote Call Station (Two-Way Emergency Communications Systems for Rescue Assistance). A system component providing a call button used to alert a master control station operator of a person requiring assistance, capabilities providing hands-free two-way communications between the person and operator, and visual indication of both call activation and active two-way communications. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.259 Remote Supervising Station. See 3.3.306, Supervising Station.

3.3.260 Remote Supervising Station Alarm System. See 3.3.307, Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

3.3.261 Remote Supervising Station Service. See 3.3.308, Supervising Station Service.

3.3.262 Repeater Station. The location of the equipment needed to relay signals between supervising stations, subsidiary stations, and protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.263 Reset. A control function that attempts to return a system or device to its normal, nonalarm state. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.264 Residential Board and Care Occupancy. An occupancy used for lodging and boarding of four or more residents, not related by blood or marriage to the owners or operators, for the purpose of providing personal care services. [***101*,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.265 Residential Occupancy. An occupancy that provides sleeping accommodations for purposes other than health care or detention and correctional. [***101*,** 2024] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.266* Response. Actions performed upon the receipt of a signal. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.266.1* *Alarm Response.* The response to the receipt of an alarm signal. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.266.2* *Pre-Alarm Response.* The response to the receipt of a pre-alarm signal. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.266.3* *Supervisory Response.* The response to the receipt of a supervisory signal. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.266.4* *Trouble Response.* The response to the receipt of a trouble signal. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.267 Response Time Index (RTI). A numerical value that represents the thermal response sensitivity of the sensing element in a heat detector, sprinkler, or other heat-sensing fire detection device to the fire environment in terms of gas temperature and velocity versus time. (*See B.3.3.3.7.)* (SIG-IDS)

3.3.268 Restorable Initiating Device. See 3.3.152, Initiating Device.

3.3.269 Risk Analysis. A process to characterize the likelihood, vulnerability, and magnitude of incidents associated with natural, technological, and manmade hazards and other emergencies that addresses scenarios of concern, their probability, and their potential consequences. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.270 Runner. A person other than the required number of operators on duty at central, supervising, or runner stations (or otherwise in contact with these stations) available for prompt

dispatching, when necessary, to the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.271 Runner Service. The service provided by a runner at the protected premises, including restoration, resetting, and silencing of all equipment transmitting fire alarm or supervisory or trouble signals to an off-premises location. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.272 Secondary Trunk Facility. That part of a transmission channel connecting two or more, but fewer than all, leg facilities to a primary trunk facility. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.273 Selective Talk Mode. See 3.3.318, Talk Mode.

3.3.274 Service Personnel. See 3.3.213, Personnel.

3.3.275 Shapes of Ceilings. The shapes of ceilings can be classified as sloping or smooth. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.276* Shop Drawings. Documents that provide information pertaining to the system necessary for installation of a fire alarm and/or signaling system. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277* Signal. An indication of a condition communicated by electrical, visible, visual, audible, wireless, or other means. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277.1* ***Alarm Signal.*** A signal that results from the manual or automatic detection of an alarm condition. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277.2 ***Carbon Monoxide Alarm Signal.*** A signal indicating a concentration of carbon monoxide at or above the alarm threshold that could pose a risk to the life safety of the occupants and that requires immediate action. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277.3 ***Delinquency Signal.*** A signal indicating a supervisory condition and the need for action in connection with the supervision of guards or system attendants. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.277.4 ***Evacuation Signal.*** A distinctive alarm signal intended to be recognized by the occupants as requiring evacuation of the building. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.277.5* ***Fire Alarm Signal.*** A signal that results from the manual or automatic detection of a fire alarm condition. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277.6* ***Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal.*** A signal generated when a guard on patrol has actuated a guard's tour reporting station. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.277.7* ***Pre-Alarm Signal.*** A signal that results from the detection of a pre-alarm condition. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277.8 ***Restoration Signal.*** A signal that results from the return to normal condition of an initiating device, system element, or system. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277.9* ***Supervisory Signal.*** A signal that results from the detection of a supervisory condition. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.277.10* ***Trouble Signal.*** A signal that results from the detection of a trouble condition. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.278 Signal Transmission Sequence. A DACT that obtains dial tone, dials the number(s) of the DACR, obtains verification that the DACR is ready to receive signals, transmits the signals, and receives acknowledgment that the DACR has accepted that signal before disconnecting (going on-hook). (SIG-SSS)

3.3.279 Signaling Line Circuit. A circuit path between any combination of addressable appliances or devices, circuit interfaces, control units, or transmitters over which multiple system input signals or output signals or both are carried. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.280 Signaling Line Circuit Interface. See 3.3.157, Interface.

3.3.281 Signaling System. A system consisting of one or more of the following: carbon monoxide detection equipment and system, supervising station alarm system, public emergency alarm reporting system, or emergency communications system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.282 Signaling Zone. See 3.3.346, Zone.

3.3.283 Single-Station Alarm. A detector comprising an assembly that incorporates a sensor, control components, and an alarm notification appliance in one unit operated from a power source either located in the unit or obtained at the point of installation. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.284 Site-Specific Software. See 3.3.293, Software.

3.3.285* Sleeping Area. The area of a dwelling unit where the bedrooms or sleeping rooms are located. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.286 Sloping Ceiling. See 3.3.42, Ceiling.

3.3.287 Sloping Peaked-Type Ceiling. See 3.3.42, Ceiling.

3.3.288 Sloping Shed-Type Ceiling. See 3.3.42, Ceiling.

3.3.289 Smoke Alarm. A single or multiple-station alarm responsive to smoke. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.290 Smoke Detection.

3.3.290.1 ***Cloud Chamber Smoke Detection.*** The principle of using an air sample drawn from the protected area into a high-humidity chamber combined with a lowering of chamber pressure to create an environment in which the resultant moisture in the air condenses on any smoke particles present, forming a cloud. The cloud density is measured by a photoelectric principle. The density signal is processed and used to convey an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.290.2* ***Ionization Smoke Detection.*** The principle of using a small amount of radioactive material to ionize the air between two differentially charged electrodes to sense the presence of smoke particles. The presence of smoke particles decreases the conductance of the air by reducing ion mobility, which will produce an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.290.3* ***Photoelectric Light Obscuration Smoke Detection.*** The principle of using a light source and a photosensitive sensor onto which the principal portion of the source emissions is focused. When smoke particles enter the light path, some of the light is scattered and some is absorbed, thereby reducing the light reaching the receiving sensor. The light reduction signal is processed and used to convey an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.290.4* ***Photoelectric Light-Scattering Smoke Detection.*** The principle of using a light source and a photosensitive sensor arranged so that the rays from the light source do not normally fall onto the photosensitive sensor. When smoke particles enter the light path, some of the light is scattered by reflection and refraction onto the sensor. The light signal

is processed and used to convey an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.290.5* *Video Image Smoke Detection (VISD).* The principle of using automatic analysis of real-time video images to detect the presence of smoke. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.291 Smoke Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.292 Smooth Ceiling. See 3.3.44, Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.293 Software. Programs, instruments, procedures, data, and the like that are executed by a central processing unit of a product and that influences the functional performance of that product. For the purpose of this Code, software is one of three types: executive software, site-specific software, and cybersecurity-related only software. (SIG-TMS)

Δ **3.3.293.1* *Executive Software.*** Control and supervisory program that manages the execution of all other programs and directly or indirectly causes the required functions of the product to be performed. (SIG-TMS)

Δ **3.3.293.2* *Site-Specific Software.*** Program that is separate from, but controlled by, the executive software that allows inputs, outputs, and system configuration to be selectively defined to meet the needs of a specific installation. (SIG-TMS)

N **3.3.293.3 *Cybersecurity Software.*** Software that is included in a system element and arranged such that its inclusion or exclusion in no way affects the executive or site-specific software execution and whose purpose is to reduce the vulnerability of the system and/or equipment to cybersecurity attacks. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.294 Solid Joist Construction. See 3.3.44, Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.295 Spacing. A horizontally measured dimension used as a criterion in determining the allowable coverage of devices. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.296* Spark. A moving particle of solid material that emits radiant energy due to either its temperature or the process of combustion on its surface. [**654,** 2020] (SIG-IDS)

3.3.297 Spark/Ember Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.298 Spark/Ember Detector Sensitivity. The number of watts (or the fraction of a watt) of radiant power from a point source radiator, applied as a unit step signal at the wavelength of maximum detector sensitivity, necessary to produce an alarm signal from the detector within the specified response time. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.299 Spot-Type Detector. See 3.3.79, Detector.

3.3.300 Stakeholder. Any individual, group, or organization that might affect, be affected by, or perceive itself to be affected by the risk. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.301 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems (SEPSS). Equipment that receives electrical energy and then provides a means to store that energy in some form for later use in order to supply electrical energy when needed. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.302 Stratification. The phenomenon where the upward movement of smoke and gases ceases due to the loss of buoyancy. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.303 Subscriber. The recipient of a contractual supervising station signal service(s). In case of multiple, noncontiguous properties having single ownership, the term refers to each protected premises or its local management. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.304 Subsidiary Station. A subsidiary station is a normally unattended location that is remote from the supervising station and is linked by a communications channel(s) to the supervising station. Interconnection of signals on one or more transmission channels from protected premises with a communications channel(s) to the supervising station is performed at this location. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.305 Supervised Notification Appliance Control Circuit. An output circuit that is monitored for integrity and used exclusively to activate control equipment for notification appliance circuits. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.306 Supervising Station. A facility that receives signals from alarm systems and at which personnel are in attendance at all times to respond to these signals. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.306.1 *Central Supervising Station.* A supervising station that is listed for central station service and that also commonly provides less stringent supervising station services such as remote supervising services. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.306.2 *Proprietary Supervising Station.* A supervising station under the same ownership as the protected premises fire alarm system(s) that it supervises (monitors) and to which alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals are received and where personnel are in attendance at all times to supervise operation and investigate signals. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.306.3 *Remote Supervising Station.* A supervising station to which alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals or any combination of those signals emanating from protected premises fire alarm systems are received and where personnel are in attendance at all times to respond. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.307 Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

3.3.307.1 *Central Station Service Alarm System.* A system or group of systems in which the operations of circuits and devices are transmitted automatically to, recorded in, maintained by, and supervised from a listed central station that has competent and experienced servers and operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Such service is to be controlled and operated by a person, firm, or corporation whose business is the furnishing, maintaining, or monitoring of supervised alarm systems. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.307.2 *Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System.* An installation of an alarm system that serves contiguous and noncontiguous properties, under one ownership, from a proprietary supervising station located at the protected premises, or at one of multiple noncontiguous protected premises, at which trained, competent personnel are in constant attendance. This includes the protected premises fire alarm system(s); proprietary supervising station; power supplies; signal-initiating devices; initiating device circuits; signal notification appliances; equipment for the automatic, permanent visual recording of signals; and equipment for initiating the operation of emergency building control services. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.307.3 *Remote Supervising Station Alarm System.* A protected premises fire alarm system (exclusive of any connected

to a public emergency reporting system) in which alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals are transmitted automatically to, recorded in, and supervised from a remote supervising station that has competent and experienced servers and operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.308 Supervising Station Service.

3.3.308.1 ***Central Station Service.*** The use of a system or a group of systems including the protected premises fire alarm system(s) in which the operations of circuits and devices are signaled to, recorded in, and supervised from a listed central station that has competent and experienced operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Related activities at the protected premises, such as equipment installation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and runner service, are the responsibility of the central station or a listed alarm service local company. Central station service is controlled and operated by a person, firm, or corporation whose business is the furnishing of such contracted services or whose properties are the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.308.2 ***Proprietary Supervising Station Service.*** The use of a system or a group of systems including the protected premises fire alarm system(s) in which the operations of circuits and devices are signaled to, recorded in, and supervised from a supervising station under the same ownership as the protected premises that has competent and experienced operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Related activities at the protected premises, such as equipment installation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and runner service, are the responsibility of the owner. Proprietary supervising station service is controlled and operated by the entity whose properties are the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.308.3 ***Remote Supervising Station Service.*** The use of a system including the protected premises fire alarm system(s) in which the operations of circuits and devices are signaled to, recorded in, and supervised from a supervising station that has competent and experienced operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Related activities at the protected premises, such as equipment installation, inspection, testing, and maintenance, are the responsibility of the owner. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.309 Supervisory Service. The service required to monitor performance of guard tours and the operative condition of fixed suppression systems or other systems for the protection of life and property. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.310 Supervisory Signal. See 3.3.277, Signal.

3.3.311 Supervisory Signal Initiating Device. See 3.3.152, Initiating Device.

3.3.312 Supplementary. As used in this Code, *supplementary* refers to equipment or operations not required by this Code and designated as such by the authority having jurisdiction. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.313 Surge Protective Device (SPD). A protective device for limiting transient voltages by diverting or limiting surge current. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.314 Switched Telephone Network.

Δ **3.3.314.1** ***Loop Start Telephone Circuit.*** A loop start telephone circuit is an analog telephone circuit that supports loop start signaling as specified in either GR-506-CORE, *Signaling for Analog Interface,* or GR-909-CORE, *Generic Criteria for Fiber in the Loop Systems.* (SIG-SSS)

3.3.314.2 ***Public Switched Telephone Network.*** An assembly of communications equipment and telephone service providers that utilize managed facilities-based voice networks (MFVN) to provide the general public with the ability to establish communications channels via discrete dialing codes. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.315 System Operator. An individual trained to operate and/or initiate a mass notification system. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.316 System Unit. The active subassemblies at the supervising station used for signal receiving, processing, display, or recording of status change signals; a failure of one of these subassemblies causes the loss of a number of alarm signals by that unit. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.317 Tactile Notification Appliance. See 3.3.194, Notification Appliance.

3.3.318 Talk Mode. A means of communications within a building normally dedicated to emergency functions. Commonly referred to as firefighters' phones, but can also be used for communications with firefighters and/or fire wardens, including occupants, during an emergency, such as between a fire command center and a designated location, such as a stair, stairwell, or location of emergency equipment. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.318.1 ***Common Talk Mode.*** The ability to conference multiple telephones in a single conversation. This is similar to what was referred to as a party line. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.318.2 ***Selective Talk Mode.*** The ability for personnel at the fire command center to receive indication of incoming calls and choose which call to answer. This includes the ability to transfer between incoming calls and conference multiple phone locations. Selective calling can include the ability to initiate calls to emergency phone locations. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.319 Testing Personnel. See 3.3.213, Personnel.

3.3.320 Textual Audible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.194, Notification Appliance.

3.3.321 Textual Visual Notification Appliance. See 3.3.194, Notification Appliance.

3.3.322 Transmission Channel. See 3.3.52, Channel.

3.3.323 Transmitter. A system component that provides an interface between signaling line circuits, initiating device circuits, or control units and the transmission channel. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.324 Transponder. A multiplex alarm transmission system functional assembly located at the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.325 Trouble Signal. See 3.3.277, Signal.

3.3.326 Two-Way Emergency Communications System. See 3.3.99, Emergency Communications System (ECS).

3.3.327 Type A Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. See 3.3.234, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.328 Type B Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. See 3.3.234, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

N **3.3.329* Unconditioned Area.** An enclosed area, room, or space without climate or HVAC controls. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.330 Unintentional Alarm. See 3.3.332.3, Unintentional Alarm.

3.3.331 Unknown Alarm. See 3.3.332.4, Unknown Alarm.

3.3.332* Unwanted Alarm. Any alarm that occurs that is not the result of a potentially hazardous condition. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.332.1 ***Malicious Alarm.*** An unwanted activation of an alarm initiating device caused by a person acting with malice. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.332.2* ***Nuisance Alarm.*** An unwanted activation of a signaling system or an alarm initiating device in response to a stimulus or condition that is not the result of a potentially hazardous condition. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.332.3 ***Unintentional Alarm.*** An unwanted activation of an alarm initiating device caused by a person acting without malice. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.332.4 ***Unknown Alarm.*** An unwanted activation of an alarm initiating device or system output function where the cause has not been identified. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.333 Uplink. The radio signal from the portable public safety subscriber transmitter to the base station receiver. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.334* Video Image Flame Detection (VIFD). The principle of using automatic analysis of real-time video images to detect the presence of flame. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.335 Video Image Smoke Detection (VISD). See 3.3.290, Smoke Detection.

3.3.336 Visual Notification Appliance. See 3.3.194, Notification Appliance.

3.3.337 Voice Message Priority. A scheme for prioritizing mass notification messages. (SIG-ECS)

N **3.3.338 Waterflow Alarm Device.** An attachment to the sprinkler system that detects a predetermined water flow and is connected to a fire alarm system to initiate an alarm condition or is used to mechanically or electrically initiate a fire pump or local audible or visual alarm. [**13,** 2025] (SIG-IDS)

3.3.339 WATS (Wide Area Telephone Service). Telephone company service allowing reduced costs for certain telephone call arrangements. In-WATS or 800-number service calls can be placed from anywhere in the continental United States to the called party at no cost to the calling party. Out-WATS is a service whereby, for a flat-rate charge, dependent on the total duration of all such calls, a subscriber can make an unlimited number of calls within a prescribed area from a particular telephone terminal without the registration of individual call charges. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.340 Wide-Area Mass Notification System. See 3.3.99, Emergency Communications System (ECS).

3.3.341 Wide-Area Signaling. Signaling intended to provide alerting or information to exterior open spaces, such as campuses, neighborhood streets, a city, a town, or a community. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.342 Wireless Control Unit. See 3.3.71, Control Unit.

3.3.343* Wireless Mesh Network (WMN) (as used in Chapter 26). A decentralized communications network made up of radio nodes organized in a mesh topology that does not rely on a pre-existing infrastructure. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.344 Wireless Protection System. A system or a part of a system that can transmit and receive signals without the aid of interconnection wiring. It can consist of either a wireless control unit or a wireless repeater. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.345 Wireless Repeater. A component used to relay signals among wireless devices, appliances, and control units. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.346 Zone. A defined area within the protected premises. A zone can define an area from which a signal can be received, an area to which a signal can be sent, or an area in which a form of control can be executed. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.346.1 ***Notification Zone.*** A discrete area of a building, or defined area outside a building, in which people are intended to receive common notification. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.346.2* ***Signaling Zone.*** An area consisting of one or more notification zones where identical signals are activated simultaneously. (SIG-ECS)

Chapter 4 Reserved

Chapter 5 Reserved

Chapter 6 Reserved

Chapter 7 Documentation

7.1 Application.

7.1.1 The documentation of the design, acceptance, and completion of new systems required under this Code shall comply with the minimum requirements of this chapter.

7.1.2 The documentation of the alteration, maintenance, and testing of existing systems shall comply with the minimum requirements of this chapter.

7.1.3* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code, the requirements of this chapter, or portions thereof, shall apply.

7.1.4 Unless noted in Chapter 29 or required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, the documentation requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29.

7.1.5 This chapter outlines documentation requirements but does not prohibit additional documentation from being provided.

7.1.6 The requirements of Chapters 10, 11, 12, 14, 17, 18, 21, 23, 24, 26, and 27 shall apply unless otherwise noted in this chapter.

7.2* Minimum Required Documentation.

7.2.1* Where documentation is required by the authority having jurisdiction, the following list shall represent the minimum documentation required for new systems and additions or alterations to existing systems:

(1)* Written narrative providing intent and system description
(2) Riser diagram
(3) Floor plan layout showing locations of all devices, control equipment, and supervising station and shared communications equipment with each sheet showing the following:
  (a) Point of compass (north arrow)
  (b) A graphic representation of the scale used
  (c) Room use identification
  (d) Building features that will affect the placement of initiating devices and notification appliances
(4) Sequence of operation in either an input/output matrix or narrative form
(5) Equipment technical data sheets
(6) Manufacturers' published instructions, including operation and maintenance instructions
(7) Battery capacity and safety margin calculations (where batteries are provided)
(8) Voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits
(9) Mounting height elevation for wall-mounted devices and appliances
(10) Where occupant notification is required, minimum sound pressure levels that must be produced by the audible notification appliances in applicable covered areas
(11) Locations of alarm notification appliances, including candela ratings for visual alarm notification appliances
(12)* Pathway diagrams between the control unit and shared communications equipment within the protected premises
(13) Completed record of completion in accordance with 7.5.6
(14) For software-based systems, a copy of site-specific software, including specific instructions on how to obtain the means of system and software access (password)
(15) Record (as-built) drawings
(16) Records, record retention, and record maintenance in accordance with Section 7.7
(17) Completed record of inspection and testing in accordance with 7.6.6

7.2.2 System design documents shall identify the name and contact information of the system designer.

7.2.3 All fire alarm drawings shall use symbols described in NFPA 170 or other symbols acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

7.3 Design (Layout) Documentation.

7.3.1* The requirements of Section 7.3 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings.

7.3.2* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code, design (layout) documents shall be prepared prior to installing new systems and additions or alterations to existing systems.

7.3.3* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code, preliminary plans shall be created.

7.3.3.1 When a design professional is preparing design documents for a new fire alarm or emergency communications system, or modifying an existing system covered by this Code, preliminary bid documents shall be prepared in accordance with Section 7.3.

7.3.3.2 The design professional shall be qualified to prepare fire alarm design documents in accordance with 10.5.1.

7.3.3.3 Design documents shall incorporate performance criteria to ensure that the system will provide a beneficial component to the fire and life safety needs of the owner, occupants, and authority having jurisdiction.

7.3.3.4 Design documents shall clearly communicate the intended performance and functionality expected by all installing contractors.

7.3.3.5 For spaces designated as acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) in accordance with 18.4.12, the design professional shall coordinate with other design disciplines so that intelligibility of messages can be achieved utilizing the emergency communications equipment as specified in the design documents and available to contractors/installers.

7.3.3.6 Design documents shall indicate the pathway class designations in accordance with Section 12.3.

7.3.3.7 Design documents shall indicate the pathway survivability level designations in accordance with Section 12.4.

7.3.4 Notification.

7.3.4.1* The requirements of 7.3.4 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code.

7.3.4.2 Design documents shall include ambient sound pressure levels and audible design sound pressure levels in accordance with 18.4.1.5.4.

7.3.4.3 Analysis and design documentation for narrow band tone signaling shall be in accordance with 18.4.7.4.

7.3.4.4 The documentation of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) shall be in accordance with 18.4.12.

7.3.4.5 Design documents shall specify the rooms and spaces that will have visual notification and those where visual notification will not be provided in accordance with 18.5.2.1.

7.3.4.6 Performance-based design alternatives for visual notification appliance design shall be in accordance with 18.5.5.9.2.

N **7.3.4.7** Design documentation for restricted audible mode operation (RAMO) notification, including the definition of the protected space, sound pressure levels, and staff requirements, shall comply with 18.4.8.

7.3.5 Detection.

7.3.5.1 Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors. Heat detection design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.6.

7.3.5.2 Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors. Smoke detection design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.7.

7.3.5.3 Radiant Energy-Sensing Fire Detectors. Radiant energy detection design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.8.

7.3.5.4 Gas Detectors. Gas detection design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.10.

7.3.5.5 Carbon Monoxide Detectors. Carbon monoxide detector design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.14.

7.3.6* Risk Analysis Documentation.

7.3.6.1 When a risk analysis is required to be prepared, findings and considerations of the risk analysis shall be documented.

7.3.6.2 When determined by the stakeholders, security and protection of the risk analysis documentation shall be in accordance with 7.3.7 and Section 7.7.

7.3.6.3 The risk analysis documentation shall list the various scenarios evaluated and the anticipated outcomes.

7.3.6.4 Risk analyses for mass notification systems shall be documented in accordance with 7.3.6 and 24.3.12.

7.3.7* Performance-Based Design Documentation.

7.3.7.1 Performance-based design documentation for fire detection shall be in accordance with Section 17.3.

7.3.7.2 Performance-based design documentation for visual notification appliances shall be in accordance with 18.5.5.9.2.

7.3.7.3 A copy of approval documentation resulting from performance-based designs shall be included with the completion documentation in accordance with Section 7.5.

7.3.7.4 Performance-based design documentation for mass notification systems shall be in accordance with Section 24.12.

7.3.7.5 Performance-based design documentation for signaling line circuit zoning shall be in accordance with 23.6.1.4 and 23.6.1.5.

7.3.8 Emergency Response Plan Documentation.

7.3.8.1 When an emergency response plan is required to be prepared, such as for a mass notification system, findings of the plan shall be documented.

7.3.8.2 When identified by the stakeholders, security and protection of the emergency response plan documentation shall be in accordance with 7.7.3.

7.3.8.3 The emergency response plan shall document the various scenarios evaluated and the anticipated outcomes.

7.3.9 Evaluation Documentation.

7.3.9.1* Evaluation documentation shall include a signed statement(s) by the person responsible for the design attesting to the evaluation and the resultant technical decision and deeming it reliable and acceptable for the particular application.

7.3.9.2 A copy of the evaluation documentation shall be retained for the life of the system and be maintained with the documents required by 7.7.1.7.

7.4 Shop Drawings (Installation Documentation).

7.4.1* The requirements of Section 7.4 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings.

7.4.2* Shop drawings shall be drawn to an indicated scale, on sheets of uniform size, with a plan of each floor.

7.4.3 Shop drawings for fire alarm or emergency communications systems shall provide both of the following:

(1) Basic information
(2) The basis for the record (as-built) drawings required in accordance with 7.5.5

7.4.4 Shop drawings shall include the following information:

(1) Name of protected premises, owner, and occupant (where applicable)
(2) Name of installer or contractor
(3) Location of protected premises
(4) Device legend and symbols in accordance with NFPA 170, or other symbols acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(5) Date of issue and any revision dates

7.4.5 Floor plan drawings shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be drawn to an indicated scale
(2) Include the following information, where applicable for the particular system:
    (a) Floor or level identification
    (b) Point of compass (indication of north)
    (c) Graphic scale
    (d) All walls and doors
    (e) All partitions extending to within 15 percent of the ceiling height (where applicable and when known)
    (f) Room and area descriptions
    (g) System devices/component locations
    (h) Locations of the system's primary power disconnecting means
    (i) Locations of monitor/control interfaces to other systems
    (j) System riser locations

(k) Type and number of system components/devices on each circuit, on each floor or level
(l) Type and quantity of conductors and conduit (if used) for each circuit
(m) Identification of any ceiling over 10 ft (3.0 m) in height where automatic fire detection is being proposed
(n) Details of ceiling geometries, including beams and solid joists, where automatic fire detection is being proposed
(o) Where known, acoustic properties of spaces
(p) Pathway class designations in accordance with Section 12.3, including the location of any end-of-line supervisory or power devices that are required by the pathway class
(q) Pathway survivability level designations in accordance with Section 12.4

7.4.6 System riser diagrams shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be coordinated with the floor plans
(2) Include the following information, where applicable for the particular system:
(a) General arrangement of the system in building cross-section
(b) Number of risers
(c) Type and number of circuits in each riser
(d) Type and number of system components/devices on each circuit, on each floor or level
(e) Number of conductors for each circuit
(f) Pathway class designation in accordance with Section 12.3, including the location of any end-of-line supervisory or power devices that are required by the pathway class
(g)* Pathway survivability level designations in accordance with Section 12.4

Δ 7.4.7 Control Unit Diagrams.

N **7.4.7.1** Control unit diagrams shall be provided for all control equipment (i.e., equipment listed as either a control unit or control unit accessory), power supplies, battery chargers, and annunciators.

N **7.4.7.2** Control unit diagrams shall include the following information:

(1) Identification of the control equipment depicted
(2) Location(s) of control equipment
(3) All field wiring terminals and terminal identifications
(4) All circuits connected to field wiring terminals and circuit identifications
(5) All indicators and manual controls
(6) Field connections to supervising station signaling equipment, releasing equipment, or emergency safety control interfaces, where provided

7.4.8 Typical wiring diagrams shall be provided for all initiating devices, notification appliances, remote indicators, annunciators, remote test stations, and end-of-line and power supervisory devices.

7.4.9* A narrative description or input/output matrix of operation shall be provided to describe the sequence of operation.

7.4.10 System calculations shall be included as follows:

(1) Battery calculations
(2) Notification appliance circuit voltage drop calculations
(3) Other required calculations, such as line resistance calculations, where required

7.5 Completion Documentation.

7.5.1* The requirements of Section 7.5 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings.

7.5.2 Before requesting final approval of the installation, if required by the authority having jurisdiction, the installing contractor shall furnish a written statement stating that the system has been installed in accordance with approved plans and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and the appropriate NFPA requirements.

7.5.3 Delivery.

7.5.3.1 All systems, including new systems and additions or alterations to existing systems, shall include the following documentation:

(1)* An owner's manual and manufacturer's published instructions covering all system equipment
(2) Record (as-built) drawings in accordance with 7.5.5
(3) A completed record of completion form in accordance with 7.5.6
(4) For software-based systems, record copy of the site-specific software in accordance with 7.5.7

7.5.3.2 The documentation as stated in 7.5.3.1 shall be delivered to the owner or the owner's representative upon final acceptance of the system.

7.5.4 For new emergency communications systems, an owner's manual containing the following documentation shall be provided:

(1) Detailed narrative description of the system inputs, evacuation signaling, ancillary functions, annunciation, intended sequence of operations, expansion capability, application considerations, and limitations
(2) Written sequence of operation for the system including an operational input/output matrix
(3) Operator instructions for basic system operations, including alarm acknowledgment, system reset, interpretation of system output (LEDs, CRT display, and printout), operation of manual evacuation signaling and ancillary function controls, and change of printer paper
(4) Detailed description of routine maintenance and testing as required and recommended and as would be provided under a maintenance contract, including testing and maintenance instructions for each type of device installed, which includes the following:
(a) Listing of the individual system components that require periodic testing and maintenance
(b) Step-by-step instructions detailing the requisite testing and maintenance procedures, and the intervals at which those procedures are to be performed, for each type of device installed
(c) Schedule that correlates the testing and maintenance procedures that are required by this section
(5) Service directory, including a list of names and telephone numbers of those who provide service for the system
(6) Product data sheets for all system equipment

7.5.5 Record Drawings (As-Builts).

7.5.5.1 Record drawings shall consist of current updated shop drawings reflecting the actual installation of all system equipment, components, and wiring.

7.5.5.2* A sequence of operations in input/output matrix or narrative form shall be provided with the record drawings to reflect actual programming at the time of completion.

7.5.5.3 Where necessary, revised calculations in accordance with 7.4.10 shall be provided depicting any changes due to installation conditions.

7.5.5.4 Record drawings shall be turned over to the owner with a copy placed inside the documentation cabinet in accordance with Section 7.7.

7.5.5.5* Record drawings shall include approval documentation resulting from variances, performance-based designs, risk analyses, and other system evaluations or variations.

7.5.6 Record of Completion.

7.5.6.1* The record of completion shall be documented in accordance with 7.5.6 using either the record of completion forms, Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(f), or an alternative document that contains only the elements of Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(f) applicable to the installed system.

Δ **7.5.6.2* Record of Completion Documentation.**

N **7.5.6.2.1** The record of completion documentation shall be completed by the installing contractor and submitted to the authority having jurisdiction and the owner at the conclusion of the job.

N **7.5.6.2.2** The record of completion documentation shall be permitted to be part of the written statement required in 7.5.2 and part of the documents that support the requirements of 7.5.8.

N **7.5.6.2.3** When more than one contractor has been responsible for the installation, each contractor shall complete the portions of the documentation for which that contractor has responsibility.

7.5.6.3* The preparation of the record of completion documentation shall be the responsibility of the qualified and experienced person in accordance with 10.5.2.

7.5.6.4 The record of completion documentation shall be updated in accordance with 7.5.6.6 to reflect all system additions or modifications.

7.5.6.5 The updated copy of the record of completion documents shall be maintained in a documentation cabinet in accordance with 7.7.2.

7.5.6.6 Revisions.

Δ **7.5.6.6.1** All modifications made after the initial installation shall be recorded on a revised version of the original completion documents.

N **7.5.6.6.2** The revised version of the original documents shall serve as a supplement to the original, unaltered completion documents.

7.5.6.6.3 The revised record of completion document shall include a revision date.

7.5.6.6.4* Where the original or the latest overall system record of completion cannot be obtained, a new system record of completion shall be provided that documents the system configuration as discovered during the current project's scope of work.

7.5.6.7 Electronic Record of Completion.

7.5.6.7.1 Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the record of completion shall be permitted to be filed electronically instead of on paper.

7.5.6.7.2 If filed electronically, the record of completion document shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be accessible with standard software
(2) Be backed up

7.5.7 Site-Specific Software.

7.5.7.1 For software-based systems, a copy of the site-specific software shall be provided to the system owner or owner's designated representative.

7.5.7.1.1 For all software that connects to and is part of the building life safety network components, the software security access or the means of obtaining the software security access shall be provided to the owner or the owner's designated representative.

7.5.7.1.2 The site-specific software documentation shall include both the user passcode and either the system programming password or specific instructions on how to obtain the programming password from the system manufacturer.

7.5.7.1.3 The passwords provided shall enable currently certified qualified programming personnel to access, edit, modify, and add to the existing system's site-specific software.

7.5.7.2 A copy of the site-specific software shall be stored onsite in nonvolatile memory.

7.5.8* Verification of Compliant Installation.

7.5.8.1 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, compliance of the completed installation with the requirements of this Code shall be certified by a qualified and impartial third-party organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

7.5.8.2 Verification of compliant installation shall be performed according to testing requirements and procedures specified in 14.4.1 and 14.4.2.

Δ **7.5.8.3** Verification shall ensure the following:

(1) All components and functions are installed and operate per the approved plans and sequence of operation.
(2) All required system documentation is complete and is archived on site.
(3) Written confirmation has been provided that any required corrective actions have been completed.

N **7.5.8.4** Verification for new supervising station systems shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Ascertain proper arrangement, transmission, and receipt of all signals required to be transmitted off-premises
(2) Installation to meet requirements of 14.4.1 and 14.4.2

N **7.5.8.5** Verification for existing supervising station systems that are extended, modified, or reconfigured shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Ascertain proper arrangement, transmission, and receipt of all signals required to be transmitted off-premises
(2) Complete reacceptance testing in accordance with Chapter 14

7.5.9 Documentation of central station service shall be in accordance with 26.3.4.

7.5.10 Documentation of remote station service shall be in accordance with 26.5.2.

7.6 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Documentation.

7.6.1 Test plan documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.2.10.

7.6.2 Acceptance testing documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.6.1.

7.6.3 Reacceptance test documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.6.1.

7.6.4 Periodic inspection and testing documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.6.2 through 14.6.4.

7.6.5 Impairment documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 10.21.

7.6.6 Record of Inspection and Testing. The record of all inspections, testing, and maintenance as required by 14.6.2.5 shall be documented using either the record of inspection and testing forms, Figure 7.8.2(g) through Figure 7.8.2(l), or an alternative record that includes all the applicable information shown in Figure 7.8.2(g) through Figure 7.8.2(l).

N **7.6.7 Network Connectable Equipment Maintenance Plan.**

N **7.6.7.1 Electronic Access Credentials.**

N **7.6.7.1.1*** Maintenance plans for network connectable equipment shall identify all accounts, personnel, and organizations with electronic access credentials that could be used by a cybersecurity threat actor.

N **7.6.7.1.2** Personnel or organizations with electronic access credentials shall be reviewed annually to maintain least privilege access or to eliminate access where it is no longer required.

N **7.6.7.2 Access Logs.**

N **7.6.7.2.1*** The owner shall maintain access logs for network connectable equipment that supports remote access.

N **7.6.7.2.2** The owner shall review access logs at least annually and compare them to the access credentials used in the maintenance records to ensure previous access has been approved.

7.7 Records, Record Retention, and Record Maintenance.

7.7.1 Records.

7.7.1.1 A complete record of the tests and operations of each system shall be kept until the next test and for 1 year thereafter unless more stringent requirements are required elsewhere in this Code.

Δ **7.7.1.2*** The records shall be available for examination and, if required, reported to the authority having jurisdiction.

N **7.7.1.3** Archiving of records by any means shall be permitted if hard copies of the records can be provided promptly when requested.

7.7.1.4 If off-premises monitoring is provided, records of all signals, tests, and operations recorded at the supervising station, including the public emergency alarm reporting system, shall be maintained by the off-premise monitoring service provider for not less than 1 year unless more stringent requirements are required elsewhere in this Code.

7.7.1.5 Required documents regarding system design and function shall be maintained for the life of the system.

7.7.1.6 The emergency communications system and fire alarm system as-built plans and other related documentation shall be permitted to be maintained together, including the appearance of both systems on the same drawings.

7.7.1.7 Revisions and alterations to systems shall be recorded and records maintained with the original system design documents.

7.7.2* Document Accessibility.

7.7.2.1 With every new system, a documentation cabinet shall be installed at the system control unit or at another approved location at the protected premises.

7.7.2.2 The documentation cabinet shall be sized so that it can contain all necessary documentation.

Δ **7.7.2.3** All record documentation shall be stored in a dedicated documentation cabinet.

N **7.7.2.4** Record documentation shall not be stored in any control unit enclosure.

7.7.2.5 Where the documentation cabinet is not in the same location as the system control unit, its location shall be identified at the system control unit.

7.7.2.6 The documentation cabinet shall be prominently labeled SYSTEM RECORD DOCUMENTS.

7.7.2.7* The building owner or the building owner's representative shall, on an annual basis, review any electronic documentation media formats and associated interfacing hardware for compatibility and update, if necessary.

7.7.2.8 The contents of the cabinet shall be accessible by authorized personnel only.

7.7.2.9 Emergency communications system and fire alarm system record documentation shall be permitted to be maintained together in the same documentation cabinet.

7.7.3 Document Security.

7.7.3.1 Security for system's documentation shall be determined by the stakeholders.

7.7.3.2* Where such documents cannot be protected from public access, it shall be permitted to remove sensitive information from record documents provided the owner retains complete documentation that will be made accessible to the authority having jurisdiction at an owner designated location.

7.8 Forms.

7.8.1 General.

7.8.1.1* The requirements of Section 7.8 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings.

7.8.1.2 Where specific forms are required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings, form layouts and content that differ from those in Section 7.8 shall be permitted provided that the minimum required content is included.

7.8.2 Forms for Documentation. Forms for documentation shall be as follows:

(1)* Unless otherwise permitted or required in 7.5.6 or 7.8.1.2, Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(f) shall be used to document the record of completion and inspection.

(2)* Unless otherwise permitted or required in 7.6.6 or 7.8.1.2, Figure 7.8.2(g) through Figure 7.8.2(l) shall be used to document the record of inspection and testing.

(3) Where a form is required by the AHJ to document the installation and inspection of a household fire alarm system or single- or multiple-station alarms, Figure 7.8.2(m) shall be permitted to be used to document the record of completion and inspection.

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.
Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.

Form Completion Date: _____ Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____
Address: _____
Description of property: _____
Name of property representative: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____

2. INSTALLATION, SERVICE, TESTING, AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Installation contractor: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____
Service organization: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____
Testing organization: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____
Effective date for test and inspection contract: _____
Monitoring organization: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____
Account number: _____ Phone line 1: _____ Phone line 2: _____
Means of transmission: _____
Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: _____ Phone: _____

3. DOCUMENTATION

On-site location of the required record documents and site-specific software: _____

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

This is a: ☐ New system ☐ Modification to existing system Permit number: _____
NFPA 72 edition: _____

4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: _____ Model number: _____

4.2 Software and Firmware

Firmware revision number: _____

4.3 Alarm Verification

☐ This system does not incorporate alarm verification.
Number of devices subject to alarm verification: _____ Alarm verification set for _____ seconds

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(a) System Record of Completion.

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

5. SYSTEM POWER

5.1 Control Unit

5.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: _____ Control panel amps: _____

Overcurrent protection: Type: _____ Amps: _____

Branch circuit disconnecting means location: _____ Number: _____

5.1.2 Secondary Power

Type of secondary power: _____

Location, if remote from the plant: _____

Calculated capacity of secondary power to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

5.2 Control Unit

❑ This system does not have power extender panels

❑ Power extender panels are listed on supplementary sheet A

6. CIRCUITS AND PATHWAYS

Pathway Type	Dual Pathway	Separate Pathway	Class	Survivability Level
Signaling Line				
Device Power				
Initiating Device				
Notification Appliance				
Other (specify):				

7. REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS

Type	Location

8. INITIATING DEVICES

Type	Quantity	Addressable or Conventional	Alarm or Supervisory	Sensing Technology
Manual Pull Stations				
Smoke Detectors				
Duct Smoke Detectors				
Heat Detectors				
Gas Detectors				
Carbon Monoxide Detectors				
Waterflow Switches				
Tamper Switches				

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(a)** *Continued*

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

9. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

Type	Quantity	Description	Connected to a Notification Appliance Circuit (NAC)	Connected to a Signaling Line Circuit (SLC)
Audible				
Visual				
Combination Audible and Visual				

10. SYSTEM CONTROL FUNCTIONS

Type	Quantity
Hold-Open Door Releasing Devices	
HVAC Shutdown	
Fire/Smoke Dampers	
Door Unlocking	
Elevator Recall	
Elevator Shunt Trip	

11. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

❑ This system does not have interconnected systems.

❑ Interconnected systems are listed on supplementary sheet _____ .

12. CERTIFICATION AND APPROVALS

12.1 System Installation Contractor

This system as specified herein has been installed according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: _____ Printed name: _____ Date: _____

Organization: _____ Title: _____ Phone: _____

12.2 System Operational Test

This system as specified herein has tested according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: _____ Printed name: _____ Date: _____

Organization: _____ Title: _____ Phone: _____

12.3 Acceptance Test

Date and time of acceptance test: _____

Installing contractor representative: _____

Testing contractor representative: _____

Property representative: _____

AHJ representative: _____

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(a)** ***Continued***

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to emergency communications systems.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: _____ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

❑ Fire alarm with in-building fire emergency voice alarm communications system (EVAC)

❑ Mass notification system

❑ Combination system, with the following components:

❑ Fire alarm ❑ EVACS ❑ MNS ❑ Two-way, in-building, emergency communications system

❑ Other (specify): _____

NFPA 72 edition: _____ Additional description of system(s): _____

_____

2.1 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System

Manufacturer: _____ Model number: _____

Number of single voice alarm channels: _____ Number of multiple voice alarm channels: _____

Number of loudspeakers: _____ Number of loudspeaker circuits: _____

Location of amplification and sound processing equipment: _____

_____

_____

Location of paging microphone stations:

Location 1: _____

Location 2: _____

Location 3: _____

2.2 Mass Notification System

2.2.1 System Type:

❑ In-building MNS–combination

❑ In-building MNS ❑ Wide-area MNS ❑ Distributed recipient MNS

❑ Other (specify): _____

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(b) Emergency Communications System Supplementary Record of Completion.

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

2.2.2 System Features:

❑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS autonomous control unit ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface

❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Distributed-recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface

❑ Wide-area MNS to high power loudspeaker array (HPLA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface

❑ Other (specify): _____

2.2.3 MNS Local Operating Consoles

Location 1: _____

Location 2: _____

Location 3: _____

2.2.4 High Power Loudspeaker Arrays

Number of HPLA loudspeaker initiation zones: _____

Location 1: _____

Location 2: _____

Location 3: _____

2.2.5 Mass Notification Devices

Combination fire alarm/MNS visual devices: _____ MNS-only visual devices: _____

Textual signs: _____ Other (describe): _____

Supervision class: _____

2.2.6 Special Hazard Notification

❑ This system does not have special suppression predischarge notification.

❑ MNS systems DO NOT override notification appliances required to provide special suppression predischarge notification.

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

3.1 Telephone System

Number of telephone jacks installed: _____ Number of warden stations installed: _____

Number of telephone handsets stored on site: _____

Type of telephone system installed: ❑ Electrically powered ❑ Sound powered

3.2 Area of Refuge Emergency Communications Systems

Number of stations: _____ Location of central control point: _____

Days and hours when central control point is attended: _____

Location of alternate control point: _____

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: _____

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(b)** *Continued*

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS *(continued)*

3.3 Elevator Emergency Communications Systems

Number of elevators with stations: _____ Location of central control point: _____

Days and hours when central control point is attended: _____

Location of alternate control point: _____

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: _____

3.4 Other Two-Way Communications System

Describe: _____

4. CONTROL FUNCTIONS

This system activates the following control functions specific to emergency communications systems:

Type	Quantity
Mass Notification Override of Alarm Signaling Systems or Appliances	

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(b)** *Continued*

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to power systems that incorporate generators, SEPSS systems, remote battery systems, or other complex power systems. This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval. It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record. Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: _____ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. SYSTEM POWER

2.1 Control Unit

2.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: _____ Control panel amps: _____

Overcurrent protection: Type: _____ Amps: _____

Location (of primary supply panelboard): _____

Disconnecting means location: _____

2.1.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: _____

2.1.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems

Equipment powered by SEPSS system: _____

Location of SEPSS system: _____

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.1.4 Batteries

Location: _____ Type: _____ Nominal voltage: _____ Amp/hour rating: _____

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.2 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System or Mass Notification System

2.2.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of EVACS or MNS panel: _____ EVACS or MNS panel amps: _____

Overcurrent protection: Type: _____ Amps: _____

Location (of primary supply panelboard): _____

Disconnecting means location: _____

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(c) Power Systems Supplementary Record of Completion.

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. SYSTEM POWER *(continued)*

2.2.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: _____

2.2.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems

Equipment powered by SEPSS system: _____

Location of SEPSS system: _____

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.2.4 Batteries

Location: _____ Type: _____ Nominal voltage: _____ Amp/hour rating: _____

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.3 Notification Appliance Power Extender Panels

❑ This system does not have power extender panels.

2.3.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of power extender panel(s): _____ Power extender panel amps: _____

Overcurrent protection: Type: _____ Amps: _____

Location (of primary supply panelboard): _____

Disconnecting means location: _____

2.3.2 Engine Driven Generator

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: _____

2.3.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems

Equipment powered by SEPSS system: _____

Location of SEPSS system: _____

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.3.4 Batteries

Location: _____ Type: _____ Nominal voltage: _____ Amp/hour rating: _____

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(c)** *Continued*

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. SYSTEM POWER *(continued)*

2.4 Supervising Station Transmission Equipment

❑ This system does not use transmission equipment within the building powered by any other source than the alarm system control unit.

2.4.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of shared transmission equipment: _____

Shared transmission equipment panel amps: _____

Overcurrent protection: Type: _____ Amps: _____

Location (of primary supply panelboard): _____

Disconnecting means location: _____

2.4.2 Engine Driven Generator

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: _____

2.4.3 Energy Storage Systems

Equipment powered by ESS system: _____

Calculated capacity of ESS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.4.4 Batteries

Location: _____ Type: _____ Nominal voltage: _____ Amp/hour rating: _____

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(c)** *Continued*

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER PANEL SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of notification appliance power extender panels.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: _____ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER EXTENDER PANELS

Make and Model	Location	Area Served	Power Source

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(d) Notification Appliance Power Panel Supplementary Record of Completion.**

INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of systems that are interconnected to the main system.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: _____ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

Description	Location	Purpose

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(e) Interconnected Systems Supplementary Record of Completion.**

DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES AND STANDARDS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It enables the designer and/or installer to document and justify deviations from accepted codes or standards.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: _____ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES OR STANDARDS

Description	Purpose

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(f) Deviations from Adopted Codes and Standards Supplementary Record of Completion.

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of a system test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.
Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: _____ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: _____

Supplemental Form(s) Attached: _____ (yes/no)

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

Description of property: _____

Name of property representative: _____

Address: _____

Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____

2. TESTING AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Testing organization: _____

Address: _____

Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____

Monitoring organization: _____

Address: _____

Phone: _____ Fax: _____ E-mail: _____

Account number: _____ Phone line 1: _____ Phone line 2: _____

Means of transmission: _____

Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: _____ Phone: _____

3. DOCUMENTATION

Onsite location of the required record documents and site-specific software: _____

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: _____ Model number: _____

4.2 Software Firmware

Firmware revision number: _____

4.3 System Power

4.3.1 Primary (Main) Power

Nominal voltage: _____ Amps: _____ Location: _____

Overcurrent protection type: _____ Amps: _____ Disconnecting means location: _____

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 4)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(g) System Record of Inspection and Testing.**

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

4.3.2 Secondary Power

Type: _____ Location: _____

Battery type (if applicable): _____

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

5. NOTIFICATIONS MADE PRIOR TO TESTING

Monitoring organization	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Building management	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Building occupants	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Authority having jurisdiction	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Other, if required	Contact: _____	Time: _____

6. TESTING RESULTS

6.1 Control Unit and Related Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Control unit	❑	❑	
Lamps/LEDs/LCDs	❑	❑	
Fuses	❑	❑	
Trouble signals	❑	❑	
Disconnect switches	❑	❑	
Ground-fault monitoring	❑	❑	
Supervision	❑	❑	
Local annunciator	❑	❑	
Remote annunciators	❑	❑	
Remote power panels	❑	❑	

6.2 Secondary Power

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Battery condition	❑	❑	
Load voltage	❑	❑	
Discharge test	❑	❑	
Charger test	❑	❑	
Remote panel batteries	❑	❑	
Batteries marked with date of manufacture	❑	❑	

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 4)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(g)** *Continued*

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

6. TESTING RESULTS *(continued)*

6.3 Alarm and Supervisory Alarm Initiating Device

Attach supplementary device test sheets for all initiating devices.

6.4 Notification Appliances

Attach supplementary appliance test sheets for all notification appliances.

6.5 Interface Equipment

Attach supplementary interface component test sheets for all interface components.

Circuit Interface / *Signaling Line Circuit Interface* / *Fire Alarm Control Interface*

6.6 Supervising Station Monitoring

Description	Yes	No	Time	Comments
Alarm signal	❑	❑		
Alarm restoration	❑	❑		
Trouble signal	❑	❑		
Trouble restoration	❑	❑		
Supervisory signal	❑	❑		
Supervisory restoration	❑	❑		

6.7 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System

Description	Yes	No	Time	Comments
Alarm signal	❑	❑		
Alarm restoration	❑	❑		
Trouble signal	❑	❑		
Trouble restoration	❑	❑		
Supervisory signal	❑	❑		
Supervisory restoration	❑	❑		

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 4)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(g)** ***Continued***

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

7. NOTIFICATIONS THAT TESTING IS COMPLETE

Monitoring organization	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Building management	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Building occupants	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Authority having jurisdiction	Contact: _____	Time: _____
Other, if required	Contact: _____	Time: _____

8. SYSTEM RESTORED TO NORMAL OPERATION

Date: _____ Time: _____

9. CERTIFICATION

This system as specified herein has been inspected and tested according to NFPA 72, _____ edition, Chapter 14.

Signed: _____ Printed name: _____ Date: _____

Organization: _____ Title: _____ Phone: _____

Qualifications (refer to 10.6.3): _____

10. DEFECTS OR MALFUNCTIONS NOT CORRECTED AT CONCLUSION OF SYSTEM INSPECTION, TESTING, OR MAINTENANCE

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

10.1 Acceptance by Owner or Owner's Representative:

The undersigned accepted the test report for the system as specified herein:

Signed: _____ Printed name: _____ Date: _____

Organization: _____ Title: _____ Phone: _____

NFPA 72 (p. 4 of 4)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(g)** ***Continued***

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes a notification appliance test record.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: _____ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: _____

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE TEST RESULTS

Appliance Type	Location/Identifier	Test Results

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(h) Notification Appliance Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing.**

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE TEST RESULTS *(continued)*

Appliance Type	Location/Identifier	Test Results

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(h)** *Continued*

INITIATING DEVICE
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes an initiating device test record.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: _____ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: _____

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. INITIATING DEVICE TEST RESULTS

Device Type	Address	Location	Test Results

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(i) Initiating Device Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing.

INITIATING DEVICE
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. INITIATING DEVICE TEST RESULTS ***(continued)***

Device Type	Address	Location	Test Results

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(i)** ***Continued***

MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes a mass notification system test record.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: _____ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: _____

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM

2.1 System Type

❑ In-building MNS—combination

❑ In-building MNS—stand alone ❑ Wide-area MNS ❑ Distributed recipient MNS

❑ Other (specify): _____

2.2 System Features

❑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS ACU only ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface

❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Direct recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface

❑ Wide-area MNS to high-power loudspeaker array (HPLA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface

❑ Other (specify): _____

3. IN-BUILDING MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM

3.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of MNS panel: _____ MNS panel amps: _____

3.2 Engine-Driven Generator ❑ This system does not have a generator.

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: _____

3.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems ❑ This system does not have an SEPSS.

Equipment powered by an SEPSS: _____

Location of SEPSS: _____

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

3.4 Batteries

Location: _____ Type: _____ Nominal voltage: _____ Amp/hour rating: _____

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

❑ Batteries are marked with date of manufacture.

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(j) Mass Notification System Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing.

MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. MASS NOTIFICATION EQUIPMENT TEST RESULTS

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Functional test			
Reset/power down test			
Fuses			
Primary power supply			
SEPSS power test			
Trouble signals			
Disconnect switches			
Ground-fault monitoring			
CCU security mechanism			
Prerecorded message content			
Prerecorded message activation			
Software backup performed			
Test backup software			
Fire alarm to MNS interface			
MNS to fire alarm interface			
In-building MNS to wide-area MNS			
MNS to direct recipient MNS			
Sound pressure levels Occupied ❑ Yes ❑ No Ambient dBA: _____ Alarm dBA: _____ (attach supplementary notification appliance form(s) with locations, values, and weather conditions)			
System intelligibility Test method: _____ Score: _____ CIS value: _____ (attach supplementary notification appliance form(s) with locations, values, and weather conditions)			
Other (specify):			

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(j) ***Continued***

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes systems and components specific to emergency communication systems.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: _____ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: _____

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

❑ Fire alarm with in-building fire emergency voice alarm communications system (EVAC)

❑ Mass notification system

❑ Combination system, with the following components:

❑ Fire alarm ❑ EVACS ❑ MNS ❑ Two-way, in-building, emergency communications system

❑ Other (specify): _____

Additional description of system(s): _____

_____

2.1 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System

Manufacturer: _____ Model number: _____

Number of single voice alarm channels: _____ Number of multiple voice alarm channels: _____

Number of loudspeakers: _____ Number of loudspeaker circuits: _____

Location of amplification and sound processing equipment: _____

_____

_____

Location of paging microphone stations:

Location 1: _____

Location 2: _____

Location 3: _____

2.2 Mass Notification System

2.2.1 System Type:

❑ In-building MNS—combination

❑ In-building MNS ❑ Wide-area MNS ❑ Distributed recipient MNS

❑ Other (specify): _____

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 5)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(k) Emergency Communications Systems Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing.

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

2.2.2 System Features:

❑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS autonomous control unit ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface

❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Distributed-recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface

❑ Wide-area MNS to high-power loudspeaker array (HPLA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface

❑ Other (specify): _____

2.2.3 MNS Local Operating Consoles

Location 1: _____

Location 2: _____

Location 3: _____

2.2.4 High-Power Loudspeaker Arrays

Number of HPLA loudspeaker initiation zones: _____

Location 1: _____

Location 2: _____

Location 3: _____

2.2.5 Mass Notification Devices

Combination fire alarm/MNS visual devices: _____ MNS-only visual devices: _____

Textual signs: _____ Other (describe): _____

Supervision class: _____

2.2.6 Special Hazard Notification

❑ This system does not have special suppression pre-discharge notification

❑ MNS systems DO NOT override notification appliances required to provide special suppression pre-discharge notification

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

3.1 Telephone System

Number of telephone jacks installed: _____ Number of warden stations installed: _____

Number of telephone handsets stored on site: _____

Type of telephone system installed: ❑ Electrically powered ❑ Sound powered

3.2 Area of Refuge Emergency Communications Systems

Number of stations: _____ Location of central control point: _____

Days and hours when central control point is attended: _____

Location of alternate control point: _____

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: _____

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 5)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(k) ***Continued***

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS *(continued)*

3.3 Elevator Emergency Communications Systems

Number of elevators with stations: _____ Location of central control point: _____

Days and hours when central control point is attended: _____

Location of alternate control point: _____

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: _____

3.4 Other Two-Way Communications System

Describe: _____

4. TESTING RESULTS

4.1 Control Unit and Related Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Control unit	❑	❑	
Lamps/LEDs/LCDs	❑	❑	
Fuses	❑	❑	
Trouble signals	❑	❑	
Disconnect switches	❑	❑	
Ground fault monitoring	❑	❑	
Supervision	❑	❑	
Local annunciator	❑	❑	
Remote annunciators	❑	❑	
Remote power panels	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

4.2 Secondary Power

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Battery condition	❑	❑	
Load voltage	❑	❑	
Discharge test	❑	❑	
Charger test	❑	❑	
Remote panel batteries	❑	❑	

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 5)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(k)** *Continued*

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. TESTING RESULTS *(continued)*

4.3 Emergency Communications Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Control unit	❑	❑	
Lamps/LEDs/LCDs	❑	❑	
Fuses	❑	❑	
Secondary power supply	❑	❑	
Trouble signals	❑	❑	
Disconnect switches	❑	❑	
Ground fault monitoring	❑	❑	
Panel supervision	❑	❑	
System performance	❑	❑	
System audibility	❑	❑	
System intelligibility	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

4.4 Mass Notification Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Functional test	❑	❑	
Reset/Power down test	❑	❑	
Fuses	❑	❑	
Primary power supply	❑	❑	
SEPSS power test	❑	❑	
Trouble signals	❑	❑	
Disconnect switches	❑	❑	
Ground fault monitoring	❑	❑	
CCU security mechanism	❑	❑	
Prerecorded message content	❑	❑	
Prerecorded message activation	❑	❑	
Software backup performed	❑	❑	
Test backup software	❑	❑	
Fire alarm to MNS Interface	❑	❑	
MNS to fire alarm interface	❑	❑	
In-building MNS to wide-area MNS	❑	❑	
MNS to direct recipient MNS	❑	❑	

NFPA 72 (p. 4 of 5)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(k) ***Continued***

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. TESTING RESULTS *(continued)*

4.4 Mass Notification Equipment *(continued)*

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Sound pressure levels (attach report with locations, values, and weather conditions)	❑	❑	
System intelligibility ❑ CSI ❑ STI (attach report with locations, values, and weather conditions)	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

4.5 Two-Way Communication Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Phone handsets	❑	❑	
Phone jacks	❑	❑	
Off-hook indicator	❑	❑	
Call-in signal	❑	❑	
System performance	❑	❑	
System audibility	❑	❑	
System intelligibility	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 5 of 5)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(k)** *Continued*

INTERFACE COMPONENT SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes an interface component test record for circuit interfaces, signaling line circuit interfaces, and fire alarm control interfaces.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: _____ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: _____

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: _____

Address: _____

2. INTERFACE COMPONENT TEST RESULTS

Interface Component Type	Address	Location	Test Results

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

Δ FIGURE 7.8.2(l) Interface Component Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing.

INTERFACE COMPONENT SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. INTERFACE COMPONENT TEST RESULTS *(continued)*

Interface Component Type	Address	Location	Test Results

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(l)** *Continued*

INSTALLATION AND INSPECTION FORM
SINGLE- AND MULTIPLE-STATION ALARMS AND
HOUSEHOLD FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

This form is to be completed at the time of installation/final inspection of any household fire alarm system and single- or multiple-station alarms. It shall be permitted to modify this form as required to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.
Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to complete form.

Form Completion Date: _____ Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Property Owner: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ E-Mail: _____ Other: _____

2. INSTALLATION, CONTRACTOR, AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Installation Contractor: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ E-Mail: _____ Other: _____

2.1 Type of Off-Premises Notification

Monitoring Organization: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____ E-Mail: _____ Other: _____
Account Number: _____ Means of Transmission: _____

3. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

NFPA 72 Edition: _____

3.1 Type of System

❑ Single-Station ❑ Multiple-Station ❑ Household Fire Alarm System ❑ Carbon Monoxide Alarm System

3.2 Number of Devices

Single-Station Smoke Alarms: _____ Multiple-Station Smoke Alarms: _____
Single-Station Heat Alarms: _____ Multiple-Station Heat Alarms: _____
Single-Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms: _____ Multiple-Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms: _____
System Smoke Detectors: _____ System Heat Detectors: _____
Waterflow Switches: _____
Notification Appliances: _____ Type: _____
Interfaced/Other Equipment: _____

3.3 Location (L) and Date (D) of Devices

Device type, location and manufacture date of devices (date shown on back of devices)

_____ _____ _____ _____
_____ _____ _____ _____
_____ _____ _____ _____

Electrical Panel (L): _____ Breaker Number: _____
Alarm Control Unit (L): _____ Battery Back-up (D): _____
Plug in Transformer (L): _____
Relay for Interconnection (L): _____

4. PREPARED BY

Signed: _____ Printed Name: _____ Date: _____
Title: _____ Organization: _____

NFPA 72

Δ **FIGURE 7.8.2(m) Installation and Inspection Form Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Alarm Systems.**

Chapter 8 Reserved

Chapter 9 Reserved

Chapter 10 Fundamentals

10.1 Application.

10.1.1 The basic functions of a complete fire alarm and/or signaling system shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

10.1.2 The requirements of this chapter shall apply to systems, equipment, and components addressed in Chapters 11, 12, 14, 17, 18, 21, 23, 24, 26, and 27.

10.1.3 The requirements of Chapter 7 shall apply where referenced in Chapter 10.

10.2 Purpose. The purpose of fire alarm and signaling systems shall be primarily to provide notification of alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions; to alert the occupants; to summon aid; and to control emergency control functions.

10.3 Equipment.

10.3.1* Equipment constructed and installed in conformity with this Code shall be listed for the purpose for which it is used.

10.3.2 System components shall be installed, tested, inspected, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and this Code.

10.3.3* All devices and appliances that receive their operating power from an initiating device circuit (IDC) or from a signaling line circuit (SLC) of a control unit shall be listed for use with the control unit.

10.3.4 All apparatus requiring rewinding or resetting to maintain normal operation shall be restored to normal after each abnormal condition.

10.3.5 Equipment shall be designed so that it is capable of performing its intended functions under the following conditions:

(1)* At 85 percent and at 110 percent of the nameplate primary (main) and secondary (standby) input voltage(s)
(2) At ambient temperatures of 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C)
(3) At a relative humidity of 85 percent and an ambient temperature of 86°F (30°C)

10.4 Design and Installation.

10.4.1* All systems shall be installed in accordance with the plans, specifications, and standards approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

10.4.2 Devices and appliances shall be located and mounted so that accidental operation or failure is not caused by vibration or jarring.

10.4.3 Equipment shall be installed in locations where conditions do not exceed the voltage, temperature, and humidity limits specified in the manufacturer's published instructions.

10.4.4* Control unit displays, visible indicators, or controls shall be mounted to comply with both of the following unless otherwise permitted by the authority having jurisdiction:

(1) The distance to the highest switch, lamp, or top of any textual display does not exceed 6 ft (1.8 m) above the finished floor.
(2) The distance to the lowest switch, lamp, or bottom of any textual display is not within 15 in. (375 mm) of the finished floor.

10.4.5* Unless otherwise permitted by 10.4.5.1 or 10.4.5.2, in areas that are not continuously occupied, early warning fire detection shall be at the location of each control unit(s), notification appliance circuit power extender(s), and supervising station transmitting equipment to provide notification of fire at that location by one of the following means:

(1) An automatic smoke detector at the location of each control unit(s), notification appliance circuit power extender(s), and supervising station transmitting equipment
(2) An automatic heat detector where ambient conditions prohibit installation of an automatic smoke detector

10.4.5.1* Smoke or heat detector(s) shall not be required to be installed at the location of dedicated function(s) fire alarm control unit(s) that are not required to provide local or supervising station notification signals.

10.4.5.2 Where a risk analysis shows that early warning fire detection is not required and where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, the requirements of 10.4.5 shall not apply.

10.4.6 Initiating Devices.

10.4.6.1 Initiating devices of the manual or automatic type shall be selected and installed to minimize unwanted alarms.

10.4.6.2 Initiating devices shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 17 and Chapter 23.

10.4.6.3 Manual alarms shall be initiated by one of the following ways:

(1) A listed manual fire alarm box
(2) A key operated means
(3) A means contained within a locked cabinet or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use

10.4.7 Abandoned Fire Alarm Equipment.

10.4.7.1 Abandoned fire alarm equipment shall be removed.

10.4.7.2 Abandoned fire alarm equipment shall be marked "not in service" until removed.

10.5 Personnel Qualifications.

10.5.1 System Designer.

10.5.1.1 Plans and specifications shall be developed in accordance with this Code by persons who are experienced in the design, application, installation, and testing of the systems.

10.5.1.2 State or local licensure regulations shall be followed to determine qualified personnel.

10.5.1.3 Personnel shall provide documentation of their qualification by one or more of the following:

(1) Registration, licensing, or certification by a state or local authority
(2) Certification by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Certification by the manufacturer(s) of the specific equipment used in the system

10.5.1.4 The system designer shall be identified on the system design documents.

10.5.1.5 System design trainees shall be under the supervision of a qualified system designer.

10.5.1.6 The system designer shall provide evidence of their qualifications and/or certifications when required by the authority having jurisdiction.

10.5.2 System Installer.

10.5.2.1 Installation personnel shall be at least one of the following:

(1) Qualified in the installation, inspection, and testing of the systems
(2) Supervised by persons who are qualified in the installation, inspection, and testing of the systems

10.5.2.2 State or local licensure regulations shall be followed to determine qualified personnel.

10.5.2.3 Personnel shall provide documentation of their qualification by one or more of the following:

(1) Registration, licensing, or certification by a state or local authority
(2) Certification by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Certification by the manufacturer(s) of the specific equipment used in the system

10.5.2.4 System installation trainees shall be under the supervision of a qualified system installer.

10.5.2.5 The system installer shall provide evidence of their qualifications and/or certifications when requested by the authority having jurisdiction.

10.5.3* Inspection, Testing, and Service Personnel. (SIG-TMS)

10.5.3.1* Inspection Personnel. Inspections shall be performed by personnel who have developed competence through training and experience that are acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction or meet the requirement of 10.5.3.4.

Δ **10.5.3.2* Testing Personnel.**

N **10.5.3.2.1** Testing personnel shall be knowledgeable of and experienced in the following:

(1) Testing requirements contained in this Code
(2) Equipment being tested
(3) Test methods to be used

N **10.5.3.2.2** Knowledge and experience shall be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction or meet the requirement of 10.5.3.4.

Δ **10.5.3.3 Service Personnel.**

N **10.5.3.3.1** Service personnel shall be knowledgeable of and experienced in the following:

(1) Maintenance and servicing requirements contained in this Code
(2) Equipment being serviced or maintained
(3) Servicing or maintenance methods to be used

N **10.5.3.3.2** Knowledge and experience shall be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction or meet the requirement of 10.5.3.4.

10.5.3.4 Means of Qualification. Qualified personnel shall include, but not be limited to, one or more of the following:

(1)* Personnel who are factory trained and certified for the specific type and brand of system being serviced
(2)* Personnel who are certified by a nationally recognized certification organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3)* Personnel who are registered, licensed, or certified by a state or local authority to perform service on systems addressed within the scope of this Code, either individually or through their affiliation with an organization
(4) Personnel who are employed and qualified by an organization listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for the servicing of systems within the scope of this Code

10.5.3.5* Programming Personnel.

10.5.3.5.1 Personnel programming a system shall be certified by the system manufacturer.

10.5.3.5.2 System installation personnel shall be permitted to configure systems in the field per manufacturers' published instructions.

10.5.3.5.3 System end users shall be permitted to manage system operation per manufacturers' published instructions or training.

10.5.3.6 Evidence of Qualification. Evidence of qualifications shall be provided to the authority having jurisdiction upon request.

10.5.4 Plans Examiners and Inspectors.

10.5.4.1 Plans and specifications submitted for review and approval shall be reviewed by personnel who are qualified to review such plans and specifications.

10.5.4.2 System installations shall be inspected by personnel who are qualified to perform such inspections.

10.5.4.3 State or local licensure regulations shall be followed to determine qualified personnel.

10.5.4.4 Personnel shall provide documentation of their qualifications by one or more of the following:

(1) Registration, licensing, or certification by a state or local authority
(2) Meeting the requirements of NFPA 1031
(3) Assignment by the authority having jurisdiction to personnel having equivalent competency with 10.5.4.4(1) or 10.5.4.4(2)

10.5.5 Supervising Station Operators. (SIG-SSS)

10.5.5.1 All operators in the supervising station shall demonstrate competence in all tasks required of them in Chapter 26 by one or more of the following:

(1) Certified by the manufacturer of the receiving system or equipment or the alarm-monitoring automation system
(2)* Certified by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Licensed or certified by a state or local authority
(4) Other training or certification approved by the authority having jurisdiction

Δ **10.5.5.2 Evidence of Qualifications and/or Certification.**

N **10.5.5.2.1** Evidence of qualifications and/or certification shall be provided when requested by the authority having jurisdiction.

N **10.5.5.2.2** A license or qualification listing shall be current in accordance with the requirements of the issuing authority or organization.

10.5.5.3 Operator trainees shall be under the direct supervision of a qualified operator until qualified as required by 10.5.5.1.

10.5.6 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System Personnel Qualification. (SIG-PRS)

10.5.6.1 System Designer.

10.5.6.1.1 Public emergency alarm reporting system plans and specifications shall be developed in accordance with this Code by persons who are qualified in the proper design, application, installation, and testing of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

10.5.6.1.2 The system design documents shall include the name and contact information of the system designer.

10.5.6.2 System Installer. Installation personnel shall be qualified in the installation, inspection, and testing of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

10.5.6.3 Service Personnel. Service personnel shall be qualified in the service, inspection, maintenance, and testing of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

10.5.6.4 Qualification.

10.5.6.4.1 Personnel shall demonstrate qualification by being trained and certified in public emergency alarm reporting system design, installation, or service (as appropriate).

10.5.6.4.2 Personnel who are trained and certified for the specific type of public emergency alarm reporting system and comply with one the following shall be considered qualified:

(1) Personnel who are licensed or certified by a state or local authority, if applicable
(2)* Personnel who are certified by a nationally recognized certification organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Personnel who are employed and qualified by an organization listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for the design, installation, or servicing of systems within the scope of this chapter
(4)* Personnel who are employed and certified by an equipment manufacturer for the specific type of system

Δ **10.5.6.4.3 Evidence of Qualifications.**

N **10.5.6.4.3.1** Evidence of qualifications and/or certification shall be provided when requested by the authority having jurisdiction.

N **10.5.6.4.3.2** A license or qualification listing shall be current in accordance with the requirements of the issuing authority or organization.

N **10.5.7 Gateway Reporting System Personnel Qualification. (SIG-SSS)**

N **10.5.7.1 Gateway Personnel.** Gateway personnel shall be qualified in the service, inspection, maintenance, and testing of gateway alarm reporting systems.

N **10.5.7.2 Qualification.**

N **10.5.7.2.1** Personnel shall demonstrate qualification by being trained and certified in gateway alarm reporting system design, installation, or service (as appropriate).

N **10.5.7.2.2** Personnel who are trained and certified for the specific type of subsidiary station or auxiliary service provider system and comply with one the following shall be considered qualified:

(1) Personnel who are licensed or certified by a state or local authority, if applicable
(2) Personnel who are certified by a nationally recognized certification organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Personnel who are employed and qualified by an organization listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for the design, installation, or servicing of systems within the scope of this chapter
(4) Personnel who are employed and certified by an equipment manufacturer for the specific type of system

N **10.5.7.2.3** A license or qualification listing shall be current in accordance with the requirements of the issuing authority or organization.

N **10.5.7.2.4** Evidence of qualifications and/or certification shall be provided when requested by the authority having jurisdiction.

10.6 Power Supplies.

10.6.1* Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to power supplies.

10.6.2 Code Conformance. All power supplies shall be installed in accordance with applicable requirements of *NFPA 70*.

10.6.3 Power Supply Sources.

Δ **10.6.3.1*** Power shall be supplied in accordance with 10.6.3.2, 10.6.4, or 23.16.2.

10.6.3.2 Unless configured in compliance with 10.6.4 or 23.16.2, at least two independent and reliable power supplies shall be provided, one primary and one secondary.

10.6.3.3 Each power supply shall be of adequate capacity for the application.

10.6.3.4 Monitoring the integrity of power supplies shall be in accordance with 10.6.9.

10.6.4* Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems (SEPSS).

10.6.4.1 An SEPSS that is not arranged in accordance with 10.6.4.2 shall comply with all of the following:

(1) An SEPSS shall be configured in compliance with NFPA 111 for a Type O or U, Level 1 system.
(2) The SEPSS shall be capable of powering the maximum required system load.
(3) The SEPSS shall have capacity in accordance with 10.6.7.2.

10.6.4.2 Where connected to an engine-driven generator arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.1, an SEPSS that complies with all of the following shall be permitted:

(1) An SEPSS shall be configured in compliance with NFPA 111 for a Type O or U, Class 4, Level 1 system.
(2) The SEPSS shall be capable of powering the maximum required system load.

10.6.4.3 An SEPSS shall comply with the requirements of 10.6.5.

10.6.4.4* SEPSS equipment shall be installed in the manner and location recommended by the manufacturer and in accordance with NFPA 855 for SEPSS equipment whose rated energy capacity is within the scope of NFPA 855.

10.6.4.5 Failure of an SEPSS shall result in the initiation of a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.6.5 Primary Power Supply.

10.6.5.1 Branch Circuit.

10.6.5.1.1 The branch circuit supplying the equipment shall be supplied by one of the following:

(1) Electric utility
(2) An engine-driven generator or equivalent in accordance with 10.6.11.2, where a person trained in its operation is on duty at all times
(3) An engine-driven generator or equivalent arranged for cogeneration with an electric utility in accordance with 10.6.11.2, where a person trained in its operation is on duty at all times

10.6.5.1.2* The branch circuit supplying the equipment shall supply no other loads.

10.6.5.2 Circuit Identification and Accessibility.

10.6.5.2.1 The location of the branch circuit disconnecting means shall be permanently identified at the control unit.

10.6.5.2.2* The system circuit disconnecting means shall be marked to identify the system or equipment that it serves.

10.6.5.2.3 For fire alarm and/or signaling systems, the circuit disconnecting means shall have a red marking.

10.6.5.2.4 The red marking shall not damage the overcurrent protective devices or obscure the manufacturer's markings.

10.6.5.2.5 The circuit disconnecting means shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

10.6.5.3 Mechanical Protection. The branch circuit(s) and connections shall be protected against physical damage.

10.6.5.4 Circuit Breaker Lock. Where a circuit breaker is the disconnecting means, an approved breaker locking device shall be installed.

10.6.5.5 Overcurrent Protection. An overcurrent protective device shall be provided in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

10.6.6* Continuity of Power Supplies.

10.6.6.1 The secondary power supply shall automatically provide power to the protected premises system within 10 seconds whenever the primary power supply voltage is insufficient for required system operation.

10.6.6.2 The secondary power supply shall automatically provide power to the supervising station facility and equipment within 60 seconds whenever the primary power supply voltage is insufficient for required system operation.

10.6.6.3 Required signals shall not be lost, interrupted, or delayed by more than 10 seconds as a result of the primary power failure.

10.6.6.3.1 Storage batteries dedicated to the system or ESS arranged in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 111 shall be permitted to supplement the secondary power supply to ensure required operation during the transfer period.

10.6.6.3.2 Where an ESS is employed in 10.6.6.3.1, a positive means for disconnecting the input and output of the ESS system while maintaining continuity of power supply to the load shall be provided.

10.6.7 Secondary Power Supply.

10.6.7.1 Secondary Power Operation.

10.6.7.1.1 Operation on secondary power shall not affect the required performance of a system or supervising station facility, including alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals and indications.

Exception: While operating on secondary power, audio amplifier monitoring shall be required only when an alarm is present.

10.6.7.2* Capacity.

10.6.7.2.1 The secondary power supply for the protected premises system shall have sufficient capacity to operate the system under quiescent load (system operating in a nonalarm condition) for a minimum of 24 hours.

10.6.7.2.2 At the end of the period in 10.6.7.2.1, the secondary power supply shall be capable of operating all alarm notification appliances used for evacuation or to direct aid to the location of an emergency for 5 minutes, unless otherwise permitted or required by 10.6.7.2.4.

10.6.7.2.3 The secondary power supply for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications service shall be capable of operating the system under quiescent load for a minimum of 24 hours.

10.6.7.2.4 At the end of the period in 10.6.7.2.3, the secondary power supply shall be capable of operating the system during a fire or other emergency condition for a period of 15 minutes at maximum connected load.

10.6.7.2.5 The secondary power supply capacity for supervising station facilities and equipment shall be capable of supporting operations for a minimum of 24 hours.

10.6.7.2.6 The secondary power supply for high-power loudspeaker arrays used for wide-area mass notification systems shall be in accordance with 24.6.5.2.

10.6.7.2.7 The secondary power supply for textual visual notification appliances shall be in accordance with 24.6.10.1.

10.6.7.2.8 The secondary power supply capacity for emergency command centers of wide-area mass notification systems shall be capable of supporting operations for a minimum of 24 hours.

10.6.7.2.9 The secondary power supply for in-building mass notification systems shall be capable of operating the system under quiescent load for a minimum of 24 hours.

10.6.7.2.10 The secondary power supply for in-building mass notification systems shall be capable of operating the system during emergency conditions for a period of 15 minutes at maximum connected load.

10.6.7.2.11 The secondary power supply for communications equipment at the protected premises that is used to transmit signals to a supervising station shall have sufficient capacity to operate the system under quiescent load (system operating in a nonalarm condition) for a minimum of 24 hours.

10.6.7.2.12 At the end of the period in 10.6.7.2.11, the secondary power supply for communications equipment shall be capable of transmitting signals for a period of 5 minutes.

10.6.7.2.13 The secondary power supply capacity required shall include all power supply loads that are not automatically disconnected upon the transfer to secondary power supply.

10.6.7.2.14* As a minimum, battery calculations shall apply a correction factor of 1.25 for aging to ensure the battery can meet its current demand at the end of service life.

10.6.7.2.15* Where carbon monoxide detection is not monitored by a supervising station, the secondary power supply shall have sufficient capacity to operate the carbon monoxide detection system under quiescent load (system operating in a nonalarm condition) for a minimum of 24 hours.

10.6.7.2.16 At the end of the period in 10.6.7.2.15, the secondary power supply shall be capable of operating the carbon monoxide detection system and all carbon monoxide notification appliances for 12 hours.

10.6.7.2.17 Where carbon monoxide detection is monitored by a supervising station, both of the following shall apply:

(1) The secondary power supply shall have sufficient capacity to operate the carbon monoxide detection system under quiescent load (system operating in a nonalarm condition) for a minimum of 24 hours.
(2) At the end of the 24-hour period, the secondary power supply shall be capable of operating the carbon monoxide detection system and all notification appliances for 5 minutes.

10.6.7.3* Secondary Power Supply for Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems and Emergency Communications Systems.

10.6.7.3.1 The secondary power supply shall consist of one of the following:

(1) A storage battery dedicated to the system arranged in accordance with 10.6.10
(2) An automatic-starting, engine-driven generator serving the branch circuit specified in 10.6.5.1 and arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.1, and storage batteries dedicated to the system with 4 hours of capacity arranged in accordance with 10.6.10

10.6.7.3.2 Secondary circuits that provide power to the control unit and are not integral to the unit shall be protected against physical damage.

10.6.7.4 Secondary Power Supply for Supervising Station Facilities.

10.6.7.4.1 The secondary power supply shall consist of one of the following:

(1) Storage batteries dedicated to the supervising station equipment arranged in accordance with 10.6.10
(2) A branch circuit of an automatic-starting, engine-driven generator arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.2.1 and 10.6.11.3.2.2, and storage batteries dedicated to the supervising station equipment with 4 hours of capacity arranged in accordance with 10.6.10
(3) A branch circuit of multiple engine-driven generators, at least one of which is arranged for automatic starting in accordance with 10.6.11.3.2.1 and 10.6.11.3.2.2

Δ **10.6.7.4.2** Where a secondary power supply for supervising station facilities in accordance with 10.6.7.4.1(3) is used, the following shall apply:

(1) Each generator shall be capable of supplying the energy required.
(2) Generators that are started manually shall be arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.2.3 and 10.6.11.3.2.4.
(3) When manual-start generators are employed, a person trained in the procedure of starting the generator shall be on duty at all times.

10.6.8 Power Supply for Remotely Located Control Equipment.

10.6.8.1* Additional power supplies required for system operation shall comply with 10.6.1 through 10.6.6 and with 10.6.9.

10.6.8.2 The location of remotely located power supplies shall be identified at the master control unit.

10.6.8.3 The master control unit display shall be permitted to satisfy the requirement of 10.6.8.2.

10.6.8.4 The location of remotely located power supplies shall be identified on the record drawings.

10.6.8.5 An uninterruptible power supply (UPS) listed to the requirements of an applicable standard such as UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, shall be permitted to supply power to remotely located control equipment.

10.6.9 Monitoring Integrity of Power Supplies.

10.6.9.1 Unless otherwise permitted or required by 10.6.9.1.3 and 10.6.9.1.6, all primary and secondary power supplies shall be monitored for the presence of voltage at the point of connection to the system.

10.6.9.1.1 Failure of either the primary or secondary power supply shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.6.9.1.2 Power failure indication for a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) powered from a protected premises fire alarm system control unit shall be in accordance with 10.6.9.1.

10.6.9.1.3 Monitoring shall not be required for a power supply for supplementary equipment.

10.6.9.1.4 Monitoring shall not be required for the neutral of a three-, four-, or five-wire ac or dc supply source.

10.6.9.1.5 Monitoring shall not be required for the main power supply in a supervising station if its failure is otherwise indicated and obvious to the operator on duty.

Δ **10.6.9.1.6** Monitoring shall not be required for the output of an engine-driven generator that is part of the secondary power supply, provided the generator is tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

10.6.9.2* Power supply sources and electrical supervision for digital alarm communications systems shall be in accordance with Section 10.6, 10.6.9, Section 10.19, and Section 12.6.

10.6.9.3* Supervising station alarm systems shall be arranged to delay transmission of primary power failure signals for 60 minutes to 180 minutes unless a delay is not permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.

10.6.9.4 Power supervisory devices used to monitor the integrity of power supplies shall not impair the receipt of fire alarm or supervisory signals.

10.6.10* Storage Batteries.

10.6.10.1 Marking.

10.6.10.1.1 Batteries shall be marked with the month and year of manufacture using the month/year format.

10.6.10.1.2 Where the battery is not marked with the month/year by the manufacturer, the installer shall obtain the date-code and mark the battery with the month/year of battery manufacture.

10.6.10.1.3* Rechargeable batteries used for secondary power supplies shall be listed or component recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

10.6.10.2 Arrangement.

10.6.10.2.1 Storage batteries shall comply with the requirements of Article 480 of *NFPA 70*.

10.6.10.2.2 Storage batteries shall be located so that the equipment, including overcurrent devices, is not adversely affected by battery gases.

10.6.10.2.3 Batteries shall be insulated against ground faults.

10.6.10.2.4 Batteries shall be insulated to prevent short circuits between multiple cells.

10.6.10.2.5 Batteries shall be protected from physical damage.

10.6.10.2.6 Battery racks shall be protected against corrosion.

10.6.10.2.7 If not located in or adjacent to the control unit, the batteries and their charger location shall be permanently identified at the control unit.

10.6.10.3 Battery Charging.

10.6.10.3.1 Battery charging equipment shall be provided to keep the battery fully charged under normal conditions.

10.6.10.3.2 Battery charging equipment shall be provided to recharge batteries within 48 hours after fully charged batteries have been subject to a single discharge cycle as specified in 10.6.7.2.

10.6.10.3.3 The battery charging equipment operation shall not damage the battery.

10.6.10.3.4* Batteries shall be charged by listed means.

10.6.10.3.5 Provisions for repair or replacement of failed battery charger equipment shall be maintained at supervising stations and used to restore operation prior to depletion of one-half of the battery capacity.

10.6.10.4 Overcurrent Protection. Overcurrent devices shall be provided to protect the batteries from excessive load current.

10.6.10.5 Metering. The battery charging equipment shall include integral meters or readily accessible terminals so that portable meters can be used to determine battery voltage and charging current.

10.6.10.6* Monitoring Integrity of Battery Charging Equipment.

10.6.10.6.1 Means shall be provided to detect the failure of a battery charger.

10.6.10.6.2 Failure of the battery charger shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.6.11 Engine-Driven Generators.

10.6.11.1 Application and Installation. The application and installation of engine-driven generators shall be as specified in 10.6.11.2 through 10.6.11.7.

10.6.11.2 Primary Power Supply.

10.6.11.2.1 Engine-driven generators arranged as the primary supply shall be designed in an approved manner.

10.6.11.2.2 Engine-driven generators arranged as the primary supply shall be installed in an approved manner.

10.6.11.3 Secondary Power Supplies.

10.6.11.3.1 Protected Premises.

10.6.11.3.1.1 Engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a protected premises fire alarm system or an emergency communications system shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 4 of NFPA 110 for a Type 10, Class 24, Level 1 system.

10.6.11.3.1.2 Installation of engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a protected premises fire alarm system or an emergency communications system shall be in accordance with Article 700 of *NFPA 70*.

10.6.11.3.1.3 Where pathway survivability is required by another section of the Code, equal protection shall be provided for power supply circuits.

10.6.11.3.2 Supervising Station.

10.6.11.3.2.1 Automatic-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 4 of NFPA 110 for a Type 60, Class 24, Level 2 system.

10.6.11.3.2.2 Installation of automatic-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall be in accordance with Article 701 of *NFPA 70*.

10.6.11.3.2.3 Manual-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 4 of NFPA 110 for a Type M, Class 24, Level 2 system.

10.6.11.3.2.4 Installation of manual-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall be in accordance with Article 702 of *NFPA 70*.

10.6.11.4 Performance, Operation, Testing, and Maintenance. The requirements for performance, operation, testing, and maintenance of engine-driven generators shall conform to the applicable provisions of NFPA 110.

10.6.11.5 Capacity. The unit shall be of a capacity that is sufficient to operate the system under the maximum normal load conditions in addition to all other demands placed upon the unit.

10.6.11.6 Fuel. Unless otherwise required or permitted in 10.6.11.6.1 through 10.6.11.6.3, fuel shall be available in storage sufficient for 6 months of testing plus the capacity specified in 10.6.7.

10.6.11.6.1 For public emergency alarm reporting systems, the requirements of Chapter 27 shall apply.

10.6.11.6.2 If a reliable source of supply is available at any time on a 2-hour notice, it shall be permitted to have fuel in storage sufficient for 12 hours of operation at full load.

10.6.11.6.3 Fuel systems using natural or manufactured gas supplied through reliable utility mains shall not be required to have fuel storage tanks unless the structure is a seismic design category C, D, E, or F as defined in ASCE/SEI 7, *Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures*.

10.6.11.7 Battery and Charger.

Δ **10.6.11.7.1** A separate storage battery and separate automatic charger shall be provided for starting the engine-driven generator.

N **10.6.11.7.2** The separate storage battery automatic charger shall not be used for any other purpose.

10.6.11.7.3 The battery shall be sized in accordance with 5.6.4 of NFPA 110.

10.7 Signal Priority. The priority of signals shall be in accordance with this section.

10.7.1 ECS priority signals when evaluated by stakeholders through a risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.12 shall be permitted to take precedence over all other signals.

10.7.2 Fire alarm signals shall take precedence over all other signals, except as permitted by 10.7.1 or 10.7.3.

10.7.3* Emergency mass notification signals and messages shall be permitted to have priority over fire alarm notification signals in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 24.

10.7.4 Emergency mass notification signals and messages shall have priority over supervisory and trouble signals in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 24.

10.7.5 Carbon monoxide signals shall be permitted to take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals.

10.7.6 Pre-alarm signals shall take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals.

10.7.7 Supervisory signals shall take precedence over trouble signals.

10.7.8 Hold-up alarms or other life-threatening signals shall be permitted to take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

10.7.9* Where separate systems are installed, they shall be permitted to achieve the priority of signals in accordance with Section 10.7.

10.7.10 Combination systems shall comply with 23.8.4.7.

10.8 Detection and Signaling of Conditions.

10.8.1 Abnormal Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal abnormal conditions.

10.8.2 Alarm Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal alarm conditions.

10.8.2.1 Pre-Alarm Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal pre-alarm conditions.

10.8.2.2 Supervisory Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal supervisory conditions.

10.8.2.3 Trouble Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal trouble conditions.

10.8.2.4 Normal Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall generate a restoration signal when the device or signaling system returns to normal.

10.9 Responses.

10.9.1 Alarm. The response to an alarm signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.9.2 Pre-Alarm. The response to a pre-alarm signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.9.3 Supervisory. The response to a supervisory signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.9.4 Trouble. The response to trouble signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.10 Distinctive Signals.

10.10.1 Priority alarm signals, fire alarm signals, carbon monoxide alarm signals, supervisory signals, pre-alarm signals, and trouble signals shall be distinctively and descriptively annunciated.

10.10.2 Audible alarm notification appliances for a fire alarm system shall produce signals that are distinctive from other similar appliances used for other purposes in the same area that are not part of the fire alarm or emergency communications system.

10.10.3 Audible alarm notification appliances for a carbon monoxide alarm system shall produce signals that are distinctive from other similar appliances used for other purposes in the same area that are not part of the carbon monoxide, fire alarm, or emergency communications system.

Δ **10.10.4* Audible Characteristics.**

N **10.10.4.1** An audible notification appliance on a control unit, on multiple control units that are interconnected to form a system, or at a remote location, shall be permitted to have the same audible characteristics for all alerting functions.

N **10.10.4.2** The audible notification appliance described in 10.10.4.1 is not limited to alarm, trouble, and supervisory alerting, provided that the distinction between signals shall be by other means.

Δ **10.10.5* Supervisory Signals.**

N **10.10.5.1** Supervisory signals shall be distinctive in sound from other signals.

N **10.10.5.2** The distinctive supervisory signal shall not be used for any other purpose except as permitted in 10.10.4.

Δ **10.10.6 Trouble Signals.**

N **10.10.6.1** Trouble signals required to indicate at the protected premises shall be indicated by distinctive audible signals.

N **10.10.6.2** Trouble signals described in 10.10.6.1 shall be distinctive from alarm signals except as permitted in 10.10.4.

N **10.10.6.3** The audible trouble signals described in 10.10.6.1 shall be permitted to be used for other purposes as permitted by 10.10.4.

Δ **10.10.7 Alarm Evacuation Signals.**

N **10.10.7.1** Alarm evacuation signals shall be distinctive in sound from other signals.

N **10.10.7.2** Alarm evacuation signals shall comply with the requirements of 18.4.2.

N **10.10.7.3** Alarm evacuation signals described in 10.10.7.1 and 10.10.7.2 shall not be used for any other purpose.

Δ **10.10.8 Pre-Alarm Signals.**

N **10.10.8.1** Pre-alarm signals shall be distinctive in sound from other signals.

N **10.10.8.2** Pre-alarm signals described in 10.10.8.1 shall not be used for any other purpose except as permitted in 10.10.4.

10.10.9 Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall comply with 18.4.3.

10.11 Alarm Signals.

10.11.1* Actuation of alarm notification appliances or emergency voice communications, emergency control function interface devices, and annunciation at the protected premises shall occur within 10 seconds after the activation of an initiating device.

10.11.2* Visual notification appliances, textual visual notification appliances, and loudspeaker notification appliances located in the same area shall be activated and deactivated as a group unless otherwise required by an ECS emergency response plan. (SIG-ECS)

10.11.3 Visual alarm notification appliances shall not be activated when loudspeaker notification appliances are used as permitted by 24.3.5 for non-emergency paging. (SIG-ECS)

10.11.4* A coded alarm signal shall consist of not less than three complete rounds of the number transmitted.

10.11.5 Each round of a coded alarm signal shall consist of not less than three impulses.

10.11.6* Resetting of alarm signals shall comply with 23.8.2.2.

10.11.7 The subsequent occurrence of a fault on an initiating device circuit or a signaling line circuit used for other than the interconnection of control units shall not affect previously transmitted unacknowledged alarm signals.

10.11.8 An alarm signal that has been deactivated at the protected premises shall comply with 10.11.8.1 and 10.11.8.2.

10.11.8.1 The audible and visible alarm signal at the control unit only shall automatically reactivate every 24 hours or less until alarm signal conditions are restored to normal.

10.11.8.2 The audible and visible alarm signal shall operate until it is manually silenced or acknowledged.

10.12* Fire Alarm Notification Appliance Deactivation.

10.12.1 A means for turning off activated alarm notification appliance(s) shall be permitted.

10.12.2* When an occupant notification alarm signal deactivation means is actuated, both audible and visual notification appliances shall be simultaneously deactivated.

10.12.3 The fire alarm notification deactivation means shall be key-operated or located within a locked cabinet, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.

10.12.4 The means shall comply with the requirements of 10.18.1.

10.12.5 Subsequent Activation of Initiating Devices.

10.12.5.1 Subsequent activation of nonaddressable initiating devices on other initiating device circuits shall cause the notification appliances to reactivate.

10.12.5.2 Subsequent activation of addressable alarm initiating devices of a different type in the same room or addressable alarm initiating devices in a different room on signaling line circuits shall cause the notification appliances to reactivate.

10.12.6 A fire alarm notification deactivation means that remains in the deactivated position when there is no alarm condition shall operate an audible trouble notification appliance until the means is restored to normal.

10.13 Carbon Monoxide Notification Appliance Deactivation. A carbon monoxide initiating device with an integral sounder shall be permitted to be silenced locally if the carbon monoxide alarm or supervisory status continues to be displayed at the control unit.

10.14 Supervisory Signals.

10.14.1 Self-Restoring Supervisory Signal Indication. Visible and audible indication of self-restoring supervisory signals and visible indication of their restoration to normal shall be automatically indicated within 90 seconds at the following locations:

(1) Fire alarm control unit for local fire alarm systems
(2) Building fire command center for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems
(3) Emergency command center for one or more buildings where responsible authorities receive and disseminate information
(4) Supervising station location for systems installed in compliance with Chapter 26

10.14.2 Latching Supervisory Signal Indication.

10.14.2.1 Visible and audible indication of latching supervisory signals shall be indicated within 90 seconds at the locations specified in 10.14.1.

10.14.2.2 Restoration of latching supervisory signals shall be indicated within 90 seconds at the locations specified in 10.14.1.

10.14.3 Coded Supervisory Signal.

10.14.3.1 A coded supervisory signal shall be permitted to consist of two rounds of the number transmitted to indicate a supervisory off-normal condition.

10.14.3.2 A coded supervisory signal shall be permitted to consist of one round of the number transmitted to indicate the restoration of the supervisory condition to normal.

10.14.4 Combined Coded Alarm and Supervisory Signal Circuits. Where both coded sprinkler supervisory signals and coded fire or waterflow alarm signals are transmitted over the same signaling line circuit, provision shall be made to obtain either alarm signal precedence or sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.

10.14.5 Supervisory Notification Appliance Location. The audible supervisory notification appliances shall be located in an area where they are to be heard.

10.14.6 Supervisory Signal Reactivation. A supervisory signal that has been deactivated at the protected premises shall comply with 10.14.6.1 and 10.14.6.2.

10.14.6.1 The audible and visible supervisory signal at the control unit only shall automatically reactivate every 24 hours or less until supervisory signal conditions are restored to normal.

10.14.6.2 The audible and visible supervisory signal shall operate until it is manually silenced or acknowledged.

10.14.7 Supervisory Notification Appliance Deactivation.

10.14.7.1 A means for deactivating supervisory notification appliances shall be permitted.

10.14.7.2 The means shall be key-operated or located within a locked cabinet, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.

10.14.7.3 The means for deactivating supervisory notification appliances shall comply with the requirements of 10.18.2.

10.14.7.4 Subsequent activation of supervisory initiating devices in other building zones shall cause supervisory notification appliances to activate as required by the system input/output matrix.

10.14.7.5 A means for deactivating supervisory notification appliances that remains in the deactivated position when there is no supervisory condition shall operate an audible trouble notification appliance until the means is restored to normal.

10.15 Trouble Signals.

10.15.1 Trouble signals and their restoration to normal shall be indicated within 200 seconds at the locations identified in 10.15.7 and 10.15.8.

10.15.2 Indication of primary power failure trouble signals transmitted to a supervising station shall be in accordance with 10.6.9.3.

10.15.3 An audible trouble signal shall be permitted to be intermittent provided it sounds at least once every 10 seconds, with a minimum duration of ½ second.

10.15.4 A single audible trouble signal shall be permitted to annunciate multiple fault conditions.

10.15.5 The audible trouble notification appliances shall be located in an area where they are to be heard.

10.15.6 Activated notification appliances at the protected premises shall continue to operate unless they are manually silenced as permitted by 10.15.10.1.

10.15.7 Visible and audible trouble signals and visible indication of their restoration to normal shall be indicated at the following locations:

(1) Fire alarm control unit for protected premises alarm systems
(2) Building fire command center for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems
(3) Emergency command center for one or more buildings where responsible authorities receive and disseminate information
(4) Central station or remote station location for systems installed in compliance with Chapter 26

10.15.8 Trouble signals and their restoration to normal shall be visibly and audibly indicated at the proprietary supervising station for systems installed in compliance with Chapter 26.

10.15.9* A trouble signal that has been deactivated at the protected premises shall comply with 10.15.9.1 and 10.15.9.2.

10.15.9.1 The audible and visible trouble signal shall automatically reactivate at the control unit every 24 hours or less until trouble signal conditions are restored to normal.

10.15.9.2 The audible and visible trouble signal associated with signaling the depletion or failure of the primary battery of a wireless system as required by 23.16.2.1.1 and 23.16.2.3 shall automatically resound every 4 hours or less until the depletion signal is restored to normal.

10.15.10 Trouble Notification Appliance Deactivation.

10.15.10.1 A means for deactivating trouble notification appliances shall be permitted.

10.15.10.2 The means shall be key-operated or located within a locked cabinet, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.

10.15.10.3 The means for deactivating trouble notification appliances shall comply with the requirements of 10.18.2.

10.15.10.4 If an audible trouble notification appliance is also used to indicate a supervisory condition, as permitted by 10.10.4, a trouble notification appliance deactivation means shall not prevent subsequent actuation of supervisory notification appliances.

10.15.10.5 Subsequent trouble signals shall cause trouble notification appliances to activate as required by the system input/output matrix.

10.15.10.6 A means for deactivating trouble notification appliances that remains in the deactivated position when there is no trouble condition shall operate an audible trouble notification appliance until the means is restored to normal.

10.15.10.7* Unless otherwise permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, trouble notification appliances at the protected premises of a supervising station fire alarm system arranged in accordance with Chapter 26, that have been silenced at the protected premises shall automatically reactivate every 24 hours or less until fault conditions are restored to normal.

10.16 Emergency Control Function Status Indicators.

10.16.1 All controls provided specifically for the purpose of manually overriding any automatic emergency control function shall provide visible indication of the status of the associated control circuits.

10.16.2* Where status indicators are provided for emergency equipment or control functions, they shall be arranged to reflect the actual status of the associated equipment or function.

10.17 Notification Appliance Circuits and Supervised Notification Appliance Control Circuits.

10.17.1 An open, ground-fault, or short-circuit fault on the installation conductors of one alarm notification appliance circuit shall not affect the operation of any other alarm notification appliance circuit for more than 200 seconds regardless of whether the short-circuit fault is present during the normal or activated circuit state.

10.17.2 Supervised notification appliance control circuits shall comply with all of the following:

(1) A supervised notification appliance control circuit shall not serve more than one notification zone.
(2) The supervised notification appliance control circuit shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6.
(3) A fault in the supervised notification appliance control circuit installation conductors shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.18 Annunciation and Annunciation Zoning.

10.18.1 Alarm Annunciation. Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, the location of an operated initiating device shall be annunciated by visible means.

10.18.1.1 Visible annunciation of the location of an operated initiating device shall be by an indicator lamp, alphanumeric display, printout, or other approved means.

10.18.1.2* The visible annunciation of the location of operated initiating devices shall not be canceled by the means used to deactivate alarm notification appliances.

10.18.2 Supervisory and Trouble Annunciation. Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, supervisory or trouble conditions shall be annunciated by visible means.

10.18.2.1 Visible annunciation shall be by an indicator lamp, an alphanumeric display, a printout, or other means.

10.18.2.2 The visible annunciation of supervisory or trouble conditions shall not be canceled by the means used to deactivate supervisory or trouble notification appliances.

10.18.3* Annunciator Access and Location.

10.18.3.1 All required annunciation means shall be readily accessible to responding personnel.

10.18.3.2 All required annunciation means shall be located as required by the authority having jurisdiction to facilitate an efficient response to the situation.

10.18.4 Alarm Annunciation Display. Visible annunciators shall be capable of displaying all zones in alarm.

10.18.4.1 If all zones in alarm are not displayed simultaneously, the zone of origin shall be displayed.

10.18.4.2 If all zones in alarm are not displayed simultaneously, there shall be an indication that other zones are in alarm.

10.18.5* Annunciation Zoning.

10.18.5.1 For the purpose of alarm annunciation, each floor of the building shall be considered as a separate zone.

10.18.5.2 For the purposes of alarm annunciation, if a floor of the building is subdivided into multiple zones by fire or smoke barriers and the fire plan for the protected premises allows relocation of occupants from the zone of origin to another zone on the same floor, each zone on the floor shall be annunciated separately.

10.18.5.3 Where the system serves more than one building, each building shall be annunciated separately.

10.18.6* Emergency Services Interfaces. Where required by the enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, annunciators, information display systems, and controls for portions of a system provided for use by emergency service personnel shall be designed, arranged, and located in accordance with the requirements of the organizations intended to use the equipment.

10.19 Monitoring Integrity of In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems.

10.19.1* Audio Amplifier and Tone-Generating Equipment. If loudspeakers are used to produce audible fire alarm signals, the required trouble signal for 10.19.1.1 through 10.19.1.3 shall be in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.19.1.1 When primary power is available, failure of any audio amplifier shall result in a trouble signal.

10.19.1.2 When an alarm is present and primary power is not available (i.e., system is operating from the secondary power source), failure of any audio amplifier shall result in a trouble signal.

10.19.1.3* Failure of any tone-generating equipment shall result in a trouble signal, unless the tone-generating and amplifying equipment are enclosed as integral parts and serve only a single, listed loudspeaker.

10.19.2 Two-Way Telephone Communications Circuits.

10.19.2.1 Two-way telephone communications circuit installation conductors shall be monitored for open circuit fault conditions that would cause the telephone communications circuit to become fully or partially inoperative.

10.19.2.2 Two-way telephone communications circuit installation conductors shall be monitored for short circuit fault conditions that would cause the telephone communications circuit to become fully or partially inoperative.

10.19.2.3 Two-way telephone communications circuit fault conditions shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.20 Documentation and Notification.

10.20.1 Documentation shall be in accordance with Chapter 7.

10.20.2 The authority having jurisdiction shall be notified prior to installation or alteration of equipment or wiring.

10.21* Impairments.

Δ **10.21.1** The system owner or the owner's designated representative shall be notified within 8 hours when a system or part thereof is impaired.

N **10.21.2** Impairments to systems shall include out-of-service events.

10.21.3 A record of the impairments shall be maintained by the system owner or the owner's designated representative for a period of 1 year from the date the impairment is corrected.

10.21.4 The supervising station shall report to the authority having jurisdiction any system for which required monitoring has been terminated.

10.21.5* The service provider shall report to the authority having jurisdiction any system that is out of service for more than 8 hours.

10.21.6* Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, mitigating measures shall be implemented for the period that the system is impaired.

10.21.7 The system owner or the owner's designated representative and the authority having jurisdiction shall be notified when an impairment period ends.

10.22* Unwanted Alarms. For the purpose of reporting, alarm signals that are not the result of hazardous conditions shall be classified as Unwanted and subclassified as one of the following:

(1) Malicious alarm
(2) Nuisance alarm
(3) Unintentional alarm
(4) Unknown alarm

Chapter 11 Cybersecurity

Δ 11.1 Cybersecurity Provisions.

N 11.1.1* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code, cybersecurity shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 11 for equipment software, system support tools, installation methods, physical security of and access to equipment, data pathways, testing, and maintenance.

N 11.1.2* No minimum cybersecurity level shall be required for systems that meet both of the following conditions:

(1) No network connectable equipment
(2) No uploadable software configuration

N 11.2* Network Connectable Equipment Software Development and Production Environments. Development and production environments used to develop and manufacture network connectable equipment shall employ cybersecurity safeguards that are consistent with one or more of the following:

(1) NIST's "Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity"
(2) ISO/IEC 27001, *Information security management systems*
(3) IASME Consortium Cyber Essentials
(4) Other equivalent standards acceptable to a nationally recognized testing laboratory
(5)* Other applicable laws and regulations

N 11.3* Security Levels for Network Connectable Equipment. All interfaces used to communicate with network connectable equipment shall be protected in accordance with the following:

(1) For non-internet-protocol wired interfaces, one of the following:
   (a) Security Level 1 (SL1) in accordance with ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-4-2, *Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems, Part 4-2: Technical Security Requirements for IACS Components*
   (b) Security Level 1 (SL1) in accordance with ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-3-3, *Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems, Part 3-3: System Security Requirements and Security Levels*
   (c) Security Level 1 (SL1) in accordance with CAN/UL 2900-2-3, *Software Cybersecurity for Network-Connectable Products, Part 2-3: Particular Requirements for Security and Life Safety Signaling Systems*
   (d) Comparable level associated with Section 11.2(4)
(2) For non-internet-protocol wireless interfaces, or internet protocol wired and wireless interfaces that do not connect to publicly accessible networks, one of the following:
   (a) Security Level 2 (SL2) in accordance with ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-4-2
   (b) Security Level 2 (SL2) in accordance with ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-3-3
   (c) Security Level 2 (SL2) in accordance with CAN/UL 2900-2-3
   (d) Comparable level associated with Section 11.2(4)
(3) For internet protocol wired or wireless interfaces that connect to publicly accessible networks, one of the following:
   (a) Security Level 3 (SL3) in accordance with ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-4-2
   (b) Security Level 3 (SL3) in accordance with ANSI/ISA/IEC 62443-3-3
   (c) Security Level 3 (SL3) in accordance with CAN/UL 2900-2-3
   (d) Comparable level associated with Section 11.2(4)

N 11.4* Interconnecting Conductors, Cables, or Other Physical Pathways. Interconnecting conductors, cables, or other physical pathways for use in Security Level 2 or higher applications in locations accessible to the public shall be protected by metal raceways or metal armored cables.

N 11.5 Network Connectable Equipment Using Shared Pathways.

N 11.5.1 Network connectable equipment using the security levels required by Section 11.3(2) through Section 11.3(3) shall comply with 23.6.3.3 through 23.6.3.5 and 7.6.7.

N 11.5.2 Network connectable equipment using Shared Pathway Level 0, Shared Pathway Level 1, or Shared Pathway Level 2 shall comply with 23.6.3.3 through 23.6.3.5 and 7.6.7.

N 11.6 Unused Physical Data Ports. All unused physical data ports shall be protected in at least one of the following ways:

(1) Physically protected from unauthorized access
(2) Administratively disabled
(3) Configured to require a token-based authentication, certificate-based authentication, password, or other method that is consistent with the security requirements of the system

N 11.7* Data Connections to External Networks. When any data connection is made from the system to an external network, the connection shall be protected by a gateway or firewall that ensures that only trusted traffic is allowed to pass.

N 11.8 Network Connectable Equipment Cybersecurity Software Updates.

N 11.8.1 At least quarterly, the equipment manufacturer(s) shall do the following until the equipment is no longer supported by the manufacturer:

(1) Evaluate all relevant cybersecurity threats
(2) Determine if a software update is required to maintain the cybersecurity level achieved in compliance with Section 11.2

N 11.8.2 The system installer shall provide the name and contact information of the system owner or their representative to the equipment manufacturer(s) at the time of system acceptance testing.

N 11.8.3* The equipment manufacturer(s) shall notify the system owner or their representative of all required software security updates required to maintain the cybersecurity level achieved in compliance with Sections 11.2, 11.3, and 11.4.

N 11.8.4 Software for network connectable devices shall be maintained by installing software security updates as required by the equipment manufacturer(s) to maintain the cybersecurity level achieved in compliance with Sections 11.2, 11.3, and 11.4.

N 11.8.5 Software security updates that are deemed necessary by the equipment manufacturer(s) for compliance with Section 11.3 shall be installed at least annually.

N **11.8.6** Cybersecurity software updates applied to gateways or firewalls that do not affect the system site-specific or system executive software shall not be required to comply with 14.4.2.

N **11.8.7** Cybersecurity software changes to systems or system components shall be permitted to be made by remote access in accordance with 23.8.2.11.3.

N **11.9 Notification of Termination of Cybersecurity Update Support.** The manufacturer shall notify the system owner or their representative of the termination of cybersecurity software update support required by Section 11.8 for any element of the system.

N **11.10 Cybersecurity for System Support Tools.** A system support tool and the support tool interfaces shall comply with the requirements of Sections 11.2 through 11.9.

N **11.11 Evidence of Compliance.**

N **11.11.1** Evidence of cybersecurity compliance shall include one or more of the following:

(1) Certification of compliance by a nationally recognized testing laboratory
(2) Manufacturer certification for the specific type and brand of system provided by the manufacturer
(3) An assessment or certification program acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

N **11.11.2** The validity of cybersecurity certificates shall be verified annually by the person testing the system.

N **11.11.3** The validity of the equipment manufacturer's contact information for the system owner shall be verified annually by the person testing the system.

N **11.12 Documentation.** The standards used and security levels employed in complying with Chapter 11 shall be identified in the system documentation required by Chapter 7.

Chapter 12 Circuits and Pathways

12.1 Application. Pathways shall be designated based on the performance characteristics defined in this chapter.

•

12.2 General.

Δ **12.2.1*** Performance and survivability of signaling pathways shall comply with the defined designations of this chapter.

Δ **12.2.2** A pathway class designation shall be dependent on the pathway performance during abnormal conditions.

12.2.3 The installation of all pathway wiring, cable, and equipment shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70* and the applicable requirements of 12.2.3.1 through 12.2.3.4.

12.2.3.1 Optical fiber cables installed as part of the fire alarm system shall meet the requirements of Article 770 of *NFPA 70* and be protected against physical damage in accordance with Article 760 of *NFPA 70*.

12.2.3.2 Optical fiber cables entering from outside the building or structure shall also comply with Article 840 of *NFPA 70*.

12.2.3.3* Fire alarm system wiring and equipment, including all circuits controlled and powered by the fire alarm system, shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this Code and of Article 760 of *NFPA 70*.

12.2.3.4* Wiring methods permitted by other sections of this Code to resist attack by fire shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and the requirements of Articles 760 and 728 of *NFPA 70*.

12.2.3.5* Where operational performance of a pathway class designation is required to be maintained or continued during the occurrence of a fault, the operational performance required in 10.11.1 shall be restored within 200 seconds from the time the fault is introduced.

12.2.4 Ground Connections.

12.2.4.1 Unless otherwise permitted by 12.2.4.2, all fire alarm systems shall test free of grounds.

12.2.4.2 The requirements of 12.2.4.1 shall not be required where parts of circuits or equipment are intentionally and permanently grounded in order to provide ground fault detection, noise suppression, emergency ground signals, and circuit protection grounding.

12.2.4.3* On conductive pathways, operational performance shall be maintained during the application of a single ground connection.

12.3* Pathway Class Designations. Pathways shall be designated as Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, Class E, Class N, or Class X, depending on their performance.

12.3.1* Class A. A pathway shall be designated as Class A when it performs as follows:

(1) It includes a redundant path.
(2) Operational capability continues past a single open, and the single open fault results in the annunciation of a trouble signal.
(3) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the path are annunciated as a trouble signal.
(4) Operational capability on metallic conductors is maintained during the application of a single ground fault.
(5) A single ground condition on metallic conductors results in the annunciation of a trouble signal.

12.3.2 Class B. A pathway shall be designated as Class B when it performs as follows:

(1) It does not include a redundant path.
(2) Operational capability stops at a single open.
(3) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the path are annunciated as a trouble signal.
(4) Operational capability on metallic conductors is maintained during the application of a single ground fault.
(5) A single ground condition on metallic conductors results in the annunciation of a trouble signal.

12.3.3* Class C. A pathway shall be designated as Class C when it performs as follows:

(1) It includes one or more pathways where operational capability is verified via end-to-end communication, but the integrity of individual paths is not monitored.
(2) A loss of end-to-end communication is annunciated as a trouble signal.

12.3.4* Class D. A pathway shall be designated as Class D when it has fail-safe operation, where no fault is annunciated, but the intended operation is performed in the event of a pathway failure.

12.3.5* Class E. A pathway shall be designated as Class E when it is not monitored for integrity.

Δ **12.3.6* Class N.** A pathway shall be designated as Class N when it performs as follows:

(1) When two or more endpoint devices depend on a pathway, it includes a redundant path to those devices.
(2) When only one endpoint device is connected, a single path is permitted.
(3) Operational capability of the pathway(s) to each device is verified through end-to-end communication.
(4) A loss of communications between endpoints results in the annunciation of a trouble signal.
(5) A single open, ground, short, or combination of these faults on one pathway does not affect any other pathway.
(6)* Conditions that affect the operation of the primary pathway(s) and redundant pathway(s) result in the annunciation of a trouble signal when the system's minimal operational requirements cannot be met.
(7)* Primary and redundant paths do not share traffic over the same physical segment.

12.3.7 Class X. A pathway shall be designated as Class X when it performs as follows:

(1) It includes a redundant path.
(2) Operational capability continues past a single open, and the single open fault results in the annunciation of a trouble signal.
(3) Operational capability on metallic conductors continues past a single short-circuit, and the single short-circuit fault results in the annunciation of a trouble signal.
(4) Operational capability on metallic conductors continues past a combination open fault and ground fault.
(5) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the path are annunciated as a trouble signal.
(6) Operational capability on metallic conductors is maintained during the application of a single ground fault.

(7) A single ground condition on metallic conductors results in the annunciation of a trouble signal.

12.3.8* Class A, Class N, and Class X Pathway Separation. Class A, Class N, and Class X circuits using physical pathways shall be installed so that the primary and redundant, or outgoing and return, conductors exiting from and returning to the control unit, respectively, are routed separately.

12.3.8.1 The outgoing and return (redundant) circuit conductors shall be permitted in the same cable assembly (i.e., multiconductor cable), enclosure, or raceway only under the following conditions:

(1) For a distance not to exceed 10 ft (3.0 m) where the outgoing and return conductors enter or exit the initiating device, notification appliance, or control unit enclosures
(2) Single drops installed in the raceway to individual devices or appliances
(3)* In a single room not exceeding 1000 ft^2 (93 m^2) in area, a drop installed in the raceway to multiple devices or appliances that does not include any emergency control function interface devices

Δ **12.4* Pathway Survivability.**

12.4.1 Pathway Survivability Level 0. Level 0 pathways shall not be required to have any provisions for pathway survivability.

12.4.2 Pathway Survivability Level 1. Pathway survivability Level 1 shall consist of pathways in buildings that are fully protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 with any interconnecting conductors, cables, or other physical pathways protected by metal raceways or metal armored cables.

12.4.3* Pathway Survivability Level 2. Pathway survivability Level 2 shall consist of one or more of the following:

(1) 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable
(2) 2-hour fire-rated cable system (electrical circuit integrity systems)
(3) 2-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area
(4) Performance alternatives approved by the authority having jurisdiction

12.4.4* Pathway Survivability Level 3. Pathway survivability Level 3 shall consist of pathways in buildings that are fully protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 and one or more of the following:

(1) 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable
(2) 2-hour fire-rated cable system (electrical circuit integrity systems)
(3) 2-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area
(4) Performance alternatives approved by the authority having jurisdiction

12.4.5* Pathway Survivability Level 4. Pathway survivability Level 4 shall consist of one or more of the following:

(1) 1-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable
(2) 1-hour fire-rated cable system (electrical circuit integrity systems)
(3) 1-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area
(4) Performance alternatives approved by the authority having jurisdiction

12.5* Shared Pathway Designations. Shared pathways shall be designated as Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3, depending on their performance.

12.5.1* Shared Pathway Level 0. Level 0 pathways shall not be required to segregate or prioritize life safety data from non-life-safety data.

Δ **12.5.2* Shared Pathway Level 1.**

N **12.5.2.1** Level 1 pathways shall not be required to segregate life safety data from non-life-safety data.

N **12.5.2.2** Level 1 pathways shall prioritize all life safety data over non-life-safety data.

12.5.3* Shared Pathway Level 2. Level 2 pathways shall segregate all life safety data from non-life-safety data.

12.5.4* Shared Pathway Level 3. Level 3 pathways shall use equipment that is dedicated to the life safety system.

12.6* Monitoring Integrity and Circuit Performance of Installation Conductors and Other Signaling Channels.

12.6.1 Unless otherwise permitted or required by 12.3.1 through 12.3.7 and 12.6.3 through 12.6.10, all means of interconnecting equipment, devices, and appliances and wiring connections shall be monitored for the integrity of the interconnecting conductors or equivalent path so that the occurrence of a single open or a single ground-fault condition in the installation conductors or other signaling channels is automatically indicated within 200 seconds.

12.6.2 Unless otherwise permitted or required by 12.3.1 through 12.3.7 and 12.6.3 through 12.6.10, all means of interconnecting equipment, devices, and appliances and wiring connections shall be monitored for the integrity of the interconnecting conductors or equivalent path so that the restoration to normal of a single open or a single ground-fault condition in the installation conductors or other signaling channels is automatically indicated within 200 seconds.

12.6.3 Shorts between conductors shall not be required to be monitored for integrity, unless required by 12.6.12, 12.6.13, and 10.19.2.

•

12.6.4 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for connections to and between supplementary system components, provided that a single open, ground-fault, or short-circuit conditions of the supplementary equipment or interconnecting means, or both, do not affect the required operation of the fire alarm and/or signaling system.

•

12.6.5 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for a trouble notification appliance circuit.

12.6.6* Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the interconnection between listed equipment within a common enclosure.

12.6.7 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the interconnection between enclosures containing control equipment located within 20 ft (6 m) of each other where the conductors are installed in metal raceway or metal armored cable.

12.6.8 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the conductors for ground-fault detection where a single ground-fault does not prevent the required normal operation of the system.

•

12.6.9 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the interconnecting wiring or cabling of a stationary computer and the computer's keyboard, video monitor, mouse-type device, or touch screen if the interconnecting wiring or cabling meets all of the following conditions:

(1) The interconnecting wiring or cabling does not exceed 8 ft (2.4 m) in length.
(2) The interconnecting wiring or cabling is a listed computer/data processing cable as permitted by *NFPA 70*.
(3) Failure of the interconnecting wiring or cabling does not cause failure of the required system functions not initiated from the keyboard, mouse, or touch screen.

12.6.10 Monitoring for integrity of the installation conductors for a ground-fault condition shall not be required for the communications and transmission channels extending from a supervising station to a subsidiary station(s) or protected premises, or both, that comply with the requirements of Chapter 26 and are electrically isolated from the fire alarm system (or circuits) by a transmitter(s).

12.6.11 Interconnection means shall be arranged so that a single open or single ground-fault does not cause an alarm signal.

Δ **12.6.12** A wire-to-wire short-circuit fault on any alarm notification appliance circuit shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15, except as permitted by 12.6.4.

12.6.13 Where two or more systems are interconnected, the systems shall be connected using Class A, B, N, or X circuits as described in Section 12.3.

12.7* Nomenclature. The following nomenclature shall be used to identify the required properties of the system(s) interconnections and pathway survivability:

(1) System(s) interconnected pathways
(2) Pathway survivability levels (not required if Level 0)
(3) Shared pathway levels (not required if Level 0)
(4) Pathway class designation

Chapter 13 Reserved

Chapter 14 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance

14.1 Application.

14.1.1 The inspection, testing, and maintenance of systems, their initiating devices, and notification appliances shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

14.1.2 The inspection, testing, and maintenance of single- and multiple-station alarms and household alarm systems shall comply with 14.4.5 and 14.4.6. (SIG-HOU)

14.1.3 Procedures that are required by other parties and that exceed the requirements of this chapter shall be permitted.

14.1.4 The requirements of this chapter shall apply to both new and existing systems.

14.1.5 The requirements of Chapter 7 shall apply where referenced in Chapter 14.

N **14.1.6** This chapter shall not require inspection, testing, or maintenance personnel to verify the adequacy of the design of existing previously approved systems during periodic inspection, testing, and maintenance.

14.2 General.

14.2.1 Purpose.

14.2.1.1* The purpose for initial and reacceptance inspections shall be to ensure compliance with approved design documents and to ensure installation in accordance with this Code and other required installation standards.

14.2.1.2* The purpose for initial and reacceptance tests of fire alarm and signaling systems shall be to ensure system operation in accordance with the design documents.

14.2.1.3* The purpose for periodic inspections shall be to assure that obvious damages or changes that might affect the system operability are visually identified.

14.2.1.4* The purpose for periodic testing shall be to statistically assure operational reliability.

14.2.2 Performance.

14.2.2.1 Performance Verification. To ensure operational integrity, the system shall have an inspection, testing, and maintenance program.

14.2.2.1.1 Inspection, testing, and maintenance programs shall satisfy the requirements of this Code and conform to the equipment manufacturer's published instructions.

14.2.2.1.2* Inspection, testing, and maintenance programs shall verify correct operation of the system.

14.2.2.2 Impairments. Where an automatic function of a fire alarm or signaling system is taken out of service for testing and a manual means or other compensatory measures are unavailable, the system or portion thereof is impaired and shall comply with the requirements of Section 10.21 until the automatic function is restored.

14.2.2.3 Deficiencies.

14.2.2.3.1 System deficiencies shall be corrected.

14.2.2.3.2 If a deficiency is not corrected at the conclusion of system inspection, testing, or maintenance, the system owner or the owner's designated representative shall be informed of the deficiency in writing within 24 hours.

14.2.2.3.3 In the event that any equipment is observed to be part of a recall program, the system owner or the system owner's designated representative shall be notified in writing.

14.2.2.4 Observations.

14.2.2.4.1 If observations are noted, they shall be permitted to be communicated to the system owner.

14.2.2.4.2 The system owner shall not be required to address such observations unless the observations become an impairment or deficiency.

14.2.3 Responsibilities.

14.2.3.1* The property or building or system owner or the owner's designated representative shall be responsible for inspection, testing, and maintenance of the system and for alterations or additions to this system.

14.2.3.2 Where the property owner is not the occupant, the property owner shall be permitted to delegate the authority and responsibility for inspecting, testing, and maintaining the fire protection systems to the occupant, management firm, or managing individual through specific provisions in the lease, written use agreement, or management contract.

14.2.3.3 Inspection, testing, or maintenance shall be permitted to be done by the building or system owner or a person or organization other than the building or system owner if conducted under a written contract.

14.2.3.4 Where the building or system owner has delegated any responsibilities for inspection, testing, or maintenance, a copy of the written delegation required by 14.2.3.3 shall be provided to the authority having jurisdiction upon request.

14.2.3.5 Testing and maintenance of central station service systems shall be performed under the contractual arrangements specified in 26.3.3.

14.2.3.6* Service Personnel Qualifications and Experience. Service personnel shall be qualified and experienced in accordance with the requirements of 10.5.3.

14.2.4* Notification.

14.2.4.1 Before proceeding with any testing, all persons and facilities receiving alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals and all building occupants shall be notified of the testing to prevent unnecessary response.

14.2.4.2 At the conclusion of testing, those previously notified (and others, as necessary) shall be notified that testing has been concluded.

14.2.4.3 The owner or the owner's designated representative and service personnel shall coordinate system testing to prevent interruption of critical building systems or equipment.

14.2.5 System Documentation. Prior to system maintenance or testing, the record of completion and any information required by Chapter 7 regarding the system and system alterations, including specifications, wiring diagrams, and floor plans, shall be provided by the owner or a designated representative to the service personnel upon request.

14.2.5.1 The provided documentation shall include the current revisions of all fire alarm software and the revisions of software of any systems with which the fire alarm software interfaces.

14.2.5.2 The revisions of fire alarm software, and the revisions of the software in the systems with which the fire alarm software interfaces, shall be verified for compatibility in accordance with the requirements of 23.2.2.1.1.

14.2.6 Releasing Systems. Requirements pertinent to testing the fire alarm systems initiating fire suppression system releasing functions shall be covered by 14.2.6.1 through 14.2.6.6.

14.2.6.1 Testing personnel shall be qualified and experienced in the specific arrangement and operation of a suppression system and related releasing functions and cognizant of the hazards associated with inadvertent system discharge.

14.2.6.2 Occupant notification shall be required whenever a fire alarm system configured for releasing service is being serviced or tested.

14.2.6.3 Discharge testing of suppression systems shall not be required by this Code.

14.2.6.4 Suppression systems shall be secured from inadvertent actuation, including disconnection of releasing solenoids or electric actuators, closing of valves, other actions, or combinations thereof, for the specific system, for the duration of the fire alarm system testing.

14.2.6.5 Testing shall include verification that the releasing circuits and components energized or actuated by the fire alarm system are electrically monitored for integrity and operate as intended on alarm.

14.2.6.6 Suppression systems and releasing components shall be returned to their functional operating condition upon completion of system testing.

14.2.7 Interface Equipment and Emergency Control Functions.

14.2.7.1* Testing personnel shall be qualified and experienced in the arrangement and operation of interface equipment and emergency control functions.

14.2.7.2 Testing shall be accomplished in accordance with Table 14.4.3.2.

14.2.8 Automated Testing.

14.2.8.1 Automated testing arrangements that provide equivalent means of testing devices to those specified in Table 14.4.3.2 at a frequency at least equivalent to those specified in Table 14.4.3.2 shall be permitted to be used to comply with the requirements of this chapter.

14.2.8.2 Failure of a device on an automated test shall result in an audible and visual trouble signal.

14.2.9* Performance-Based Inspection and Testing. As an alternate means of compliance, subject to the authority having jurisdiction, components and systems shall be permitted to be inspected and tested under a performance-based program.

14.2.10* Test Plan.

14.2.10.1 A test plan shall be developed to clearly establish the scope of the testing for the fire alarm or signaling system.

14.2.10.2 The test plan and results shall be documented with the testing records.

14.3 Inspection.

14.3.1* Unless otherwise permitted by 14.3.2, visual inspections shall be performed in accordance with the authority having jurisdiction or with the schedules provided in Table 14.3.1, whichever is more frequent.

14.3.2* Devices or equipment that is inaccessible for safety considerations (e.g., continuous process operations, energized electrical equipment, radiation, and excessive height) shall be permitted to be inspected during scheduled shutdowns if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

14.3.3 Extended intervals shall not exceed 18 months.

14.3.4 Initial and reacceptance inspections shall be made to ensure compliance with approved design documents and to ensure installation in accordance with this Code and other required installation standards.

14.3.5 Periodic visual inspections in accordance with Table 14.3.1 shall be made to assure that there are no changes that affect equipment performance.

14.4 Testing.

14.4.1 Initial Acceptance Testing.

14.4.1.1 All new systems shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

14.4.1.2 The authority having jurisdiction shall be notified prior to the initial acceptance test.

14.4.2* Reacceptance Testing.

14.4.2.1 When an initiating device, notification appliance, or control relay is added, it shall be functionally tested.

14.4.2.2 When an initiating device, notification appliance, or control relay is deleted, another device, appliance, or control relay on the circuit shall be functionally tested.

Δ **14.4.2.3*** When control unit hardware is modified or repaired, the control unit shall be tested in accordance with items 2(1) and 2(4) of Table 14.4.3.2.

Δ **14.4.2.4** When site-specific software is changed, the following shall apply:

(1) All functions known to be affected by the change, or identified by a means that indicates changes, shall be 100 percent tested.
(2) Ten percent of initiating devices that are not directly affected by the change, up to a maximum of 50 devices, shall be tested to verify correct system operation.
(3) A revised record of completion in accordance with 7.5.6 shall be prepared to reflect the change.

14.4.2.5 Changes to the system executive software shall require a 10 percent functional test of the system, including a test of at least one device on each input and output circuit to verify critical system functions such as notification appliances, control functions, and off-premises reporting.

Δ Table 14.3.1 Visual Inspection

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
1.	All equipment	X	Annual	Ensure there are no changes that affect equipment performance. Inspect for building modifications, occupancy changes, changes in environmental conditions, device location, physical obstructions, device orientation, physical damage, and degree of cleanliness.	14.3.4; 14.3.5
2.	Control equipment:				
	(1) Fire alarm systems monitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals			Verify a system normal condition.	
	(a) Fuses	X	Annual		
	(b) Interfaced equipment	X	Annual		
	(c) Lamps and LEDs	X	Annual		
	(d) Primary (main) power supply	X	Annual		
	(e) Trouble signals	X	Semiannual		
	(2) Fire alarm systems unmonitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals			Verify a system normal condition.	
	(a) Fuses	X	Weekly		
	(b) Interfaced equipment	X	Weekly		
	(c) Lamps and LEDs	X	Weekly		
	(d) Primary (main) power supply	X	Weekly		
	(e) Trouble signals	X	Weekly		
3.	Reserved				
4.	Supervising station alarm systems — transmitters			Verify location, physical condition, and a system normal condition.	
	(1) Digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT)	X	Annual		
	(2) Digital alarm radio transmitter (DART)	X	Annual		
	(3) McCulloh transmitter	X	Annual		
	(4) Radio alarm transmitter (RAT)	X	Annual		
	(5) All other types of communicators	X	Annual		
5.	In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications equipment	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
6.	Reserved				
7.	Reserved				
8.	Reserved				
9.*	Batteries				10.6.10
	(1) Valve-regulated lead-acid (VRLA) batteries				
	(a) General	X	N/A	Ensure month and year of manufacture is marked in the month/year format on each battery cell/unit. Verify tightness of battery connections. Inspect terminals for corrosion, excessive container/cover distortion, cracks in cell/unit, or leakage of electrolyte. Replace any battery cell/unit if corrosion, distortion, or leakage is observed.	
	(b) Marking	N/A	Semiannual	Verify marking of the month/year of manufacture on each battery cell/unit. Replace any cell/unit if alarm equipment manufacturer's replacement date has been exceeded.	

(continues)

Δ Table 14.3.1 *Continued*

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
	(2) Primary (dry cell) batteries other than those used in low-power radio (wireless) systems in accordance with Chapter 23	X	Semiannual	Ensure a minimum of 60 percent shelf life is remaining based on the use-by date printed on the battery. Record the installed date on the battery. Replace if alarm equipment/battery manufacturer's replacement date has been exceeded. Replacement date not to exceed 12 months from the installed date. Verify tightness of connections. Inspect for corrosion or leakage. Replace any battery cell/unit if corrosion or leakage is observed.	
10.	Reserved				
11.	Remote annunciators	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
12.	Notification appliance circuit (NAC) power extenders	X	Annual	Verify proper fuse ratings, if any. Verify that lamps and LEDs indicate normal operating status of the equipment.	10.6
13.	Remote power supplies	X	Annual	Verify proper fuse ratings, if any. Verify that lamps and LEDs indicate normal operating status of the equipment.	10.6
14.	Surge protective devices	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
15.	Reserved				
16.	Optical fiber cable connections	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	
17.	Initiating devices			Verify location and condition (all devices).	
	(1) Air sampling				
	(a) General	X	Semiannual	Verify that in-line filters, if any, are clean.	17.7.4.6
	(b) Sampling system piping and sampling ports	X	N/A	Verify that sampling system piping and fittings are installed properly, appear airtight, and are permanently fixed. Confirm that sampling pipe is conspicuously identified. Verify that sample ports or points are not obstructed.	17.7.4.6
	(2) Duct detectors				
	(a) General	X	Semiannual	Verify that detector is rigidly mounted. Confirm that no penetrations in a return air duct exist in the vicinity of the detector. Confirm the detector is installed to sample the airstream at the proper location in the duct.	17.7.6.5
	(b) Sampling tube	X	Annual	Verify proper orientation. Confirm the sampling tube protrudes into the duct in accordance with system design.	17.7.6.5
	(3) Electromechanical releasing devices	X	Semiannual		
	(4) Fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s) switches	X	Semiannual		
	(5) Manual fire alarm boxes	X	Semiannual		
	(6) Heat detectors	X	Semiannual		
	(7) Radiant energy fire detectors	X	Quarterly	Verify no point requiring detection is obstructed or outside the detector's field of view.	17.8
	(8) Video image smoke and fire detectors	X	Quarterly	Verify no point requiring detection is obstructed or outside the detector's field of view.	17.7.8; 17.8.5
	(9) Smoke detectors (excluding one- and two-family dwellings)	X	Semiannual		
	(10) Projected beam smoke detectors	X	Semiannual	Verify beam path is unobstructed.	
	(11) Supervisory signal devices	X	Semiannual		
	(12) Waterflow devices	X	Semiannual		
18.	Reserved				

(continues)

Δ Table 14.3.1 *Continued*

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
19.	Combination systems			Verify location and condition (all types).	
	(1) Fire extinguisher electronic monitoring devices/systems	X	Semiannual		
	(2) Carbon monoxide detectors/systems	X	Semiannual		
20.	Alarm control interfaces and emergency control function interfaces	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
21.	Guard's tour equipment	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
22.	Notification appliances			Verify location and condition (all appliances).	
	(1) Audible appliances	X	Semiannual		
	(2) Loudspeakers	X	Semiannual		
	(3) Visual appliances				
	(a) General	X	Semiannual		18.5.5
	(b) Candela rating	X	N/A	Verify the appliance candela rating marking or the fire alarm control unit–controlled (FACU-controlled) candela rating agrees with the approved drawings.	18.5.5
23.	Exit marking audible notification appliances	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
24.	Reserved				
25.	Two-way emergency communications systems	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	
26.	Reserved				
27.	Supervising station alarm systems — receivers				
	(1) Signal receipt	X	Daily	Verify receipt of signal.	
	(2) Receivers	X	Annual	Verify location and normal condition.	
28.	Public emergency alarm reporting system transmission equipment			Verify location and condition.	
	(1) Publicly accessible alarm box	X	Semiannual		
	(2) Auxiliary box	X	Annual		
	(3) Master box				
	(a) Manual operation	X	Semiannual		
	(b) Auxiliary operation	X	Annual		
29.	Reserved				
30.	Mass notification system (MNS)				
	(1) Monitored for integrity			Verify a system normal condition.	
	(a) Control equipment				
	i. Fuses	X	Annual		
	ii. Interfaces	X	Annual		
	iii. Lamps and LEDs	X	Annual		
	iv. Primary (main) power supply	X	Annual		
	(b) Secondary power batteries	X	Annual		
	(c) Initiating devices	X	Annual		
	(d) Notification appliances	X	Annual		
	(2) Not monitored for integrity; installed prior to adoption of the 2010 edition			Verify a system normal condition.	
	(a) Control equipment				
	i. Fuses	X	Semiannual		
	ii. Interfaces	X	Semiannual		
	iii. Lamps and LEDs	X	Semiannual		
	iv. Primary (main) power supply	X	Semiannual		
	(b) Secondary power batteries	X	Semiannual		
	(c) Initiating devices	X	Semiannual		
	(d) Notification appliances	X	Semiannual		
	(3) Antenna	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	
	(4) Transceivers	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	

N/A: Not applicable, no minimum requirement established.

*For other than VRLA or primary (dry) cell batteries, refer to the battery manufacturer's published instructions or IEEE 450, *Recommended Practice for Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Vented Lead-Acid Batteries for Stationary Applications*, for vented lead-acid batteries, and IEEE 1106, *Recommended Practice for Installation, Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Vented Nickel-Cadmium Batteries for Stationary Applications*, for nickel-cadmium batteries.

14.4.2.6 Where changes are made to system executive software or site-specific software for control equipment or transmitting equipment from a remote location not on the protected premises, such changes shall not be made without an individual, meeting the qualifications of 10.5.3.2, 10.5.3.3, or 10.5.3.5, being at the protected premises to verify that testing is accomplished in accordance with 14.4.2.

14.4.3* Test Methods.

14.4.3.1* At the request of the authority having jurisdiction, the central station facility installation shall be inspected for complete information regarding the central station system, including specifications, wiring diagrams, and floor plans that have been submitted for approval prior to installation of equipment and wiring.

14.4.3.2* Systems and associated equipment shall be tested according to Table 14.4.3.2.

14.4.3.3 Video image smoke and flame detectors shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

N **14.4.3.4** Thermal image fire detectors shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.3.5 Gas detectors shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with manufacturers' published instructions.

14.4.3.6 Testing of Carbon Monoxide System Detectors. For all carbon monoxide system detectors carbon monoxide tests shall be performed at initial acceptance and annually by the introduction of carbon monoxide into the sensing chamber or element.

14.4.4* Testing Frequency. Unless otherwise permitted by other sections of this Code, testing shall be performed in accordance with the authority having jurisdiction or with the schedules provided in Table 14.4.3.2, whichever is more frequent.

14.4.4.1* Devices or equipment that are inaccessible for safety considerations (e.g., continuous process operations, energized electrical equipment, radiation, and excessive height) shall be permitted to be tested during scheduled shutdowns if approved by the authority having jurisdiction and if the extended intervals do not exceed 18 months.

Δ **14.4.4.2** If automatic testing is performed at least weekly by a remotely monitored fire alarm control unit specifically listed for the application, the manual testing frequency shall be permitted to be extended to annually in accordance with Table 14.4.3.2.

14.4.4.3* In other than one- and two-family dwellings, sensitivity of smoke detectors shall be tested in accordance with 14.4.4.3.1 through 14.4.4.3.6.

14.4.4.3.1 Sensitivity shall be checked within 1 year after installation.

14.4.4.3.2 Sensitivity shall be checked every alternate year thereafter unless otherwise permitted by compliance with 14.4.4.3.3.

14.4.4.3.3 After the second required calibration test, if sensitivity tests indicate that the device has remained within its listed and marked sensitivity range, the length of time between calibration tests shall be permitted to be extended to a maximum of 5 years.

14.4.4.3.3.1 If the frequency is extended, records of nuisance alarms and subsequent trends of these alarms shall be maintained.

14.4.4.3.3.2 In zones or in areas where nuisance alarms show any increase over the previous year, calibration tests shall be performed.

14.4.4.3.4 Unless otherwise permitted by 14.4.4.3.5, smoke detectors found to have a sensitivity outside the listed and marked sensitivity range shall be cleaned and recalibrated or be replaced.

14.4.4.3.5 Smoke detectors listed as field adjustable shall be permitted to either be adjusted within the listed and marked sensitivity range, cleaned, and recalibrated, or be replaced.

14.4.4.3.6 The detector sensitivity shall not be tested or measured using any device that administers an unmeasured concentration of smoke or other aerosol into the detector or smoke alarm.

14.4.4.4 Test frequency of interfaced equipment shall be the same as specified by the applicable NFPA standards for the equipment being supervised.

14.4.4.5 Restorable fixed-temperature, spot-type heat detectors shall be tested in accordance with 14.4.4.5.1 through 14.4.4.5.4.

14.4.4.5.1 Two or more detectors shall be tested on each initiating circuit annually.

14.4.4.5.2 Different detectors shall be tested each year.

14.4.4.5.3 Test records shall be kept by the building owner specifying which detectors have been tested.

14.4.4.5.4 Within 5 years, each detector shall have been tested.

Δ **14.4.4.6** Carbon monoxide apparatus that require resetting to maintain normal operation shall be restored to normal as promptly as possible after each test and alarm and kept in normal condition for operation.

N **14.4.4.6.1** All carbon monoxide test signals received shall be recorded to indicate date and time.

14.4.4.7* Circuit and pathway testing of each monitored circuit or pathway shall be conducted with initial acceptance or reacceptance testing to verify signals are indicated at the control unit for each of the abnormal conditions specified in Sections 23.5 through 23.7.

14.4.4.8 Unless otherwise permitted by 14.4.4.9, the retransmission means as defined in Section 26.3 shall be tested at intervals of not more than 12 hours.

14.4.4.9 When the retransmission means is the public-switched telephone network, testing shall be permitted at weekly intervals to confirm its operation to each communications center.

14.4.4.10 As a part of the testing required in 14.4.4.8, the retransmission signal and the time and date of the retransmission shall be recorded in the central station.

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 Testing

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
1.	All equipment	X		See Table 14.3.1.
2.	Control unit			
	(1) Functions	X	Annually	Verify correct receipt of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals (inputs); operation of evacuation signals and auxiliary functions (outputs); circuit supervision, including detection of open circuits and ground faults; and power supply supervision for detection of loss of ac power and disconnection of secondary batteries.
	(2) Fuses	X	Annually	Verify rating and supervision.
	(3) Interfaced equipment	X	Annually	Verify integrity of single or multiple circuits providing interface between two or more control units. Test interfaced equipment connections by operating or simulating operation of the equipment being supervised. Verify signals required to be transmitted at the control unit.
	(4) Lamps and LEDs	X	Annually	Illuminate lamps and LEDs.
	(5) Primary (main) power supply	X	Annually	Disconnect all secondary (standby) power and test under maximum load, including all alarm appliances requiring simultaneous operation. Reconnect all secondary (standby) power at end of test. Test redundant power supplies separately.
3.	Alarm control unit trouble signals			
	(1) Audible and visual	X	Annually	Verify operation of control unit trouble signals. Verify ring-back feature for systems using a trouble-silencing switch that requires resetting.
	(2) Disconnect switches	X	Annually	If control unit has disconnect or isolating switches, verify performance of intended function of each switch. Verify receipt of trouble signal when a supervised function is disconnected.
	(3) Ground-fault monitoring circuit	X	Annually	If the system has a ground detection feature, verify the occurrence of ground-fault indication whenever any installation conductor is grounded.
	(4) Transmission of signals to off-premises location	X	Annually	Actuate an initiating device and verify receipt of alarm signal at the off-premises location. Create a trouble condition and verify receipt of a trouble signal at the off-premises location. Actuate a supervisory device and verify receipt of a supervisory signal at the off-premises location. If a transmission carrier is capable of operation under a single- or multiple-fault condition, actuate an initiating device during such fault condition and verify receipt of an alarm signal and a trouble signal at the off-premises location.
4.	Supervising station alarm systems — transmission equipment			
	(1) All equipment	X	Annually	Test all system functions and features in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's published instructions for correct operation in conformance with the applicable sections of Chapter 26.[a] Except for DACT, actuate initiating device and verify receipt of the correct initiating device signal at the supervising station within 90 seconds. Upon completion of the test, restore the system to its functional operating condition. If test jacks are used, conduct the first and last tests without the use of the test jack.
	(2) Digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT)	X	Annually	Except for DACTs installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72* that are connected to a telephone line (number) that is also supervised for adverse conditions by a derived local channel, ensure connection of the DACT to two separate means of transmission. Test DACT for line seizure capability by initiating a signal while using the telephone line (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines) for a telephone call. Ensure that the call is interrupted and that the communicator connects to the digital alarm receiver. Verify receipt of the correct signal at the supervising station. Verify each transmission attempt is completed within 90 seconds from going off-hook to on-hook. Disconnect the telephone line (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines) from the DACT. Verify indication of the DACT trouble signal occurs at the premises fire alarm control unit (FACU) within 4 minutes of detection of the fault. Verify receipt of the telephone line trouble signal at the supervising station. Restore the telephone line (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines), reset the FACU, and verify that the telephone line fault trouble signal returns to normal. Verify that the supervising station receives the restoral signal from the DACT. Disconnect the secondary means of transmission from the DACT. Verify indication of the DACT trouble signal occurs at the premises FACU within 4 minutes of detection of the fault. Verify receipt of the secondary means trouble signal at the supervising station. Restore the secondary means of transmission, reset the FACU, and verify that the trouble signal returns to normal. Verify that the supervising station receives the restoral signal from the secondary transmitter. Cause the DACT to transmit a signal to the DACR while a fault in the telephone line (number) (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines) is simulated. Verify utilization of the secondary communications path by the DACT to complete the transmission to the DACR.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
	(3) Digital alarm radio transmitter (DART)	X	Annually	Disconnect the primary telephone line. Verify transmission of a trouble signal to the supervising station by the DART occurs within 4 minutes.
	(4) McCulloh transmitter	X	Annually	Actuate initiating device. Verify production of not less than three complete rounds of not less than three signal impulses each by the McCulloh transmitter. If end-to-end metallic continuity is present and with a balanced circuit, cause each of the following four transmission channel fault conditions in turn and verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) Open (2) Ground (3) Wire-to-wire short (4) Open and ground If end-to-end metallic continuity is not present and with a balanced circuit, cause each of the following three transmission channel fault conditions in turn and verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) Open (2) Ground (3) Wire-to-wire short
	(5) Radio alarm transmitter (RAT)	X	Annually	Cause a fault between elements of the transmitting equipment. Verify indication of the fault at the protected premises, or transmission of trouble signal to the supervising station.
	(6) Performance-based technologies	X	Annually	Perform tests to ensure the monitoring of integrity of the transmission technology and technology path. Where shared communications equipment is used as permitted by 26.6.3.12, test secondary (standby) power sources in accordance with item 7, 8, or 9, as applicable. Where a single communications path is used, disconnect the communication path. Manually initiate an alarm signal transmission or allow the check-in (handshake) signal to be transmitted automatically. Verify the premises unit annunciates the failure within 200 seconds of the transmission failure.[b] Restore the communication path. Where multiple communication paths are used, disconnect all communication paths. Manually initiate an alarm signal transmission. Verify the premises control unit annunciates the failure within 200 seconds of the transmission failure. Restore all communication paths.
5.	Emergency communications equipment			
	(1) Amplifier/tone generators	X	Annually	Verify correct switching and operation of backup equipment.
	(2) Call-in signal silence	X	Annually	Operate/function and verify receipt of correct visual and audible signals at control unit.
	(3) Off-hook indicator (ring down)	X	Annually	Install phone set or remove phone from hook and verify receipt of signal at control unit.
	(4) Phone jacks	X	Annually	Visually inspect phone jack and initiate communications path through jack.
	(5) Phone set	X	Annually	Actuate each phone set and verify correct operation.
	(6) System performance	X	Annually	Operate the system with a minimum of any five handsets simultaneously. Verify voice quality and clarity.
6.	Engine-driven generator	X	Monthly	If an engine-driven generator dedicated to the system is used as a required power source, verify operation of the generator and transfer switch in accordance with NFPA 110 by the building owner.
7.	Emergency power supply system/ stored-emergency power supply system (EPSS/SEPSS)	X	Annually	If an EPSS/SEPSS dedicated to the system is used as a required power source, verify by the building owner operation of the EPSS/SEPSS in accordance with NFPA 111.
8.	Secondary (standby) power supply[c]	X	Annually	Disconnect all primary (main) power supplies and verify the occurrence of required trouble indication for loss of primary power. Measure or verify the system's standby and alarm current demand using the equipment manufacturer's data and verify the battery's rated capacity exceeds the system's power demand, including the safety margin. Operate general alarm systems for a minimum of 5 minutes and emergency voice communications systems for a minimum of 15 minutes. Reconnect primary (main) power supply at end of test.
9.	VRLA battery and charger[d]			Prior to conducting any battery testing, verify by the person conducting the test that all system software stored in volatile memory is protected from loss.
	(1) Temperature test	X	Semiannually	Upon initially opening the cabinet door, measure the internal ambient temperature of the enclosure. Measure the temperature of each battery cell/unit at the negative terminal with an infrared thermometer. Replace any battery cell/unit if its temperature is greater than 18°F (10°C) above the measured internal ambient temperature of the enclosure.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
	(2) Charger test	X	Semiannually	With the battery fully charged and connected to the charger, measure the voltage across the battery with a voltmeter. Verify the voltage is within the battery/alarm equipment manufacturer's recommendations. If the voltage is outside of the specified limits, either adjust the charger to within limits or replace the charger. If the charger is adjustable, adjust the output voltage to 2.265 volts, ±0.015 volts, per cell at 77°F (25°C) or as specified by the alarm equipment manufacturer.
	(3) Cell/Unit voltage test	X	Semiannually	With the battery fully charged and connected to the charger, measure the voltage of each cell/unit with a voltmeter. Replace the battery when any cell/unit measures a voltage less than 13.26 volts.
	(4) Ohmic test[e]	X	N/A	When the battery is installed, establish a baseline ohmic value for each battery cell/unit or, where available, use baseline ohmic values provided by the battery or test equipment manufacturer. In either case, record the base line ohmic value on each battery cell/unit.
			Semiannually	With the battery fully charged, measure the internal ohmic value of each battery cell/unit. Record the test date and ohmic value on each cell/unit. Replace the battery when the ohmic measurement of any cell/unit deviates from the established baseline by 30 percent or more for conductance, or 40 percent or more for resistance or impedance. Where the battery or test equipment manufacturer's baseline ohmic values are used, replace the battery when any cell/unit has an internal ohmic value outside of the acceptable range. A load test performed in accordance with item 9(5) is an acceptable alternative for an ohmic test.
	(5) Replacement/Load test[f]		Every 3 years	Replace the battery or conduct a load test of the battery capacity. Load test the battery, based on the manufacturer's specifications for a discharge rate of 3 hours or more, by applying the current indicated for the selected hourly discharge rate continuously until the terminal voltage decreases to the end voltage specified by the manufacturer. Record the test duration and calculate the battery capacity including adjustment for ambient temperature. Replace the battery if capacity is less than or equal to 80 percent or at the next scheduled test interval if battery capacity is less than 85 percent.
10.	Public emergency alarm reporting system — wired system	X	Daily	Manually test the power supply for public reporting circuits and document the tests at least once during each 24-hour period. Test the following: (1) Current strength of each circuit. Immediately investigate changes in current of any circuit exceeding 10 percent. (2) Voltage across terminals of each circuit inside of protective devices. Immediately investigate changes in voltage of any circuit exceeding 10 percent. (3) Voltage between ground and circuits. Immediately locate and clear the trouble if this test shows a reading in excess of 50 percent of that shown in the test specified in (2). Give early attention to readings in excess of 25 percent. Measure all readings with a calibrated voltmeter of not more than 100 ohms resistance per volt. Systems in which each circuit is supplied by an independent current source (Forms 3 and 4) require tests between ground and each side of each circuit. Common current source systems (Form 2) require voltage tests between ground and each terminal of each battery and other current source.[g] (4) Ground current readings are permitted in lieu of (3). If this method of testing is used, give immediate attention to all grounds showing a current reading in excess of 5 percent of the supplied line current. (5) Voltage across terminals of common battery on switchboard side of fuses. (6) Voltage between common battery terminals and ground. Immediately investigate abnormal ground readings. Tests specified in (5) and (6) apply only to those systems using a common battery. If more than one common battery is used, test each common battery.
11.	Remote annunciators	X	Annually	Verify the correct operation and identification of annunciators. If provided, verify the correct operation of annunciators under a fault condition.
12.	Reserved			
13.	Reserved			
14.	Wireless communications	X	Annually	Test in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.
15.	Conductors — metallic			
	(1) Stray voltage	X	N/A	Test all installation conductors with a volt/ohmmeter to verify that there are no stray (unwanted) voltages between installation conductors or between installation conductors and ground. Verify the maximum allowable stray voltage does not exceed 1 volt ac/dc, unless a different threshold is specified in the manufacturer's published instructions for the installed equipment.
	(2) Ground faults	X	N/A	Test all installation conductors, other than those intentionally and permanently grounded, for isolation from ground in accordance with the installed equipment manufacturer's published instructions.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(3) Short-circuit faults	X	N/A	Test all installation conductors, other than those intentionally connected together, for conductor-to-conductor isolation in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions for the installed equipment. Also test these same circuits conductor-to-ground.
(4) Loop resistance	X	N/A	With each initiating and indicating circuit installation conductor pair short-circuited at the far end, measure and record the resistance of each circuit. Verify that the loop resistance does not exceed the limits specified in the manufacturer's published instructions for the installed equipment.
(5) Circuit integrity	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, confirm the introduction of a fault in any circuit monitored for integrity results in a trouble indication at the FACU. Open one connection at not less than 10 percent of the initiating devices, notification appliances, and controlled devices on every initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.
	N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, test each initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit for correct indication at the control unit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.
16. Nonmetallic pathways			
(1) Optical fiber cables	X	N/A	Test the transmission characteristics of optical fibers with an optical power meter or with an optical time domain reflectometer used to measure the relative power loss of the line. Test result data must meet or exceed ANSI/TIA 568.3, *Optical Fiber Cabling and Components Standard*, related to fiber-optic lines and connection/splice losses and the control unit manufacturer's published specifications.
(2) Circuit integrity	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, confirm the introduction of a fault in any circuit monitored for integrity results in a trouble indication at the FACU. Open one connection at not less than 10 percent of the initiating devices, notification appliances, and controlled devices on every initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.
	N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, test each initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit for correct indication at the control unit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.
17. Initiating devices[h]			
(1) Electromechanical releasing device			
(a) Nonrestorable-type link	X	Annually	Verify correct operation by removal of the fusible link and operation of the associated device.
(b) Restorable-type link[i]	X	Annually	Verify correct operation by removal of the fusible link and operation of the associated device.
(2) Fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s) alarm switch	X	Annually	Operate the switch mechanically or electrically and verify receipt of signal by the FACU.
(3) Fire–gas and other detectors	X	Annually	Test fire–gas detectors and other fire detectors as prescribed by the manufacturer and as necessary for the application.
(4) Heat detectors			
(a) Fixed-temperature, rate-of-rise, rate of compensation, restorable line, spot type (excluding pneumatic tube type)	X	Annually (see 14.4.4.5)	Perform heat test with a listed and labeled heat source or in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Assure that the test method for the installed equipment does not damage the nonrestorable fixed-temperature element of a combination rate-of-rise/fixed-temperature element detector.
(b) Fixed-temperature, nonrestorable line type	X	Annually	Do not perform heat test. Test functionality mechanically and electrically. Measure and record loop resistance. Investigate changes from acceptance test.
(c) Fixed-temperature, nonrestorable spot type	X	See Method column	After 15 years from initial installation, replace all devices or have 2 per every 100 detectors laboratory tested. Replace the 2 detectors with new devices. If a failure occurs on any of the detectors removed, remove and test additional detectors to determine either a general problem involving faulty detectors or a localized problem involving 1 or 2 defective detectors. If detectors are tested instead of replaced, repeat tests at intervals of 5 years. Do not perform heat tests. If verifying electrical continuity or supervision, test mechanically or electrically in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
(d) Restorable line type, pneumatic tube only	X	Annually	Perform heat tests (where test chambers are in circuit) with a listed and labeled heat source or in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions of the detector, or conduct a test with pressure pump.
(e) Single- and multiple-station heat alarms	X	Annually	Conduct functional tests according to the manufacturer's published instructions. Do not test nonrestorable heat detectors with heat.
(5) Manual fire alarm boxes	X	Annually	Operate manual fire alarm boxes in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Test both key-operated presignal and general alarm manual fire alarm boxes.
(6) Radiant energy fire detectors	X	Semiannually	Test flame detectors and spark/ember detectors in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions to determine that each detector is operative.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
			Determine flame detector and spark/ember detector sensitivity using any of the following: (1) Calibrated test method (2) Manufacturer's calibrated sensitivity test instrument (3) Listed control unit arranged for the purpose (4) Other approved calibrated sensitivity test method that is directly proportional to the input signal from a fire, consistent with the detector listing or approval If designed to be field adjustable, replace detectors found to be outside of the approved range of sensitivity or adjust to bring them into the approved range. Do not determine flame detector and spark/ember detector sensitivity using a light source that administers an unmeasured quantity of radiation at an undefined distance from the detector.
(7) Smoke detectors — functional test			
(a) In other than one- and two-family dwellings, system detectors	X	Annually	Test smoke detectors in place to ensure smoke entry into the sensing chamber and an alarm response.[j] Use smoke or a listed and labeled product acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with their published instructions. Other methods listed in the manufacturer's published instructions that ensure smoke entry from the protected area, through the vents, or into the sensing chamber can be used. Magnets are not acceptable for smoke entry tests.
(b) Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms connected to protected premises systems	X	Annually	Perform a functional test on all single- and multiple-station smoke alarms connected to a protected premises fire alarm system by putting the smoke alarm into an alarm condition.
(c) System smoke detectors used in one- and two-family dwellings	X	Annually	Conduct functional tests according to the manufacturer's published instructions.
(d) Air sampling	X	Annually	Test with smoke or a listed and labeled product acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with their published instructions. In the absence of an automatic, listed airflow supervision feature, test from the end sampling port or point on each pipe run and verify airflow through all other ports or points.
(e) Duct type	X	Annually	In addition to the testing required in item (17)(7)(a) and item (17)(8), test duct smoke detectors that use sampling tubes to ensure that they will properly sample the airstream in the duct using a method acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with their published instructions.
(f) Projected beam type	X	Annually	Test the detector by introducing smoke, other aerosol, or an optical filter into the beam path.
(g) Smoke detector with built-in thermal element	X	Annually	Operate both portions of the detector independently as described for the respective devices.
(h) Smoke detectors with control output functions	X	Annually	Verify that the control capability remains operable even if all of the initiating devices connected to the same initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit are in an alarm state.
(8) Smoke detectors in other than one- and two-family dwellings, system detectors — sensitivity testing	N/A	See 14.4.4.3	Perform any of the following tests to ensure that each smoke detector is within its listed and marked sensitivity range:[k] (1) Calibrated test method (2) Manufacturer's calibrated sensitivity test instrument (3) Listed control equipment arranged for the purpose (4) Smoke detector/control unit arrangement whereby the detector causes a signal at the control unit when its sensitivity is outside its listed sensitivity range (5) Other calibrated sensitivity test method approved by the authority having jurisdiction
(9) Carbon monoxide (CO) detectors/CO alarms connected to protected premises systems			
(a) CO entry test	X	Annually	Test the devices in place to ensure CO entry to the sensing chamber by introduction through the vents, to the sensing chamber of listed and labeled product acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.
(b) Air sampling	X	Annually	In accordance with test methods documented in the manufacturer's published instructions, verify detector alarm response through the end sampling port on each pipe run; verify airflow through all other ports as well.
(c) Duct type	X	Annually	Test or inspect air duct detectors to ensure that the device will sample the airstream in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.
(d) CO detector with control output functions	X	Annually	Within each protected space, verify that the control capability remains operable even if all of the initiating devices connected to the same initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit are in an alarm state.
(10) Initiating devices, supervisory			
(a) Control valve switch	X	Semiannually	Operate valve and verify signal receipt to be within the first two revolutions of the handwheel or within one-fifth of the travel distance, or in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Continue to cycle outside stem and yoke valves and verify switch does not reset during full travel of the valve stem.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(b) High- or low-air pressure switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal is obtained where the required pressure is increased or decreased a maximum 10 psi (70 kPa) from the required pressure level or in accordance with the dry pipe or preaction valve manufacturer's published instructions.
(c) Steam pressure	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal is obtained before pressure decreases to 110 percent of the minimum operating pressure of the steam-operated equipment.
(d) Pressure supervisory devices for other sources	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal is obtained where the required pressure is increased or decreased from the normal operating pressure by an amount specified in approved design documents.
(e) Room temperature switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal to indicate the decrease in room temperature to 40°F (4.4°C) and its restoration to above 40°F (4.4°C).
(f) Water level switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal indicating the water level raised or lowered a maximum 3 in. (70 mm) from the required level within a pressure tank, or a maximum 12 in. (300 mm) from the required level of a nonpressure tank. Also verify its restoration to required level.
(g) Water temperature switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal to indicate the decrease in water temperature to 40°F (4.4°C) and its restoration to above 40°F (4.4°C).
(11) Mechanical, electrosonic, or pressure-type waterflow device	X	Semiannually	Flow water through an inspector's test connection indicating the flow of water equal to that from a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system or other listed and approved waterflow switch test methods for wet-pipe systems, or an alarm test bypass connection for dry-pipe, pre-action, or deluge systems in accordance with NFPA 25.
(12) Multi-sensor fire detector or multi-criteria fire detector or combination fire detector	X	Annually	(1) Test each detector in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Test each of the sensors present within the detector (e.g., smoke, heat, CO) independently for the specific detection principle, regardless of the configuration status at the time of testing, or test individual sensors together if the technology allows individual sensor responses to be verified. Where sensors cannot be tested individually, test the primary sensor.[l] (2) Perform tests as described for the respective sensors by introduction of the physical phenomena to the sensing element. An electronic check (e.g., magnets, analog values) is not sufficient to comply with this requirement. (3) Verify by using the detector manufacturer's published instructions that the test gas used will not impair the operation of any sensing chamber of a multi-sensor, multi-criteria, or combination fire detector. (4) Confirm the result of the sensor(s) test(s) through indication at the detector or control unit. (5) Record all tests and results.
18. Special hazard equipment			
(1) Abort switch (dead-man type)	X	Annually	Activate suppression system initiating device. Operate and hold the abort switch. Verify that suppression system actuators remain de-energized after completion of discharge countdown. Release abort switch and verify that actuators energize.
(2) Abort switch (recycle type)	X	Annually	Activate suppression system initiating device. Operate abort switch and verify countdown cycle restarts and suppression system actuators remain de-energized. Allow countdown to complete and verify that actuators energize.
(3) Abort switch (special type)	X	Annually	Activate suppression system initiating device. Operate abort switch and verify operation in accordance with the sequence of operation as specified on as-built drawings.
(4) Cross-zone detection circuit	X	Annually	Activate one detector in each zone. Verify occurrence of correct sequence of operation for the first zone and then the second zone.
(5) Matrix-type circuit	X	Annually	Operate all sensors in system. Verify development of correct matrix with each sensor operated.
(6) Release solenoid circuit[m]	X	Annually	Verify operation of solenoid.
(7) Squibb release circuit	X	Annually	Use AGI flashbulb or other test light approved by the manufacturer. Verify operation of flashbulb or light.
(8) Verified, sequential, or counting zone circuit	X	Annually	Operate required sensors at a minimum of four locations in circuit. Verify correct sequence of operation with both the first and second detector in alarm.
(9) All above devices or circuits or combinations thereof	X	Annually	Verify supervision of circuits by creating an open circuit.
19. Combination systems			
(1) Fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device/system	X	Annually	Test communication between the device connecting the fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device/system and the FACU to ensure proper signals are received at the FACU and remote annunciator(s), if applicable.
(2) CO device/system	X	Annually	Test communication between the device connecting the CO device/system and the FACU to ensure proper signals are received at the FACU and remote annunciator(s), if applicable.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
20.	Interface equipment[n]	X	See 14.4.4.4	Test interface equipment connections by operating or simulating the equipment being supervised. Verify signals required to be transmitted are received at the control unit. Test frequency for interface equipment is the same as the frequency required by the applicable NFPA standard(s) for the equipment being supervised.
21.	Guard's tour equipment	X	Annually	Test the device in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.
22.	Alarm notification appliances			
	(1) Audible[o]	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, measure sound pressure levels for alert tone signals and evacuation signal tones with a sound level meter meeting ANSI/ASA S1.4, *Electroacoustics — Sound Level Meters — Part 1: Specifications,* Type 2 requirements. Measure sound pressure levels to determine if they comply with Chapter 18 and the required performance, as documented in accordance with 7.3.4. Set the sound level meter in accordance with ANSI/ASA S3.41, *Audible Emergency Evacuation (E2) and Evacuation Signals with Relocation Instructions (ESRI),* using the time-weighted characteristic F (FAST).
		N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, verify the operation of the notification appliances.[p]
	(2) Audible textual notification appliances (loudspeakers and other appliances to convey voice messages)	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, measure sound pressure levels for signals with a sound level meter meeting ANSI/ASA S1.4, *Electroacoustics — Sound Level Meters — Part 1: Specifications,* Type 2 requirements. Measure sound pressure levels throughout the protected area to determine if they comply with Chapter 18 and the required performance, as documented in accordance with 7.3.4. Set the sound level meter in accordance with ANSI/ASA S3.41, *Audible Emergency Evacuation (E2) and Evacuation Signals with Relocation Instructions (ESRI),* using the time-weighted characteristic F (FAST). Verify audible information to be intelligible and in compliance with 14.4.12.
		N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, verify the operation of the notification appliances.[p]
	(3) Visual	X	N/A	Perform initial and reacceptance testing in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Verify appliance locations to be in accordance with the approved layout and confirm that no floor plan changes affect the approved layout. Verify the candela rating or method of candela control marking on each visual appliance and rating when reported by the FACU agrees with the approved drawings. Confirm that each appliance flashes.
		N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, verify that each appliance flashes.
23.	Exit marking audible notification appliance	X	Annually	Perform tests in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.
24.	Emergency control functions[q]	X	Annually	For initial, reacceptance, and periodic testing, verify emergency control function interface device activation. Where an emergency control function interface device is disabled or disconnected during initiating device testing, verify that the disabled or disconnected emergency control function interface device has been properly restored, including electromagnetic devices used for door releasing services as part of a fire alarm system.
25.	Two-way emergency communications systems	X	Annually	Use the manufacturer's published instructions and the as-built drawings provided by the system supplier to verify correct operation after the initial testing phase has been performed by the supplier or by the supplier's designated representative. Test the two-way communication system to verify operation and receipt of visual and audible signals at the transmitting unit and the receiving unit, respectively. Operate systems with more than five stations with a minimum of five stations operating simultaneously. Verify voice quality and clarity. Verify the directions for the use of the two-way communication system, the instructions for summoning assistance via the two-way communication system, and that written identification of the location is posted adjacent to the two-way communication system. Verify that all remote stations are readily accessible. Verify the timed automatic communications capability to connect with a constantly attended monitoring location in accordance with 24.10.6.
26.	Special procedures			
	(1) Alarm verification	X	Annually	Verify time delay and alarm response for smoke detector circuits identified as having alarm verification.
	(2) Multiplex systems	X	Annually	Verify communications between sending and receiving units under both primary and secondary power. Verify communications between sending and receiving units under open-circuit and short-circuit trouble conditions. Verify communications between sending and receiving units in all directions where multiple communications pathways are provided. If a redundant control unit is provided, verify switchover of all required functions and operations of the secondary control unit.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
			Verify all system functions and features in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.
27. Supervising station alarm systems — receiving equipment			
(1) All equipment	X	Monthly	Perform tests on all system functions and features in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's published instructions for correct operation in conformance with the applicable sections of Chapter 26. Actuate initiating device and verify receipt of the correct initiating device signal at the supervising station within 90 seconds. Upon completion of the test, restore the system to its functional operating condition. If test jacks are used, perform the first and last tests without the use of the test jack.
(2) Digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR)	X	Monthly	Disconnect each transmission means in turn from the DACR, and verify audible and visual annunciation of a trouble signal in the supervising station. Cause a signal to be transmitted on each individual incoming DACR line (path) at least once every 6 hours (24 hours for DACTs installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*). Verify receipt of these signals.
(3) Digital alarm radio receiver (DARR)	X	Monthly	Cause the following conditions of all DARRs on all subsidiary and repeater station receiving equipment. Verify receipt at the supervising station of correct signals for each of the following conditions: (1) AC power failure of the radio equipment (2) Receiver malfunction (3) Antenna and interconnecting cable failure (4) Indication of automatic switchover of the DARR (5) Data transmission line failure between the DARR and the supervising or subsidiary station
(4) McCulloh system	X	Monthly	Test and record the current on each circuit at each supervising and subsidiary station under the following conditions: (1) During functional operation (2) On each side of the circuit with the receiving equipment conditioned for an open circuit Cause a single break or ground condition on each transmission channel. If such a fault prevents the functioning of the circuit, verify receipt of a trouble signal. Cause each of the following conditions at each of the supervising or subsidiary stations and all repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment; verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) RF transmitter in use (radiating) (2) AC power failure supplying the radio equipment (3) RF receiver malfunction (4) Indication of automatic switchover
(5) Radio alarm supervising station receiver (RASSR) and radio alarm repeater station receiver (RARSR)	X	Monthly	Cause each of the following conditions at each of the supervising or subsidiary stations and all repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment; verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) AC power failure supplying the radio equipment (2) RF receiver malfunction (3) Indication of automatic switchover, if applicable
(6) Private microwave radio systems	X	Monthly	Cause each of the following conditions at each of the supervising or subsidiary stations and all repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment; verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) RF transmitter in use (radiating) (2) AC power failure supplying the radio equipment (3) RF receiver malfunction (4) Indication of automatic switchover
(7) Performance-based technologies	X	Monthly	Perform tests to ensure the monitoring of integrity of the transmission technology and technology path. Where a single communications path is used, disconnect the communication path. Verify that failure of the path is annunciated at the supervising station within 60 minutes of the failure (within 5 minutes for communication equipment installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*). Restore the communication path. Where multiple communication paths are used, disconnect all communication paths and confirm that failure of the paths is annunciated at the supervising station within 6 hours of the failure (within 24 hours for communication equipment installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*). Restore all communication paths.
28. Public emergency alarm reporting system transmission equipment			
(1) Publicly accessible alarm box	X	Semiannually	Actuate publicly accessible initiating device(s) and verify receipt of not less than three complete rounds of signal impulses. Perform this test under normal circuit conditions. If the device is equipped for open circuit operation (ground return), test it in this condition as one of the semiannual tests.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

	Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
	(2) Auxiliary box	X	Annually	Test each initiating circuit of the auxiliary box by actuation of a protected premises initiating device connected to that circuit. Verify receipt of not less than three complete rounds of signal impulses.
	(3) Master box			
	(a) Manual operation	X	Semiannually	Perform the tests prescribed for 28(1).
	(b) Auxiliary operation	X	Annually	Perform the tests prescribed for 28(2).
29.	Low-power radio (wireless systems)	X	N/A	The following procedures describe additional acceptance and reacceptance test methods to verify wireless protection system operation: (1) Use the manufacturer's published instructions and the as-built drawings provided by the system supplier to verify correct operation after the initial testing phase has been performed by the supplier or the supplier's designated representative. (2) Starting from the functional operating condition, initialize the system in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions, including the following: (a) Confirm the alternative communications path exists between the wireless control unit and peripheral devices used to establish initiation, indication, control, and annunciation. Test the system for both alarm and trouble conditions. (b) For initial and reacceptance testing, confirm the introduction of a fault in any Class A or Class B radio-frequency-specified pathway results in a trouble indication at FACU. Disconnect the power (i.e., remove primary batteries) from a radio transceiver initiating device, notification appliance, or controlled device and confirm the pathway performs as indicted in 23.16.4.8 and 23.16.4.9. Restore the system to normal and repeat the fault on not less than 10 percent of the radio frequency initiating devices, notification appliances, and controlled devices on every initiating device circuit radio pathway, notification appliance circuit radio pathway, and signaling line circuit radio pathway. Confirm all radio pathways perform as indicated in 23.16.4.8 and 23.16.4.9. (c) For periodic testing, test each Class A and Class B radio frequency initiating device circuit radio pathway, notification appliance circuit radio pathway, and signaling line circuit radio pathway for correct indication at the control unit. Confirm all radio pathways perform as indicated in 23.16.4.8 and 23.16.4.9. (3) Check batteries for all components in the system monthly unless the control unit checks all batteries and all components daily.
30.	Mass notification system (MNS)			
	(1) Functions	X	Annually	At a minimum, test control unit to verify correct receipt of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals (inputs); operation of evacuation signals and auxiliary functions (outputs); circuit supervision, including detection of open circuits and ground faults; and power supply supervision for detection of loss of ac power and disconnection of secondary batteries.
	(2) Fuses	X	Annually	Verify the rating and supervision.
	(3) Interfaced equipment	X	Annually	Verify integrity of single or multiple circuits providing interface between two or more control units. Test interfaced equipment connections by operating or simulating operation of the equipment being supervised. Verify signals required to be transmitted at the control unit.
	(4) Lamps and LEDs	X	Annually	Illuminate lamps and LEDs.
	(5) Primary (main) power supply	X	Annually	Disconnect all secondary (standby) power and test under maximum load, including all alarm appliances requiring simultaneous operation. Reconnect all secondary (standby) power at end of test. For redundant power supplies, test each separately.
	(6) Audible textual notification appliances (loudspeakers and other appliances to convey voice messages)	X	Annually	Measure sound pressure level with a sound level meter meeting ANSI/ASA S1.4, *Electroacoustics — Sound Level Meters — Part 1: Specifications*, Type 2 requirements. Measure and record levels throughout protected area. Set the sound level meter in accordance with ANSI/ASA S3.41, *Audible Emergency Evacuation (E2) and Evacuation Signals with Relocation Instructions (ESRI),* using the time-weighted characteristic F (FAST). Record the maximum output when the audible emergency evacuation signal is on. Verify audible information to be distinguishable and understandable.
	(7) Visual	X	Annually	Perform test in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions. Verify appliance locations to be in accordance with the approved layout and confirm that no floor plan changes affect the approved layout. Verify that the candela rating or method of candela control marking on each visual appliance and rating when reported by the FACU agrees with the approved drawings. Confirm that each appliance flashes.
	(8) Control unit functions and no diagnostic failures are indicated	X	Annually	Review event log file and verify that the correct events were logged. Review system diagnostic log file; correct deficiencies noted in file. Delete unneeded log files. Delete unneeded error files. Verify that sufficient free disk space is available. Verify unobstructed flow of cooling air is available. Change/clean filters, cooling fans, and intake vents.
	(9) Control unit reset	X	Annually	Power down the central control unit computer and restart it.
	(10) Control unit security	X	Annually	If remote control software is loaded onto the system, verify that it is disabled to prevent unauthorized system access.

(continues)

Δ Table 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(11) Audible/visual functional test	X	Annually	Send out an alert to a diverse set of predesignated receiving devices and confirm receipt. Include at least one of each type of receiving device.
(12) Software backup	X	Annually	Make full system software backup. Rotate backups based on accepted practice at site.
(13) Secondary power test	X	Annually	Disconnect ac power. Verify the ac power failure alarm status on central control unit. With ac power disconnected, verify battery voltage under load.
(14) Wireless signals	X	Annually	Check forward/reflected radio power is within specifications.
(15) Antenna	X	Annually	Check forward/reflected radio power is within specifications. Verify solid electrical connections with no observable corrosion.
(16) Transceivers	X	Annually	Verify proper operation and mounting is not compromised.

N/A: Not applicable, no minimum requirement established.

[a]Some transmission equipment (e.g., cable modems, fiber-optic interface nodes, VoIP interfaces) are typically powered by the building's electrical system using a secondary (standby) power supply that does not meet the requirements of this Code. This is intended to ensure that the testing authority verifies full secondary (standby) power as required by Chapter 10. Additionally, refer to items 7 through 9 for secondary (standby) power supply testing.

[b]The automatic transmission of the check-in (handshake) signal can take up to 60 minutes to occur.

[c]See item 4(1) for the testing of transmission equipment. A control unit's charger/power supply that is listed for the purpose of verifying secondary power demand is permitted to be approved for equivalency with this section.

[d]The battery tests in item 9 are based on VRLA batteries and it is intended that the tests specified in (1) through (4) be performed in order. FACU automated load testing of VRLA batteries in accordance with item 9(5) with record of ambient temperature is an acceptable alternative to prescriptive manual methods using test equipment. For other secondary battery types, refer to the battery manufacturer's published instructions or IEEE 450, *Recommended Practice for Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Vented Lead-Acid Batteries for Stationary Applications*, for vented lead-acid batteries, and IEEE 1106, *Recommended Practice for Installation, Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Vented Nickel-Cadmium Batteries for Stationary Applications*, for nickel-cadmium batteries.

[e]See A.14.4.3.2, Table 14.4.3.2 Item 9(4).

[f]See A.14.4.3.2, Table 14.4.3.2 Item 9(5).

[g]The voltmeter sensitivity has been changed from 1000 ohms per volt to 100 ohms per volt so that the false ground readings (caused by induced voltages) are minimized.

[h]Initiating devices such as smoke detectors used for elevator recall, closing dampers, or releasing doors held in the open position that are permitted by the Code *(see 9.6.6 of NFPA 101)* to initiate supervisory signals at the FACU should be tested at the same frequency (annually) as those devices when they are generating an alarm signal. They are not supervisory devices, but they initiate a supervisory signal at the FACU. See also A.14.4.3.2, Table 14.4.3.2 Item 17.

[i]Fusible thermal link detectors are commonly used to close fire doors and fire dampers electrically connected to the FACU. They are actuated by the presence of external heat, causing a solder element in the link to fuse, or by an electric thermal device which, when energized, generates heat within the body of the link, causing the link to fuse and separate.

[j]It is customary for the manufacturer of the smoke detector to test a particular product from an aerosol provider to determine acceptability for use in smoke entry testing of their smoke detector/smoke alarm. Magnets are not acceptable for smoke entry tests.

[k]There are some detectors that use magnets as a manufacturer's calibrated sensitivity test instrument.

[l]For example, it might not be possible to individually test the heat sensor in a thermally enhanced smoke detector.

[m]Manufacturer's published instructions should be consulted to ensure a proper operational test. No suppression gas or agent is expected to be discharged during the test of the solenoid. See 14.2.10.

[n]A monitor module installed on an interface device is not considered a supervisory device and therefore not subject to the quarterly testing frequency requirement. Test frequencies for interface devices should be in accordance with the applicable standard. For example, fire pump controller alarms such as phase reversal are required to be tested annually. If a monitor module is installed to identify phase reversal on the FACU, it is not necessary to test for phase reversal four times a year.

[o]Chapter 18 would require 15 dB over average ambient sound for public mode spaces. Sometimes the ambient sound levels are different from what the design was based upon. Private operating mode would require 10 dB over average ambient at the location of the device. See also A.14.4.3.2, Table 14.4.3.2 Item 22(1) and 22(2).

[p]Where building, system, or occupancy changes have been observed, the owner should be notified of the changes. New devices might need to be installed and tested in accordance with the initial acceptance testing criteria.

[q]See A.14.4.3.2, Table 14.4.3.2 Item 24.

14.4.5 Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms. (SIG-HOU)

14.4.5.1 Single- and multiple-station alarms and connected appliances shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with Table 14.3.1, Table 14.4.3.2, and the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.5.2 Alarms and connected appliances shall be inspected and tested at least monthly.

14.4.5.3* The responsibility for inspection, testing, and maintenance of smoke alarms and connected appliances shall be in accordance with 14.2.3.

14.4.5.4* Notwithstanding other requirements of 14.2.3, the occupant of a dwelling unit shall be deemed qualified to perform inspection, testing, and maintenance on single- and multiple-station alarms protecting that dwelling unit when provided with information from the manufacturer or a manufacturer's certified representative.

14.4.5.5 Alarms and connected appliances shall be replaced when they fail to respond to operability tests.

14.4.5.6 Smoke alarms shall not remain in service longer than 10 years from the date of manufacture, unless otherwise provided by the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.5.7 Carbon monoxide alarms shall be replaced when either the end-of-life signal is actuated or the manufacturer's replacement date is reached.

14.4.5.8 Combination smoke/carbon monoxide alarms shall be replaced when the end-of-life signal actuates or 10 years from the date of manufacture, whichever comes first, unless otherwise provided by the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.5.9 Where batteries are used as a source of energy for alarms, the batteries shall be replaced in accordance with the alarm equipment manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.6 Household Fire Alarm Systems. (SIG-HOU)

14.4.6.1 Household alarm systems shall be inspected, tested, and maintained at least annually according to Table 14.3.1, Table 14.4.3.2, and the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.6.2 The responsibility for inspection, testing, and maintenance of smoke alarms and connected appliances shall be in accordance with 14.2.3.

14.4.6.3* Notwithstanding other requirements of 14.2.3, the occupant of a dwelling unit shall be deemed qualified to perform inspection, testing, and maintenance on a household alarm system protecting that dwelling unit when provided with information and/or training from the manufacturer or a manufacturer's certified representative.

14.4.6.4 The installing contractor shall be required to provide the information in 14.4.6.3 in writing to the customer upon completion of the system installation.

14.4.6.5 Carbon monoxide detectors shall be replaced when the end-of-life signal is actuated, the manufacturer's replacement date is reached, or when they fail to respond to operability tests.

14.4.6.6 Maintenance of household alarm systems shall be conducted according to the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.7 Circuits from Central Station. (SIG-SSS) Circuits extending from the central station that have had no signal activity in the preceding 24 hours shall be tested at intervals of not more than 24 hours.

14.4.8 Household Carbon Monoxide Detection Systems. (SIG-HOU)

14.4.8.1 Testing of Household Carbon Monoxide Detection Systems.

14.4.8.1.1 Household carbon monoxide detection systems shall be tested by a qualified service technician at least every 3 years according to the methods in line 1 of Table 14.4.3.2.

14.4.8.1.2 Household carbon monoxide detection systems shall be tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.8.1.3* Notwithstanding other requirements of 14.2.3.6, the occupant of a dwelling unit shall be deemed qualified to perform inspection, testing, and maintenance on an alarm system protecting that dwelling unit when provided with information and training from the manufacturer or a manufacturer's certified representative.

14.4.9 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems. (SIG-PRS)

14.4.9.1 Emergency power sources other than batteries shall be tested at least weekly in accordance with 14.4.9.1.1 and 14.4.9.1.2.

14.4.9.1.1 Testing shall include operation of the power source to supply the system for a continuous period of 1 hour.

14.4.9.1.2 Testing shall require simulated failure of the normal power source.

14.4.9.2 Unless otherwise permitted by 14.4.9.3, testing facilities shall be installed at the communications center and each subsidiary communications center, if used.

14.4.9.3 Testing facilities for systems leased from a nonmunicipal organization shall be permitted to be installed at locations other than the communications center if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Δ **14.4.10 In-Building Emergency Responder Communications Enhancement Systems (ERCES).** In-building emergency responder communications enhancement systems (ERCES) shall be inspected and operationally tested in accordance with NFPA 1225.

N **14.4.10.1** Supervisory signals for in-building ERCES monitored by a fire alarm system in accordance with 24.9.1 shall be tested in accordance with item 20 of Table 14.4.3.2.

N **14.4.11 Emergency Communications Systems (ECSs) Ancillary Functions. (SIG-ECS)** Ancillary functions of emergency communications systems (ECSs) shall be inspected and tested annually to verify they will not impair operation of the fire alarm system or the mass notification system.

14.4.12* Voice Intelligibility.

14.4.12.1 Voice communication using prerecorded messages and manual voice announcements shall be verified as being intelligible in accordance with the requirements of 18.4.12.

14.4.12.2 Intelligibility shall not be required to be determined through quantitative measurements.

Δ **14.4.12.3** Quantitative measurements as described in Annex D shall be permitted.

N **14.4.13 Restricted Audible Mode Operation (RAMO) Notification.** Where RAMO notification is used in accordance with 18.4.8, annual testing shall include the following:

(1) The ambient and maximum sound pressure levels in the protected space shall be recorded and compared against the RAMO design documentation.
(2) RAMO areas shall be reviewed to determine if the occupancy has changed.

14.5 Maintenance.

14.5.1 System equipment shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.5.2 The frequency of maintenance of system equipment shall depend on the type of equipment and the local ambient conditions.

14.5.3 The frequency of cleaning of system equipment shall depend on the type of equipment and the local ambient conditions.

14.5.4 All apparatus requiring rewinding or resetting to maintain normal operation shall be rewound or reset as promptly as possible after each test and alarm.

14.6 Records.

14.6.1* Permanent Records. After successful completion of acceptance tests approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the requirements in 14.6.1.1 through 14.6.1.3 shall apply.

14.6.1.1* A set of reproducible as-built installation drawings, operation and maintenance manuals, and a written sequence of operation shall be provided to the building owner or the owner's designated representative.

14.6.1.2* The requirements of 7.5.7 shall apply to site-specific software.

Δ **14.6.1.3** The system owner shall be responsible for maintaining these records for the life of the system for examination by any authority having jurisdiction.

N **14.6.1.4** Paper or electronic media shall be permitted.

14.6.2 Maintenance, Inspection, and Testing Records.

14.6.2.1 The system owner shall be responsible for retaining maintenance, inspection, and testing records until the next test and for 1 year thereafter.

14.6.2.2 For systems with restorable fixed-temperature, spot-type heat detectors tested over multiple years, records shall be retained for the 5 years of testing and for 1 year thereafter.

Δ **14.6.2.3** The records shall be on a medium that will survive the retention period.

N **14.6.2.4** Paper or electronic media shall be permitted.

14.6.2.5 A record of all inspections, testing, and maintenance shall be provided in accordance with 7.6.6.

14.6.3 Supervising Station Records. For supervising station alarm systems, records pertaining to signals received at the supervising station that result from maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be maintained for not less than 12 months.

14.6.3.1 Records shall be permitted to be maintained on either paper or electronic media.

14.6.3.2 Upon request, a hard copy record shall be provided to the authority having jurisdiction.

14.6.4 Simulated Operation Note. If the operation of a device, circuit, fire alarm control unit function, or special hazard system interface is simulated, it shall be noted on the inspection/test form that the operation was simulated.

Chapter 15 Reserved

Chapter 16 Reserved

Chapter 17 Initiating Devices

17.1 Application.

17.1.1* The performance, selection, use, and location of automatic or manual initiating devices shall comply with the minimum requirements of this chapter.

17.1.2* This chapter establishes the minimum installation criteria for initiating devices required by other governing laws, codes, standards, or sections of this document. This chapter does not, by itself, require the installation of initiating devices.

17.1.3 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 11, 12, 21, 23, and 24 shall also apply unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

17.1.4 The requirements of Chapter 14 shall apply.

17.1.5 The requirements of single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 29.

17.1.6 The material in this chapter shall be applied by persons knowledgeable in the application of fire detection and fire alarm systems and services.

17.1.7 The interconnection of initiating devices with control unit configurations and power supplies, or with output systems responding to external actuation, shall be as detailed elsewhere in this Code or in other governing laws, codes, or standards.

17.2 Purpose. Automatic and manual initiating devices shall contribute to life safety, fire protection, and property conservation by providing a reliable means to signal other equipment arranged to monitor the initiating devices and to initiate a response to those signals.

17.3* Performance-Based Design.

17.3.1 Performance-based designs submitted to the authority having jurisdiction for review and approval shall include documentation, in an approved format, of each performance objective and applicable scenario, together with any calculations, modeling, or other technical substantiation used in establishing the proposed design's fire and life safety performance.

17.3.2 The authority having jurisdiction shall determine whether such identified performance objectives are appropriate and have been met.

17.3.3 The authority having jurisdiction shall approve modifications to or variations from the approved design or design basis in advance.

17.4 General Requirements.

17.4.1 The requirements of 17.4.2 through 17.4.8 shall apply to all initiating devices.

17.4.2 Mechanical Protection.

17.4.2.1 Initiating devices subject to mechanical damage shall be protected.

17.4.2.2 If guards or covers are employed, they shall be listed for use with the initiating device.

17.4.2.3* The protection shall not prevent the initiating device from achieving the objectives of the system by adversely affecting the use, operation, or performance of the initiating device.

17.4.3 Initiating devices shall be installed in a manner that provides accessibility for periodic inspection, testing, and maintenance.

17.4.4 Initiating devices shall be supported independently of their attachment to the circuit conductors.

17.4.5 Initiating devices shall be installed in all areas, compartments, or locations where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

17.4.6* Duplicate terminals, leads, or connectors that provide for the connection of installation wiring shall be provided on each initiating device for the express purpose of connecting into the fire alarm system to monitor the integrity of the signaling and power wiring unless the initiating devices are connected to a system that provides the required monitoring.

17.4.7* Unless otherwise permitted by 17.4.7.3, where detectors are installed in concealed locations or in arrangements where the detector's alarm or supervisory indicator is not visible to responding personnel, the detectors shall be provided with remote alarm or supervisory indication in a location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

17.4.7.1* The location of the detector and the area protected by the detector shall be prominently indicated at the remote indicator by a permanently attached placard or by other approved means.

17.4.7.2* Remote alarm and supervisory indicators shall be installed in an accessible location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

17.4.7.3 Detectors installed in concealed locations where the specific detector alarm or supervisory signal is indicated at the control unit (and on the drawings with its specific location and functions) shall not be required to be provided with remote alarm indicators as specified in 17.4.7.

17.4.7.4 Remote alarm and supervisory indicators shall be labeled to indicate their function and any device or equipment associated with each detector.

17.4.8* If the intent is to initiate action when smoke/fire threatens a specific object or space, the detector shall be permitted to be installed in close proximity to that object or space.

17.5 Requirements for Smoke and Heat Detectors.

17.5.1 Recessed Mounting. Unless tested and listed for recessed mounting, detectors shall not be recessed into the mounting surface.

17.5.2* Partitions. Where partitions extend to within 15 percent of the ceiling height, the spaces separated by the partitions shall be considered as separate rooms.

17.5.3* Detector Coverage.

17.5.3.1* Total (Complete) Coverage. Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, and unless otherwise modified by 17.5.3.1.1 through 17.5.3.1.5, total coverage of a building or a portion thereof, shall include all rooms, halls, storage areas, basements, attics, lofts, spaces above suspended ceilings, and other subdivisions and accessible spaces.

17.5.3.1.1 Where inaccessible areas are constructed of or contain combustible material, both of the following shall apply unless otherwise specified in 17.5.3.1.2 and 17.5.3.1.4:

(1) The areas shall be made accessible.
(2) The areas shall be provided with detection.

Δ **17.5.3.1.2** Detectors shall not be required in combustible blind spaces where any of the following conditions exist:

(1) The ceiling is attached directly to the underside of the supporting beams of a combustible roof or floor deck.
(2) The space is concealed above a room and does not exceed 50 ft^2 (4.6 m^2) in area.
(3) The space is formed by sets of facing studs or solid joists in walls, floors, or ceilings and the distance between the facing studs or solid joists is less than 6 in. (150 mm).

17.5.3.1.3 Detectors shall not be required below open grid ceilings if all of the following conditions exist:

(1) Openings of the grid are ¼ in. (6.4 mm) or larger in the least dimension.
(2) Thickness of the material does not exceed the least dimension.
(3) Openings constitute at least 70 percent of the area of the ceiling material.

N **17.5.3.1.4** Where the concealed space is entirely filled with noncombustible insulation in solid joist construction as described in 17.5.3.1.2, the insulation shall be required to fill only the space from the ceiling to the bottom edge of the joist of the roof or floor deck.

17.5.3.1.5 Detectors shall not be required underneath open loading docks or platforms and their covers and for accessible underfloor spaces if all of the following conditions exist:

(1) Space is not accessible for storage purposes or entrance of unauthorized persons and is protected against the accumulation of windborne debris.
(2) Space contains no equipment such as steam pipes, electric wiring, shafting, or conveyors.
(3) Floor over the space is tight.
(4) No flammable liquids are processed, handled, or stored on the floor above.

Δ **17.5.3.1.6*** Where concealed accessible spaces above suspended ceilings are used as a return air plenum meeting the requirements of NFPA 90A, detection shall be provided in one of the following means:

(1) Smoke detection in accordance with 17.7.5.2
(2) Smoke detection at each connection from the return air plenum to the central air-handling system.

17.5.3.2* Partial or Selective Coverage. Where other governing laws, codes, or standards require the protection of selected areas only, the specified areas shall be protected in accordance with this Code.

17.5.3.3* Nonrequired Coverage.

17.5.3.3.1 Detection installed for reasons of achieving specific fire safety objectives, but not required by any laws, codes, or standards, shall meet all of the requirements of this Code, with the exception of the prescriptive spacing criteria of Chapter 17.

17.5.3.3.2 Where nonrequired detectors are installed for achieving specific fire safety objectives, additional detectors not necessary to achieve the objectives shall not be required.

17.6 Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors.

17.6.1 General.

17.6.1.1* The heat detection design documentation shall state the required performance objective of the system.

Δ **17.6.1.2** Designs not in accordance with 17.6.1.3 shall be designed in accordance with the prescriptive requirements of this chapter.

17.6.1.3* Performance-based designs shall be executed in accordance with Section 17.3.

Δ **17.6.1.4*** Heat-sensing fire detectors shall be listed in accordance with applicable standards.

17.6.1.5* Spot-type heat detectors shall include in their installation instructions, technical data, and listing documentation the operating temperature and response time index (RTI) as determined by the organization listing the device.

17.6.2 Temperature.

17.6.2.1 Classification. Heat-sensing fire detectors of the fixed-temperature or rate-compensated, spot type shall be classified as to the temperature of operation in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1.

17.6.2.2 Marking.

17.6.2.2.1 Color Coding.

17.6.2.2.1.1 Non-field-programmable heat sensing fire detectors of the fixed-temperature or rate-compensated spot type shall be marked with a color code in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1.

17.6.2.2.1.2 If the overall color of a heat-sensing fire detector is the same as the color code marking required for that detector, one of the following arrangements, applied in a contrasting color and visible after installation, shall be employed:

(1) Ring on the surface of the detector
(2) Temperature rating in numerals at least ⅜ in. (9.5 mm) high

17.6.2.2.2 Operating Temperature.

17.6.2.2.2.1 Heat-sensing fire detectors shall be marked with their listed operating temperature.

17.6.2.2.2.2 Heat-sensing fire detectors where the alarm threshold is field adjustable shall be marked with the temperature range.

Table 17.6.2.1 Temperature Classification and Color Code for Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors

Temperature Classification	Temperature Rating Range		Maximum Ceiling Temperature		Color Code
	°F	°C	°F	°C	
Low	100–134	38–56	80	28	Uncolored
Ordinary	135–174	57–79	115	47	Uncolored
Intermediate	175–249	80–121	155	69	White
High	250–324	122–162	230	111	Blue
Extra high	325–399	163–204	305	152	Red
Very extra high	400–499	205–259	380	194	Green
Ultra high	500–575	260–302	480	249	Orange

17.6.2.2.2.3 Spot-type heat detectors shall also be marked with their RTI.

17.6.2.3* Ambient Ceiling Temperature.

17.6.2.3.1 Detectors having fixed-temperature or rate-compensated elements shall be selected in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1 for the maximum expected ambient ceiling temperature.

17.6.2.3.2 The temperature rating of the detector shall be at least 20°F (11°C) above the maximum expected temperature at the ceiling.

17.6.3 Location and Spacing.

17.6.3.1 Smooth Ceiling.

Δ **17.6.3.1.1* Spacing.** Detectors shall be spaced in accordance with either of the following:

(1) The detectors shall comply with the following:
   (a) The distance between detectors shall not exceed their listed spacing.
   (b) There shall be detectors within a distance of one-half the listed spacing, measured at right angles from all walls or partitions extending upward to within the top 15 percent of the ceiling height.
(2) All points on the ceiling shall have a detector within a distance equal to or less than 0.7 times the listed spacing (0.7*S*).

17.6.3.1.2 Irregular Areas. For irregularly shaped areas, the spacing between detectors shall be permitted to be greater than the listed spacing, provided that the maximum spacing from a detector to the farthest point of a sidewall or corner within its zone of protection is not greater than 0.7 times the listed spacing.

17.6.3.1.3 Location.

17.6.3.1.3.1* Unless otherwise modified by 17.6.3.2.2, 17.6.3.3.2, or 17.6.3.7, spot-type heat-sensing fire detectors shall be located on the ceiling not less than 4 in. (100 mm) from the sidewall or on the sidewalls between 4 in. and 12 in. (100 mm and 300 mm) from the ceiling.

17.6.3.1.3.2 Unless otherwise modified by 17.6.3.2.2, 17.6.3.3.2, or 17.6.3.7, line-type heat detectors shall be located on the ceiling or on the sidewalls not more than 20 in. (510 mm) from the ceiling.

17.6.3.2* Solid Joist Construction.

17.6.3.2.1 Spacing. The design spacing of heat detectors, where measured at right angles to the solid joists, shall not exceed 50 percent of the listed spacing.

17.6.3.2.2 Location. Detectors shall be mounted at the bottom of the joists.

17.6.3.3* Beam Construction.

17.6.3.3.1 Spacing.

17.6.3.3.1.1 A ceiling shall be treated as a smooth ceiling if the beams project no more than 4 in. (100 mm) below the ceiling.

17.6.3.3.1.2 Where the beams project more than 4 in. (100 mm) below the ceiling, the spacing of spot-type heat detectors at right angles to the direction of beam travel shall be not more than two-thirds of the listed spacing.

17.6.3.3.1.3 Where the beams project more than 18 in. (460 mm) below the ceiling and are more than 8 ft (2.4 m) on center, each bay formed by the beams shall be treated as a separate area.

17.6.3.3.2 Location. Where beams are less than 12 in. (300 mm) in depth and less than 8 ft (2.4 m) on center, detectors shall be permitted to be installed on the bottom of beams.

N **17.6.3.3.3 Girders.**

N **17.6.3.3.3.1** A girder shall be considered a beam where the top of the girder is within 4 in. (100 mm) of the ceiling.

N **17.6.3.3.3.2** A girder shall not be a factor in detector location where the top of the girder is more than 4 in. (100 mm) from the ceiling.

17.6.3.4* Sloping Ceilings (Peaked and Shed).

17.6.3.4.1 Spacing.

17.6.3.4.1.1 Ceiling Slope Less Than 30 Degrees. For a ceiling slope of less than 30 degrees, all detectors shall be spaced using the height at the peak.

17.6.3.4.1.2 Ceiling Slopes of 30 Degrees or Greater. All detectors, other than those located in the peak, shall be spaced using the average slope height or the height of the peak.

17.6.3.4.1.3 Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling in accordance with the type of ceiling construction.

17.6.3.4.2 Location.

17.6.3.4.2.1 A row of detectors shall first be located at or within 36 in. (910 mm) of the peak of the ceiling.

17.6.3.4.2.2 Additional detectors shall be located as determined in 17.6.3.4.1.

17.6.3.5 High Ceilings.

17.6.3.5.1* Unless otherwise modified by 17.6.3.5.2, on ceilings 10 ft to 30 ft (3.0 m to 9.1 m) high, heat detector spacing shall be reduced in accordance with Table 17.6.3.5.1 prior to any additional reductions for beams, joists, or slope, where applicable.

Table 17.6.3.5.1 Heat Detector Spacing Reduction Based on Ceiling Height

Ceiling Height Greater than (>)		Up to and Including		Multiply Listed Spacing by
ft	m	ft	m	
0	0	10	3.0	1.00
10	3.0	12	3.7	0.91
12	3.7	14	4.3	0.84
14	4.3	16	4.9	0.77
16	4.9	18	5.5	0.71
18	5.5	20	6.1	0.64
20	6.1	22	6.7	0.58
22	6.7	24	7.3	0.52
24	7.3	26	7.9	0.46
26	7.9	28	8.5	0.40
28	8.5	30	9.1	0.34

17.6.3.5.2 Line-type electrical conductivity detectors *(see 3.3.79.14)* and pneumatic rate-of-rise tubing heat detectors (*see 3.3.79.18),* which rely on the integration effect, shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) The derating required by Table 17.6.3.5.1 shall not apply.
(2) The manufacturer's published instructions shall be followed for identified alarm threshold setting and spacing.

17.6.3.5.3* Spacing Minimum. The spacing of heat detectors shall not be required to be less than 0.4 times the height of the ceiling.

17.6.3.6* Integral Heat Sensors on Combination and Multi-Sensor Detectors. A heat-sensing detector integrally mounted on a smoke detector shall be listed for not less than 50 ft (15.2 m) spacing.

17.6.3.7 Other Applications. Where a detector is used in an application other than open area protection, the manufacturer's published instructions shall be followed.

17.6.3.8 Alternative Design Methods. Annex B shall be permitted to be used as one alternative design method for determining detector spacing.

17.7 Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors.

17.7.1 General.

17.7.1.1* The smoke detection design documentation shall state the required performance objective of the system.

Δ **17.7.1.2*** Designs not in accordance with 17.7.1.3 shall be designed in accordance with the prescriptive requirements of this chapter.

17.7.1.3* Performance-based designs shall be executed in accordance with Section 17.3.

17.7.1.4 The prescriptive requirements in this section shall be applied only where detectors are installed in ordinary indoor locations.

17.7.1.5 Where smoke detectors are being installed to control the spread of smoke, they shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of 17.7.6.

17.7.1.6 Smoke detectors shall be installed in all areas where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards or by other parts of this Code.

17.7.1.7 The selection and placement of smoke detectors shall take into account both the performance characteristics of the detector and the areas into which the detectors are to be installed to prevent nuisance and unintentional alarms or improper operation after installation.

17.7.1.8* Unless specifically designed and listed for the expected conditions, smoke detectors shall not be installed if any of the following ambient conditions exist:

(1) Temperature below 32°F (0°C)
(2) Temperature above 100°F (38°C)
(3) Relative humidity above 93 percent
(4) Air velocity greater than 300 ft/min (1.5 m/sec)

17.7.1.9* Smoke detectors installed in ducts and other locations with air velocities greater than 300 ft/min (1.5 m/sec) shall be listed for the velocity conditions anticipated and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.1.10* The location of smoke detectors shall be based on an evaluation of potential ambient sources of smoke, moisture, dust, or fumes, and electrical or mechanical influences, to minimize nuisance alarms.

17.7.1.11* The effect of stratification below the ceiling shall be taken into account. The guidelines in Annex B shall be permitted to be used.

17.7.2* Protection During Construction.

17.7.2.1 Detectors installed for signal initiation during new construction or building alterations shall comply with one of the following:

(1) Detectors shall be cleaned and verified to be operating in accordance with the listed sensitivity prior to the final acceptance test of the system.
(2) Detectors shall be replaced prior to the final acceptance test of the system.

17.7.2.2 Detectors installed but not operational during building alterations shall comply with one of the following:

(1) Detectors shall be protected from construction debris, dust, dirt, and damage in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and verified to be operating in accordance with the listed sensitivity prior to the final acceptance test of the system.
(2) Detectors shall be replaced prior to the final acceptance test of the system.

17.7.2.3 Where detection is not required during new construction, detectors shall not be installed until after all other construction trades have completed cleanup.

17.7.3* Sensitivity.

17.7.3.1* Smoke detectors shall be marked with their nominal production sensitivity and tolerance in percent per foot (percent per meter) obscuration, as required by the listing.

17.7.3.2 Spot-type smoke detectors that have provision for field adjustment of sensitivity via a mechanical means shall have an adjustment range of not less than 0.6 percent per foot (1.95 percent per meter) obscuration.

17.7.3.3 If the means of adjustment of sensitivity is on the detector, a method shall be provided to restore the detector to its factory calibration.

17.7.3.4 Detectors that have provision for program-controlled adjustment of sensitivity shall be permitted to be marked with their programmable sensitivity range only.

17.7.4 Location and Spacing.

17.7.4.1* General.

17.7.4.1.1 The location and spacing of smoke detectors shall be based upon the anticipated smoke flows due to the plume and ceiling jet produced by the anticipated fire, as well as any pre-existing ambient airflows that could exist in the protected compartment.

17.7.4.1.2 The design shall account for the contribution of the following factors in predicting detector response to the anticipated fires to which the system is intended to respond:

(1) Ceiling shape and surface
(2) Ceiling height
(3) Configuration of contents in the protected area
(4) Combustion characteristics and probable equivalence ratio of the anticipated fires involving the fuel loads within the protected area
(5) Compartment ventilation
(6) Ambient temperature, pressure, altitude, humidity, and atmosphere

17.7.4.1.3 If the intent is to protect against a specific hazard, the detector(s) shall be permitted to be installed closer to the hazard in a position where the detector can intercept the smoke.

17.7.4.2* Spot-Type Smoke Detectors.

17.7.4.2.1* Spot-type smoke detectors shall be located on the ceiling or, if on a sidewall, between the ceiling and 12 in. (300 mm) down from the ceiling to the top of the detector.

17.7.4.2.2* To minimize dust contamination, smoke detectors, where installed under raised floors, shall be mounted only in an orientation for which they have been listed.

17.7.4.2.3 On smooth ceilings, spacing for spot-type smoke detectors shall be in accordance with 17.7.4.2.3.1 through 17.7.4.2.3.4.

Δ **17.7.4.2.3.1*** In the absence of specific performance-based design criteria, detectors on ceilings up to 40 ft (12.2 m) in height shall be spaced in accordance with either of the following:

(1) The detectors shall comply with the following:
   (a) The distance between detectors shall not exceed a nominal spacing of 30 ft (9.1 m).
   (b) There shall be detectors within a distance of one-half the nominal spacing, measured at right angles from all walls or partitions extending upward to within the top 15 percent of the ceiling height.
(2)* All points on the ceiling shall have a detector within a distance equal to or less than 0.7 times the nominal 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing (0.7*S*).

17.7.4.2.3.2 In all cases, the manufacturer's published instructions shall be followed.

17.7.4.2.3.3 Other spacing shall be permitted to be used depending on ceiling height, different conditions, or response requirements.

17.7.4.2.3.4 For the detection of flaming fires, the guidelines in Annex B shall be permitted to be used.

17.7.4.2.4* For solid joist and beam construction, spacing for spot-type smoke detectors shall be in accordance with 17.7.4.2.4.1 through 17.7.4.2.4.7.

17.7.4.2.4.1 Solid joists shall be considered equivalent to beams for smoke detector spacing guidelines.

N **17.7.4.2.4.2** For joist and beam construction using girders, the following shall apply:

(1) A girder shall be considered a beam where the top of the girder is within 4 in. (100 mm) of the ceiling.
(2) A girder shall not be a factor in detector location where the top of the girder is more than 4 in. (100 mm) from the ceiling.

Δ **17.7.4.2.4.3** For level ceilings, the following shall apply:

(1) For ceilings with beam depths of less than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), the following shall apply:
   (a) Smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted.
   (b) Spot-type smoke detectors shall be permitted to be located on ceilings or on the bottom of beams.
(2) For ceilings with beam depths equal to or greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), the following shall apply:
   (a) Where beam spacing is equal to or greater than 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be located on the ceiling in each beam pocket.
   (b) Where beam spacing is less than 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), the following shall be permitted for spot detectors:
      i. Smooth ceiling spacing in the direction parallel to the beams and at one-half smooth ceiling spacing in the direction perpendicular to the beams
      ii. Location of detectors either on the ceiling or on the bottom of the beams
(3)* For beam pockets formed by intersecting beams, including waffle or pan-type ceilings, the following shall apply:
   (a) For beam depths less than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spacing shall be in accordance with 17.7.4.2.4.3(1).
   (b) For beam depths greater than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spacing shall be in accordance with 17.7.4.2.4.3(2).
(4)* For corridors 15 ft (4.6 m) in width or less having ceiling beams or solid joists perpendicular to the corridor length, the following shall apply:
   (a) Smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted.
   (b) Location of spot-type smoke detectors shall be permitted on ceilings, sidewalls, or the bottom of beams or solid joists.
(5) For rooms of 900 ft^2 (84 m^2) or less, the following shall apply:
   (a) Use of smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted.
   (b) Location of spot-type smoke detectors shall be permitted on ceilings or on the bottom of beams.
(6) For ceilings with beams, where there is a gap greater than 15 percent of the ceiling height above the beam, smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted.

17.7.4.2.4.4* For sloping ceilings with beams running parallel up slope, the following shall apply:

(1) Spot-type detector(s) shall be located on the ceiling within beam pocket(s).
(2) The ceiling height shall be taken as the average height over slope.
(3) Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling.
(4) Smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted within beam pocket(s) parallel to the beams.

(5) For beam depths less than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be located with smooth ceiling spacing perpendicular to the beams.
(6) For beam depths greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), the following shall apply for spacing perpendicular to the beams:
   (a) For beam spacing greater than or equal to 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be located in each beam pocket.
   (b) For beam spacing less than 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), spot-type detectors shall not be required in every beam pocket but shall be spaced not greater than 50 percent of smooth ceiling spacing.

17.7.4.2.4.5* For sloping ceilings with beams running perpendicular across slope, the following shall apply:

(1) Spot-type detector(s) shall be located at the bottom of the beams.
(2) The ceiling height shall be taken as the average height over slope.
(3) Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling.
(4) Smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted within beam pocket(s).
(5) For beam depths less than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be located with smooth ceiling spacing.
(6) For beam depths greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spot-type detectors shall not be required to be located closer than (0.4 *H*) and shall not exceed 50 percent of smooth ceiling spacing.

17.7.4.2.4.6* For sloped ceilings with beam pockets formed by intersecting beams, the following shall apply:

(1) Spot-type detector(s) shall be located at the bottom of the beams.
(2) The ceiling height shall be taken as the average height over slope.
(3) Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling.
(4) For beam depths less than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be spaced with not more than three beams between detectors and shall not exceed smooth ceiling spacing.
(5) For beam depths greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be spaced with not more than two beams between detectors, but shall not be required to be spaced closer than (0.4 *H*), and shall not exceed 50 percent of smooth ceiling spacing.

17.7.4.2.4.7 For sloped ceilings with solid joists, the detectors shall be located on the bottom of the joist.

17.7.4.3* Peaked.

17.7.4.3.1 Detectors shall first be spaced and located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the peak, measured horizontally.

17.7.4.3.2 The number and spacing of additional detectors, if any, shall be based on the horizontal projection of the ceiling.

17.7.4.4* Shed.

17.7.4.4.1 Detectors shall first be spaced and located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the high side of the ceiling, measured horizontally.

17.7.4.4.2 The number and spacing of additional detectors, if any, shall be based on the horizontal projection of the ceiling.

17.7.4.5 Raised Floors and Suspended Ceilings.

17.7.4.5.1 Spaces beneath raised floors and above suspended ceilings shall be treated as separate rooms for smoke detector spacing purposes.

17.7.4.5.2 Detectors installed beneath raised floors or above suspended ceilings, or both, including raised floors and suspended ceilings used for environmental air, shall not be used in lieu of providing detection within the room.

17.7.4.5.3 For raised floors, the following shall apply:

(1) Detectors installed beneath raised floors shall be spaced in accordance with 17.7.4.1, 17.7.4.1.3, and 17.7.4.2.2.
(2) Where the area beneath the raised floor is also used for environmental air, detector spacing shall also conform to 17.7.5.1 and 17.7.5.2.

17.7.4.5.4 For suspended ceilings, the following shall apply:

(1) Detector spacing above suspended ceilings shall conform to the requirements of 17.7.4 for the ceiling configuration.
(2) Where detectors are installed in ceilings used for environmental air, detector spacing shall also conform to 17.7.5.1, 17.7.5.2, and 17.7.5.4.

17.7.4.6 Air-Sampling-Type Smoke Detector.

17.7.4.6.1 General.

17.7.4.6.1.1* In the absence of specific performance-based design criteria, each sampling port of an air-sampling-type smoke detector shall be treated as a spot-type smoke detector for the purpose of location and spacing in accordance with 17.7.4.

17.7.4.6.1.2 Air-sampling-type smoke detectors shall produce trouble signals if the airflow is outside the manufacturer's specified range.

17.7.4.6.1.3 If provided, atmospheric contaminant filtration shall be listed for use with the detector and installed and maintained in accordance with the air-sampling-type smoke detector manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.6.2 Pipe Network.

17.7.4.6.2.1 Maximum air sample transport time from the farthest sampling port to the detector shall not exceed 120 seconds.

Δ **17.7.4.6.2.2** Sampling pipe networks shall be designed on the basis of and supported by computer-based fluid dynamics design calculations to ensure required performance.

17.7.4.6.2.3 The sampling pipe network design calculations shall include pressure, volumetric flow, and alarm sensitivity at each sampling port.

17.7.4.6.2.4 Software applications for the design of pipe networks shall be listed for use with the manufacturer's equipment.

17.7.4.6.2.5 Sampling system piping shall be conspicuously identified as "SMOKE DETECTOR SAMPLING TUBE — DO NOT DISTURB," as follows:

(1) At changes in direction or branches of piping

(2) At each side of penetrations of walls, floors, or other barriers
(3) At intervals on piping that provide visibility within the space, but no greater than 20 ft (6.1 m)

17.7.4.6.2.6* Sampling ports shall be identified as such.

17.7.4.6.2.7* If provided, test ports at the end (most remote location) of a pipe run installed in the pipe network solely for the purpose of validating consistency in performance (also referred to as benchmark test points) shall be included in the design calculations and allowed, but not required, to comply with the requirements of 17.7.4.6.2.

17.7.4.6.2.8 If the piping and fittings are painted, the painting shall be performed in accordance with the air-sampling-type smoke detector manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.6.2.9* Pipe network materials, sizing, and installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's published requirements and suitable for use in the environment in which they are installed.

17.7.4.6.2.10 Where used, capillary tubing shall be sized and affixed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and computer-based design calculations.

17.7.4.6.3 Installation and Spacing.

17.7.4.6.3.1* Air sampling pipe network fittings shall be installed air-tight and permanently affixed.

17.7.4.6.3.2 Sampled air shall be exhausted to a lessor or equal pressure zone. The pressure differential between the sampled air and detector exhaust shall not exceed the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.6.3.3* Supports for sampling pipe shall be in accordance with the air-sampling-type smoke detector manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.6.4 Special Applications.

17.7.4.6.4.1 Air Duct Applications.

(A) The air sampling system shall comply with the following:

(1) It shall be listed for air duct applications.
(2) It shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

(B) The inlet and exhaust sections of pipe that are installed inside the air duct shall comply with the following:

(1) They shall be air-tight.
(2) They shall exhaust the sampled air in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.6.4.2* Electrical Cabinet Applications. For protection of cabinets containing electrical equipment, the air sampling ports shall be located in the main airflow at the exhaust vents, downstream of the airflow distribution path, or in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.7* Projected-Beam-Type Smoke Detectors.

17.7.4.7.1 Projected-beam-type smoke detectors shall be located in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.7.2* The effects of stratification shall be evaluated when locating the detectors.

17.7.4.7.3 The beam length shall not exceed the maximum permitted by the equipment listing.

17.7.4.7.4 If reflectors are used with projected beams, the reflectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.4.7.5 A projected-beam-type smoke detector shall be considered equivalent to a row of spot-type smoke detectors for level and sloping ceiling applications.

17.7.4.7.6 Projected-beam-type detectors and reflectors shall be mounted on stable surfaces to prevent false or erratic operation due to movement.

17.7.4.7.7 The beam shall be designed so that small angular movements of the light source or receiver do not prevent operation due to smoke and do not cause nuisance or unintentional alarms.

17.7.4.7.8* Unless otherwise permitted by 17.4.2.2, the design and installation of projected-beam-type detectors shall address the potential for the obstruction of the light path.

17.7.5 Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC).

17.7.5.1* In spaces served by air-handling systems, detectors shall not be located where airflow prevents operation of the detectors.

17.7.5.2 In under-floor spaces and above-ceiling spaces that are used as HVAC plenums, detectors shall be listed for the anticipated environment as required by 17.7.1.8.

17.7.5.3 Detector spacings and locations shall be selected on the basis of anticipated airflow patterns and fire type.

17.7.5.4* Detectors placed in environmental air ducts or plenums shall not be used as a substitute for open area detectors.

17.7.5.4.1 Where detectors are used for the control of smoke spread, the requirements of 17.7.6 shall apply.

17.7.5.4.2 Where open area protection is required, 17.7.4 shall apply.

17.7.5.5 Detectors placed in environmental air ducts or plenums shall be permitted to be either supervisory or alarm initiating devices.

17.7.6* Smoke Detectors for Control of Smoke Spread.

17.7.6.1* Classifications. Smoke detectors installed and used to prevent smoke spread by initiating control of fans, dampers, doors, and other equipment shall be classified in the following manner:

(1) Area detectors that are installed in the related smoke compartments
(2) Detectors that are installed in the air duct systems
(3) Video image smoke detection that is installed in related smoke compartments

17.7.6.2* Limitations.

Δ **17.7.6.2.1** Detectors that are installed in the air duct system in accordance with 17.7.6.1(2) shall not be used as a substitute for open area protection.

17.7.6.2.2 Where open area protection is required, 17.7.4 shall apply.

17.7.6.3* Purposes.

17.7.6.3.1 To minimize the recirculation of smoke, a detector approved for air duct use shall be installed as required by NFPA 90A and 17.7.6.4.2.

17.7.6.3.2 If smoke detectors are used to initiate selectively the operation of equipment to control smoke spread, the requirements of 17.7.6.4.2.2 shall apply.

17.7.6.3.3 If detectors are used to initiate the operation of smoke doors, the requirements of 17.7.6.6 shall apply.

17.7.6.3.4 If duct detectors are used to initiate the operation of smoke dampers within ducts, the requirements of 17.7.6.5 shall apply.

17.7.6.4 Application.

17.7.6.4.1 Area Smoke Detectors Within Smoke Compartments. Area smoke detectors within smoke compartments shall be permitted to be used to control the spread of smoke by initiating operation of doors, dampers, and other equipment.

17.7.6.4.2* Smoke Detection for Air Duct System.

17.7.6.4.2.1 Supply Air System.

(A) Where the detection of smoke in the supply air system is required by other NFPA standards, a detector(s) listed for the air velocity present shall be installed in the supply air duct downstream of both the fan and the filters.

(B) Where the air duct system passes through other smoke compartments not served by the duct, additional smoke detectors shall not be required to be installed.

17.7.6.4.2.2* Return Air System. Unless otherwise modified by 17.7.6.4.2.2(A) or 17.7.6.4.2.2(B), if the detection of smoke in the return air system is required by other NFPA standards, a detector(s) listed for the air velocity present shall be located where the air leaves each smoke compartment, or in the duct system before the air enters the return air system common to more than one smoke compartment.

(A) Additional smoke detectors shall not be required to be installed in ducts where the air duct system passes through other smoke compartments not served by the duct.

(B) Where total coverage smoke detection is installed in accordance with 17.5.3.1 in all areas of the smoke compartment served by the return air system, installation of additional detector(s) listed for the air velocity present where the air leaves each smoke compartment, or in the duct system before the air enters in the return air system shall not be required, provided that their function is accomplished by the design of the total coverage smoke detection system.

17.7.6.5 Location and Installation of Detectors in Air Duct Systems.

17.7.6.5.1 Detectors shall be listed for the purpose for which they are being used.

17.7.6.5.2* Air duct detectors shall be installed in such a way as to obtain a representative sample of the airstream.

17.7.6.5.3 This installation shall be permitted to be achieved by any of the following methods:

(1) Rigid mounting within the duct
(2) Rigid mounting to the wall of the duct with the sensing element protruding into the duct
(3) Installation outside the duct with rigidly mounted sampling tubes protruding into the duct
(4) Installation through the duct with projected light beam

Δ 17.7.6.5.4 Detector Installation.

***N* 17.7.6.5.4.1** Detectors shall be mounted in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

***N* 17.7.6.5.4.2** Detectors installed inside ducts shall be accessible for inspection, testing, and maintenance through access doors or panels provided in accordance with NFPA 90A.

17.7.6.5.5 The location of all detectors in air duct systems shall be permanently and clearly identified and recorded.

17.7.6.5.6 Detectors mounted outside of a duct that employs sampling tubes for transporting smoke from inside the duct to the detector shall be designed and installed to allow verification of airflow from the duct to the detector.

17.7.6.5.7 Detectors shall be listed for operation over the complete range of air velocities, temperature, and humidity expected at the detector when the air-handling system is operating.

17.7.6.5.8 All penetrations of a return air duct in the vicinity of detectors installed on or in an air duct shall be sealed to prevent entrance of outside air and possible dilution or redirection of smoke within the duct.

17.7.6.6 Smoke Detectors for Door Release Service.

17.7.6.6.1 Smoke detectors that are part of an open area protection system covering the room, corridor, or enclosed space on each side of the smoke door and that are located and spaced as required by 17.7.4 shall be permitted to accomplish smoke door release service.

17.7.6.6.2 Smoke detectors that are used exclusively for smoke door release service shall be located and spaced as required by 17.7.6.6.

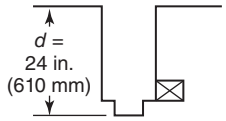
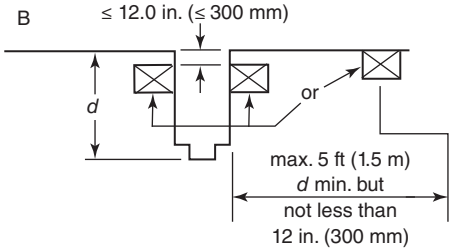
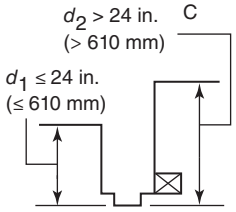
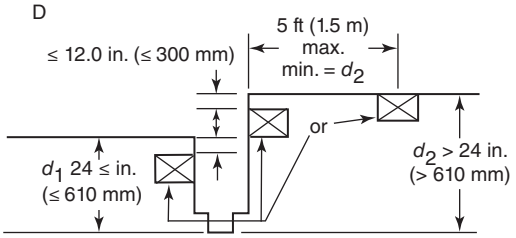
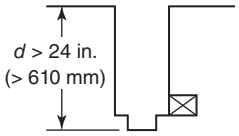
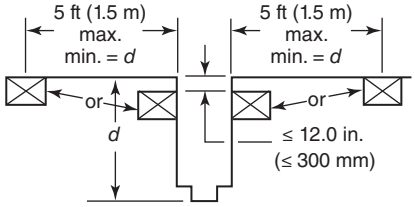
17.7.6.6.3 Where smoke door release is accomplished directly from the smoke detector(s), the detector(s) shall be listed for releasing service.

17.7.6.6.4 The number of detectors required shall be determined in accordance with 17.7.6.6.4.1 through 17.7.6.6.4.4.

17.7.6.6.4.1 If doors are to be closed in response to smoke flowing in either direction, the requirements of 17.7.6.6.4.1(A) through 17.7.6.6.4.1(D) shall apply.

(A) If the depth of wall section above the door is 24 in. (610 mm) or less, one ceiling-mounted smoke detector shall be required on one side of the doorway only, or two wall-mounted detectors shall be required, one on each side of the doorway. Figure 17.7.6.6.4.1(A), part A or B, shall apply.

(B) If the depth of wall section above the door is greater than 24 in. (610 mm) on one side only, one ceiling-mounted smoke detector shall be required on the higher side of the doorway only, or one wall-mounted detector shall be required on both sides of the doorway. Figure 17.7.6.6.4.1(A), part D, shall apply.

Depth of wall section above door	Door frame mounted	Ceiling or wall mounted
d	Smoke detector listed for frame mounting or as part of closer assembly	Smoke detector ceiling or wall mounted
0-24 in. (0-610 mm) on both sides of doorway	A  Detector or detector closer mounted on either side	B  One ceiling-mounted detector on either side or one wall-mounted detector on each side
Over 24 in. (610 mm) on one side only	C  Detector or detector closer mounted on higher side	D  One ceiling-mounted detector on higher side or one wall-mounted detector on each side
Over 24 in. (610 mm) on both sides	E  Detector or detector closer mounted on either side	F  Two detectors required
Over 60 in. (1.52 m)	G Might require additional detectors	

Δ FIGURE 17.7.6.6.4.1(A) Detector Location Requirements for Wall Sections.

(C)* If the depth of wall section above the door is greater than 24 in. (610 mm) on both sides, two ceiling-mounted or wall-mounted detectors shall be required, one on each side of the doorway. Figure 17.7.6.6.4.1(A), part F, shall apply.

(D) If a detector is specifically listed for door frame mounting, or if a listed combination or integral detector–door closer assembly is used, only one detector shall be required if installed in the manner recommended by the manufacturer's published instructions. Figure 17.7.6.6.4.1(A), parts A, C, and E, shall apply.

Δ 17.7.6.6.4.2 If door release is intended to prevent smoke transmission from one space to another in one direction only, either the requirements of 17.7.6.6.4.2(A) or 17.7.6.6.4.2(B) shall apply.

N (A) Regardless of the depth of wall section above the door, detectors located in the space to which smoke is to be confined shall comply with 17.7.6.6.5.

N (B) A smoke detector complying with 17.7.6.6.4.1(D) shall be permitted to be used.

17.7.6.6.4.3 If there are multiple doorways, additional ceiling-mounted detectors shall be required as specified in 17.7.6.6.4.3(A) through 17.7.6.6.4.3(C).

(A) If the separation between doorways exceeds 24 in. (610 mm), each doorway shall be treated separately. Figure 17.7.6.6.4.3(A), part E, shall apply.

(B) Each group of three or more doorway openings shall be treated separately. Figure 17.7.6.6.4.3(B) shall apply.

(C) Each group of doorway openings that exceeds 20 ft (6.1 m) in width, measured at its overall extremes, shall be treated separately. Figure 17.7.6.6.4.3(C) shall apply.

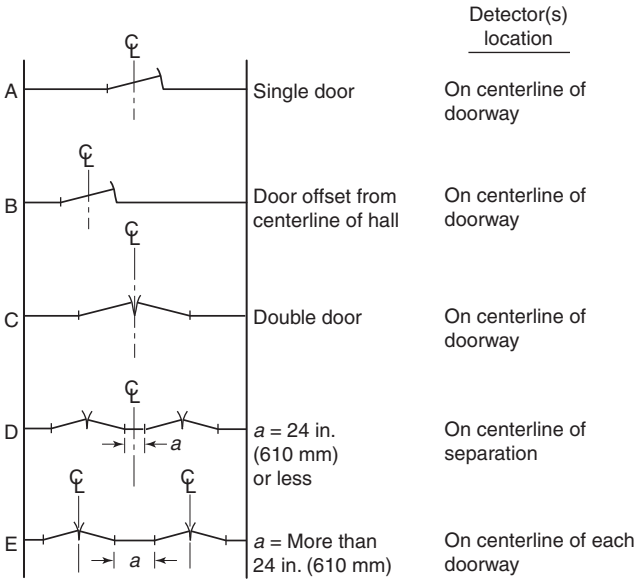


FIGURE 17.7.6.6.4.3(A) Detector Location Requirements for Single and Double Doors.

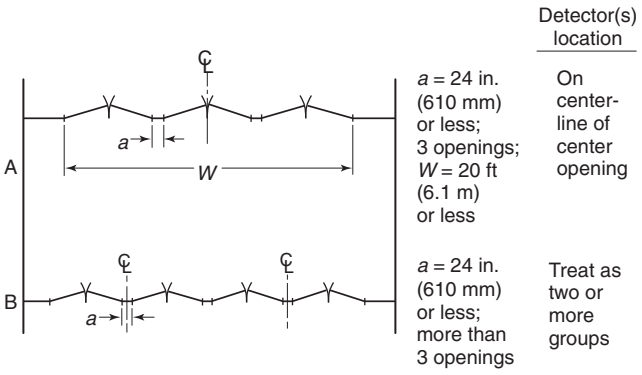


FIGURE 17.7.6.6.4.3(B) Detector(s) Location ±24 in. (610 mm) Requirements for Group Doorways.

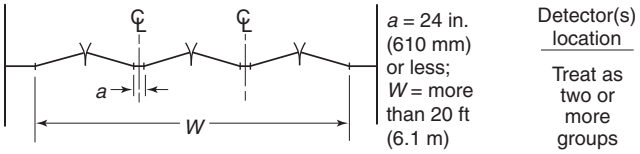


FIGURE 17.7.6.6.4.3(C) Detector(s) Location ±24 in. (610 mm) Requirements for Group Doorways over 20 ft (6.1 m) in Width.

17.7.6.6.4.4 If there are multiple doorways and listed door frame–mounted detectors, or if listed combination or integral detector–door closer assemblies are used, there shall be one detector for each single or double doorway.

17.7.6.6.5 The locations of detectors shall be determined in accordance with 17.7.6.6.5.1 and 17.7.6.6.5.2.

Δ 17.7.6.6.5.1 If ceiling-mounted smoke detectors are to be installed on a smooth ceiling for a single or double doorway, they shall be located in accordance with Figure 17.7.6.6.4.3(A) and as follows:

(1) Within 1 ft (0.3 m) of either side of the centerline of the doorway
(2) No more than 5 ft (1.5 m), measured along the ceiling and perpendicular to the doorway in accordance with Figure 17.7.6.6.4.1(A)
(3) No closer than shown in Part B, Part D, and Part F of Figure 17.7.6.6.4.1(A)

17.7.6.6.5.2 If ceiling-mounted detectors are to be installed in conditions other than those outlined in 17.7.6.6.5.1, an engineering evaluation shall be made.

17.7.7 Special Considerations.

17.7.7.1 Spot-Type Detectors.

17.7.7.1.1 Combination and multi-sensor smoke detectors that have a fixed-temperature element as part of the unit shall be selected in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1 for the maximum ceiling temperature expected in service.

17.7.7.1.2* The detector shall be mounted and designed so that airflow from inside or around the housing does not prevent the entry of smoke during a fire or test condition.

17.7.7.2* High-Rack Storage. The location and spacing of smoke detectors for high-rack storage shall address the commodity, quantity, and configuration of the rack storage.

17.7.7.3 High Air Movement Areas.

17.7.7.3.1* General. The purpose and scope of 17.7.7.3 shall be to provide location and spacing guidance for smoke detectors intended for early warning of fire in high air movement areas.

17.7.7.3.2 Location. Smoke detectors shall not be located directly in the airstream of supply registers.

17.7.7.3.3* Spacing.

17.7.7.3.3.1 Smoke detector spacing shall be reduced where the airflow in a defined space exceeds 8 minutes per air change (total space volume) (equal to 7.5 air changes per hour).

17.7.7.3.3.2 Where spacing must be adjusted for airflow, spot-type smoke detector spacing shall be adjusted in accordance

with Table 17.7.7.3.3.2 or Figure 17.7.7.3.3.2 before making any other spacing adjustments required by this Code.

17.7.7.3.3.3* Air sampling or projected beam smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.7.7.3.4 HVAC Mechanical Rooms. Where HVAC mechanical rooms are used as an air plenum for return air, the spacings of smoke detectors shall not be required to be reduced based on the number of air changes.

17.7.8 Video Image Smoke Detection.

17.7.8.1 Video image smoke detection systems and all of the components thereof, including hardware and software, shall be listed for the purpose of smoke detection.

17.7.8.2 Video image smoke detection systems shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 of this Code.

Table 17.7.7.3.3.2 Spot-Type Smoke Detector Spacing Based on Air Movement (Not to Be Used for Under-Floor or Above-Ceiling Spaces)

Minutes per Air Change	Air Changes per Hour	Spacing per Detector	
		ft^2	m^2
1	60	125	12
2	30	250	23
3	20	375	35
4	15	500	46
5	12	625	58
6	10	750	70
7	8.6	875	81
8	7.5	900	84
9	6.7	900	84
10	6	900	84

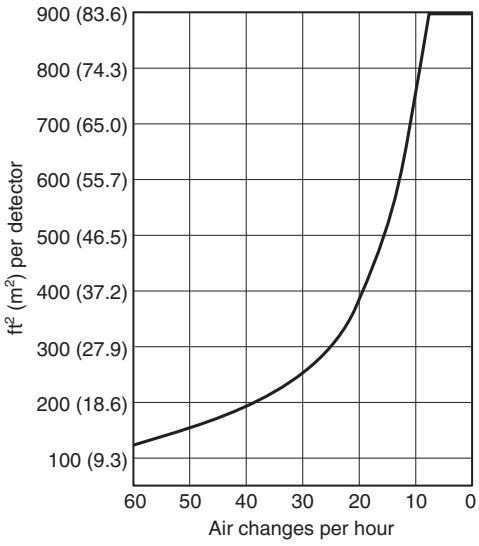


FIGURE 17.7.7.3.3.2 High Air Movement Areas (Not to Be Used for Under-Floor or Above-Ceiling Spaces).

17.7.8.2.1 Systems shall be designed in accordance with the performance-based design requirements of Section 17.3.

17.7.8.2.2 The location and spacing of video image smoke detectors shall comply with the requirements of 17.13.5.

17.7.8.3* Video signals generated by cameras that are components of video image smoke detection systems shall be permitted to be transmitted to other systems for other uses only through output connections provided specifically for that purpose by the video system manufacturer.

17.7.8.4* All component controls and software shall be protected from unauthorized changes.

17.7.8.5 All changes to the software or component settings shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

17.8 Radiant-Energy-Sensing Fire Detectors.

17.8.1* General.

17.8.1.1 The radiant energy detection design documentation shall state the required performance objective of the system.

17.8.1.2 The purpose and scope of Section 17.8 shall be to provide requirements for the selection, location, and spacing of fire detectors that sense the radiant energy produced by burning substances.

17.8.1.3 These detectors shall be categorized as flame detectors and spark/ember detectors.

17.8.2* Fire Characteristics and Detector Selection.

17.8.2.1* The type and quantity of radiant-energy-sensing fire detectors shall be determined on the basis of the performance characteristics of the detector and an analysis of the hazard, including the burning characteristics of the fuel, the fire growth rate, the environment, the ambient conditions, and the capabilities of the extinguishing media and equipment.

17.8.2.2* The selection of the radiant-energy-sensing detectors shall be based on the following:

(1) Matching of the spectral response of the detector to the spectral emissions of the fire or fires to be detected
(2) Minimizing the possibility of spurious nuisance alarms from non-fire sources inherent to the hazard area

17.8.3 Spacing Considerations.

17.8.3.1 General Rules.

17.8.3.1.1* Radiant-energy-sensing fire detectors shall be employed consistent with the listing or approval and the inverse square law, which defines the fire size versus distance curve for the detector.

17.8.3.1.2 Detector quantity shall be based on the detectors being positioned so that no point requiring detection in the hazard area is obstructed or outside the field of view of at least one detector.

17.8.3.2 Spacing Considerations for Flame Detectors.

17.8.3.2.1* The location and spacing of detectors shall be the result of an engineering evaluation that includes the following:

(1) Size of the fire that is to be detected
(2) Fuel involved
(3) Sensitivity of the detector
(4) Field of view of the detector

(5) Distance between the fire and the detector
(6) Radiant energy absorption of the atmosphere
(7) Presence of extraneous sources of radiant emissions
(8) Purpose of the detection system
(9) Response time required

17.8.3.2.2 The system design shall specify the size of the flaming fire of given fuel that is to be detected.

Δ **17.8.3.2.3*** In applications where the fire to be detected could occur in an area not on the optical axis of the detector, the distance shall be reduced or detectors added to compensate for the angular displacement of the fire in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.8.3.2.4* In applications in which the fire to be detected is of a fuel that differs from the test fuel used in the process of listing or approval, the distance between the detector and the fire shall be adjusted consistent with the fuel specificity of the detector as established by the manufacturer.

17.8.3.2.5 Because flame detectors are line-of-sight devices, their ability to respond to the required area of fire in the zone that is to be protected shall not be compromised by the presence of intervening structural members or other opaque objects or materials.

17.8.3.2.6* Provisions shall be made to sustain detector window clarity in applications where airborne particulates and aerosols coat the detector window between maintenance intervals and affect sensitivity.

17.8.3.3 Spacing Considerations for Spark/Ember Detectors.

17.8.3.3.1* The location and spacing of detectors shall be the result of an engineering evaluation that includes the following:

(1) Size of the spark or ember that is to be detected
(2) Fuel involved
(3) Sensitivity of the detector
(4) Field of view of the detector
(5) Distance between the fire and the detector
(6) Radiant energy absorption of the atmosphere
(7) Presence of extraneous sources of radiant emissions
(8) Purpose of the detection systems
(9) Response time required

17.8.3.3.2* The system design shall specify the size of the spark or ember of the given fuel that the detection system is to detect.

17.8.3.3.3 Spark detectors shall be positioned so that all points within the cross section of the conveyance duct, conveyor, or chute where the detectors are located are within the field of view *(as defined in 3.3.115)* of at least one detector.

17.8.3.3.4* The location and spacing of the detectors shall be adjusted using the inverse square law, modified for the atmospheric absorption and the absorption of nonburning fuel suspended in the air in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

Δ **17.8.3.3.5*** In applications where the sparks to be detected could occur in an area not on the optical axis of the detector, the distance shall be reduced or detectors added to compensate for the angular displacement of the fire in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

17.8.3.3.6* Provisions shall be made to sustain the detector window clarity in applications where airborne particulates and aerosols coat the detector window and affect sensitivity.

17.8.4 Other Considerations.

17.8.4.1 Radiant-energy-sensing detectors shall be protected either by design or installation to ensure that optical performance is not compromised.

17.8.4.2 If necessary, radiant-energy-sensing detectors shall be shielded or otherwise arranged to prevent action from unwanted radiant energy.

17.8.4.3 Where used in outdoor applications, radiant-energy-sensing detectors shall be shielded or otherwise arranged in a fashion to prevent diminishing sensitivity by conditions such as rain or snow and yet allow a clear field of vision of the hazard area.

17.8.4.4 A radiant-energy-sensing fire detector shall not be installed in a location where the ambient conditions are known to exceed the extremes for which the detector has been listed.

17.8.5 Video Image Flame Detection.

17.8.5.1 Video image flame detection systems and all of the components thereof, including hardware and software, shall be listed for the purpose of flame detection.

17.8.5.2 Video image flame detection systems shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 of this Code.

17.8.5.3* Video signals generated by cameras that are components of video image flame detection systems shall be permitted to be transmitted to other systems for other uses only through output connections provided specifically for that purpose by the video system manufacturer.

17.8.5.4* All component controls and software shall be protected from unauthorized changes.

17.8.5.5 All changes to the software or component settings shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

17.9 Combination, Multi-Criteria, and Multi-Sensor Detectors.

17.9.1 General. The requirements for the selection, location, and spacing of combination, multi-criteria, and multi-sensor detectors shall comply with Section 17.9.

17.9.2 Combination Detectors.

17.9.2.1 A combination detector shall be listed for each sensor.

17.9.2.2 The device listings shall determine the locations and spacing criteria in accordance with Chapter 17.

17.9.3 Multi-Criteria Detectors.

17.9.3.1 A multi-criteria detector shall be listed for the primary function of the device.

17.9.3.2 Because of the device-specific, software-driven solution of multi-criteria detectors to reduce unwanted alarms and improve detector response to a nonspecific fire source, location and spacing criteria included with the detector installation instructions shall be followed.

17.9.4 Multi-Sensor Detectors.

17.9.4.1 A multi-sensor detector shall be listed for each sensor.

17.9.4.2 Because of the device-specific, software-driven solution of multi-sensor detectors to reduce unwanted alarms and improve detector response to a nonspecific fire source, location and spacing criteria included with the detector installation instructions shall be followed.

17.10 Gas Detection.

17.10.1 General. The purpose and scope of Section 17.10 shall be to provide requirements for the selection, installation, and operation of gas detectors other than carbon monoxide detectors and acoustic leak detectors.

N **17.10.1.1** Fuel gas detector and warning equipment shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 715.

17.10.2 Gas Characteristics and Detector Selection.

17.10.2.1* Gas detection equipment shall be listed in accordance with the applicable standard(s) for the specific gas or vapor it is intended to detect.

17.10.2.2 Any gas detection systems installed on a fire alarm system shall comply with all the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 of this Code.

17.10.2.3 The requirements of this Code shall not apply to gas detection systems used solely for process control.

17.10.2.4* The selection and placement of the gas detectors shall be based on an engineering evaluation.

N **17.11 Acoustic Leak Detection.**

N **17.11.1 General.**

N **17.11.1.1** The design documentation for an acoustic leak detector shall state the required performance objective of the system.

N **17.11.1.2** The purpose and scope of Section 17.11 shall be to provide requirements for the selection, location, and spacing of acoustic leak detectors.

N **17.11.2 Leak Characteristics and Detector Selection.**

N **17.11.2.1*** Acoustic leak detectors shall be approved for the intended application.

N **17.11.2.2*** The type and quantity of acoustic leak detectors shall be determined based on the performance characteristics of the detector and analysis of the hazard, including the following:

(1) Characteristics of the leak
(2) Material being released
(3) Liquid or gas phase of the release
(4) Environment
(5) Ambient conditions

N **17.11.2.3** Acoustic gas detectors intended to function as part of a safety related function, and which are installed on fire alarm and signaling systems shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23.

N **17.11.3 Spacing and Layout.**

N **17.11.3.1** The placement of acoustic leak detectors shall be based on an engineering evaluation that includes the following:

(1)* Size of the leak to be detected
(2) Properties of the material to be detected
(3)* Required coverage
(4) Basis of design of the detection system
(5) Response time required
(6) Ambient and environmental conditions

N **17.11.3.2** The coverage area and spacing of acoustic leak detectors shall be based on approved tests.

N **17.11.3.3** The coverage area established by approved testing shall be adjusted according to the manufacturer's recommendations to meet the performance objective identified in 17.11.1.1.

N **17.11.3.4*** The coverage area and spacing of acoustic leak detectors shall be adjusted to account for impact to detection capability due to background interference.

N **17.12 Thermal Image Fire Detection.**

N **17.12.1** Thermal image fire detection systems and all the components thereof, including hardware and software, shall be listed for the purpose of fire detection.

N **17.12.2** Thermal image fire detection systems shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 11, 14, 17, and 23.

N **17.12.2.1** Systems shall be designed in accordance with the performance-based requirements of Section 17.3.

N **17.12.2.2** The location and spacing of thermal image fire detectors shall comply with the requirements of 17.13.5.

N **17.12.2.3** A thermal image fire detector shall have clear line-of-sight to the hazard it is protecting.

N **17.12.2.4** A thermal image fire detector shall not be used with a pan-tilt mount unless specifically listed for moveable operation.

N **17.12.3** Signals generated by thermal imagers that are components of thermal image fire detection systems shall be permitted to be transmitted to other systems for other uses only through output connections provided specifically for that purpose by the system manufacturer.

N **17.12.4** All thermal image fire detection system component controls and software shall be protected from unauthorized changes.

N **17.12.5** All changes to thermal image fire detection system software or component settings shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

N **17.12.6** A thermal image fire detector shall produce a supervisory signal if the lens is blocked or dirty enough to impede proper operation.

N **17.12.7** A thermal image fire detector shall be capable of producing an alarm due to a temperature rate of rise within its field of view.

17.13 Other Fire Detectors.

17.13.1 Detectors that operate on principles different from those covered by Sections 17.6 through 17.8 shall be classified as other fire detectors.

17.13.1.1 Such detectors shall be installed in all areas where they are required either by other NFPA codes and standards or by the authority having jurisdiction.

17.13.2* Other fire detectors shall operate where subjected to the abnormal concentration of combustion effects that occur during a fire.

17.13.3 Detection layout shall be based upon the size and intensity of fire to provide the necessary quantity of required products and related thermal lift, circulation, or diffusion for operation.

17.13.4 Room sizes and contours, airflow patterns, obstructions, and other characteristics of the protected hazard shall be taken into account.

17.13.5 Location and spacing of detectors shall comply with 17.13.5.1 through 17.13.5.3.

17.13.5.1 The location and spacing of detectors shall be based on the principle of operation and an engineering survey of the conditions anticipated in service.

17.13.5.1.1 The manufacturer's published instructions shall be consulted for recommended detector uses and locations.

17.13.5.2 Detectors shall not be spaced beyond their listed or approved maximums.

17.13.5.2.1 Closer spacing shall be used where the structural or other characteristics of the protected hazard warrant.

17.13.5.3 The location and sensitivity of the detectors shall be based on a documented engineering evaluation that includes the manufacturer's installation instructions and the following:

(1) Structural features, size, and shape of the rooms and bays
(2) Occupancy and uses of the area
(3) Ceiling height
(4) Ceiling shape, surface, and obstructions
(5) Ventilation
(6) Ambient environment
(7) Burning characteristics of the combustible materials present
(8) Configuration of the contents in the area to be protected

17.14 Carbon Monoxide Detectors.

Δ **17.14.1*** Where carbon monoxide protection of a building is required by laws, codes, or standards, carbon monoxide detectors shall be sited in accordance with all of the following unless a performance-based design in accordance with Section 17.3 is used:

(1)* On the ceiling or on the wall with the top of the detector within 12 in. (300 mm) of the ceiling, where installed in the same room as the permanently installed carbon monoxide source
(2)* Centrally located in every HVAC zone of the areas required by laws, codes, or standards
(3) Outside of each separate sleeping area, guest room, and guest suite within 21 ft (6.4 m) of any door to a sleeping room, with the distance measured along a path of travel
(4)* Other locations where required by applicable laws, codes, or standards
(5) In accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions

Δ **17.14.2*** Carbon monoxide detectors shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed in accordance with applicable standards.
(2) Carbon monoxide detectors shall be set to respond to the sensitivity limits specified in UL 2034, *Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms*.

17.14.3* Carbon monoxide detectors that are installed in air duct systems shall not be used as a substitute for open area protection.

17.14.4 All carbon monoxide detectors shall be located and mounted so that accidental operation will not be caused by jarring or vibration.

17.14.5 The location of carbon monoxide detectors shall be based on an evaluation of potential ambient sources and flows of carbon monoxide, moisture, temperature, dust, or fumes and of electrical or mechanical influences to minimize nuisance alarms.

17.14.6 The selection and placement of carbon monoxide detectors shall take into account both the performance characteristics of the detector and the areas into which the detectors are to be installed to prevent nuisance and unintentional alarms or improper operation after installation.

17.14.7 Unless tested and listed for recessed mounting, carbon monoxide detectors shall not be recessed into the mounting surface.

17.14.8 Protection During Construction.

17.14.8.1 Where detectors are installed for signal initiation during construction, they shall be replaced prior to the final commissioning of the system.

17.14.8.2 Where detection is not required during construction, detectors shall not be installed until after all other construction trades have completed cleanup.

17.14.9 Carbon Monoxide Detectors for Control of Carbon Monoxide Spread.

17.14.9.1 System designers shall consider the spread of carbon monoxide through an occupancy through the HVAC system.

17.14.9.2 Interaction with smoke control systems, if such is provided, shall be coordinated.

17.15 Sprinkler Waterflow Alarm-Initiating Devices.

17.15.1* The provisions of Section 17.15 shall apply to devices that initiate an alarm indicating a flow of water in a sprinkler system.

17.15.2* Activation of the initiating device shall occur within 90 seconds of waterflow at the alarm-initiating device when flow occurs that is equal to or greater than that from a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system.

17.15.3 Movement of water due to waste, surges, or variable pressure shall not initiate an alarm signal.

17.16* Detection of Operation of Other Automatic Extinguishing Systems. The operation of fire extinguishing systems or suppression systems shall initiate an alarm signal by alarm-initiating devices installed in accordance with their individual listings.

17.17 Manually Actuated Alarm-Initiating Devices.

Δ **17.17.1*** Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be listed in accordance with their applicable standards.

17.17.2 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices for initiating signals other than for fire alarm shall be permitted if the devices are differentiated from manual fire alarm boxes by a color other than red and labeling.

N **17.17.3** Manual stations used to release extinguishing or suppression agents shall be identified in one of the following ways:

(1) On the manual station
(2) By signage within 1 ft (0.3 m) of the manual station

17.17.4 Combination manual fire alarm boxes and guard's signaling stations shall be permitted.

17.17.5 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be securely mounted.

17.17.6 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be mounted on a background of contrasting color.

17.17.7 The operable part of a manually actuated alarm-initiating device shall be not less than 42 in. (1.07 m) and not more than 48 in. (1.22 m) from the finished floor.

17.17.8 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be permitted to be single action or double action.

17.17.9* Listed protective covers shall be permitted to be installed over single- or double-action manually actuated alarm-initiating devices.

17.17.10 Manual fire alarm boxes shall comply with 17.17.10.1 through 17.17.10.6.

17.17.10.1 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be used only for fire alarm initiating purposes.

17.17.10.2 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be installed so that they are conspicuous, unobstructed, and accessible.

17.17.10.3* Unless installed in an environment that precludes the use of red paint or red plastic, manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.

17.17.10.4 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located within 5 ft (1.5 m) of each exit doorway on each floor.

17.17.10.5* Additional manual fire alarm boxes shall be provided so that the travel distance to the nearest manual fire alarm box will not exceed 200 ft (61 m), measured horizontally on the same floor.

17.17.10.6 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be mounted on both sides of grouped openings over 40 ft (12.2 m) in width, and within 5 ft (1.5 m) of each side of the grouped opening.

17.18 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device. A fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device shall indicate those conditions for a specific fire extinguisher required by NFPA 10 to a fire alarm control unit or other control unit.

17.19 Supervisory-Signal-Initiating Devices.

17.19.1 Control Valve Supervisory-Signal-Initiating Device.

17.19.1.1 Two separate and distinct signals shall be initiated: one indicating movement of the valve from its normal position (off-normal), and the other indicating restoration of the valve to its normal position.

17.19.1.2 The off-normal signal shall be initiated during the first two revolutions of the handwheel or during one-fifth of the travel distance of the valve control apparatus from its normal position.

17.19.1.3 The off-normal signal shall not be restored at any valve position except normal.

17.19.1.4 An initiating device for supervising the position of a control valve shall not interfere with the operation of the valve, obstruct the view of its indicator, or prevent access for valve maintenance.

17.19.2 Pressure Supervisory-Signal-Initiating Device.

17.19.2.1 Two separate and distinct signals shall be initiated: one indicating that the required pressure has increased or decreased (off-normal), and the other indicating restoration of the pressure to its normal value.

17.19.2.2 The requirements in 17.19.2.2.1 through 17.19.2.2.4 shall apply to pressure supervisory-signal-initiating devices.

17.19.2.2.1 Pressure Tank.

(A) A pressure tank supervisory-signal-initiating device for a pressurized limited water supply, such as a pressure tank, shall indicate both high- and low-pressure conditions.

(B) The off-normal signal shall be initiated when the required pressure increases or decreases by 10 psi (70 kPa).

17.19.2.2.2* Dry Pipe and Preaction Sprinkler Systems.

(A) A pressure supervisory-signal-initiating device shall indicate both high- and low-pressure conditions.

(B) Unless otherwise permitted by the dry pipe or preaction valve manufacturer's published installation instructions, the off-normal signal shall be initiated in accordance with NFPA 13.

17.19.2.2.3 Steam Pressure.

(A) A steam pressure supervisory-signal-initiating device shall indicate a low pressure condition.

(B) The off-normal signal shall be initiated prior to the pressure falling below 110 percent of the minimum operating pressure of the steam-operated equipment supplied.

17.19.2.2.4 Other Sources. An initiating device for supervising the pressure of sources other than those specified in 17.19.2.2.1 through 17.19.2.2.3 shall be provided as required by the authority having jurisdiction.

17.19.3 Water Level Supervisory-Signal-Initiating Device.

17.19.3.1 Two separate and distinct signals shall be initiated: one indicating that the required water level has been lowered or raised (off-normal), and the other indicating restoration.

17.19.3.2 A pressure tank signal-initiating device shall indicate both high and low water level conditions.

17.19.3.2.1 The off-normal signal shall be initiated when the water level falls 3 in. (76 mm) or rises 3 in. (76 mm).

17.19.3.3 A supervisory-signal-initiating device for other than pressure tanks shall initiate a low water level signal when the water level falls 12 in. (300 mm).

17.19.4 Water Temperature Supervisory-Signal-Initiating Device. A water temperature supervisory-signal-initiating device for a water storage container exposed to freezing conditions shall initiate two separate and distinctive signals, as follows:

(1) One signal shall indicate a decrease in water temperature to 40°F (4.4°C).
(2) The other signal shall indicate a restoration of the water temperature to above 40°F (4.4°C).

•

17.19.5 Room Temperature Supervisory-Signal-Initiating Device. A room temperature supervisory device shall indicate a decrease in room temperature to 40°F (4.4°C) and its restoration to above 40°F (4.4°C).

Chapter 18 Notification Appliances

18.1* Application.

18.1.1 The requirements of this chapter shall apply where required by the authority having jurisdiction governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code.

18.1.2 The requirements of this chapter shall address the reception of a notification signal and not the signal's information content.

18.1.3 The performance, location, and mounting of notification appliances used to initiate or direct evacuation or relocation of the occupants, or for providing information to occupants or staff, shall comply with this chapter.

18.1.4 The performance, location, and mounting of annunciators, displays, and printers used to display or record information for use by occupants, staff, responding emergency personnel, or supervising station personnel shall comply with this chapter.

18.1.5* The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the areas, spaces, or system functions where required by the authority having jurisdiction governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code requiring compliance with this chapter.

18.1.6 Notification appliances shall be permitted to be used within buildings or outdoors and to target the general building, area, or space, or only specific parts of a building, area, or space designated in specific zones and sub-zones.

18.1.7 The requirements of Chapters 10, 11, 12, 14, 23, and 24 shall apply to the interconnection of notification appliances, the cybersecurity of control and communication configurations, the power supplies, and the use of the information provided by notification appliances.

18.2 Purpose. Notification appliances shall provide stimuli for initiating emergency action and provide information to users, emergency response personnel, and occupants.

18.3 General.

18.3.1 Listing. All notification appliances installed in conformity with Chapter 18 shall be listed for the purpose for which they are used.

18.3.2 Nameplates.

18.3.2.1 Notification appliances shall include on their nameplates reference to electrical requirements and rated audible or visual performance, or both, as defined by the listing authority.

18.3.2.2 Audible appliances shall include on their nameplates reference to their parameters or reference to installation documents (supplied with the appliance) that include the parameters in accordance with 18.4.4, 18.4.5, 18.4.6, 18.4.7, or 18.4.8.

18.3.2.3 Visual notification appliances shall include on their nameplates reference to their parameters or reference to installation documents (supplied with the appliance) that include the parameters in accordance with 18.5.3.1 or Section 18.6.

18.3.3 Physical Construction.

18.3.3.1 Appliances intended for use in special environments, such as outdoors versus indoors, high or low temperatures, high humidity, dusty conditions, and hazardous locations, or where subject to tampering, shall be listed for the intended application.

18.3.3.2* Notification appliances used for signaling other than fire shall not have the word FIRE, or any fire symbol, in any form (i.e., stamped, imprinted, etc.) on the appliance visible to the public.

18.3.3.3 Notification appliances with multiple visible elements used for signaling other than fire shall be permitted to have fire markings only on those visible elements used for fire signaling.

18.3.3.4 In situations where existing notification appliances previously used exclusively for fire alarm signaling and marked with the word "FIRE" are to be used for signaling other than fire, field modification to the marking shall be permitted provided that it is accomplished by one of the following methods:

(1) In accordance with manufacturers' published instructions
(2) Installation of a permanent sign directly adjacent or below the notification appliance indicating that it is multipurpose and will operate for fire and other emergency conditions

18.3.4* Mechanical Protection.

18.3.4.1 Appliances subject to mechanical damage shall be suitably protected.

18.3.4.2 If guards, covers, or lenses are employed, they shall be listed for use with the appliance.

18.3.4.3 The effect of guards, covers, or lenses on the appliance's field performance shall be in accordance with the listing requirements.

18.3.5 Mounting.

18.3.5.1 Appliances shall be supported independently of their attachments to the circuit conductors.

18.3.5.2 Appliances shall be mounted in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

Δ **18.3.6* Connections.** Terminals, leads, or addressable communication that provide for monitoring the integrity of the notification appliance connections shall be provided.

18.3.7* Notification Appliance Circuits.

18.3.7.1 DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits shall be designed and installed in accordance with 18.3.7.1 and 18.3.7.3 through 18.3.7.6.

N **18.3.7.1.1** Starting voltages for DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits shall include both of the following:

(1) The control unit start terminal voltage (CUSTV) of the power source and the current at the minimum input voltage rating of the appliances for circuits that are integrated directly into the control unit.
(2) The control module start terminal voltage (CMSTV) of the control module (CM) at the minimum input voltage rating of the appliances for circuits that are connected to a CM.

N **18.3.7.1.2*** Notification appliance circuits using CMs that are not integrated directly with the control unit(s) assemblies shall be included in circuit designs.

N 18.3.7.1.2.1* Where used, module voltage adjustment (MVA) for DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit CMs shall be factored into each circuit.

N 18.3.7.1.2.2 CMs shall be permitted to be dually rated for MVA and module insertion loss (MIL) when the modules are designed and listed for DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit and AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit use.

N 18.3.7.1.3* Class B DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit length shall be calculated from the circuit start to the last appliance on the circuit for each circuit.

N 18.3.7.1.4* Class A DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit length shall be calculated from the circuit start to the last appliance on the longest side of the circuit.

N 18.3.7.2 AC-Power-Sourced Notification Appliance Circuits.

N 18.3.7.2.1* AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits with loudspeakers connected to them shall comply with the following:

(1) AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits shall be designed for a maximum of 1.0 dB electrical loss.
(2) AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit design and installation shall consider all electrical adjustments (loss or gain) from the primary audio source, through all circuit wiring, from any control unit (CU) circuitry, and from any control module (CM) circuitry to the last loudspeaker on the circuit.
(3) AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits shall be designed and installed in accordance with 18.3.7.2 through 18.3.7.6.

N 18.3.7.2.2* AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits using CMs that are not integrated directly into the control unit(s) shall include their module insertion adjustment (MIA) in circuit designs.

N 18.3.7.2.2.1 CMs shall be permitted to be dually rated for MIA and MVA when the modules are designed and listed or certified for AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits and DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits.

N 18.3.7.2.3* Class B AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit length shall be calculated from the circuit start to the last loudspeaker on the circuit.

N 18.3.7.2.4* Class A or Class X AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit length shall be calculated from the circuit start to the last loudspeaker on the longest side of the circuit.

N 18.3.7.3* Circuit length calculations shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Circuit length shall follow the intended path, including right angles for conduit paths and vertical changes in elevation when applicable.
(2) Circuit lengths identified within calculations shall include the total length of both conductors.
(3) The user shall clarify on the calculation form if the length displayed complies with one of the following:
    (a) The length of the path displayed is the length between devices and the length is doubled in the calculations.
    (b) The length of path displayed already reflects conductors out and back.
(4) Wire resistance values shown in the calculations (ohms) shall comply with the following:
    (a) Not be doubled for the length
    (b) Reflect the resistance values of Table 8 of *NFPA 70* or the manufacturer's published data sheet
(5) If resistance is to be based on a specific product, the product data sheet shall be included with the calculations.

N 18.3.7.4* Notification appliance circuits shall be designed based on one of the following methods of calculation:

(1) End-line-loaded (ELL)
(2) Point-to-point (PTP)

N 18.3.7.5 All wiring for NACs shall be designed for a minimum of 167°F (75°C) or for the expected circuit operating temperature if the circuit will be subjected to temperatures above 167°F (75°C).

18.3.7.6 The selection of wire size and material shall meet the performance requirements of this chapter and Chapter 14.

18.4 Audible Characteristics.

18.4.1 General Requirements.

18.4.1.1* An average ambient sound level greater than 105 dBA shall require the use of a visual notification appliance(s) in accordance with Section 18.5 where the application is public mode or Section 18.6 where the application is private mode.

18.4.1.2* The total sound pressure level produced by combining the ambient sound pressure level with all audible notification appliances operating shall not exceed 110 dBA at the minimum hearing distance.

18.4.1.3* Sound from normal or permanent sources, having a duration of at least 60 seconds, shall be included when measuring maximum ambient sound level.

18.4.1.4 Sound from temporary or abnormal sources lasting less than 60 seconds shall not be required to be included when measuring maximum ambient sound level.

Δ 18.4.1.5 Audible alert and evacuation signal tones, including those that precede or follow voice messages, shall meet the requirements of 18.4.4 (Public Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.5 (Private Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.6 (Sleeping Area Requirements), 18.4.7 (Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds), or 18.4.8 [Restricted Audible Mode Operation (RAMO) Notification], as applicable.

18.4.1.5.1* The designer of the audible notification system shall identify the rooms and spaces that will have audible notification and those where audible notification will not be provided.

18.4.1.5.2 Unless otherwise required by other sections of this Code, the coverage area for audible occupant notification shall be as required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

18.4.1.5.3 Where other governing laws, codes, or standards require audible occupant notification for all or part of an area or space, coverage shall only be required in occupiable areas as defined in 3.3.200.

18.4.1.5.4 The sound pressure levels that must be produced by the audible appliances in the coverage areas to meet the

requirements of this Code shall be documented by the system designer during the planning and design of the notification system.

Δ **18.4.1.5.5** The greater of the expected average ambient sound pressure level or expected maximum sound pressure level having a duration of at least 60 seconds shall be documented for the coverage area by the system designer to ensure compliance with 18.4.4, 18.4.5, 18.4.6, 18.4.7, or 18.4.8.

18.4.1.5.6 The design sound pressure levels to be produced by the notification appliances for the various coverage areas shall be documented for use during acceptance testing of the system.

18.4.1.5.7 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, documentation of the design sound pressure levels for the various coverage areas shall be submitted for review and approval.

Δ **18.4.1.6*** Voice messages shall not be required to meet the audibility requirements of 18.4.4 (Public Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.5 (Private Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.6 (Sleeping Area Requirements), 18.4.7 (Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds), or 18.4.8 [Restricted Audible Mode Operation (RAMO) Notification], but shall meet the intelligibility requirements of 18.4.12 where voice intelligibility is required.

Δ **18.4.1.7** Audible notification appliances used for exit marking shall not be required to meet the audibility requirements of 18.4.4 (Public Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.5 (Private Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.6 (Sleeping Area Requirements), 18.4.7 (Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds), or 18.4.8 [Restricted Audible Mode Operation (RAMO) Notification], except as required by 18.4.9 (Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance Requirements).

18.4.2 Distinctive Evacuation Signal.

18.4.2.1* To meet the requirements of Section 10.10, the alarm audible signal pattern used to notify building occupants of the need to evacuate (i.e., leave the building) or relocate (i.e., from one area to another) shall be the standard alarm evacuation signal consisting of a three-pulse temporal pattern in accordance with ANSI/ASA S3.41, *Audible Emergency Evacuation (E2) and Evacuation Signals With Relocation Instructions (ESRI)*.

18.4.2.2* The signal shall be repeated until the fire alarm system is manually silenced or reset by authorized or emergency personnel.

18.4.2.3 Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction based on an emergency plan, the signal shall be permitted to automatically silence, but not less than 180 seconds after the signal was initiated.

18.4.2.4 The minimum repetition time shall be permitted to be automatically interrupted for the transmission of mass notification messages in accordance with Chapter 24.

18.4.2.5* The standard evacuation signal shall be synchronized within a notification zone.

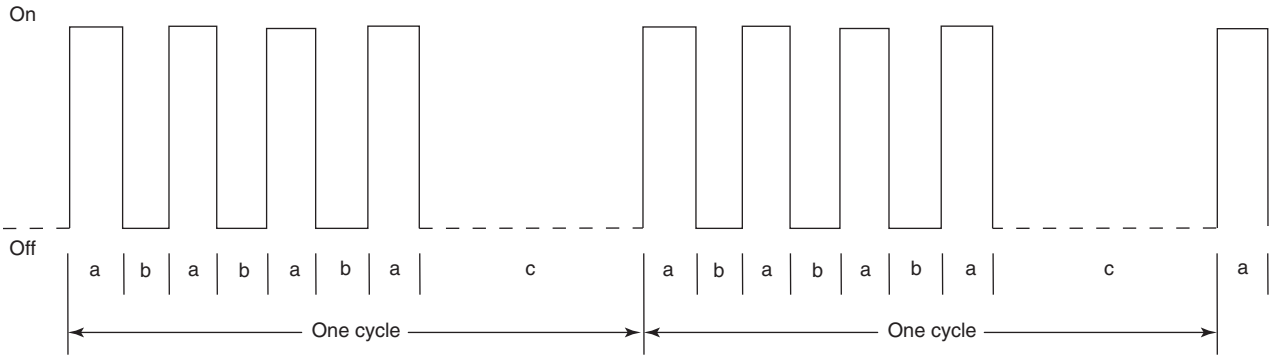
18.4.3 Distinctive Carbon Monoxide Audible Alarm Signal.

18.4.3.1 Where a carbon monoxide detector or alarm is required by other codes or standards or by the authority having jurisdiction and where an audible signal is required, a distinctive signal pattern shall be required that is different from a fire evacuation signal.

18.4.3.2 Where an audible signal is required, the carbon monoxide signal shall be a four-pulse temporal pattern and comply with the following:

(1) Signals shall be a pattern consisting of four cycles of 100 milliseconds ± 10 percent "on" and 100 milliseconds ± 10 percent "off," followed by 5 seconds ± 10 percent "off," as demonstrated in Figure 18.4.3.2.
(2) After the initial 4 minutes of the carbon monoxide signal, the 5-second "off" time shall be permitted to be changed to 60 seconds ± 10 percent.
(3) The alarm signal shall be repeated in compliance with 18.4.3.2(1) and 18.4.3.2(2) until the alarm resets or the alarm signal is manually silenced.

18.4.3.3 The signal shall be synchronized within a notification zone of a protected premises.



Phase a: signal is on for 100 ms ± 10 ms.
Phase b: signal is off for 100 ms ± 10 ms.
Phase c: signal is off for 5 sec ± 0.5 sec for initial 4 minutes.
After the initial 4 minutes Phase c: signal is permitted to be changed to 60 s ± 6 s off.

Although the diagram shows a square waveform, the wave can have other shapes that produce a similar effect.

FIGURE 18.4.3.2 Temporal Pattern Parameters — Carbon Monoxide Signal.

18.4.4* Public Mode Audible Requirements.

18.4.4.1* To ensure that audible public mode signals are clearly heard, unless otherwise permitted by 18.4.4.2 through 18.4.4.5, they shall have a sound level at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

18.4.4.2 Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction or other governing codes or standards, the requirements for audible signaling shall be permitted to be reduced or eliminated when visual signaling is provided in accordance with Section 18.5.

18.4.4.3* Audible notification appliances installed in elevator cars shall be permitted to use the audibility criteria for private mode appliances detailed in 18.4.5.1.

18.4.4.4 If approved by the authority having jurisdiction, audible notification appliances installed in restrooms shall be permitted to use the audibility criteria for private mode appliances detailed in 18.4.5.1.

18.4.4.5 A signaling system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall comply with 18.4.4.5.1 through 18.4.4.5.3.

18.4.4.5.1 A signaling system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall produce a sound level at least 15 dB above the reduced average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds after reduction of the ambient noise level, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

18.4.4.5.2 Visual notification appliances shall be installed in the affected areas in accordance with Sections 18.5 or 18.6.

18.4.4.5.3* Relays, circuits, or interfaces necessary to stop or reduce ambient noise shall meet the requirements of Chapters 10, 12, 21, and 23.

18.4.5 Private Mode Audible Requirements.

18.4.5.1* To ensure that audible private mode signals are clearly heard, they shall have a sound level at least 10 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

18.4.5.2* Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction or other governing codes or standards, the requirements for audible signaling shall be permitted to be reduced or eliminated when visual signaling is provided in accordance with Section 18.5.

18.4.5.3 A system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall comply with 18.4.5.3.1 through 18.4.5.3.3.

18.4.5.3.1 A system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall be permitted to produce a sound level at least 10 dB above the reduced average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds after reduction of the ambient noise level, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor, using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

18.4.5.3.2 Visual notification appliances shall be installed in the affected areas in accordance with Sections 18.5 or 18.6.

18.4.5.3.3 Relays, circuits, or interfaces necessary to stop or reduce ambient noise shall meet the requirements of Chapters 10, 12, 21, and 23.

18.4.6 Sleeping Area Requirements.

18.4.6.1* Where audible appliances are installed to provide signals for sleeping areas, they shall have a sound level of at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds or a sound level of at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow level in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

18.4.6.2 If any barrier, such as a door, curtain, or retractable partition, is located between the notification appliance and the pillow, the sound pressure level shall be measured with the barrier placed between the appliance and the pillow.

18.4.6.3* Audible appliances provided for the sleeping areas to awaken occupants shall produce a low frequency alarm signal that complies with the following:

(1) The waveform shall have a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz ± 10 percent.
(2)* The notification equipment shall be listed for producing the low frequency waveform.

N **18.4.6.4** For the purposes of 18.4.6, sleeping areas shall include bedrooms as well as living rooms, spare rooms, dens, and other spaces where sleeping could occur.

18.4.7* Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds.

18.4.7.1 Masked Threshold Allowance. Audible tone signaling shall be permitted to comply with the masked threshold requirements in this subsection in lieu of the A-weighted signaling requirements in 18.4.4 and 18.4.5.

18.4.7.2* Calculation Method. The effective masked threshold shall be calculated in accordance with ISO 7731, *Ergonomics — Danger signals for public and work areas — Auditory danger signals.*

18.4.7.3 Noise Data. Noise data for calculating the effective masked threshold shall be the peak value of noise lasting 60 seconds or more for each octave or one-third octave band.

18.4.7.4 Documentation. Analysis and design documentation shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction and shall contain the following information:

(1) Frequency data for the ambient noise, including the date, time, and location where measurements were taken for existing environments, or projected data for environments not yet constructed
(2) Frequency data of the audible notification appliance
(3) Calculations of the effective masked threshold for each set of noise data
(4) A statement of the sound pressure level that would be required by 18.4.4 or 18.4.5 if masked threshold signaling had not been done

18.4.7.5 Sound Pressure Level. For masked threshold signaling, the audible signal tone shall meet the requirements of either 18.4.7.5.1 or 18.4.7.5.2 but not for the reproduction of prerecorded, synthesized, or live messages.

18.4.7.5.1 The sound pressure level of the audible tone signal shall exceed the masked threshold in one or more octave bands by at least 10 dB in the octave band under consideration.

18.4.7.5.2 The sound pressure level of the audible tone signal shall exceed the masked threshold in one or more one-third octave bands by at least 13 dB in the one-third octave band under consideration.

N **18.4.8* Restricted Audible Mode Operation (RAMO) Notification.**

N **18.4.8.1** The requirements of 18.4.8.1.1 through 18.4.8.1.4 shall apply where RAMO is required either by the risk analysis of a notification zone or by the authority having jurisdiction, governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code.

N **18.4.8.1.1** RAMO areas shall be indicated on the project drawings.

N **18.4.8.1.2** RAMO shall be permitted to be used only where trained, awake, and mobile staff are present in the notification zone.

N **18.4.8.1.3*** All audible signals within a RAMO notification zone shall comply with 18.4.6.3.

N **18.4.8.1.4*** The requirements of 18.4.5 shall apply to all RAMO notification zones.

N **18.4.8.2** All audible notification signals in a RAMO notification zone shall be synchronized in accordance with 18.4.2.5.

N **18.4.8.3** All visual notification signals in a RAMO notification zone shall be synchronized in accordance with 18.5.5.7.2.

18.4.9 Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance Requirements.

18.4.9.1* Exit marking audible notification appliances shall meet or exceed the frequency and sound level settings and guidelines specified in the manufacturer's documented instructions.

18.4.9.2* In addition to 18.4.9.1, as a minimum, to ensure that exit marking audible notification appliance signals are clearly heard and produce the desired directional effects for 50 ft (15.24 m) within an unobstructed egress path, they shall meet the audibility requirements of 18.4.7 in at least one one-third octave band or one octave band within the effective frequency ranges of the interaural time difference (ITD), interaural level or intensity difference (ILD or IID), and anatomical transfer function or head-related transfer function (ATF or HRTF) localization cues.

18.4.9.3 The exit marking audible notification appliance signal shall penetrate both the ambient noise and the fire alarm signal.

18.4.9.4 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, exit marking audible notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

18.4.9.5* Where required by the authority having jurisdiction governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, exit marking audible notification shall be located at the entrance to all building exits and areas of refuge as defined by the applicable building or fire code.

18.4.9.6 Where exit marking audible notification appliances are utilized to mark areas of refuge, they shall provide an audible signal distinct from that used for other exits that do not have areas of refuge.

18.4.10 Location of Audible Notification Appliances for Building or Structure.

18.4.10.1 If ceiling heights allow, and unless otherwise permitted by 18.4.10.2 through 18.4.10.5, wall-mounted appliances shall have their tops above the finished floors at heights of not less than 90 in. (2.29 m) and below the finished ceilings at distances of not less than 6 in. (150 mm).

18.4.10.2 Ceiling-mounted or recessed appliances shall be permitted.

18.4.10.3 If combination audible/visual notification appliances are installed, the location of the installed appliance shall be determined by the requirements of 18.5.5.

18.4.10.4 Appliances that are an integral part of a smoke detector, carbon monoxide detector, smoke alarm, carbon monoxide alarm, or other initiating device shall be located in accordance with the requirements for that device.

18.4.10.5 Mounting heights other than required by 18.4.10.1 and 18.4.10.2 shall be permitted, provided that the sound pressure level requirements of 18.4.4 for public mode or 18.4.5 for private mode, or 18.4.6 for sleeping areas, based on the application, are met.

18.4.11 Location of Audible Notification Appliances for Wide-Area Signaling. Audible notification appliances for wide-area signaling shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction, approved design documents, and the manufacturer's installation instruction to achieve the required performance.

18.4.12* Voice Intelligibility. Within the acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) where voice intelligibility is required, voice communications systems shall reproduce prerecorded, synthesized, or live (e.g., microphone, telephone handset, and radio) messages with voice intelligibility.

18.4.12.1* ADSs shall be determined by the system designer during the planning and design of all emergency communications systems.

18.4.12.2 Each ADS shall be identified as requiring or not requiring voice intelligibility.

18.4.12.3* Unless specifically required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code, intelligibility shall not be required in all ADSs.

18.4.12.4* Where required by the authority having jurisdiction governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, ADS assignments shall be submitted for review and approval.

18.4.12.5 Quantitative measurements shall not be required.

18.4.12.6 Quantitative measurements shall be permitted. *(See D.2.4.)*

18.5* Visual Characteristics — Public Mode.

18.5.1* Visual Signaling.

18.5.1.1 Public mode visual signaling shall meet the requirements of Section 18.5 using visual notification appliances.

18.5.1.2* The coverage area for visual notification shall be as required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

18.5.1.3 Where other governing laws, codes, or standards require visual notification for all or part of an area or space, coverage shall only be required in occupiable areas as defined in 3.3.200.

18.5.2 Area of Coverage.

18.5.2.1 The designer of the visual notification system shall document the rooms and spaces that will have visual notification and those where visual notification will not be provided.

18.5.2.2* Unless otherwise specified or required by other sections of this Code, the required coverage area for visual notification shall be as required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

18.5.2.3 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, documentation of the effective intensity (cd) of the visual notification appliances for the area of coverage shall be submitted for review and approval.

18.5.3 Light, Color, and Pulse Characteristics.

18.5.3.1 The flash rate shall not exceed two flashes per second (2 Hz) nor be less than one flash every second (1 Hz) throughout the listed voltage range of the appliance.

18.5.3.2 The maximum light pulse duration shall be 20 milliseconds, except as permitted in 18.5.3.3.

18.5.3.3* Light pulse durations greater than 20 milliseconds, but not greater than 100 milliseconds, shall be permitted where the alerting capability of the visual notification appliance is demonstrated to be equal to or greater than visual notification appliances with a 20-millisecond pulse duration.

18.5.3.4 The pulse duration shall be defined as the time interval between initial and final points of 10 percent of maximum signal.

18.5.3.5* Visual notification appliances used for fire alarm signaling only or to signal the intent for complete evacuation shall be clear or nominal white and shall not exceed 1000 cd (effective intensity).

18.5.3.6 Visual notification appliances used to signal occupants to seek information or instructions shall be clear, nominal white, or other color as required by the emergency plan and the authority having jurisdiction for the area or building.

18.5.3.7* The visual synchronization requirements of this chapter shall not apply where the visual notification appliances located inside the building are viewed from outside of the building.

18.5.3.8 Visual notification appliances used for carbon monoxide signaling shall be as required by the emergency plan and the authority having jurisdiction for the area or building and shall not exceed 1000 cd (effective intensity).

Δ **18.5.4* Appliance Photometrics.** The light output shall comply with the polar dispersion requirements for public mode signaling in UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories.*

18.5.5 Appliance Location.

18.5.5.1* Wall-mounted appliances shall be mounted such that the entire lens is not less than 80 in. (2.03 m) and not greater than 96 in. (2.44 m) above the finished floor or at the mounting height specified using the performance-based alternative of 18.5.5.9.

18.5.5.2 Where low ceiling heights do not permit wall mounting at a minimum of 80 in. (2.03 m), wall mounted visual notification appliances shall be mounted within 6 in. (150 mm) of the ceiling.

18.5.5.3 Where low ceiling heights do not permit wall mounting at a minimum of 80 in. (2.03 m), the room size covered by a visual notification appliance of a given value shall be reduced by twice the difference between the minimum mounting height of 80 in. (2.03 m) and the actual lower mounting height.

18.5.5.4* Visual notification appliances listed for mounting parallel to the floor shall be permitted to be located on the ceiling or suspended below the ceiling.

18.5.5.5* The minimum mounting height of a visual notification appliance listed for ceiling mounting shall be 80 in. (2.03 m) above the finished floor or the actual ceiling height, whichever is less.

18.5.5.6* Obstructions.

18.5.5.6.1 Ceiling mount visual notification appliances shall be mounted such that the effect of the appliance is not blocked by obstructions.

18.5.5.6.2 The effect of obstructions on distribution of light from wall-mounted appliances shall be considered when determining the location of appliances.

18.5.5.6.3 The effect of obstructions on the direct viewing of corridor appliances shall be considered when determining the location of appliances.

18.5.5.7* Spacing in Rooms.

18.5.5.7.1* Spacing shall be in accordance with either Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) and Figure 18.5.5.7.1 or Table 18.5.5.7.1(b).

18.5.5.7.2 Visual notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) or Table 18.5.5.7.1(b) using one of the following:

(1) A single visual notification appliance.
(2)* Two groups of visual notification appliances, where visual notification appliances of each group are synchronized, in the same room or adjacent space within the field of view. This shall include synchronization of visual appliances operated by separate systems.
(3) More than two visual notification appliances or groups of synchronized appliances in the same room or adjacent space within the field of view that flash in synchronization.

18.5.5.7.3 Room spacing in accordance with Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) and Figure 18.5.5.7.1 for wall-mounted appliances shall be based on locating the visual notification appliance at the halfway distance of the wall.

Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) Room Spacing for Wall-Mounted Visual Notification Appliances

Maximum Room Size		Minimum Required Light Output [Effective Intensity (cd)]	
ft	m	One Visual Notification Appliance per Room	Four Visual Notification Appliances per Room (One per Wall)
20 × 20	6.10 × 6.10	15	NA
28 × 28	8.53 × 8.53	30	NA
30 × 30	9.14 × 9.14	34	NA
40 × 40	12.2 × 12.2	60	15
45 × 45	13.7 × 13.7	75	19
50 × 50	15.2 × 15.2	94	30
54 × 54	16.5 × 16.5	110	30
55 × 55	16.8 × 16.8	115	30
60 × 60	18.3 × 18.3	135	30
63 × 63	19.2 × 19.2	150	37
68 × 68	20.7 × 20.7	177	43
70 × 70	21.3 × 21.3	184	60
80 × 80	24.4 × 24.4	240	60
90 × 90	27.4 × 27.4	304	95
100 × 100	30.5 × 30.5	375	95
110 × 110	33.5 × 33.5	455	135
120 × 120	36.6 × 36.6	540	135
130 × 130	39.6 × 39.6	635	185

NA: Not allowable.

Table 18.5.5.7.1(b) Room Spacing for Ceiling-Mounted Visual Notification Appliances

Maximum Room Size		Maximum Lens Height*		Minimum Required Light Output (Effective Intensity); One Visual Notification Appliance (cd)
ft	m	ft	m	
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	10	3.0	15
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	10	3.0	30
40 × 40	12.2 × 12.2	10	3.0	60
44 × 44	13.4 × 13.4	10	3.0	75
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	20	6.1	30
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	20	6.1	45
44 × 44	13.4 × 13.4	20	6.1	75
46 × 46	14.0 × 14.0	20	6.1	80
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	30	9.1	55
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	30	9.1	75
50 × 50	15.2 × 15.2	30	9.1	95
53 × 53	16.2 × 16.2	30	9.1	110
55 × 55	16.8 × 16.8	30	9.1	115
59 × 59	18.0 × 18.0	30	9.1	135
63 × 63	19.2 × 19.2	30	9.1	150
68 × 68	20.7 × 20.7	30	9.1	177
70 × 70	21.3 × 21.3	30	9.1	185

*This does not preclude mounting lens at lower heights.

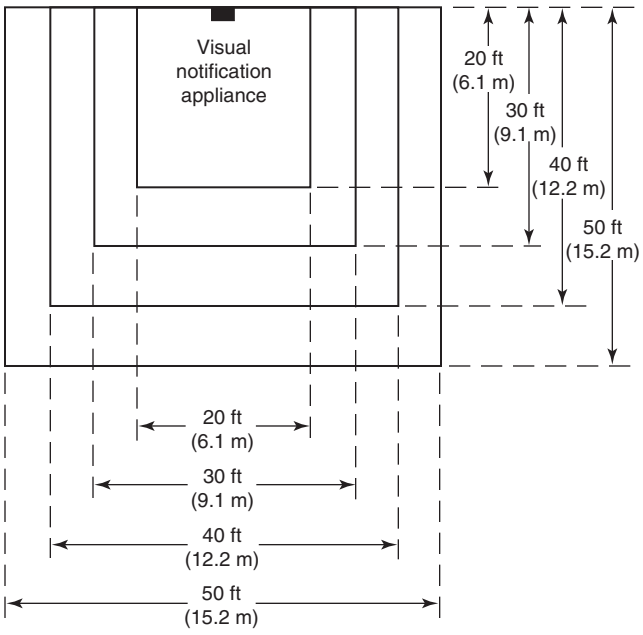


FIGURE 18.5.5.7.1 Room Spacing for Wall-Mounted Visual Notification Appliances.

18.5.5.7.4 In square rooms with appliances not centered or in nonsquare rooms, the effective intensity (cd) from one wall-mounted visual notification appliance shall be determined by maximum room size dimensions obtained either by measuring the distance to the farthest wall or by doubling the distance to the farthest adjacent wall, whichever is greater, as required by Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) and Figure 18.5.5.7.1.

18.5.5.7.5 If a room configuration is not square, the square room size that allows the entire room to be encompassed or allows the room to be subdivided into multiple squares shall be used.

18.5.5.7.6* If ceiling heights exceed 30 ft (9.1 m), ceiling-mounted visual notification appliances shall be suspended at or below 30 ft (9.1 m) or at the mounting height determined using the performance-based alternative of 18.5.5.9, or wall-mounted visual notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with Table 18.5.5.7.1(a).

18.5.5.7.7 Table 18.5.5.7.1(b) shall be used if the ceiling-mounted visual notification appliance is at the center of the room.

18.5.5.7.8 If the ceiling-mounted visual notification appliance is not located at the center of the room, the effective intensity (cd) shall be determined by doubling the distance from the appliance to the farthest wall to obtain the maximum room size.

18.5.5.8* Spacing in Corridors.

18.5.5.8.1 The installation of visual notification appliances in corridors 20 ft (6.1 m) or less in width shall be in accordance with the requirements of either 18.5.5.7 or 18.5.5.8.

•

18.5.5.8.2 In a corridor application, visual notification appliances shall be rated not less than 15 cd.

18.5.5.8.3 Corridors greater than 20 ft (6.1 m) wide shall comply with the spacing requirements for rooms in accordance with 18.5.5.7.

18.5.5.8.4* Except as permitted by 18.5.5.6 or 18.5.5.8, visual notification appliances shall be located not more than 15 ft (4.6.m) from the end of the corridor with a separation not greater than 100 ft (30.5 m) between appliances.

18.5.5.8.5 If there is an interruption of the concentrated viewing path, such as a fire door or an elevation change, the area shall be treated as a separate corridor.

18.5.5.8.6 In corridors where more than two visual notification appliances are in any field of view, they shall flash in synchronization.

18.5.5.8.7 Visual notification appliances in corridors shall be permitted to be mounted on the ceiling, end wall, or the side wall of the corridor.

18.5.5.9* Performance-Based Alternative.

Δ **18.5.5.9.1** Any design that provides a minimum of 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4036 lumens/m^2) of illumination at any point within the covered area at all angles specified by the polar dispersion planes for wall- or ceiling-mounted public mode visual notification appliances in UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories*, as calculated for the maximum distance from the nearest visual notification appliance, shall be permitted in lieu of the requirements of 18.5.5, excluding 18.5.5.10.

18.5.5.9.2 Documentation.

Δ **18.5.5.9.2.1** Documentation provided to the authority having jurisdiction shall include the inverse square law calculations using each of the vertical and horizontal polar distribution angles in UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories*.

Δ **18.5.5.9.2.2** The inverse square law calculations shall account for the effects of polar distribution using one of the following:

(1) The percentages from the applicable table(s) in UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories*
(2) The actual results of laboratory tests of the specific appliance to be used as recorded by the listing organization

18.5.5.10 Sleeping Areas.

18.5.5.10.1 Combination smoke detectors and visual notification appliances or combination smoke alarms and visual notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Chapters 17, 18, 23, and 29.

18.5.5.10.2 Combination carbon monoxide detectors or alarms with visual notification appliances shall be located in accordance with the applicable requirements for the visual notification appliance and the applicable requirements for the carbon monoxide detector or alarm of Chapters 17, 18, 23, and 29.

18.5.5.10.3* Table 18.5.5.10.3 shall apply to the minimum required intensity of visual notification appliances in sleeping areas after establishing the mounting height.

Table 18.5.5.10.3 Effective Intensity Requirements for Sleeping Area Visual Notification Appliances

Distance from Ceiling to Top of Lens		
in.	mm	Minimum Intensity (cd)
≥24	≥610	110
<24	<610	177

18.5.5.10.4* For rooms with a linear dimension greater than 16 ft (4.9 m), the visual notification appliance shall be located within 16 ft (4.9 m) of the pillow.

18.5.6 Location of Visual Notification Appliances for Wide-Area Signaling. Visual notification appliances for wide-area signaling shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction, approved design documents, and the manufacturer's published instructions to achieve the required performance.

18.6* Visual Characteristics — Private Mode. Visual notification appliances used in the private mode shall be of a sufficient quantity and intensity and located so as to meet the intent of the user and the authority having jurisdiction.

18.7 Supplementary Visual Signaling Method. A supplementary visual notification appliance shall be intended to augment an audible or visual signal.

18.7.1 A supplementary visual notification appliance shall comply with its marked rated performance.

18.7.2 Supplementary visual notification appliances shall be permitted to be located less than 80 in. (2.03 m) above the floor.

18.8 Textual Audible Appliances.

18.8.1 Loudspeaker Appliances.

18.8.1.1 Loudspeaker appliances shall comply with Section 18.4.

Δ **18.8.1.2*** The sound pressure level, in dBA, of the tone produced by a signaling loudspeaker shall comply with all the requirements in 18.4.4 (public), 18.4.5 (private), 18.4.6 (sleeping), or 18.4.8 (RAMO) for the intended mode or shall comply with the requirements of 18.4.7 (narrow band tone signaling).

18.8.2 Telephone Appliances. Telephone appliances shall be in accordance with Section 24.8.

18.9* Textual and Graphical Visual Appliances.

18.9.1 Application.

18.9.1.1 Textual and graphical visual appliances shall be permitted to be used to signal information about fire or other emergency conditions or to direct intended responses to those conditions.

18.9.1.2 This section does not apply to means of egress signs, room identification signs, and other signage that could be required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

18.9.1.3 Textual visual appliance messages shall be permitted to be static, flashing, or scrolling.

18.9.2 Location.

18.9.2.1 Private Mode. Unless otherwise permitted or required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code or by the authority having jurisdiction, all textual and graphical visual notification appliances in the private mode shall be located in rooms that are accessible only to those persons directly concerned with the implementation and direction of emergency response in the areas protected by the system.

18.9.2.2 Public Mode. Textual and graphical visual notification appliances used in the public mode shall be located to ensure visibility to the occupants of the protected area or to the intended recipients.

18.9.2.3 Mounting. Desktop and surface-mounted textual and graphical visual notification appliances shall be permitted.

18.9.3 Performance. The information produced by textual and graphical visual appliances shall be clear and legible at the intended viewing distance.

18.9.4* Character and Symbol Requirements and Viewing Distance.

18.9.4.1 This section applies to visual characters and graphic elements and does not address raised characters or braille that could be required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

18.9.4.2* Characters and symbols shall contrast with their background using either positive contrast (light on a dark background) or negative contrast (dark on a light background).

18.9.4.3 Characters and symbols and their background shall have a nonglare finish.

18.9.4.4* Characters shall be permitted to be uppercase or lowercase, or a combination of both.

18.9.4.5 Characters shall be conventional in form and not italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual form and shall use sans serif fonts.

18.9.4.6 Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".

18.9.4.7* Character and symbol height for appliances other than desktop monitors or displays shall meet all of the following criteria:

(1) Minimum character height shall comply with Table 18.9.4.7.
(2) Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the appliance.
(3) Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter "I".

18.9.4.8* All characters and symbols displayed by textual and graphical visual notification appliances shall be a minimum of 40 in. (1.02 m) above the ground or finished floor.

18.9.4.9 Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be minimum 10 percent and maximum 30 percent of the height of the character.

Table 18.9.4.7 Visual Character and Graphic Symbol Height Based on Height and Distance

Horizontal Viewing Distance		Minimum Character or Symbol Height for Installed Elevation					
		At 40 in. to 70 in. (1.0 m to 1.8 m) Above the Floor		At Greater Than 70 in. to 120 in. (1.8 m to 3.1 m) Above the Floor		At Greater Than 120 in. (3.0 m) Above the Floor	
ft	m	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm
1	0.3	5/8	16	2	51	3	76
2	0.6	5/8	16	2	51	3	76
3	0.9	5/8	16	2	51	3	76
4	1.2	5/8	16	2	51	3	76
5	1.5	5/8	16	2	51	3	76
6	1.8	5/8	16	2	51	3	76
7	2.1	3/4	19	2	51	3	76
8	2.4	7/8	22	2	51	3	76
9	2.7	1	25	2	51	3	76
10	3	1 1/8	29	2	51	3	76
11	3.4	1 1/4	32	2	51	3	76
12	3.7	1 3/8	35	2	51	3	76
13	4	1 1/2	38	2	51	3	76
14	4.3	1 5/8	41	2	51	3	76
15	4.6	1 3/4	44	2	51	3	76
16	4.9	1 7/8	48	2 1/8	54	3	76
17	5.2	2	51	2 1/4	57	3	76
18	5.5	2 1/8	54	2 3/8	60	3	76
19	5.8	2 1/4	57	2 1/2	64	3	76
20	6.1	2 3/8	60	2 5/8	67	3	76
21	6.4	2 1/2	64	2 3/4	70	3	76
22	6.7	2 5/8	67	2 7/8	73	3 1/8	79
23	7	2 3/4	70	3	76	3 1/4	83
24	7.3	2 7/8	73	3 1/8	79	3 3/8	86
25	7.6	3	76	3 1/4	83	3 1/2	89
>25	>7.6	3 + *h**	76 + *h**	3 1/4 + *h**	83 + *h**	3 1/2 + *h**	89 + *h**

*For each foot of horizontal viewing distance greater than 25 ft (7.6 m), add 1/8 in. (3 mm) to the character or symbol height.

Δ **18.9.4.10** Spacing between individual characters shall be a minimum of 10 percent and a maximum of 35 percent of the character height measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters, excluding word spaces.

18.9.4.11 Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the character height.

18.10 Tactile Appliances.

18.10.1 Application. Tactile appliances shall be permitted if used in addition to audible and/or visual notification appliances.

Δ **18.10.2* Performance.** Tactile appliances shall meet the performance requirements of UL 1971, *Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*.

Chapter 19 Reserved

Chapter 20 Reserved

Chapter 21 Emergency Control Function Interfaces

21.1* Application. The provisions of Chapter 21 shall cover the minimum requirements and methods for emergency control function interfaces with fire alarm or signaling systems in accordance with this chapter.

21.1.1 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless otherwise stated.

•

21.2 General.

21.2.1* Emergency control functions shall be automatic unless otherwise permitted by other governing laws, codes, standards, or sections of this document.

21.2.2* The performance of automatic emergency control functions shall not interfere with emergency life safety operation.

21.2.3 The performance of automatic emergency control functions shall not preclude the combination of fire alarm services with other services requiring monitoring of operations.

Δ **21.2.4* Emergency Control Function Interface Devices.**

N **21.2.4.1** Emergency control function interface devices shall be located as follows:

(1) Within 3 ft (0.9 m) of the component controlling the emergency control function where conductors are not installed in metal raceway or metal armored cables
(2) Within 20 ft (6 m) of the component controlling the emergency control function where conductors are installed in metal raceway or metal armored cables

N **21.2.4.2** Where configured as a Class D circuit, control circuits shall not be required to meet the requirements of 21.2.4.1(1) or 21.2.4.1(2).

21.2.5 The emergency control function interface device shall function within the voltage and current limitations of the fire alarm control unit.

21.2.6 The installation wiring between the fire alarm control unit and the emergency control function interface device shall be Class A, Class B, Class D, Class N, or Class X in accordance with Chapter 12.

21.2.7 Emergency control functions shall not interfere with other operations of the fire alarm system.

21.2.8 The method(s) of interconnection between the fire alarm system and emergency control function interface device shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6.

21.2.9 The method(s) of interconnection between the emergency control function interface device and the component controlling the emergency control function shall comply with the applicable provisions of *NFPA 70*.

21.2.10 The method(s) of interconnection between the emergency control function interface device and the component controlling the emergency control function shall be achieved by one of the following recognized means:

(1) Electrical contacts listed for the connected load
(2) Data communications over a signaling line circuit(s) dedicated to the fire alarm or shared with other premises operating systems
(3) Other listed methods

Δ **21.2.11** If a fire alarm system is a component of a life safety network and it communicates data to other systems providing life safety functions, or it receives data from such systems, 21.2.11.1 through 21.2.11.4 shall apply.

N **21.2.11.1** The path used for communicating data, including the physical communications media and the ability to maintain intelligible communications, shall be monitored for integrity.

N **21.2.11.2** Data received from the network shall not affect the operation of the fire alarm system in any way other than to display the status of life safety network components.

N **21.2.11.3** Where non-fire-alarm systems are interconnected to the fire alarm system using a network or other digital communications technique, a signal (e.g., heartbeat, poll, ping, query) shall be generated between the fire alarm system and the non-fire-alarm system.

N **21.2.11.4** Failure of the fire alarm system to receive confirmation of the transmission described in 21.2.11.3 shall cause a trouble signal on the fire alarm system to be indicated within 200 seconds.

21.3* Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

21.3.1 All fire alarm initiating devices used to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be connected to the required building fire alarm system.

Δ **21.3.2* Facilities Without a Required Building Fire Alarm System.**

N **21.3.2.1** In facilities without a required building fire alarm system, fire alarm initiating devices used to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be connected to either a nonrequired building fire alarm system or a dedicated function fire alarm control unit.

N **21.3.2.2** The dedicated function fire alarm control unit described in 21.3.2.1 shall be designated as "elevator recall control and supervisory control unit" and permanently identified on the dedicated function fire alarm control unit and on the record drawings.

21.3.3 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation Initiation.

21.3.3.1 Unless otherwise permitted by 21.3.3.2 or required by the authority having jurisdiction, only the elevator lobby, elevator hoistway, elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control room, and elevator control space smoke detectors or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.10 shall be used to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

21.3.3.2 A waterflow switch shall be permitted to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation upon activation of a sprinkler installed at the bottom of the elevator hoistway (the elevator pit), provided the waterflow switch and pit sprinkler are installed on a separately valved sprinkler line dedicated solely for protecting the elevator pit.

21.3.4 Each fire alarm initiating device used to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be capable of initiating the elevator recall function when all other devices on the same initiating device circuit have been manually or automatically placed in the alarm condition.

21.3.5* Elevator Lobby Detector Location.

21.3.5.1 A lobby smoke detector shall be located a maximum of 21 ft (6.4 m) from the centerline of each elevator door within the elevator bank under control of the detector in accordance with Chapter 17.

21.3.5.2 For lobby ceiling configurations exceeding 15 ft (4.6 m) in height or that are other than flat and smooth, detector locations shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 17.

21.3.6 Fire Detection in Unsprinklered Elevator Hoistways.

21.3.6.1 Smoke detectors or other automatic fire detection as permitted in 21.3.10 shall not be installed in unsprinklered elevator hoistways unless they are required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation as specified in 21.3.14.1(2) and 21.3.14.2(2) for either of the following:

(1) Hoistway machinery spaces containing a motor controller or driving machine
(2) Control spaces located in the hoistway

21.3.6.2 Smoke detectors or other automatic fire detection as permitted in 21.3.10 shall be permitted to be installed in unsprinklered elevator hoistways if required by other governing codes or standards for the actuation of the elevator hoistway smoke relief equipment.

Δ **21.3.6.3** Detectors installed in accordance with 21.3.6.2 shall initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation as specified in 21.3.14.1(2) and 21.3.14.2(2).

21.3.7* Fire Alarm Initiating Device(s) Inside Elevator Hoistways. Fire alarm initiating device(s) required to be installed inside an elevator hoistway by other sections of this Code or by other governing laws, codes, or standards shall be required to be accessible for service, testing, and maintenance from outside the elevator hoistway.

Δ **21.3.8*** When sprinklers are required in elevator hoistways by other codes and standards, the following shall apply:

(1) Fire alarm initiating devices shall be installed to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.
(2) Outputs from the fire alarm system to the elevator system shall comply with 21.3.14.
(3) The fire alarm initiating device(s) shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 17.
(4) Where sprinklers are located at the top of the hoistway, associated fire detection device(s) shall be located at the top of the hoistway.
(5) Where sprinklers are located at the bottom of the hoistway (the pit), associated fire detection device(s) shall be installed in the pit.

21.3.9* Smoke detectors shall not be installed in elevator hoistways to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation unless listed for the environmental conditions.

21.3.10* If ambient conditions prohibit installation of automatic smoke detection used to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, other automatic fire detection initiating devices shall be permitted.

21.3.11 When actuated, any fire alarm initiating device that is used to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be annunciated at the building fire alarm control unit or at the fire alarm control unit described in 21.3.2.

21.3.12 Actuation of the elevator hoistway, elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space, or elevator control room smoke detectors or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.10 shall cause separate and distinct visible annunciation at the building fire alarm control unit or at the fire alarm control unit described in 21.3.2.

21.3.13 Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the detectors used to initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be permitted to initiate a supervisory signal in lieu of an alarm signal.

21.3.14 The following three separate outputs from the building fire alarm control unit or the fire alarm control unit described in 21.3.2 to the elevator system shall be provided to implement Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation in accordance with Section 2.27 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, as required in 21.3.14.1 and 21.3.14.2:

(1) Designated level associated output
(2) Alternate level associated output
(3) Elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space, or elevator control room associated output

21.3.14.1* Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to Designated Level. For each elevator or group of elevators operating in a group automatic operation, an output shall be provided from the fire alarm system to the elevator system in response to the following:

(1) Activation of smoke detector(s) or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.10 located at any associated elevator(s) lobby other than the lobby at the designated level
(2) Activation of smoke detector(s) or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.10 located at any associated elevator(s) machine room, elevator machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine, elevator control space, or elevator control room, except where such rooms or spaces are located at the designated level
(3) Activation of smoke detector(s) or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.10 located at any associated elevator(s) hoistway when sprinklers are located in those hoistways, unless otherwise specified in 21.3.14.2(3)

21.3.14.2* Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to Alternate Level. For each elevator or group of elevators operating in a group automatic operation, an output shall be provided from the fire alarm system to the elevator system in response to the following:

(1) Activation of smoke detector(s), or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.10, located at the designated level lobby served by the elevator(s)
(2) Activation of smoke detector(s), or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.10, located in the elevator machine room, elevator machinery space containing a motor controller or driving machine, elevator control space, or elevator control room serving the elevator(s) if such rooms or spaces are located at the designated level

(3)* Activation of the fire alarm initiating device(s) identified in 21.3.14.1(3) if they are installed at or below the lowest level of recall in the elevator hoistway and the alternate level is located above the designated level

21.4 Elevator Power Shutdown.

21.4.1* When heat detector(s) are used to actuate the disconnecting means described in 2.8 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, to disconnect the main line power supply to the affected elevator and any other power supplies used to move the elevator, upon or prior to the activation of sprinkler(s), the detector(s) shall have both a lower temperature rating and a lower response time index (RTI) as compared to the sprinkler(s).

21.4.2* The heat detector(s) specified in 21.4.1 shall be placed within 24 in. (610 mm) of each sprinkler and be installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 17.

21.4.2.1 Engineering methods, such as those specified in Annex B, shall be permitted to be used to select and place heat detectors to ensure response prior to any sprinkler operation under a variety of fire growth rate scenarios.

21.4.3* If pressure or waterflow switches are used to actuate the disconnecting means specified in 21.4.1, the use of devices with time-delay capability shall not be permitted.

21.4.4* Control circuit(s) of the disconnecting means specified in 21.4.1 shall be monitored for the presence of operating voltage.

Δ **21.4.5** Loss of voltage to the control circuit(s) in 21.4.4 shall cause a supervisory signal to be indicated at the fire alarm control unit specified in 21.3.1 or in 21.3.2.

21.4.6 The devices specified in 21.4.2 and 21.4.3 shall be monitored for integrity by the fire alarm control unit specified in 21.3.1 or 21.3.2.

21.5* Fire Service Access Elevators. Where one or more elevators are specifically designated and marked as fire service access elevators, temperature and presence of smoke in elevator lobbies, machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, or control spaces shall be continuously monitored and displayed on a building fire alarm system annunciator(s), or other annunciator(s) as approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

21.6* Occupant Evacuation Elevators (OEE).

21.6.1 Elevator Status. Where elevators are to be used for occupant self-evacuation during fires and non-fire emergencies, they shall comply with Sections 21.5 and 21.6.

21.6.2 Occupant Evacuation Operation (OEO). Outputs from the fire alarm system to the elevator system shall be provided to implement elevator occupant evacuation operation in accordance with Section 2.27 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, as required in 21.6.2.2 through 21.6.2.6.

N **21.6.2.1 Documentation.** OEO, including all items as required in 21.6.2.2 through 21.6.2.11, shall be documented per 7.4.9 and approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

21.6.2.2 Applicability. OEO shall only be initiated upon an automatic or manual signal from the fire alarm system to the elevator system.

21.6.2.2.1* OEO shall apply separately to each individual elevator and to elevators having *group automatic operation* or designated as an *elevator group* or *group of elevators*.

21.6.2.2.2* OEO shall function per 21.6.2.2.1 only prior to Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

21.6.2.3 Partial Building Evacuation. Where an elevator or group of elevators is designated for use by occupants for self-evacuation, the provisions of 21.6.2.4 through 21.6.2.7 shall apply for partial building evacuation.

21.6.2.4 Initiation. OEO shall be initiated by either manual means from the Fire Command Center or Emergency Command Center in accordance with 21.6.2.5 or by actuation of an automatic fire alarm initiating device in accordance with 21.6.2.4.1.

21.6.2.4.1* An active automatic fire alarm initiating device that does not initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall cause the fire alarm system to provide a signal to the elevator system indicating the floor of an active alarm, except as prohibited by 21.6.2.4.6.

21.6.2.4.2* The floors to be evacuated shall be a contiguous block of floors designated as "the elevator evacuation zone" consisting of at least the floor with an active alarm, two floors above the floor with the active alarm, and two floors below the floor with the active alarm.

21.6.2.4.3* When the floor designated as the elevator discharge level falls within the elevator evacuation zone, it is not to be evacuated by the elevator(s), and the fire alarm system shall initiate a voice message to instruct the occupants on that level to exit the building.

21.6.2.4.4 If activation of an automatic fire alarm initiating device that does not initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation occurs on an additional floor(s), including the elevator discharge level at any time while OEO is in effect, the elevator evacuation zone shall be expanded to include all floors with an active alarm, all floors between the highest and lowest floor with an active alarm, plus two floors above the highest floor with an active alarm and two floors below the lowest floor with an active alarm.

21.6.2.4.5 If the first active alarm is on the elevator discharge level, automatic initiation of OEO shall not be permitted for all elevators having that same elevator discharge level.

21.6.2.4.6* When the first active alarm is on an elevator discharge level, the fire alarm system shall not send a signal to the elevator system for that alarm or any other active alarm that does not initiate Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation for that group of elevators.

21.6.2.5* Manual Floor Selection.

21.6.2.5.1 A means shall be furnished at the Fire Command Center or the Emergency Command Center to provide for the manual selection of each floor in the building.

21.6.2.5.2 The manual floor selection shall be actuated only by authorized or emergency personnel.

21.6.2.5.3 When OEO is not yet in effect and a manual floor selection is made to initiate OEO, a signal shall be sent to the elevator system simulating an active alarm for that floor.

21.6.2.5.4* When OEO is in effect and a manual floor selection is made, the elevator evacuation zone shall be permitted by the authority having jurisdiction to be expanded as described in 21.6.2.4.4 or by adding that floor to the evacuation zone by providing an additional signal(s) to the elevator system indicating the manually selected floor(s).

21.6.2.5.5 Each manual selection means shall have the capability to cancel a manually actuated output signal.

21.6.2.6* Fire Alarm Output Signals to Elevator System.

21.6.2.6.1 Output from the fire alarm system to the elevator system shall identify each floor with an actuated automatic fire alarm initiating device.

21.6.2.6.2 Output from the fire alarm system to the elevator system shall include the following:

(1) Floor(s) with any actuated fire alarm initiating device(s)
(2) Floor(s) selected by manual means from the Fire Command Center or the Emergency Command Center

21.6.2.6.3 The identified floor(s) and all other associated floors comprising the elevator evacuation zone shall be displayed on the building fire alarm system annunciator or on a listed non-fire-alarm system annunciator or other annunciator as approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

21.6.2.6.4 The annunciator referenced in 21.6.2.6.3 shall be located at the Fire Command Center or Emergency Command Center.

21.6.2.7* Occupant Notification. The in-building emergency voice/alarm communications system shall transmit messages coordinated with the elevator system's variable message signs in all elevator lobbies.

21.6.2.7.1 Automatic voice evacuation messages shall be transmitted to the elevator evacuation zone floors to indicate the need to evacuate and that elevator service is available.

21.6.2.7.2 Automatic voice messages shall be transmitted to the floors that are not in the elevator evacuation zone and are served by the group, to inform occupants that elevator service is not available.

21.6.2.7.3* Automatic voice messages shall be transmitted to the floors in the elevator evacuation zone when no elevators serving that elevator evacuation zone are available.

21.6.2.7.4* Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, the emergency voice/alarm communications system's loudspeaker(s) located in each OEE lobby shall be connected to a separate notification zone for manual paging only.

21.6.2.7.4.1 Individual paging zones per each OEE lobby on each floor or a grouped paging zone for all OEE lobbies on a floor shall be permitted if approved.

21.6.2.7.4.2 A vertical paging zone for each elevator group shall be permitted if approved.

21.6.2.7.5 Visual notification appliances (strobes) shall comply with 24.5.17.3(1), 24.5.17.3(2), and 24.5.17.3(3).

21.6.2.8 Total Evacuation. A means to initiate total building evacuation labeled "ELEVATOR TOTAL BUILDING EVACUATION" shall be provided at the Fire Command Center or at the Emergency Command Center.

21.6.2.8.1 When the total building evacuation means is actuated, the fire alarm system shall provide a signal to the elevator system indicating that all floors in the building are to be evacuated.

21.6.2.8.2 When the total building evacuation means is actuated, the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall transmit an evacuation message throughout the building.

21.6.2.9* Suspension of OEO for an Individual Elevator or Group of Elevators. When OEO has been suspended, the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall transmit messages coordinated with the elevator system's variable message signs in compliance with 21.6.2.7.

21.6.2.10* Partial Termination of OEO.

21.6.2.10.1 OEO shall be terminated for a specific group of elevator(s) when the signal(s) provided in 21.3.14.1 and 21.3.14.2 associated with this group of elevator(s) has initiated Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation for this group of elevator(s).

21.6.2.10.2 When OEO has been partially terminated, the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall transmit messages coordinated with the elevator system's variable message signs in compliance with 21.6.2.7.

21.6.2.11* Total Termination of OEO. OEO shall be terminated for all elevators in the building upon reset of the fire alarm system.

21.7 Heating, Ventilating and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems.

21.7.1 The provisions of Section 21.7 shall apply to the basic method by which a fire alarm system interfaces with the heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems.

21.7.2* If connected to the fire alarm system serving the protected premises, all detection devices used to cause the operation of HVAC systems, smoke dampers, fire dampers, fan control, smoke doors, or fire doors shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6 and 23.8.5.3.

21.7.3 Connections between fire alarm systems and the HVAC system for the purpose of monitoring and control shall operate and be monitored in accordance with applicable NFPA standards.

21.7.4 Smoke detectors mounted in the air ducts of HVAC systems shall initiate a supervisory signal.

21.7.4.1 Smoke detectors mounted in the air ducts of HVAC systems in a fire alarm system without a constantly attended location or supervising station shall be permitted to initiate an alarm signal.

21.7.4.2 Smoke detectors mounted in the air ducts of HVAC systems shall be permitted to initiate an alarm signal where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

21.7.5 If the fire alarm control unit actuates the HVAC system for the purpose of smoke control, the automatic alarm-initiating zones shall be coordinated with the smoke control zones they actuate.

21.7.6 If a carbon monoxide initiating device initiates a ventilation response, a smoke control response of the fire alarm

system shall take precedence over the response of the carbon monoxide detectors during a fire alarm condition.

21.7.7 Where interconnected as a combination system, a firefighter's smoke control station (FSCS) shall be provided to provide annunciation, manual control, and manual override of the automatic operation of the system's smoke control strategy.

21.7.8 Where interconnected as a combination system, the smoke control system programming shall be designed such that normal HVAC operation or changes do not prevent the intended performance of the smoke control strategy.

21.8 High Volume Low Speed (HVLS) Fans. Where required by NFPA 13, all HVLS fans shall be interlocked to shut down upon actuation of a sprinkler waterflow switch that indicates waterflow in the area served by the fans.

21.9 Door and Shutter Release.

21.9.1 The provisions of Section 21.9 shall apply to the methods of connection of door and shutter hold-open release devices and to integral door and shutter hold-open release, closer, and smoke detection devices.

21.9.2 Other than smoke detectors used only for door and shutter release and not for open area protection, all detection devices used for door and shutter hold-open release service shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6.

21.9.3 Unless installed as Class D circuits in accordance with 12.3.4, all door and shutter hold-open release and integral door and shutter release and closure devices used for release service shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6.

21.9.4 Magnetic door and shutter holders that allow doors to close upon loss of operating power shall not be required to have a secondary power source.

21.10 Electrically Locked Doors.

21.10.1* Electrically locked doors in a required means of egress shall unlock in the direction of egress where required by other laws, codes, and governing standards.

21.10.2 For all means of egress doors connected in accordance with 21.10.1 where secondary power supplies of fire alarm control units are used, they shall comply with 10.6.7.

21.10.3* Secondary power supplies of fire alarm control units shall not be utilized to maintain means of egress doors in the locked condition unless the fire alarm control unit is arranged with circuitry and sufficient secondary power to ensure that the means of egress doors will unlock within 10 minutes of loss of primary power.

21.10.4 Locks powered by independent power supplies dedicated to lock power and access control functions, and that unlock upon loss of power, shall not be required to comply with 21.10.2.

21.10.5 If means of egress doors are unlocked by the fire alarm system, the unlocking function shall occur prior to, or concurrent with, activation of any public-mode notification appliances in the area(s) served by the normally locked means of egress doors.

21.10.6 All doors that are required to be unlocked by the fire alarm system in accordance with 21.10.1 shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm condition is manually reset.

21.11* Exit Marking Audible Notification Systems.

21.11.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, standards, or the authority having jurisdiction, exit marking audible notification appliances shall be actuated by the building fire alarm system.

21.11.2 Exit marking systems shall meet the requirements of Chapter 18.

Chapter 22 Reserved

Chapter 23 Protected Premises Alarm and Signaling Systems

23.1 Application.

23.1.1* The application, installation, and performance of alarm and signaling systems within protected premises shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

23.1.2 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 11, 12, 14, 17, 18, 21, 24, and 26 shall apply unless otherwise noted in this chapter.

23.1.3 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless otherwise noted.

23.2 General.

23.2.1* Purpose. The systems covered in Chapter 23 shall be for the protection of life or property, or both, by indicating the existence of heat, fire, smoke, carbon monoxide, or other emergencies impacting the protected premises.

23.2.2 Software and Firmware Control.

23.2.2.1 A record of installed software and firmware version numbers shall be prepared and maintained in accordance with Sections 7.5 and 7.7.

23.2.2.1.1* Software and firmware within the alarm and signaling system that interfaces to other required software or firmware shall be functionally compatible.

23.2.2.1.2* The compatible software or firmware versions shall be documented at the initial acceptance test and at any reacceptance tests.

23.2.2.2* All software and firmware shall be protected from unauthorized changes.

23.2.2.3 All changes shall be tested in accordance with 14.4.2.

23.2.3 Separate Systems. The requirements of this chapter shall not preclude the use of separate fire, carbon monoxide, or other life safety systems provided the systems do not generate simultaneous conflicting notification to the building occupants or conflicting actuation of safety functions.

Δ 23.3 System Features.

N **23.3.1** The features required for a protected premises fire alarm system shall be documented as a part of the system design.

N **23.3.2** The features shall be determined in accordance with 23.3.3 through 23.3.5.

23.3.3* Required Systems. Features for required systems shall be based on the requirements of other applicable codes or statutes that have been adopted by the enforcing jurisdiction.

23.3.4* Nonrequired (Voluntary) Systems and Components. The features for a nonrequired system shall be established by the system designer on the basis of the goals and objectives intended by the system owner.

23.3.4.1 Nonrequired protected premises systems and components shall meet the requirements of this Code.

23.3.4.2 Nonrequired systems and components shall be identified on the record drawings required in 7.2.1(15).

23.3.5 Required Features.

23.3.5.1* Building Alarm and Signaling Systems. Protected premises systems that serve the alarm and signaling needs of a building or buildings shall include one or more of the following systems or functions:

(1) Manual fire alarm signal initiation
(2) Automatic fire alarm and supervisory signal initiation
(3) Monitoring of abnormal conditions in fire suppression systems
(4) Actuation of fire suppression systems
(5) Actuation of emergency control functions
(6) Actuation of fire alarm notification appliances
(7) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications
(8) Automatic carbon monoxide alarm and supervisory signal initiation
(9) Actuation of carbon monoxide notification appliances
(10) Guard's tour supervisory service
(11) Process monitoring supervisory systems
(12) Actuation of off-premises signals
(13) Combination systems

23.3.5.2* Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Systems.

Δ **23.3.5.2.1** In facilities without a building fire alarm system, a dedicated function fire alarm system shall be permitted.

N **23.3.5.2.2** The dedicated function fire alarm system described in 23.3.5.2.1 shall not be required to include other functions or features of a building fire alarm system.

23.3.5.2.3 Where a dedicated function fire alarm system exists and a building fire alarm system is subsequently installed, the systems shall be interconnected and comply with 23.8.2.

N **23.3.5.2.4** In facilities not required to have a building fire alarm system, suppression systems shall be permitted to be connected to a dedicated function fire alarm system.

23.4 System Performance and Integrity.

23.4.1 Purpose. Section 23.4 provides information that shall be used in the design and installation of protected premises fire alarm systems for the protection of life and property.

23.4.2 Circuit Designations. Initiating device circuits, notification appliance circuits, and signaling line circuits shall be designated by class, depending on the circuit's capability to continue to operate during specified fault conditions as indicated in Sections 23.5 through 23.7.

23.4.2.1 Specified fault conditions shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal at the protected premises within 200 seconds as required in Section 12.6.

23.4.2.2* Where the power to a device is supplied over a separate circuit from the signaling line circuit or initiating device circuit, the operation of the power circuit shall meet the performance requirements of the initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit, unless different performance requirements are established in accordance with the evaluation in 23.4.3 and approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.4.3 Pathway Classification.

23.4.3.1 The class of pathways shall be determined from an evaluation based on the path performance as required by governing laws, codes, standards, and a site-specific engineering analysis.

23.4.3.2 When determining the integrity and reliability of the interconnecting signaling paths (circuits) installed within the protected premises, the following influences shall be considered:

(1) Transmission media used
(2) Length of the circuit conductors
(3) Total building area covered by, and the quantity of initiating devices and notification appliances connected to, a single circuit
(4) Effect of a fault in the fire alarm system that would hinder the performance objectives of the system that protects the occupants, mission, and property of the protected premises
(5) Nature of hazards present within the protected premises
(6) Functional requirements of the system necessary to provide the level of protection required for the system
(7) Size and nature of the population of the protected premises

23.4.3.3 Results of the evaluation required by 23.4.3.1 shall be included with the documentation required by 7.3.9.

23.5 Performance of Initiating Device Circuits (IDCs). The assignment of class designations to initiating device circuits shall be based on their performance capabilities under abnormal (fault) conditions in accordance with the requirements for Class A or Class B pathways specified in Chapter 12.

23.6 Performance of Signaling Line Circuits (SLCs). The assignment of class designations to signaling line circuits shall be based on their performance capabilities under abnormal (fault) conditions in accordance with the requirements for Class A, Class B, Class N, or Class X pathways specified in Chapter 12.

23.6.1* SLC Zones. A single fault on a pathway connected to the addressable devices shall not cause the loss of the devices in more than one zone.

23.6.1.1 For the purpose of this section, each floor of the building shall be considered a separate zone.

23.6.1.2 For the purpose of this section, if a floor of the building is subdivided into multiple zones by fire or smoke barriers and the fire plan for the protected premises allows relocation of occupants from the zone of origin to another zone on the same floor, each zone on the floor shall be considered a separate zone.

23.6.1.3* The requirements in 23.6.1 shall not apply to the following:

(1) Circuits between enclosures containing transponders and control units regardless of the number of initiating devices, notification appliances, or control relays that might be connected to those control units
(2) Circuits connecting short-circuit fault isolation modules to enclosures containing transponders and control units where the conductors are installed in metallic raceway or equivalently protected against mechanical injury and where the circuit does not exceed 3 ft (0.9 m) in length
(3)* Alterations or modifications made to an existing SLC not required to comply with 23.6.1 when originally installed

23.6.1.4 The loss of more than one zone shall be permitted on a documented performance-based design approach.

23.6.1.5* Performance-based designs submitted to the authority having jurisdiction for review and approval shall include documentation, in an approved format, of each performance objective and applicable scenario, together with technical substantiation used in establishing the proposed zone performance.

23.6.2* Class N Devices. Unless permitted in 23.6.2.1 or 23.6.2.2, no area or zone shall be served solely by a single device where Class N pathways are deployed, such that a single device failure resulting from a multiple ground-fault pathway failure would render an area or zone incapable of initiating input signals or receiving output signals.

23.6.2.1 Where a risk analysis shows that only one device is required and where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, the requirements of 23.6.2 shall not apply.

23.6.2.2 Multiple devices shall not be required in areas served by pathways not susceptible to ground faults, such as optical fiber cable or wireless pathways.

23.6.2.3* Where a device as referenced by 23.6.2 is serviced by only a single pathway, it shall terminate that pathway with no ability to connect additional endpoint devices to the pathway.

23.6.2.4* A single fault on a Class N pathway shall not cause the loss of more than one addressable device.

23.6.3 Class N Shared Pathways. Class N pathways shall be required to use shared pathway Level 3 as specified in 12.5.4 except as permitted by 23.6.3.2.

23.6.3.1 Accessibility. Class N pathways shall not be accessible to the general public or building occupants for any purpose other than specified in the network design analysis, maintenance, and deployment plans.

23.6.3.2 Level 1 and Level 2. Shared pathways Level 1 and Level 2 shall be permitted subject to approval of the authority having jurisdiction, based on documentation of the deployment, change control, maintenance plans, management organization, network design analysis, and a risk analysis as identified in 23.6.3.3 through 23.6.3.8.

23.6.3.3* Deployment Plan.

23.6.3.3.1 All equipment connected to shared pathways shall be documented in the deployment plan.

23.6.3.3.1.1 The documentation shall include manufacturer, model, listings, and intended purpose and reason for inclusion on the shared network.

23.6.3.3.1.2* The deployment plan shall identify how and where each piece of equipment is connected.

23.6.3.3.2* All connection ports, used or spare, where any unauthorized or unintended equipment could be added to the shared network, shall be identified as for use only by equipment consistent with the deployment plan.

23.6.3.3.3 Equipment Location.

23.6.3.3.3.1 The requirements of 23.6.3.3.3.2 through 23.6.3.3.3.4 shall apply to all equipment rooms, equipment closets, telecommunication rooms, telecommunication enclosures, or the like, for which both Class N life safety network infrastructure and non-life-safety network equipment resides.

23.6.3.3.3.2* Equipment rooms or enclosures shall be permitted to contain both Class N life safety networking cable, equipment, and associated infrastructure provided the deployment satisfies 23.6.3.3.3.3 through 23.6.3.3.3.4.

23.6.3.3.3.3 Class N life safety network cabling, equipment, and infrastructure shall be clearly segregated and identified as "Life Safety Network."

23.6.3.3.3.4 Equipment rooms or enclosures shall be accessible to only authorized personnel via a locked access or via an enclosure requiring the use of tools to open, as acceptable by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.6.3.4 Change Control Plan. Configuration upgrades and updates shall be governed by a change control plan that determines the policy and procedure of the change and ensures that all documentation is correspondingly updated.

23.6.3.5 Management Organization.

N **23.6.3.5.1** An organization shall be established and maintained to manage the life safety network.

23.6.3.5.2* The organization described in 23.6.3.5.1 shall comply with the following:

(1) Contain members appropriately certified by each manufacturer of the equipment and devices deployed on shared pathways to maintain such a network
(2) Service and maintain all shared Class N pathways
(3) Maintain the deployment and shared pathways plan for the lifetime of the shared pathways

23.6.3.5.3* Other service personnel, even when certified to service a specific system (i.e., fire alarm or MNS), shall be authorized and managed by this organization to ensure any outages of any system are planned, managed, and documented and appropriate steps are taken during outages to provide alternate protection of life and property.

23.6.3.6 Network Design Analysis.

23.6.3.6.1* The analysis shall be performed to determine and document communications capability as follows:

(1) Calculation of minimum required bandwidth such that all life safety systems can be guaranteed to operate simultaneously and within required time limits
(2) Total bandwidth provided by the network
(3) Future bandwidth requirements
(4) Method of providing and maintaining the prioritization of life safety traffic over non-life-safety traffic

23.6.3.6.2* The analysis shall determine and document the power distribution capability as follows:

(1) The methods provided to maintain power to all shared pathway equipment
(2)* A calculation of power requirements of all connected equipment
(3) Secondary power capacities provided to maintain all life safety equipment with minimum operational capacity in accordance with 10.6.7.2.3
(4) Methods to disengage any non-life-safety equipment in the event of emergency operation if required to support the minimum operational capacity requirements

23.6.3.7 Maintenance Plan.

23.6.3.7.1* The maintenance plan shall identify policy and procedures to monitor, maintain, test, and control change of the shared pathways.

23.6.3.7.2* Written procedures shall be presented in maintenance plans to govern the following:

(1) Physical access to all parts of the Class N network equipment (i.e., switches, ports, server, controllers, devices, or components)
(2) Electronic access to all parts of the Class N network (i.e., passwords, addresses)
(3)* Service outage impairment process with notices of impairment and contingency plans for affected systems
(4) Upgrade procedures
(5) Change control procedures, with consideration given to require an updated risk analysis if necessary
(6) Prioritization and/or segregation configuration information for life safety traffic
(7) Maintenance and testing plans to ensure the minimum operational capacity with respect to secondary power is maintained
(8) Other service, maintenance, or reconfiguration plans for any connected equipment

23.6.3.8* Network Risk Analysis for Class N.

23.6.3.8.1 Each application of a Class N deployment shall be specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each facility for which it is designed.

23.6.3.8.2 The risk analysis shall address both fire and non-fire emergencies when determining risk tolerances for the survivability of the network and the systems and devices it serves.

23.6.3.8.3 The detail and complexity of the risk analysis shall be commensurate with the complexity of the facility for which the network is to be installed.

23.6.3.8.4 The risk analysis shall be permitted to be limited in scope to address the requirements of an existing emergency response plan.

23.6.3.8.5 The risk analysis shall consider characteristics of the buildings, areas, spaces, campuses or regions, equipment, and operations that are not inherent in the design specifications.

23.6.3.8.6 Those elements that are not inherent in the design specifications, but that affect occupant behavior or the rate of hazard development, shall be explicitly identified and included in the risk analysis.

Δ **23.6.3.8.7** The risk analysis shall consider general categories of potential events, including but not limited to the following:

(1) Natural hazards
    (a) Geological events
    (b) Meteorological events
(2) Human caused
    (a) Accidental events
    (b) Intentional events
(3) Technological caused events

23.6.3.8.8 All other identified risks as required by the authority having jurisdiction shall be discussed and addressed in the analysis and maintenance plans.

23.7 Performance of Notification Appliance Circuits (NACs). The assignment of class designations to notification appliance circuits shall be based on their performance capabilities under abnormal (fault) conditions in accordance with the requirements for Class A, Class B, or Class X pathways specified in Chapter 12.

23.8 System Requirements.

23.8.1 General.

23.8.1.1* Presignal Feature.

23.8.1.1.1 Systems that have a presignal feature complying with 23.8.1.1 shall be permitted if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.8.1.1.2 A presignal feature shall meet the following conditions:

(1) The initial fire alarm signals sound only in department offices, control rooms, fire brigade stations, or other constantly attended locations.
(2) Where there is a connection to a remote location, the transmission of the fire alarm signal to the supervising station actuates upon the initial alarm signal.
(3) Subsequent system operation is by either of the following means:
    (a) Human action that actuates the evacuation alarm signal or other response per the emergency response plan
    (b) A feature that allows the control unit to delay the general alarm by more than 1 minute after the start of the alarm processing
(4) Investigation of a presignal alarm is performed by authorized and qualified personnel.
(5) The emergency response plan of a presignal facility includes details of the alarm receipt, investigation, and alarm activation procedures and is approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.8.1.2 Positive Alarm Sequence.

23.8.1.2.1 Systems that have positive alarm features complying with 23.8.1.2 shall be permitted if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.8.1.2.1.1 The positive alarm sequence operation shall comply with the following:

(1) To initiate the positive alarm sequence operation, unless otherwise permitted by 23.8.1.2.1.3, the signal from an automatic fire detection device selected for positive alarm sequence operation shall be acknowledged at the fire alarm control unit by authorized or emergency personnel within 15 seconds of annunciation.
(2) If the signal is not acknowledged within 15 seconds, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately actuated.
(3) If the positive alarm sequence operation is initiated in accordance with 23.8.1.2.1.1(1), authorized or emergency personnel shall have an alarm investigation phase of up to 180 seconds to evaluate the fire condition and reset the system.
(4) If the system is not reset during the alarm investigation phase, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately actuated.
(5) If a second automatic fire detector selected for positive alarm sequence is actuated during the alarm investigation phase, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately actuated.
(6)* If any other fire alarm initiating device is actuated, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately actuated.

23.8.1.2.1.2* The system shall provide means for bypassing the positive alarm sequence.

23.8.1.2.1.3 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be permitted to be included in a positive alarm sequence where specifically approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.8.2* Alarm Control Units.

23.8.2.1 Alarm and signaling systems shall be permitted to combine all detection, notification, and auxiliary functions in a single system or be a combination of component subsystems.

23.8.2.2 Except as permitted in 23.8.2.3, the alarm and signaling system components shall comply with one of the following when arranged to function as a single system in accordance with 23.8.2.4 through 23.8.2.10:

(1) Be permitted to share equipment
(2)* Be able to operate as stand-alone subsystems

23.8.2.3 Where the building is not served by a building fire alarm system, independent dedicated function fire alarm systems and/or releasing fire alarm systems shall not be required to be interconnected to function as a single system.

23.8.2.4 All component subsystems shall be capable of simultaneous, full-load operation without degradation of the required overall system performance.

Δ **23.8.2.5** The method of interconnection of fire alarm control units shall be achieved by one or more of the following:

(1) Electrical contacts listed for the connected load
(2) Data communications over a signaling line circuit(s) dedicated to the fire alarm or shared with other premises operating systems
(3) Other listed methods

23.8.2.6 Where the signaling line circuit is shared by other premises operating systems, operation shall be in accordance with 23.8.4.

Δ **23.8.2.6.1** All signal control and transport equipment (such as routers and servers) located in a critical fire alarm or emergency control function interface device signaling path shall be listed for fire alarm service.

Δ **23.8.2.6.2** A fire alarm service listing as described in 23.8.2.6.1 shall not be required when all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The equipment meets the performance requirements of 10.3.5.
(2) The equipment is provided with primary and secondary power and monitored for integrity as required in Section 10.6, 10.6.9, Section 10.19, and Section 12.6.
(3) All programming and configuration ensures a fire alarm system actuation time as required in 10.11.1.
(4) System bandwidth is monitored to confirm that all communications between equipment that is critical to the

operation of the fire alarm system or emergency control function interface devices take place within 10 seconds.

(5) Failure of the monitored bandwidth described in 23.8.2.6.2(4) is indicated within 200 seconds.

(6) Failure of any equipment that is critical to the operation of the fire alarm system or emergency control function interface devices is indicated at the master fire alarm control unit within 200 seconds.

23.8.2.6.3 A listed barrier gateway, integral with or attached to each control unit or group of control units, as appropriate, shall be provided to prevent the other systems from interfering with or controlling the fire alarm system.

23.8.2.6.4 Where Class N is utilized for shared equipment, the requirements in 23.6.3 shall also apply.

23.8.2.7 Each interconnected alarm control unit shall be separately monitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions with supervised pathways that are in accordance with the manufacturers' published instructions.

23.8.2.7.1 Alarm conditions on interconnected alarm control units shall annunciate as alarm signals and initiate the evacuation signals.

23.8.2.7.2 Supervisory conditions on interconnected alarm control units shall annunciate as supervisory signals.

23.8.2.7.3 Trouble conditions on interconnected alarm control units shall annunciate as trouble signals.

23.8.2.7.4* Where supervised pathways between interconnected fire alarm control units is not achievable, a supervised annunciator shall be installed adjacent to control unit(s) to annunciate the status of each control unit.

23.8.2.8 Interconnected fire alarm control unit alarm signals shall be permitted to be monitored by zone or by combined common signals.

23.8.2.9 Protected premises alarm control units shall be capable of being reset or silenced only from the protected premises, unless otherwise permitted by 23.8.2.10.

23.8.2.9.1 Where multiple control units of the same manufacturer are interconnected in a network arrangement and serve the same protected premises, the control units shall be arranged to be reset or silenced from one location.

23.8.2.9.2 Where multiple control units of the different manufacturers are interconnected in accordance with 23.8.2.5 through 23.8.2.8 and serve the same protected premises, the control units shall be permitted to be reset or silenced individually at each control unit.

23.8.2.9.3 Resetting procedures shall be documented and permanently posted beside each control unit and annunciator.

23.8.2.10 Remote resetting and silencing of a fire alarm control unit from other than the protected premises shall be permitted with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

23.8.2.11 Remote Access.

23.8.2.11.1* Remote access to fire alarm or signaling systems shall be permitted in accordance with 23.8.2.11.

23.8.2.11.2 Remote access shall not affect the operation or response of the fire alarm or signaling systems unless permitted by 23.8.2.11.3 or 23.8.2.11.5.

23.8.2.11.3 Remote access shall be permitted for testing and maintenance activities, including resetting, silencing, or operation of emergency control functions provided all of the following are met:

(1)* The system shall provide a means to manually terminate the remote access connection at the remote device and at the fire alarm or signaling system control unit at any time.

(2)* Remote access shall be automatically terminated within a maximum of 1 hour of inactivity in the remote access mode.

(3) Resetting, silencing, or operation of emergency control functions shall be limited to portion(s) of the system taken out of service.

(4) Authorized service personnel shall be on-site to enable resetting, silencing, and operation of emergency control functions at the affected system(s) by password or limited access.

23.8.2.11.4* Remote access shall be permitted to be enabled remotely for the purposes of performing remote diagnostics when both of the following are met:

(1)* The system shall provide a means to manually terminate the remote access connection at the remote device and at the fire alarm or signaling system control unit at any time.

(2)* Remote access shall be automatically terminated within a maximum of 1 hour of inactivity in the remote access mode.

23.8.2.11.5 Remote access for the purposes of software updating shall be permitted when all of the following are met:

(1)* The system shall provide a means to manually terminate the remote access connection at the remote device and at the fire alarm or signaling system control unit at any time.

(2)* Remote access shall be automatically terminated within a maximum of 1 hour of inactivity in the remote access mode.

(3) Qualified personnel shall be on-site to enable software updating at the affected fire alarm or signaling system control unit by password or limited access.

(4) All software changes shall be tested in accordance with Section 14.4.

23.8.3 Protected Premises Alarm and Signaling Systems Interconnected with Dwelling Unit Fire and Carbon Monoxide Warning Equipment.

23.8.3.1 A protected premises system shall be permitted to be interconnected to the household warning equipment for the purpose of actuating the notification appliances connected to the household warning equipment.

23.8.3.2 The actuation of household warning equipment shall only be permitted to be displayed at the protected premises control unit and annunciators as supervisory signals.

23.8.3.3 If interconnected, an alarm condition at the protected premises system shall cause the intended notification alarm signal of the household's warning equipment to become activated and remain activated until the protected premises system is silenced or reset.

23.8.3.4 The interconnection circuit or path from the protected premises system to the household warning equipment shall

be monitored for integrity by the protected premises system in accordance with Section 12.6.

23.8.3.5 An alarm condition occurring at the household fire warning equipment or the operation of any test switches provided as part of the household warning equipment shall not cause an alarm condition at the protected premises system.

23.8.4 Combination Systems.

23.8.4.1* Fire alarm systems shall be permitted to share components, equipment, circuitry, and installation wiring with non-fire-alarm systems.

23.8.4.2 Building System Information Unit (BSIU).

23.8.4.2.1* A building system information unit (BSIU) shall be listed to product safety standard UL 60950-1, *Information Technology Equipment — Safety — Part 1: General Requirements*, or UL 62368-1, *Audio/Video, Information and Communication Technology Equipment — Part 1: Safety Requirements,* or equivalent.

23.8.4.2.2 Where a BSIU provides control of the fire alarm system, the requirements in 23.8.4.2.2.1 through 23.8.4.2.2.4 shall also apply.

23.8.4.2.2.1 A fire alarm control unit (FACU) controlling the fire alarm system shall be located within the same room as the BSIU.

23.8.4.2.2.2* The BSIU shall not be permitted to perform fire alarm system control features that cannot be accomplished by the FACU within the room.

23.8.4.2.2.3 The communication path from the FACU and the BSIU shall meet the requirements of 23.8.4.4.1 through 23.8.4.4.3.

23.8.4.2.2.4 The application software for the BSIU shall be listed to UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*.

23.8.4.3 Operation of a non–fire system function(s) originating within a connected non-fire system shall not interfere with the required operation of the fire alarm system, unless otherwise permitted by this Code.

23.8.4.4* For non-fire-alarm equipment listed to the performance requirements specified in 10.3.5, the requirements of 23.8.4.4.1 through 23.8.4.4.3 shall apply.

23.8.4.4.1 The equipment shall be permitted to be attached to a fire alarm circuit, either among the fire alarm devices or as a branch or extension of the fire alarm pathways, when all of the following requirements are met:

(1) All the equipment and pathways shall meet the monitoring for integrity requirements of 10.6.9, Section 10.19, and Section 12.6.
(2) All the equipment and pathways shall be maintained by a single service organization.
(3) All the equipment and pathways shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this Code.
(4) All the equipment shall comply with one of the following:
    (a) The equipment shall be listed as compatible with the fire alarm equipment.
    (b) The equipment shall have an interface listed as compatible with the fire alarm equipment.

23.8.4.4.2 If the equipment is attached to the fire alarm system via separate pathways, then short circuits or open circuits in this equipment, or between this equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall not impede or impair the monitoring for integrity of the fire alarm system or prevent alarm, supervisory, or fire safety control signal transmissions.

23.8.4.4.3 Grounds in this equipment, or between this equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall be reported, annunciated, and corrected in the same manner as grounds in the rest of the fire alarm system.

23.8.4.5 For non-fire equipment not listed to the performance requirements specified in 10.3.5, the requirements of 23.8.4.5.1 through 23.8.4.5.3 shall apply.

23.8.4.5.1 Short circuits or open circuits in the equipment, or between the equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall not impede or impair the monitoring for integrity of the fire alarm system or prevent alarm, supervisory, or fire safety control signal transmissions.

23.8.4.5.2 Grounds in this equipment, or between this equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall be reported, annunciated, and corrected in the same manner as grounds in the rest of the fire alarm system.

23.8.4.5.3 Removal, replacement, failure, maintenance procedures, or ground on this hardware, software, or circuits shall not impair the required operation of the fire alarm system.

23.8.4.6 Loudspeakers used as alarm notification appliances on fire alarm systems shall also be permitted to be used for emergency communications systems when installed in accordance with Chapter 24.

Δ **23.8.4.7* Combination Systems Signaling.**

N **23.8.4.7.1** In combination systems, fire alarm signals shall be distinctive and clearly recognizable.

N **23.8.4.7.2** In combination systems, fire alarm signals shall be indicated as follows in descending order of priority:

(1) Signals associated with life safety
(2) Signals associated with property protection
(3) Trouble signals associated with life and/or property protection
(4) All other signals

N **23.8.4.7.3** The order of priority described in 23.8.4.7.2 shall be permitted to be modified where otherwise required by other governing laws, codes, or standards or by other parts of this Code.

23.8.4.8 If the authority having jurisdiction determines that the information being displayed or annunciated on a combination system is excessive and is causing confusion and delayed response to a fire emergency, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require that the display or annunciation of information for the fire alarm system be separate from, and have priority in accordance with, 23.8.4.7, over information for the non-fire-alarm systems.

23.8.4.9 Carbon Monoxide Detector Signals. Unless otherwise permitted by 23.8.4.9.1, signals from carbon monoxide detectors and carbon monoxide detection systems transmitted to a fire alarm system shall be indicated as a carbon monoxide alarm signal.

23.8.4.9.1 When in accordance with the emergency response plan, evacuation plan, fire safety plan, or similar documentation, signals from carbon monoxide detectors and carbon monoxide detection systems transmitted to a fire alarm system shall be permitted to be supervisory signals.

23.8.4.9.2* Fire alarm system processing for and occupant response to carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be in accordance with the emergency response plan, evacuation plan, fire safety plan, or similar documentation.

23.8.4.9.3 Where carbon monoxide warning equipment is connected to a protected premises fire alarm system, receipt of signals shall initiate the signal required by Section 18.4.

23.8.4.9.4 Operation of carbon monoxide alarms or detectors shall not cause fire alarm or combination system control units to actuate either protected premises or supervising station fire alarm signals.

23.8.4.10* Signals from a fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device or fire extinguisher monitoring system transmitted to a fire alarm system shall be permitted to be supervisory signals.

23.8.5 Fire Alarm System Inputs.

23.8.5.1 General.

23.8.5.1.1 All initiating devices shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 17 and tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

23.8.5.1.2* Where connected to a supervising station, fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices shall include a manual fire alarm box to initiate a signal to the supervising station.

23.8.5.1.3 Fire alarm systems dedicated to elevator recall control and supervisory service as permitted in Section 21.3 shall not be required to meet 23.8.5.1.2.

23.8.5.2 Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Manual. Manual fire alarm signal initiation shall comply with the requirements of Section 17.17.

23.8.5.2.1 If signals from manual fire alarm boxes and other fire alarm initiating devices within a building are transmitted over the same signaling line circuit, there shall be no interference with manual fire alarm box signals when both types of initiating devices are operated at the same time.

23.8.5.2.2 Provision of the shunt noninterfering method of operation shall be permitted for this performance.

23.8.5.3 Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Initiating Devices with Separate Power and Signaling Wiring.

23.8.5.3.1 Automatic fire alarm signal initiating devices that have integral trouble signal contacts shall be connected to the initiating device circuit so that a trouble condition within a device does not impair alarm transmission from any other initiating device, unless the trouble condition is caused by electrical disconnection of the device or by removing the initiating device from its plug-in base.

23.8.5.3.2* Automatic fire alarm signal initiating devices that use a nonintegral device to monitor the integrity of the power supply wiring to the individual initiating devices shall have the nonintegral device connected to the initiating device circuit so that a fault on the power supply wiring does not impair alarm transmission from any operational initiating device.

23.8.5.4 Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Detection Devices.

Δ **23.8.5.4.1*** Systems equipped with alarm verification features shall be permitted where all the conditions of 23.8.5.4.1.1 through 23.8.5.4.1.5 are met.

N **23.8.5.4.1.1** The alarm verification feature shall not initially be enabled, unless conditions or occupant activities that are expected to cause nuisance alarms are anticipated in the area that is protected by the smoke detectors.

N **23.8.5.4.1.2** Enabling of the alarm verification feature shall be protected by password or limited access.

N **23.8.5.4.1.3** A smoke detector that is continuously subjected to a smoke concentration above alarm threshold shall not delay the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.17 or 21.2.1 by more than 1 minute.

N **23.8.5.4.1.4** Actuation of an alarm-initiating device other than a smoke detector shall cause the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.17 or 21.2.1 without additional delay.

N **23.8.5.4.1.5** The current status of the alarm verification feature shall be shown on the record of completion *[see Figure 7.8.2(a), item 4.3]*.

23.8.5.4.2 If automatic drift compensation of sensitivity for a fire detector is provided, the fire alarm control unit shall identify the affected detector when the limit of compensation is reached.

23.8.5.4.3 Systems that require the operation of two automatic detectors to initiate the alarm response shall be permitted, provided that the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) The systems are not prohibited by the authority having jurisdiction.
(2) At least two automatic detectors are in each protected space.
(3) The alarm verification feature is not used.
(4) The specific sequence of operations is detailed in the design documents as defined by Chapter 7 of this Code.

23.8.5.4.4 For systems that require the operation of two automatic detectors to initiate emergency control functions or to actuate fire extinguishing or suppression systems, the detectors shall be installed at the spacing determined in accordance with Chapter 17.

23.8.5.4.5 For systems that require the operation of two automatic detectors to actuate public mode notification, the detectors shall be installed at a linear spacing not more than 0.7 times the linear spacing determined in accordance with Chapter 17.

23.8.5.4.6 Signal Initiation — Duct Smoke Detectors.

23.8.5.4.6.1 Where duct smoke detectors are required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, a duct detector activation signal shall meet the requirements of 21.7.4.

23.8.5.4.6.2 Where duct smoke detectors are connected to a protected premises fire alarm system, the operation of the power circuit shall meet the requirements of 23.4.2.2.

23.8.5.4.6.3* Where duct smoke detectors with separate power and signal wiring are installed and connected to a protected

premises fire alarm system, they shall meet the requirements of 23.8.5.3.

23.8.5.4.6.4 Where duct smoke detectors are not resettable from the protected premises fire alarm system, a listed alarm/supervisory indicator with an integral reset switch shall be provided in an accessible location.

23.8.5.5* Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Sprinkler Systems.

23.8.5.5.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards to be electronically monitored, waterflow alarm-initiating devices shall be connected to a dedicated function fire alarm control unit designated as "sprinkler waterflow and supervisory system" and permanently identified on the control unit and record drawings.

23.8.5.5.2 Waterflow alarm-initiating devices connected to a building alarm system shall not be required to meet the requirements of 23.8.5.5.1.

23.8.5.5.3* The number of waterflow alarm-initiating devices permitted to be connected to a single initiating device circuit shall not exceed five.

23.8.5.5.4 If a valve is installed in the connection between a sprinkler system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.19.1.

23.8.5.6* Supervisory Signal Initiation — Sprinkler Systems.

23.8.5.6.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards to be electronically monitored, supervisory signal–initiating devices shall be connected to a dedicated function fire alarm control unit designated as "sprinkler waterflow and supervisory system" and permanently identified on the control unit and record drawings.

23.8.5.6.2 Supervisory signal–initiating devices connected to a building alarm system shall not be required to meet the requirements of 23.8.5.6.1.

23.8.5.6.3* The number of supervisory signal–initiating devices permitted to be connected to a single initiating device circuit shall not exceed 20.

23.8.5.6.4* If a valve is installed in the connection between a sprinkler system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.19.1 unless the valve is arranged to cause operation of the supervisory signal initiating device when it is in its off-normal position.

23.8.5.7 Alarm Signal Initiation — Fire Suppression Systems Other Than Sprinklers.

23.8.5.7.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, the actuation of a fire suppression system shall annunciate an alarm or supervisory condition at the building fire alarm control unit.

23.8.5.7.2 The integrity of each fire suppression system actuating device and its circuit shall comply with 12.6.1, 12.6.2, and other applicable NFPA standards.

23.8.5.7.3 If a valve is installed in the connection between a suppression system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.19.1.

23.8.5.8* Supervisory Signal Initiation — Fire Suppression Systems Other Than Sprinklers.

23.8.5.8.1 Where required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, an off-normal condition of a fire suppression system shall annunciate a supervisory condition at the building fire alarm control unit.

23.8.5.8.2 Supervisory signals that latch in the off-normal state and require manual reset of the system to restore them to normal shall be permitted.

23.8.5.8.3 If a valve is installed in the connection between a suppression system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.19.1.

23.8.5.9 Signal Initiation — Fire Pump.

23.8.5.9.1 Where fire pumps are required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, a pump running signal shall be permitted to be a supervisory or alarm signal.

23.8.5.9.2 Where fire pumps are required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, signals other than pump running shall be supervisory signals.

23.8.5.10 Fire Alarm and Supervisory Signal Initiation — Releasing Fire Alarm Systems.

23.8.5.10.1 Releasing service fire alarm control units shall be connected to the protected premises fire alarm system.

23.8.5.10.2 Fire alarm and supervisory signals generated at the releasing service fire alarm control unit shall be annunciated at a protected premises fire alarm unit.

23.8.5.10.3 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, actuation of any suppression system connected to a releasing service fire alarm control unit shall be annunciated at the protected premises fire alarm control unit, even where the system actuation is by manual means or otherwise accomplished without actuation of the releasing service fire alarm control unit.

23.8.5.10.4 If a valve is installed in the connection between a suppression system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with Chapter 17.

23.8.5.10.5 In facilities that are not required to install a protected premises fire alarm system, the alarm and supervisory devices shall be as follows:

(1) Connected to the releasing service fire alarm control unit
(2) Annunciated at the releasing service fire alarm control unit when actuated

23.8.5.11 Trouble Signal Initiation.

23.8.5.11.1 Automatic fire suppression system alarm-initiating devices and supervisory signal–initiating devices and their circuits shall be designed and installed so that they cannot be subject to tampering, opening, or removal without initiating a signal.

23.8.5.11.2 Covers of junction boxes inside of buildings shall not be required to meet the requirements of 23.8.5.11.1.

23.8.5.11.3 The requirements of 23.8.5.11.1 shall apply to junction boxes and device covers installed outside of buildings to facilitate access to the initiating device circuit unless tamper-resistant screws or other approved mechanical means are used for preventing access.

23.8.5.11.4 The integrity of each fire suppression system actuating device and its circuit shall be supervised in accordance with 12.6.1 and 12.6.2 and with other applicable NFPA standards.

23.8.5.12 Disconnect Switches and Disable Functions. Operation of any disconnect switch or disable function associated with the fire alarm system, when in the off-normal condition, shall be indicated at the building fire alarm control unit or at a dedicated function(s) fire alarm control unit if provided.

23.8.6 Alarm System Notification Outputs.

23.8.6.1 Occupant Notification.

23.8.6.1.1 Fire alarm systems provided for evacuation or relocation of occupants shall have one or more notification appliances listed for the purpose in each notification zone of the building and be so located that they have the characteristics described in Chapter 18 for public mode or private mode, as required.

23.8.6.1.2 Except as permitted in 23.8.6.1.3, occupant notification of carbon monoxide systems shall be throughout the protected premises.

23.8.6.1.3 Where carbon monoxide alarm signals are transmitted to a constantly attended on-site location or off-premises location in accordance with this chapter, selective public mode occupant notification shall be permitted to be limited to the notification zone encompassing the area where the carbon monoxide alarm signal was initiated.

23.8.6.2* Notification Appliances in Exit Stair Enclosures, Exit Passageways, and Elevator Cars. Notification appliances shall not be required in exit stair enclosures, exit passageways, and elevator cars in accordance with 23.8.6.2.1 through 23.8.6.2.4 unless required by other codes and standards.

23.8.6.2.1 Visual signals shall not be required in exit stair enclosures and exit passageways.

23.8.6.2.2 Visual signals shall not be required in elevator cars.

23.8.6.2.3 The emergency evacuation signal specified in 18.4.2 shall not be required to automatically operate in exit stair enclosures and exit passageways.

23.8.6.2.4 The emergency evacuation signal specified in 18.4.2 shall not be required to automatically operate in elevator cars.

23.8.6.3 Notification Zones.

23.8.6.3.1 Notification zones shall be consistent with the emergency response or evacuation plan for the protected premises.

23.8.6.3.2 The boundaries of fire alarm notification zones shall be coincident with building outer walls, building fire or smoke compartment boundaries, floor separations, or other fire safety subdivisions.

23.8.6.3.3* The boundaries of carbon monoxide alarm notification zones shall be coincident with the area where the alarm initiation originated and other notification zones in accordance with the building's emergency response plan.

23.8.6.4 Circuits for Addressable Notification Appliances.

23.8.6.4.1 Circuit configuration for addressable notification appliances shall comply with the applicable performance requirements for notification zones.

23.8.6.4.2 Where there are addressable notification appliances on a signaling line circuit that serves different notification zones, a single open, short-circuit, or ground on that signaling line circuit shall not affect operation of more than one notification zone.

23.8.6.4.3 Riser conductors installed in accordance with 24.4.8.6.3 that are monitored for integrity shall not be required to operate in accordance with 23.8.6.4.2.

23.9 In-Building Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications.

23.9.1 In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications shall meet the requirements of Chapter 24.

23.9.2 Where a voice/alarm communications system is installed for the purpose of occupant notification related to carbon monoxide detection, it shall meet the requirements of Section 24.4 excluding the requirements of 24.4.8.6.

23.9.3 All live voice communications systems shall meet the requirements of Chapter 24.

23.9.4 Two-Way Communication Service. Two-way communication service shall meet the requirements of Chapter 24.

23.10 Fire Alarm Systems Using Tone.

23.10.1 The requirements of Section 23.10 shall apply to tone and visual notification appliance circuits.

23.10.2* Fire alarm systems used for partial evacuation and relocation shall be designed and installed in accordance with 24.3.14.4.2.

•

23.10.3 Loudspeakers that transmit tone signals shall be permitted to be used as fire alarm notification appliances.

23.11 Suppression System Actuation.

23.11.1 Releasing service fire alarm control units used for automatic or manual activation of a fire suppression system shall be listed for releasing service.

23.11.2 Releasing devices for suppression systems shall be listed for use with releasing service control units.

23.11.3 Each releasing device (e.g., solenoid, relay) shall be monitored for integrity (supervised) in accordance with applicable NFPA standards.

23.11.4 The installation wiring shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with the requirements of Section 12.6.

23.11.5 Releasing service fire alarm systems used for fire suppression–releasing service shall be provided with a disconnect switch to allow the system to be tested without actuating the fire suppression systems.

23.11.5.1 Operation of a disconnect switch or a disable function shall cause a supervisory signal at the releasing service fire alarm control unit.

23.11.5.2 The disconnect shall be a physical switch and not be accomplished by using software.

23.11.5.3 Software disconnects, even if actuated by dedicated buttons or key switches, shall not be permitted as a method to secure a suppression system from inadvertent discharge.

23.11.6 Sequence of operation shall be consistent with the applicable suppression system standards.

23.11.7* Each space protected by an automatic fire suppression system actuated by the fire alarm system shall contain one or more automatic fire detectors installed in accordance with Chapter 17.

23.11.8 Suppression systems or groups of systems shall be controlled by a single releasing service fire alarm control unit that monitors the associated initiating device(s), actuates the associated releasing device(s), and controls the associated agent release notification appliances.

23.11.9 If the configuration of multiple control units is listed for releasing device service, and if a trouble condition or manual disconnect on either control unit causes a trouble or supervisory signal, the initiating device on one control unit shall be permitted to actuate releasing devices on another control unit in lieu of 23.11.8.

23.11.10 Where located in a protected premises having a separate fire alarm system, the releasing service fire alarm control unit shall comply with 23.11.10.1 and 23.11.10.2.

N **23.11.10.1** The releasing service fire alarm control unit shall be monitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

N **23.11.10.2** The releasing service fire alarm control unit shall not be dependent on or affected by the operation or failure of the protected premises fire alarm system.

23.11.11 Releasing fire alarm systems performing suppression system releasing functions shall be installed in such a manner that they are effectively protected from damage caused by activation of the suppression system(s) they control.

23.12 Off-Premises Signals.

23.12.1 Systems requiring transmission of signals to continuously attended locations providing supervising station service (e.g., central station, proprietary supervising station, remote supervising station) shall also comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 26.

23.12.2 Relays or modules providing transmission of trouble signals to a supervising station shall be arranged to provide fail-safe operation.

23.12.3 Means provided to transmit trouble signals to supervising stations shall be arranged so as to transmit a trouble signal to the supervising station for any trouble condition received at the protected premises control unit, including loss of primary or secondary power.

23.12.4* It shall be permitted to provide supplementary transmission of real-time data from the fire system to off-premises equipment.

23.12.4.1 Transmission of real-time data off-premises shall not affect the operation or response of the fire alarm control unit.

23.12.4.2 Any data transmitted shall be consistent with the data generated by the system.

23.13 Guard's Tour Supervisory Service.

23.13.1 Guard's tour reporting stations shall be listed for the application.

23.13.2 The number of guard's tour reporting stations, their locations, and the route to be followed by the guard for operating the stations shall be approved for the particular installation in accordance with NFPA 601.

23.13.3 A permanent record indicating every time each signal-transmitting station is operated shall be made at a protected premises fire alarm control unit.

23.13.4 Where intermediate stations that do not transmit a signal are employed in conjunction with signal-transmitting stations, distinctive signals shall be transmitted at the beginning and end of each tour of a guard.

23.13.5 A signal-transmitting station shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 10 intermediate stations.

23.13.6 Intermediate stations that do not transmit a signal shall be capable of operation only in a fixed sequence.

23.14 Suppressed (Exception Reporting) Signal System.

23.14.1 The suppressed signal system shall comply with the provisions of 23.13.2.

23.14.2 The system shall transmit a start signal to the signal-receiving location.

23.14.3 The start signal shall be initiated by the guard at the start of continuous tour rounds.

23.14.4 The system shall automatically transmit a delinquency signal within 15 minutes after the predetermined actuation time if the guard fails to actuate a tour station as scheduled.

23.14.5 A finish signal shall be transmitted within a predetermined interval after the guard's completion of each tour of the premises.

23.14.6 For periods of over 24 hours during which tours are continuously conducted, a start signal shall be transmitted at least every 24 hours.

23.14.7 The start, delinquency, and finish signals shall be recorded at the signal-receiving location.

23.15 Protected Premises Emergency Control Functions.

23.15.1 Emergency Elevator Operations. Emergency elevator operations shall meet the requirements of Sections 21.3, 21.4, 21.5, and 21.6.

23.15.2 HVAC Systems. HVAC systems shall meet the requirements of Section 21.7.

23.15.3 Door Release Service. Door release service shall meet the requirements of Section 21.9.

23.15.4 Electrically Locked Doors. Door-unlocking devices shall meet the requirements of Section 21.10.

23.15.5 Exit Marking Audible Notification Systems. Exit marking audible notification systems shall meet the requirements of Section 21.11.

23.15.6 Carbon Monoxide. Where provided, carbon monoxide control functions shall comply with the requirements of 21.7.6.

23.16* Special Requirements for Low-Power Radio (Wireless) Systems.

23.16.1* Listing Requirements. Compliance with Section 23.16 shall require the use of low-power radio equipment specifically listed for the purpose.

Δ **23.16.2* Power Supplies.**

N **23.16.2.1** One or more primary batteries (dry cell) that meet the requirements of 23.16.2.1 through 23.16.2.3 shall be permitted to be used as the sole power source for devices incorporating a low-power radio transmitter/transceiver.

Δ **23.16.2.1.1** Each transmitter/transceiver shall be individually identified at the system control unit.

N **23.16.2.1.2** Where a device is no longer capable of providing 7 days of trouble signal operation followed by the signaling of a single non-trouble response, the battery depletion threshold has been reached and the device shall comply with 23.16.2.1.2.1 and 23.16.2.1.2.2.

N **23.16.2.1.2.1** A low battery signal shall be transmitted before the device has reached the battery depletion threshold.

N **23.16.2.1.2.2** The low battery signal shall comply with all of the following:

(1) The signal shall be distinctive from alarm, supervisory, tamper, and trouble signals.
(2) The signal shall visibly identify the affected low-power radio transmitter/transceiver.
(3) The signal shall automatically re-sound at least once every 4 hours when silenced.

N **23.16.2.1.3** Trouble signals required by 23.16.2.2.3 or 23.16.2.3.3 shall comply with the following:

(1) Trouble signals shall identify the affected low-power radio transmitter/transceiver at the system control unit.
(2) Trouble signals shall automatically re-sound at least once every 4 hours when silenced.

N **23.16.2.2** Where one or more primary batteries are utilized and a catastrophic failure (open or short) of a single battery affects the alarm operation of the device, 23.16.2.2.1 through 23.16.2.2.4 shall apply.

N **23.16.2.2.1** Each transmitter/transceiver shall serve only one device.

N **23.16.2.2.2** The battery(s) shall be capable of operating the low-power radio transmitter/transceiver and its associated device for not less than 1 year before the battery depletion threshold in 23.16.2.1.2 is reached.

N **23.16.2.2.3** Catastrophic (open or short) battery failure shall cause a trouble signal in accordance with 23.16.2.1.3.

N **23.16.2.2.4** Any mode of failure of a primary battery in a low-power radio transmitter/transceiver shall not affect any other low-power radio transmitter/transceiver.

Δ **23.16.2.3** Where multiple primary batteries are utilized and a catastrophic failure (open or short) of a single battery does not affect the alarm operation of the device, 23.16.2.3.1 through 23.16.2.3.3 shall apply.

N **23.16.2.3.1** Each transmitter/transceiver shall be permitted to serve more than one device.

N **23.16.2.3.2** Two or more batteries shall be provided.

N **23.16.2.3.2.1** The combined batteries shall be capable of operating the low-power radio transmitter/transceiver and its associated device for not less than 1 year before the battery depletion threshold in 23.16.2.2 is reached.

N **23.16.2.3.2.2** Each individual battery, primary and secondary, shall be separately monitored for the battery depletion threshold.

N **23.16.2.3.2.3** Following the failure of a single battery, the remaining battery(s) shall be capable of operating the low-power radio transmitter/transceiver and its associated device for not less than 7 days when the battery depletion threshold is reached.

N **23.16.2.3.3** Catastrophic (open or short) failure of any individual battery shall cause a trouble signal in accordance with 23.16.2.1.3.

23.16.3 Alarm Signals.

23.16.3.1* When a wireless initiating device is actuated, its low-power radio transmitter/transceiver shall comply with 23.16.3.1.1 through 23.16.3.1.4.

23.16.3.1.1 It shall automatically transmit an alarm signal and be identified at the fire alarm system.

23.16.3.1.2 To ensure the receipt of an alarm signal by the control unit, the low-power radio transmitter/transceiver shall automatically repeat alarm transmissions at intervals not exceeding 60 seconds until the transmitter/transceiver receives a signal confirming receipt of the alarm signal by the control unit.

23.16.3.1.3* Signals shall have priority in accordance with 23.8.4.7.

23.16.3.1.4 Response time shall be in accordance with 10.11.1.

Δ **23.16.3.1.5*** An alarm signal from a low-power radio transmitter/transceiver shall latch at the fire alarm control unit until manually reset.

N **23.16.3.1.6** An alarm signal from a low-power radio transmitter/transceiver shall identify the particular initiating device in alarm.

23.16.3.1.7 Sixty seconds after the conclusion of resetting the fire alarm system, a non-restored actuated low-power radio transmitter/transceiver shall be identified at the fire alarm systems.

23.16.4 Monitoring for Integrity.

23.16.4.1 The low-power radio transmitter/transceiver shall be specifically listed as using a communication method that is highly resistant to misinterpretation of simultaneous transmissions and to interference (e.g., impulse noise and adjacent channel interference).

23.16.4.2 The occurrence of any single fault that disables communication between any low-power radio transmitter/transceiver and the receiver/transceiver system control unit shall cause a latching trouble signal within 200 seconds at the system control unit that individually identifies the affected device.

23.16.4.3 A single fault on the signaling channel shall not cause an alarm signal.

23.16.4.4 The periodic communication required to comply with 23.16.4.2 shall ensure successful alarm transmission capability.

23.16.4.5 Removal of a low-power radio transmitter/transceiver from its installed location shall cause immediate transmission of a distinctive trouble signal that indicates its removal and individually identifies the affected device.

23.16.4.6 Reception of any unwanted (interfering) transmission by a retransmission device or by the receiver system control unit for a continuous period of 20 seconds or more shall cause an audible and visible trouble indication at the system control unit.

23.16.4.7 The indication required by 23.16.4.6 shall identify the specific trouble condition as an interfering signal.

23.16.4.8 Operation of Class A Radio Pathways.

23.16.4.8.1 Radio frequency pathways designated as Class A shall operate as follows:

(1) A redundant pathway is included.
(2) Operational capability is verified via end-to-end communication.
(3) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the required pathways are annunciated as a trouble signal when two pathways are no longer available to each transceiver/device.
(4) Operational capability in a radio frequency pathway/channel continues during conditions that affect the intended operation of one of the two remaining pathways.
(5) Each transceiver or repeater in a radio frequency or wireless pathway is powered by one of the following means:
    (a) Both a primary and a secondary source meeting Section 10.6
    (b) Multiple primary batteries meeting 23.16.2.3

23.16.4.8.2 Where operational capability is to be maintained during a fault, the operational capability shall be restored within 200 seconds of the application of the fault.

23.16.4.9 Operation of Class B Radio Pathways.

23.16.4.9.1 Radio frequency pathways designated as Class B shall operate as follows:

(1) A redundant path is not included.
(2) Operational capability is verified via end-to-end communication.
(3) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the pathway are annunciated as a trouble signal.
(4) Operational capability stops at the affected portion of the pathway.
(5) Each transceiver and/or repeater in a radio frequency pathway is powered by one of the following means:
    (a) Both a primary and a secondary source meeting Section 10.6
    (b) Multiple primary batteries meeting 23.16.2.3

23.16.4.9.2 Where operational capability is to be maintained during a fault, the operational capability shall be restored within 200 seconds of the application of the fault.

23.16.5 Output Signals from a Wireless Receiver/Transceiver of a Control Unit. Where a wireless receiver/transceiver of a control unit is used to actuate remote devices, such as notification appliances and relays, by wireless means, the remote devices shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Power supplies shall comply with Chapter 10 or the requirements of 23.16.2.
(2) All monitoring for integrity requirements of Chapters 10, 12, 23, and 23.16.4 shall apply.
(3) Response time shall be in accordance with 10.11.1.
(4) Each wireless receiver/transceiver of a control unit shall automatically repeat actuated response signals associated with life safety events at intervals not exceeding 60 seconds or until confirmation that the output device has received the alarm signal.
(5) The remote devices shall continue to operate (latch-in) until manually reset at the system control unit.

Δ Chapter 24 Emergency Communications Systems (ECSs)

24.1 Application.

24.1.1 The application, installation, and performance of emergency communications systems (ECSs) and their components shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

24.1.2* The requirements of this chapter shall apply to ECSs within buildings and outdoor areas.

24.1.3 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 11, 12, 17, 18, 21, 23, 26, and 27 shall also apply unless otherwise noted in this chapter.

24.1.4 Inspection, testing, and maintenance shall be performed in accordance with testing frequencies and methods in Chapter 14.

24.1.5 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless specifically indicated.

24.2 Purpose.

24.2.1 The systems covered under Chapter 24 shall be for the protection of life by indicating the existence of an emergency situation and communicating information necessary to facilitate an appropriate response and action.

24.2.2* This chapter shall establish minimum required levels of performance, reliability, and quality of installation for ECSs.

Δ **24.2.3*** An ECS shall communicate information about emergencies.

24.3 General.

24.3.1 Intelligible Voice Messages.

24.3.1.1* ECSs shall be capable of the reproduction of prerecorded, synthesized, or live (e.g., microphone, telephone handset, and radio) messages with voice intelligibility in accordance with Chapter 18.

24.3.1.2* Where listed loudspeakers do not achieve the intelligibility requirements of the Code for a notification zone, nonlisted loudspeakers shall be permitted to be installed to achieve the intelligibility for that notification zone.

24.3.2* Microphone Use. All users of systems that have microphones for live voice announcements shall be provided with posted instructions for using the microphone.

24.3.3* Required ECSs. An ECS shall be installed in occupancies where required by the authority having jurisdiction or by other applicable governing laws, codes, or standards.

24.3.4* Nonrequired (Voluntary) ECSs.

24.3.4.1 Nonrequired ECSs and components shall meet the requirements of this chapter.

24.3.4.2 Nonrequired ECSs and components shall be identified on the record drawings.

24.3.5 Ancillary Functions.

24.3.5.1 Ancillary functions shall not impair the required operation of the ECS.

Δ **24.3.5.2*** Loudspeakers used for ECS functions also providing ancillary functions shall meet the conditions of either 24.3.5.2(1) or 24.3.5.2(2):

(1) The fire command center or the emergency command center as applicable shall be constantly attended by trained personnel, and selective paging is permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.

(2) All of the following conditions shall be met:

(a) The loudspeakers and associated audio equipment are installed or located with safeguards to resist tampering or misadjustment of those components essential for intended emergency notification.

(b) The monitoring integrity requirements of 10.6.9 and Sections 10.19 and 12.6 continue to be met while the system is used for non-emergency purposes.

•

24.3.5.3 Where ECSs utilize Class N pathways that are also shared Level 1 or Level 2 pathways as a means to support ancillary functions, devices, or interconnected systems, the shared pathways shall meet the requirements of 23.6.3.

24.3.5.3.1 In addition to the requirements of 23.6.3, a risk analysis shall be performed and approved by the AHJ.

24.3.6 Messages for One-Way ECSs.

24.3.6.1* Messages shall be developed for each scenario identified in the emergency response plan.

24.3.6.1.1 Based on the emergency response plan, emergency messages shall have content that provides information and instructions to people in the building, area, site, or installation.

24.3.6.1.2 The proposed verbiage of prerecorded automatic emergency messages shall be identified on the permit plans and be approved by the authority having jurisdiction prior to their programming into the emergency voice communications system.

24.3.6.1.3 As a minimum, the proposed verbiage of prerecorded messages shall be in the official spoken language acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

24.3.6.1.4 Additional prerecorded message(s) shall be permitted as approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.3.6.2* A message template shall be developed for each message required in 24.3.6.1.

24.3.6.3 For an evacuation message, a tone in accordance with 18.4.2 shall be used with a minimum of two cycles preceding and following the voice message.

24.3.6.4 Test messages shall clearly state the phrase "This is a test."

24.3.7* System Classification. ECSs shall be designated as one-way or two-way.

24.3.7.1* One-way ECSs shall consist of one or more of the following:

(1) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACS) *(see Section 24.4)*

(2) In-building mass notification systems *(see Section 24.5)*
(3) Wide-area mass notification systems *(see Section 24.6)*
(4) Distributed recipient mass notification systems (DRMNS) *(see Section 24.7)*

24.3.7.2* Two-way ECSs shall consist of one or more of the following:

(1) Two-way, in-building wired emergency services communications systems (i.e., firefighters' telephone systems) *(see Section 24.8)*
(2) Two-way radio communications enhancement systems *(see Section 24.9)*
(3) Area of refuge ECSs *(see Section 24.10)*
(4) Stairway communications systems *(see Section 24.10)*
(5) Elevator landing communications systems *(see Section 24.10)*
(6) Occupant evacuation elevator lobby communications systems *(see Section 24.10)*

24.3.8* Mass Notification Layers. Emergency communications used for mass notification shall be categorized into layers and take into consideration type of audience and reach as follows:

(1) Layer 1 relates to means of notification of occupants by systems/equipment installed inside a building and controlled only by authorized users (in-building ECS)
(2) Layer 2 relates to means of notification of occupants on the exterior of a building and controlled only by authorized users (wide-area MNS)
(3) Layer 3 relates to means of notification of personnel through individual measures (distributed recipient MNS)
(4) Layer 4 relates to means of notification of personnel by public measures (broadcast radio, television, and so forth)

24.3.9* Design Documentation. Design documents in accordance with Section 7.3 shall be prepared prior to installation of any new system.

24.3.9.1 Systems that are altered shall have design documents prepared that apply to the portions of the system that are altered.

24.3.9.2 Documents shall be revised as necessary following installation to represent as-built conditions and include record drawings.

24.3.10* Control Unit Listing for Mass Notification Systems. Control units installed as part of a mass notification system shall be listed in accordance with applicable standards such as UL 2572, *Mass Notification Systems*.

24.3.11 Building System Information Unit. A building system information unit that displays information and events from the mass notification system shall comply with 23.8.4.4.1 through 23.8.4.4.3.

24.3.12* Risk Analysis for Mass Notification Systems.

24.3.12.1* Each application of a mass notification system shall be specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each facility for which it is designed.

24.3.12.1.1 When an owner has developed a risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.12, such risk analysis shall be permitted to be used as a baseline in preparing the risk analysis for new or renovated facilities that are similar in nature.

24.3.12.2 The designer shall consider both fire and non-fire emergencies when determining risk tolerances for survivability for the mass notification system.

24.3.12.3 The detail and complexity of the risk analysis shall be commensurate with the complexity of the facility for which the mass notification system is designed.

24.3.12.4 The risk analysis shall be permitted to be limited in scope to address the communication requirements of an existing emergency response plan.

24.3.12.5 The risk analysis shall consider the number of persons, type of occupancy, and perceived peril to occupants.

24.3.12.6 The analysis shall be based on the maximum occupant load calculation for every occupiable room, building, area, space, campus, or region is expected to contain.

24.3.12.7 Occupancy characteristics shall comply with 24.3.12.7.1 and 24.3.12.7.2.

24.3.12.7.1 The risk analysis shall consider characteristics of the buildings, areas, spaces, campuses or regions, equipment, and operations that are not inherent in the design specifications.

24.3.12.7.2 Those elements that are not inherent in the design specifications, but that affect occupant behavior or the rate of hazard development, shall be explicitly identified and included in the risk analysis.

Δ **24.3.12.8 Risk Analysis Events.**

N **24.3.12.8.1** The risk analysis shall consider the following types of potential events:

(1) Natural hazards — geological events
(2) Natural hazards — meteorological events
(3) Natural hazards — biological events
(4) Human caused — accidental events
(5) Human caused — intentional events
(6) Technological — caused events

N **24.3.12.8.2** The risk analysis events described in 24.3.12.8.1 shall not be all-inclusive but reflect the general categories to be considered in the risk analysis.

24.3.12.9 The risk analysis shall include a review of the extent to which occupants and personnel are notified, based on the anticipated event (potential hazard).

24.3.12.10* The risk analysis shall be used as the basis for development of the MNS provisions of the facility emergency response plan.

24.3.12.11 The risk analysis shall consider cybersecurity risks in accordance with Chapter 11.

Δ **24.3.13* Emergency Response Plan Elements.** A well-defined emergency response plan shall be developed in accordance with NFPA 1660 as part of the design and implementation of a mass notification system.

24.3.14 Pathway Survivability.

24.3.14.1 Pathway survivability levels shall be as described in Section 12.4.

24.3.14.2 Other component survivability shall comply with the provisions of 24.4.8.6.6.

24.3.14.3* The pathway survivability requirements in 24.3.14.4 through 24.3.14.16 shall apply to notification and communications circuits and other circuits necessary to ensure the continued operation of the ECS.

24.3.14.4 In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall comply with 24.3.14.4.1 or 24.3.14.4.2.

24.3.14.4.1 For systems that do not employ relocation or partial evacuation, a Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, or Level 4 pathway survivability shall be permitted.

24.3.14.4.2* For systems employing relocation or partial evacuation, the requirements of 24.3.14.4.3 through 24.3.14.4.6.4 shall apply to the communication and control circuit pathways between a room or rated enclosure containing fire alarm equipment and other room(s) or rated enclosure(s) containing fire alarm equipment required for occupant notification.

24.3.14.4.3* Where the building is constructed with a fire resistance rating that is equal to or greater than 2 hours, the installation shall comply with 24.3.14.4.6 or provide a pathway survivability of Level 2 or Level 3.

24.3.14.4.4* Where the building is constructed with a fire resistance rating that is at least 1 hour and less than 2 hours, the installation shall comply with 24.3.14.4.6 or provide a pathway survivability of Level 4.

24.3.14.4.5 Where the building is constructed with a fire resistance rating that is less than 1 hour, the installation shall comply with 24.3.14.4.6.

24.3.14.4.6 Class N or Class X circuits complying with Level 1 pathway survivability shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of 24.3.14.4.6.1 through 24.3.14.4.6.4.

24.3.14.4.6.1* The requirements of 12.3.8 for pathway separation shall not apply to conductors installed in accordance with 24.3.14.4.6.

24.3.14.4.6.2* The requirements of 23.6.1 for pathway faults shall not apply to conductors installed in accordance with 24.3.14.4.6.

24.3.14.4.6.3* Circuits shall be separated in accordance with one or more of the following:

(1) The primary and redundant, or outgoing and return, conductors are separated by a floor assembly.
(2) The primary and redundant, or outgoing and return, conductors are located in dissimilar protected areas separated by a minimum of 1-hour fire-rated construction.
(3) The primary and redundant, or outgoing and return, conductors are separated by at least one-third the maximum diagonal of the notification zone.
(4) Performance alternatives are approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.3.14.4.6.4* An open, ground fault, or short-circuit fault on the communication and control circuits between rooms or enclosures required by 24.4.8.6.6 shall not affect the operation of the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm control equipment within these rooms or enclosures.

24.3.14.5 Pathway survivability levels for in-building mass notification systems shall be determined by the risk analysis.

24.3.14.6 Pathway survivability levels for wide-area mass notification systems shall be determined by the risk analysis.

24.3.14.7 Two-way in-building wired emergency services communications systems (i.e., firefighters' telephone systems) that are installed where the building has less than 2-hour fire-rated construction shall have a pathway survivability of Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, or Level 4.

24.3.14.8 Two-way in-building wired emergency services communications systems (i.e., firefighters' telephone systems) that are installed where the building has 2-hour fire-rated construction or greater shall have a pathway survivability of Level 2 or Level 3.

24.3.14.9* Area of refuge two-way ECSs for rescue assistance shall comply with 24.3.14.9.1 and 24.3.14.9.2.

24.3.14.9.1 Installation of all circuit pathways between locations, room(s), or rated enclosure(s) containing communications system equipment shall comply with the requirements of 24.3.14.4.3 through 24.3.14.4.6.4.

24.3.14.9.2 Circuits intended to transmit off-premises shall have a pathway survivability of Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, or Level 4.

24.3.14.10 Elevator landing two-way ECSs installation of all circuit pathways between all elevator lobbies and other room(s) or rated enclosure(s) containing related control equipment required for occupant communications shall comply with the requirements of 24.3.14.4.3 through 24.3.14.4.6.4.

24.3.14.11 Elevator landing two-way ECSs circuits intended to transmit off-premises shall have a pathway survivability of Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, or Level 4.

24.3.14.12 Occupant evacuation elevator lobby two-way wired ECSs installation of communication and control circuit pathways shall have a pathway survivability of Level 3.

24.3.14.12.1* A single open, ground fault, or short-circuit fault on any circuit between control equipment and elevator lobbies shall not affect the operation of the communication to any other elevator lobby.

24.3.14.12.2 Circuits intended to transmit off-premises shall have a pathway survivability of Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, or Level 4.

24.3.14.13* Stairway communications systems required for access control provisions of other codes (locked stair doors) that are not required to be provided by other codes or standards for required use during fire evacuations shall be permitted to have a pathway survivability Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, or Level 4 for all system circuits.

24.3.14.14* Stairway communications systems required by other codes or standards for required use during fire evacuations shall comply with 24.3.14.9.

24.3.14.15 Central command station ECSs shall have pathway survivability as determined by the risk analysis.

24.3.14.16 All other ECS circuits shall have pathway survivability as determined by the risk analysis.

24.4* In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems (EVACS). Section 24.4 shall be used in the design and application of in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications for fire alarm systems.

24.4.1 Automatic Response. The in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall be used to provide an automatic response to the receipt of a signal indicative of a fire alarm or other emergency.

24.4.1.1 When the monitoring location is constantly attended by trained operators, and operator acknowledgment of receipt of a fire alarm or other emergency signal is received within 30 seconds, automatic response shall not be required.

24.4.1.2 If acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, the system shall permit the following concurrent operations:

(1) Application of an automatic evacuation signal to one or more signaling zones
(2) Manual voice paging to the other signaling zones selectively or in any combination

24.4.2 Voice Evacuation Messages.

24.4.2.1* Unless otherwise permitted by 24.4.8, evacuation messages shall be preceded and followed by a minimum of two cycles of the emergency signal specified in 18.4.2 or 18.4.3.

24.4.2.2 Voice messages shall comply with the requirements of 24.3.1.

24.4.2.2.1 The following requirements shall be met for layout and design:

(1) The loudspeaker layout of the system shall be designed to ensure intelligibility and audibility.
(2) Intelligibility shall first be determined by ensuring that all areas in the building have the required level of audibility.

24.4.2.2.2* System design shall incorporate designation of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) within the occupiable areas as required in Chapter 18.

24.4.2.2.3 Audibility shall be required in all areas in accordance with Chapter 18.

24.4.3 Positive Alarm Sequence. In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall be permitted to use positive alarm sequence complying with 23.8.1.2.

24.4.4 Tones. The tone preceding any message shall comply with 24.4.4.1 through 24.4.4.4.

24.4.4.1 The tone preceding any message shall be permitted to be a part of the voice message or to be transmitted automatically from a separate tone generator.

24.4.4.2* Except as specified in 24.4.4.3, in occupancies where sleeping accommodations are provided and the voice message is intended to communicate information to those who could be asleep, a low frequency tone that complies with 18.4.6 shall be used.

24.4.4.3* In areas where sleeping accommodation are provided, but the voice communication system is used to communicate to occupants who are awake, the low frequency tone shall not be required.

24.4.4.4 Audible signal tones for alert or evacuation shall meet the audibility requirements of either 18.4.4 (public mode audible requirements), 18.4.5 (private mode audible requirements), 18.4.6.1 and 18.4.6.2 (sleeping area requirements), or 18.4.7 (narrow band tone signaling for exceeding masked thresholds), as applicable.

24.4.5 Operating Controls.

24.4.5.1* Controls for the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall be at a location approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.4.5.2 Controls shall be located or secured to allow access only by authorized, emergency, or service personnel.

24.4.5.3 Operating controls shall be clearly identified.

24.4.5.4 If there are multiple in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications control locations, only one shall be in control at any given time.

24.4.5.5 The location having control of the system shall be identified by a visual indication at that location.

24.4.5.6 Manual controls shall be arranged to provide visual indication of the on/off status for their associated signaling zone.

24.4.5.7 If live voice instructions are provided, they shall perform as follows:

(1) They shall override previously initiated signals to the selected notification zone.
(2) They shall have priority over any subsequent automatically initiated signals to the selected notification zone.
(3) If a previously initiated recorded message is interrupted by live voice instructions, upon release of the microphone, the previously initiated recorded messages to the selected notification zones shall not resume playing automatically unless required by the emergency response plan.

24.4.6 Loudspeakers.

24.4.6.1* Loudspeakers and their enclosures shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 18.

24.4.6.2 Loudspeakers used as alarm notification appliances on fire alarm systems shall also be permitted to be used for mass notification.

N **24.4.6.3** Loudspeakers shall comply with Section 24.4.

24.4.7 Priority.

24.4.7.1* Notification appliances required to provide special suppression predischarge notification shall not be overridden by other systems.

24.4.7.2 Priority of mass notification messages over fire alarm evacuation shall be permitted when evaluated by the stakeholders through a risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.12.

24.4.7.3 When the fire alarm system has been activated, and mass notification has been given priority over the fire alarm system, a distinctive audible and visual indication shall be provided at the building fire alarm control unit to indicate MNS is active.

24.4.7.4 It shall not be required to transmit this condition to a supervising station.

24.4.7.5 The fire alarm system shall not automatically override emergency mass notification messages.

24.4.8* Relocation and Partial Evacuation. The requirements of 24.4.8 shall apply only to systems used for relocation or partial evacuation during a fire condition.

24.4.8.1 New systems employing relocation or partial evacuation shall require documentation in accordance with Sections 7.3, 7.4, and 7.5 in addition to the minimum documentation requirements of Sections 7.2 and 24.13.

24.4.8.2 Systems shall be provided with manual voice transmission capabilities selectively to one or more notification zones or on an all-call basis.

24.4.8.3 Where the system is used to transmit relocation instructions or other fire emergency non-evacuation messages, a 1-second to 3-second alert tone followed by a message (or messages where multi-channel capability is used) shall be provided.

24.4.8.3.1* The sequence [the alert tone followed by the message(s)] shall be repeated at least three times to inform and direct occupants in the signaling zone where the alarm initiation originated, as well as other signaling zones in accordance with the building fire safety plan.

24.4.8.3.2* When the message is recorded, the repeated message sequence of 24.4.8.3.1 shall itself be repeated after a pause in accordance with one of the following:

(1) A pause of up to 180 seconds.
(2) A pause in accordance with the emergency response plan and with approval from the authority having jurisdiction.

N **24.4.8.3.3*** The repeated message sequence shall be continued until silenced or reset in accordance with 18.4.2.2, 18.4.2.3, 23.8.2.9, 23.8.2.10, 24.4.5.7(3), 24.11.1.7, or 24.11.3.

24.4.8.3.4 Approved alternative fire alarm notification schemes shall be permitted as long as the occupants are effectively notified and are provided instructions in a timely and safe manner in accordance with the emergency response plan.

24.4.8.4* Where the system is used to transmit partial evacuation instructions, the alert tone specified in 24.4.2.1 followed by a message (or messages where multi-channel capability is used) shall be provided.

24.4.8.5 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, loudspeakers shall be provided in the locations specified in 24.4.8.5.1 through 24.4.8.5.3.

N **24.4.8.5.1** Where provided, loudspeakers in each enclosed stairway, each exit passageway, each occupant evacuation elevator lobby, and each group of elevator cars within a common hoistway or bank shall be connected to separate notification zones for manual paging only.

24.4.8.5.2 The evacuation signal specified in 18.4.2 shall not operate in elevator cars, exit stair enclosures, and exit passageways.

24.4.8.5.3 Manually activated loudspeakers shall be permitted in exit stair enclosures, exit passageways, and elevators in buildings that have emergency voice/alarm communications systems in accordance with Section 24.4.

•

24.4.8.6 The requirements of 24.4.8.6 shall apply to both audible (tone and voice) and visual notification appliance circuits.

24.4.8.6.1* Fire alarm systems used for partial evacuation and relocation shall be designed and installed such that attack by fire within a notification zone does not impair control and operation of the notification appliances outside the notification zone.

24.4.8.6.2 Performance features provided to ensure operational reliability under adverse conditions shall be described and technical justification provided in the documentation submitted to the authority having jurisdiction with the analysis required in 23.4.3.1.

24.4.8.6.3* All circuits necessary for the operation of the notification appliances shall be protected until they enter the notification zone that they serve by the protection provided by the pathway survivability level required in 24.3.14.4.2.

24.4.8.6.4 Where the separation of in-building fire emergency voice/alarm control equipment locations results in the portions of the system controlled by one location being dependent upon the control equipment in other locations, the circuits between the dependent controls shall be protected against attack by fire by the protection provided by the pathway survivability level required in 24.3.14.4.2.

24.4.8.6.5 Protection of circuits between redundant control equipment locations that are not mutually dependent shall not be required.

24.4.8.6.6 Where the separation of the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm control equipment occurs as in 24.4.8.6.4, and where the circuits are run through junction boxes, terminal cabinets or control equipment, such as system control units, power supplies and amplifiers, and where cable integrity is not maintained, these components shall, in addition to the pathway survivability required by 24.3.14.4.2, be protected by using one of the following methods:

(1) A 2-hour fire-rated enclosure
(2) A 2-hour fire-rated room
(3) Other equivalent means to provide a 2-hour fire resistance rating approved by the authority having jurisdiction

24.4.8.6.7 Paragraphs 24.4.8 through 24.4.8.6.6 shall not automatically apply when relocation or partial evacuation is of a non-fire emergency unless identified and required by a risk analysis.

24.4.9 Signal Zoning.

24.4.9.1* Undivided fire or smoke areas shall not be divided into multiple notification zones.

24.4.9.2 If multiple notification appliance circuits are provided within a single zone, all of the notification appliances within the zone shall be arranged to activate or deactivate simultaneously, either automatically or by actuation of a common manual control.

24.4.9.3 Where there are different notification appliance circuits within a signaling zone that perform separate functions, such as presignal and general alarm signals and predischarge and discharge signals, they shall not be required to activate or deactivate simultaneously.

24.5* In-Building Mass Notification Systems. The requirements of Section 24.5 shall apply to mass notification systems installed in buildings or structures for the purpose of notifying and instructing occupants in an emergency.

24.5.1* General Performance. The performance, selection, installation, operation, and use of a mass notification system shall comply with the requirements of Section 24.5.

24.5.1.1 Interconnection of protected premises emergency control functions with the mass notification systems shall comply with Chapter 21.

24.5.1.2 An in-building mass notification system shall include one or more of the following components:

(1) Autonomous control unit (ACU)
(2) Local operating console (LOC)
(3) Fire alarm control interface
(4) Notification appliance network
(5) Initiating devices
(6)* Interface to other systems and alerting sources

24.5.1.3 All mass notification system notification appliances that receive their power from a signaling line circuit of a mass notification system control unit shall be listed for use with the control unit.

24.5.1.4 Mass notification system components shall be installed, tested, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and this Code.

24.5.1.5 In-building emergency mass notification operation shall be permitted to be initiated by manual or automatic means.

24.5.1.6 Mass notification system activation shall initiate recorded messages or live voice and visual notification.

24.5.1.7 The priority level of recorded messages shall be determined by the emergency response plan.

24.5.1.8 Only recorded messages determined by the emergency response plan to be of higher priority than fire alarm activation shall be permitted to override the fire alarm notification and initiate the mass notification priority indicator.

24.5.1.9 Activation of any other recorded message shall not interfere with the operation of fire alarm notification.

24.5.1.10 Initiation of live voice announcements from microphones on the fire alarm system at an ACU, and at an LOC, shall not automatically place the fire alarm system in a mass notification priority mode.

Δ **24.5.1.11** Combination of mass notification with fire alarm systems shall be permitted.

N **24.5.1.12** Combination mass notification with fire alarm systems shall meet the requirements of 23.8.4.

24.5.2 System Operation.

24.5.2.1* Authorized or emergency personnel shall be permitted to control message initiation over the mass notification system.

24.5.2.2* Where required by the emergency response plan, the mass notification system shall provide the capability for authorized or emergency personnel to remotely activate live and prerecorded emergency messages.

24.5.2.3* Operating controls shall be clearly identified.

24.5.2.4 If there are multiple control locations, only one shall be in control at any given time.

24.5.2.5* Any ACU shall provide a control status of all interconnected LOCs.

24.5.2.6 If there are multiple control locations, a visual indication shall be provided at all other control locations indicating that another control location is in use.

24.5.2.7 Manual controls shall be arranged to provide visual indication of the on/off status for their associated notification zone.

24.5.2.8 If live voice instructions are provided, they shall perform as follows:

(1) Override previously initiated signals to the selected notification zone(s).
(2) Have priority over any subsequent automatically initiated signals to the selected zone(s).

24.5.2.9 A manual means shall be provided at each mass notification system control location to permit the mass notification system to relinquish control of the fire alarm system.

24.5.2.10* During the period after the mass notification system has seized control of the audible and visual notification appliances, but before the mass notification system relinquishes control, the mass notification system shall activate the audible and visual notification appliances at least once every 30 seconds.

24.5.3 Notification Coverage.

24.5.3.1* The mass notification system shall provide for live voice and prerecorded localized messaging within a protected individual building, areas surrounding the building, and other outdoor designated areas.

24.5.3.2 System design shall incorporate designation of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) within any occupiable areas as required in Chapter 18.

24.5.3.3 Notification zones shall be established on the basis of a risk analysis.

24.5.3.4* If the mass notification system serves more than one building, it shall be capable of providing separate messages to one individual building or to multiple buildings at any given time.

24.5.4 Loudspeaker Circuits.

24.5.4.1* Loudspeaker circuits used for mass notification that are not fire alarm circuits shall be exempt from the monitoring requirements of this Code, provided that alternate methods of achieving comparable reliability are accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.5.4.2 Survivability for loudspeaker circuits used for mass notification shall be determined by the risk analysis for the building.

24.5.5 Impairments. The requirements of Section 10.21 shall be applicable when a mass notification system is impaired.

24.5.6 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Requirements. Mass notification systems shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements of Chapter 14.

24.5.7* System Response Priorities. Priority levels shall be established on the basis of the risk analysis.

24.5.8 Initiation Indication. The source of system activation shall be visibly and audibly indicated at the emergency command center and at the building control unit, unless otherwise required by the emergency response plan.

24.5.9 Initiating Devices.

24.5.9.1 Devices connected to a mass notification system for the purpose of initiating an automatic response to an emergency shall be evaluated based on the emergency response plan.

24.5.9.2* All mass notification initiating devices shall be listed for their intended purpose.

24.5.9.3 Where no listed device exists for the detection required by the emergency response plan, non-listed devices shall be permitted to be used if their failure will not impair the operation of the mass notification system.

24.5.9.4 Non-fire emergency manual actuating stations (boxes) shall be listed to UL 2017, *General-Purpose Signaling Devices and Systems*.

24.5.9.5 Non-fire emergency manual actuating boxes shall have tactile markings, be of a contrasting color to manual fire alarm boxes on the protected premises, and not be red.

24.5.9.6 Non-fire emergency manual actuating boxes shall be installed similarly to manual fire alarm boxes in accordance with the requirements of 17.17.5, 17.17.7, and 17.17.10.2.

24.5.10* Secure Access of Fire Alarm/Mass Notification System Interface. Access to, and physical protection of, the fire alarm/mass notification system interface shall be determined by the risk analysis and as defined in the emergency response plan.

24.5.11 Autonomous Control Unit (ACU).

24.5.11.1 Where provided, the building ACU shall monitor and control the notification appliance network.

24.5.11.2 Building occupants meeting the requirements of 24.5.2.1 shall be permitted to initiate communications from the ACU.

24.5.11.3 Unless otherwise identified in the emergency response plan, actions taken at the building ACU shall take precedence over actions taken at any remote location, including the LOC, or inputs from a wide-area mass notification system.

24.5.11.4 When there are multiple ACUs controlling the same notification appliance network, only one shall be in control at any given time.

24.5.11.5 When the ACU is integrated with the building fire alarm control unit to form one combined system that performs both functions, the system shall meet the secondary (standby) power requirements of this chapter.

24.5.11.6 When a combined system is installed with an ACU and fire alarm control unit and placed in separate equipment enclosures, the ACU and fire alarm control unit shall be interfaced as required by this chapter.

24.5.11.7 When the ACU is part of a stand-alone mass notification system and no fire alarm system exists, the ACU shall meet the requirements of this chapter.

24.5.12 Local Operating Console (LOC).

24.5.12.1* Building occupants meeting the authorized personnel requirement of 24.5.2.1 shall be permitted to initiate communications from the LOC.

24.5.12.2 The use of lock wire seals or break-glass-type enclosures to house the operating consoles for the system, or equivalent protection against unauthorized use, shall be permitted.

24.5.12.3 Operating controls shall be clearly identified.

24.5.12.4 If there are multiple control locations, only one shall be in control at any given time.

24.5.12.5 The location having control of the system shall be identified by a visual indication at that location.

Δ **24.5.12.6 Live Voice Instructions.**

N **24.5.12.6.1** If provided, live voice instructions shall override previously initiated signals to the selected notification zone(s).

N **24.5.12.6.2** If provided, live voice instructions shall have priority over any subsequent automatically initiated signals to the selected zone(s).

24.5.12.7 Upon initiation of an emergency message, a visual indication shall be provided to the user that the LOC is connected to the audio network.

24.5.12.8 Manual controls shall be permitted to provide visual indication of the on/off status for their associated notification zone.

24.5.12.9 The emergency message shall be an all-call basis unless otherwise permitted by 24.5.12.10.

24.5.12.10 Selective notification zone paging shall be permitted only if the LOC has manual controls with visual indication of the on/off status for each associated notification zone.

24.5.13 Voice Message Priority.

24.5.13.1* The priority of mass notification messages shall be established using the emergency response plan.

24.5.13.2 The local building mass notification system shall have the ability to override the fire alarm system with live voice or manual activation of a higher priority message, but only where that message and operation are approved under the emergency response plan.

24.5.13.3 All other messages shall also be prioritized by using the emergency response plan.

24.5.13.4 When identified by the emergency response plan, messages from the mass notification system shall be permitted to take priority over fire alarm messages and signals.

24.5.13.5 If the fire alarm system is in the alarm mode and a recorded voice message is playing, or the audible signals are sounding, and then the mass notification system is activated, it shall cause deactivation of all fire alarm–initiated audible and visual notification.

24.5.13.6 After the mass notification system relinquishes control, the following shall occur:

(1) Without an active fire alarm signal, the fire alarm system shall automatically restore to normal operation.
(2)* With an active fire alarm signal, the fire alarm system shall operate based on the emergency response plan.

24.5.13.7 Overriding of fire alarm audible and visual notification signals shall cause an audible and distinctive visual indication at each affected fire alarm control unit to indicate the MNS is active.

24.5.13.8 The fire alarm signal deactivation function shall be permitted to occur only when both the fire alarm system is in an alarm condition and notification is being given by the mass notification system.

24.5.13.9 When the fire alarm notification is overridden as permitted in 24.5.13.8, all other features of the fire alarm system shall remain unaffected.

24.5.14* Mounting of LOC Controls.

24.5.14.1 Controls that are intended to be accessed by authorized users shall be mounted in accordance with 24.5.14.

24.5.14.2 LOC controls, including switches, microphone, latches, and so forth, shall be located above the finished floor a minimum of 36 in. (910 mm) and a maximum of 48 in. (1.22 m) where the horizontal reach is less than 10 in. (254 mm).

Δ **24.5.14.3** If a horizontal reach of 10 in. to 24 in. (254 mm to 610 mm) is required, the following shall apply:

(1) Maximum elevation shall be limited to 42 in. (1.07 m) above the finished floor.
(2) Minimum elevation shall be limited to 28 in. (711 mm) above the finished floor.

24.5.14.4 Text and visual indicators, including lamps, screens, displays, instructions, or labels, associated with control or operation shall be visible within all points of elevation between 40 in. (1.02 m) and 60 in. (1.52 m) above the finished floor.

24.5.14.5 Where controls and information are provided in accordance with 24.5.14.2 through 24.5.14.4, provision of additional or redundant controls shall be permitted within the same vicinity at an elevation or reach other than those indicated.

24.5.14.6 Dimensions other than those identified in 24.5.14.2 through 24.5.14.4 shall be permitted when documented within the emergency response plan that ADA guidelines are not applicable, or when otherwise required by the AHJ.

24.5.15 Volume Control.

24.5.15.1 Local controls shall be permitted to adjust volume levels of ancillary functions.

24.5.15.2 Upon activation of an emergency signal, the system shall override any local volume setting to deliver at a preset volume setting that has been established through testing and acceptance of sound level and speech intelligibility as required by this Code.

24.5.16 Visual Notification.

24.5.16.1 Where audible notification is provided, mass notification systems shall also provide visual notification information to serve the deaf or hard of hearing and for high-noise areas.

24.5.16.2 The visual notification required by 24.5.16.1 shall be accomplished using visual notification appliances.

24.5.16.3 In addition to the visual notification appliances required by 24.5.16.1, textual, graphic, or video displays shall be permitted.

24.5.16.4 Transmission of visual notification and messages shall be simultaneous to audible notification and messages.

24.5.17 Visual Appliances.

24.5.17.1 Where visual notification appliances are used, they shall meet the requirements of 24.5.17.2 through 24.5.17.9.

24.5.17.2 Visual notification appliances shall be of a sufficient quantity and intensity and located so as to meet the intent of the design and be in compliance with Section 18.5.

24.5.17.3 Visual notification appliances used in combination systems where the same visual notification appliance is used for both mass notification and fire notification shall comply with the following:

(1) Be clear or nominal white, meeting the listing requirements of UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories*, or equivalent
(2) Have no marking or be marked with the word "ALERT" stamped or imprinted on the appliance
(3) Be visible to the public

24.5.17.4 In situations where existing notification appliances previously used exclusively for fire alarm applications, and are marked with the word "FIRE," and are to be used for other emergency notification purposes, field modification to the marking shall be permitted, provided that it is accomplished by one of the following methods:

(1) Replacement of the manufacturer's approved escutcheon or trim plate
(2) Covering of, or removal of, the word "FIRE" using a manufacturer's approved method
(3) Installation of a permanent sign directly adjacent or below the notification appliance indicating that it is multipurpose and will operate for fire and other emergency conditions

24.5.17.5 Visual notification appliances with colored lenses shall be marked with the listed effective intensity using the lens color installed.

24.5.17.6 The spacing of colored visual notification appliances shall be in accordance with public mode spacing requirements of Section 18.5 using the effective intensity as the basis for spacing.

24.5.17.7 Where visual notification appliances are used solely for mass notification, the word "ALERT" shall be stamped or imprinted on the appliance and be visible to the public.

24.5.17.8 Where visual notification appliances are used solely for mass notification, they shall be listed to an applicable standard such as UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories.*

24.5.17.9 Visual notification appliances used for mass notification shall meet the synchronization requirements of Section 18.5.

24.5.18* Textual and Graphical Visual Appliances.

24.5.18.1 Textual and graphical visual notification appliances shall be permitted to be used for primary or supplemental notification.

24.5.18.2* Textual and graphical visual notification shall be considered to be primary notification where it is the only

method used to convey emergency mass notification information to the general public or to specific individuals.

24.5.18.3 Primary and supplemental textual and graphical visual appliances shall meet the requirements of Chapter 18.

Δ **24.5.18.4 Primary Textual and Graphical Visual Appliances.**

N **24.5.18.4.1** Primary textual and graphical visual appliances shall comply with Chapter 10.

N **24.5.18.4.2** Primary textual and graphical visual appliances other than a main control unit shall be permitted to not have a dedicated primary power circuit as required by Chapter 10.

24.5.18.5 Textual and graphical visual appliances shall be permitted to be used for nonemergency purposes.

24.5.18.6 Emergency textual and graphical messages shall override nonemergency textual and graphical messages.

24.5.18.7 Supplemental textual and graphical visual appliances that are not monitored for integrity or loss of communication by a control unit shall be provided with visual status indicators, including loss of communication or loss of power, that are clearly visible on the appliance.

24.5.18.8 Addressable primary textual and graphical visual appliances using signaling line circuits shall meet the performance requirements of Section 23.6.

24.5.18.9 Non-addressable primary textual and graphical visual appliance circuits shall meet the performance requirements of Section 23.7.

24.5.19 Tactile Notification Appliances. Where tactile notification appliances are provided for emergency notification, they shall meet the requirements of Section 18.10.

24.5.20* Video Alerting. Video display systems that provide alerts and messages to video appliances shall be permitted to be used to supplement mass notification.

24.5.21 Supplemental Notification. Supplemental notification shall be permitted to provide additional information or more detailed instructions than those transmitted by the primary notification means.

24.5.22 Interfaces. Any abnormal condition that would prevent reliable emergency operation of any interfaced system shall be annunciated both audibly and visibly as a trouble signal at the affected control location.

24.5.22.1 Fire Alarm Control Interface (FACI).

24.5.22.1.1 Where a fire alarm system is installed covering all or part of the same building or other area as the mass notification system, an interface shall be provided between the systems for operational coordination purposes.

24.5.22.1.2 A listed barrier gateway in accordance with 10.3.1, integral with, or attached to, each control unit or group of control units, as appropriate, shall be provided to prevent the other systems from interfering with or controlling the fire alarm system.

24.5.22.1.3* The fire alarm control interface shall coordinate signals to and from each system to accomplish the following:

(1) Indicate the failure at the system control unit that will be impaired
(2) Provide an audible and distinctive visual indication at the affected FACU(s) to indicate the MNS is active.
(3) Cause the fire alarm system to deactivate all audible and visual notification appliances whose operation could interfere with the intelligibility of the mass notification message or that will deliver conflicting information to occupants
(4) Not permit the fire alarm system to turn off audible and visual notification appliances for special suppression predischarge notification required by 24.4.7.1
(5) Where required by the emergency response plan or by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code, or by the authority having jurisdiction, provide for a supervisory signal to a supervising station with a response as directed by the emergency response plan that is indicative of the mass notification system overriding the fire alarm system notification appliances during simultaneous fire and mass notification events

24.5.22.1.4 If the fire alarm control interface is used to broadcast nonemergency messages, music, or other signals over the fire alarm notification appliance circuits, the operation shall meet the requirements of 24.5.15 and 23.8.4.

24.5.22.2 Interfaces to Emergency Control Functions. The mass notification system shall be permitted to provide emergency control functions in accordance with Chapter 21 as required by the emergency response plan and as permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.5.22.2.1 When mass notifications systems are controlling building life safety systems, the mass notifications systems equipment shall be listed for UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems.*

24.5.22.3 Interfaces with Wide-Area Mass Notification Systems.

24.5.22.3.1* Individual building mass notification systems shall be permitted to interface with wide-area mass notification systems.

24.5.22.3.2 The in-building mass notification system shall not be activated or controlled by a wide-area mass notification system, unless the wide-area mass notification system also meets the design and performance requirements of this chapter or has been deemed to be acceptable by the risk analysis and the authority having jurisdiction.

24.5.23 Combination ECSs.

24.5.23.1* When the mass notification system is integrated with the building fire alarm control unit to form one combined system that performs both functions, the system shall comply with this chapter.

Δ **24.5.23.2** All components that affect the operation of the fire alarm system shall be listed for fire alarm use.

N **24.5.23.3** All components that affect the operation of the fire alarm system shall comply with applicable standards such as UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems.*

24.5.24 Public Address (PA) Systems Used for Emergency Communications.

24.5.24.1 The voice communications or public address system that is to be used for mass notification shall be evaluated by the ECS designer, as defined in Chapter 10, to determine applicability and compliance.

Δ **24.5.24.2*** Evaluation documentation in accordance with 7.3.9 attesting to the fact that the public address system has been evaluated and meets the needs of the emergency response plan shall be provided by the ECS designer.

N **24.5.24.2.1** The ECS designer shall provide equivalent system performance requirements if a public address system is noncompliant with the prescriptive requirements of this chapter.

24.5.25 Public Address (PA) System Interface with Facility Fire Alarm System.

24.5.25.1 When a public address system is used to deliver mass notification messages, the public address system shall provide (either internally as a design feature or with an approved or listed external controller) for a signal to control the facility's fire alarm system for the purpose of deactivating the fire alarm audible and visual notification appliances in accordance with 24.5.22.1.

24.5.25.2 All of the following features shall be provided in, or added to, the public address system:

(1) Emergency messages must have priority over non-emergency messages.
(2) All individual or zone loudspeaker volume controls must default to the emergency sound level when used for an emergency mass notification message.
(3) When monitoring of circuit integrity is provided by the public address system, monitoring must continue, even if local loudspeaker volume controls are placed in the "off" position.
(4) The required visual notification appliance network (i.e., visual notification appliances and textual signs) must be provided where required.

24.6* Wide-Area Mass Notification Systems.

24.6.1 Voice Messages.

24.6.1.1 Voice messages shall comply with the requirements of 24.3.1.

24.6.1.2 Where required by the emergency response plan, multiple languages shall be permitted to be used.

24.6.1.3 Where required by the emergency response plan, specific warning tones shall be provided.

24.6.2* Password Protection. Wide-area mass notification systems shall have one of the following in place:

(1) Multiple levels of password protection access control, including levels for system administrators, system operators, maintainers, supervisors, and executives
(2) Other means to limit access to system controls based on the emergency response plan

Δ **24.6.3* External Connections.** Wide-area mass notification systems shall be permitted to connect to regional mass notification systems and public emergency alarm reporting systems as defined in this Code and public reporting systems as defined in NFPA 1225.

Δ **24.6.4 Emergency Command Center.** Emergency command centers shall comply with Section 24.11.

24.6.5* High Power Loudspeaker Array (HPLA). When required by the risk analysis, high power loudspeaker arrays (HPLAs) shall be provided, installed, and maintained.

24.6.5.1 The HPLA shall be arranged in such a manner to provide intelligible voice and audible tone communications.

(A) When multiple HPLAs are used, they shall be arranged in physical or virtual notification zones so that each notification zone can be individually controlled by the emergency command center.

(B)* HPLAs shall be designed to maintain the intelligibility of voice signals within the notification zone in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 18.

24.6.5.2 Secondary power for HPLAs used for wide-area mass notification systems shall have sufficient capacity to operate the unit for a minimum of 3 days in standby, followed by 60 minutes of operation at full load.

24.6.5.3 An HPLA shall have the capability to provide voice communications and tones as determined by the emergency response plan.

24.6.5.4* An HPLA shall operate in the environment in which it is located, considering such factors as temperature, humidity, wind, dust, vibration, and other environmental factors.

24.6.6 High Power Loudspeaker Array Enclosures.

24.6.6.1 Enclosures for HPLAs shall be of the NEMA 4 or 4X type.

24.6.6.2 HPLA enclosures shall have intrusion detection that signals the emergency command center.

(A) The signal shall be initiated whenever the door of the enclosure is in the open position.

(B) The transmitted signal shall be a latching supervisory signal.

24.6.7 High Power Loudspeaker Array Mounting.

24.6.7.1 HPLAs shall be mounted at a minimum mounting height that is based on the rated output of the array.

24.6.7.2* HPLAs shall be installed at a height and orientation to prevent hearing damage to anyone in the immediate vicinity of the appliances.

24.6.7.3 All external conductors (conductors passing outside of the HPLA equipment cabinet) shall be provided with surge suppression to minimize potential equipment damage from lightning strikes.

24.6.8 High Power Loudspeaker Array Noise Consideration. HPLA notification zones shall not be used to provide mass notification inside any structures.

24.6.9* High Power Loudspeaker Array Structural Loads, Wind, and Seismic Design. HPLAs and their supporting structures shall meet the structural, wind, and seismic loads as identified in the risk analysis.

24.6.10 Textual Visual Appliances. Textual visual appliances shall meet the requirements of Section 18.9 and 24.5.18.

24.6.10.1 After loss of primary power, primary textual visual notification appliances shall have sufficient secondary power to operate for a minimum of 2 hours of continuous display time during an emergency event.

24.6.10.2 Scrolling message boards shall be provided with means to control the scrolling rate.

24.6.11 Interfaces with Wide-Area Mass Notification Systems. Interfaces between wide-area mass notification systems and in-building mass notification systems, other alert and notification systems, regional mass notification systems, and off-premises interfaces shall have a standard interface method (such as an audio line–level output and multiple relay contacts) or supply the necessary communications protocols to provide interoperability and a secure communications link.

Δ **24.6.11.1** The interface shall not compromise the primary function of both systems.

24.6.11.2 The interface shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with 10.6.9, Section 10.19, and Section 12.6, so that an abnormal condition that could prevent reliable system operation is audibly and visibly annunciated as a trouble signal at both systems' control units.

24.6.12 Control Hierarchy. There shall be a predefined control hierarchy between the wide-area mass notification system, the in-building mass notification system, and the regional mass notification system for information flow from the remote control center, as well as information from specific locations.

24.6.13 Communications Links.

24.6.13.1 The wide-area mass notification system, including communications links, shall minimize the potential for interference from jamming, spoofing, hacking, eavesdropping, or other malicious acts.

24.6.13.2 The wide-area mass notification system shall have a primary and redundant communications link with minimal functional and spatial interconnection with each other.

24.6.13.3 Wide-area and in-building mass notification systems equipment and interface methods connecting to or utilizing public emergency alarm reporting systems and associated communications infrastructure shall be electrically and operationally compatible so as not to interfere with the public emergency alarm reporting systems.

24.7* Distributed Recipient Mass Notification Systems (DRMNS).

Δ **24.7.1* Overview.**

N **24.7.1.1** Distributed recipient mass notification system (DRMNS) alerting shall not be used in lieu of required audible and visual alerting mass notification systems.

N **24.7.1.2** DRMNSs shall be integrated with mass notification systems whenever possible.

24.7.2* Targeted Recipients. The DRMNS shall be capable of sending alert messages to target recipients.

24.7.3 Network Security Compliance. DRMNSs shall be installed behind the appropriate Internet system firewalls to protect the integrity of the network.

24.7.4 Network Architecture. The network shall be provided with net-centric architecture that fully supports local designated standards and security requirements.

24.7.5* Delivery Methods. The DRMNS shall be capable of sending alert messages to end users (recipients) via multiple delivery methods.

24.7.6* Backup Distributed Recipient Mass Notification Systems. A DRMNS used to send emergency messages shall be provided with a backup configuration to facilitate distribution of messages.

24.8* Two-Way, In-Building Wired Emergency Services Communications Systems.

24.8.1 Two-way telephone communications equipment shall be listed for two-way telephone communications service and installed in accordance with Section 24.8.

24.8.2 Two-way telephone communications service, if provided, shall be for use by the fire service and collocated with the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications equipment.

24.8.3 Monitoring of the integrity of two-way telephone communications circuits shall be in accordance with 10.19.2.

24.8.4 Additional uses shall be permitted to include signaling and communications for a building fire warden organization and signaling and communications for reporting a fire and other emergencies (e.g., voice call box service, signaling, and communications for guard's tour service).

24.8.5 Variation of equipment and system operation provided to facilitate additional use of the two-way telephone communications service shall not adversely affect performance when used by the fire service.

24.8.6* Two-way telephone communications service shall be capable of permitting the simultaneous operation of any five telephone stations in a common talk mode.

24.8.7 A notification signal at the control equipment, distinctive from any other alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal, shall indicate the off-hook condition of a calling telephone circuit.

24.8.8 Where a selective talk telephone communications service is supplied, a distinctive visual indicator shall be furnished for each selectable circuit, so that all circuits with telephones off-hook are continuously and visibly indicated.

24.8.9 A means for silencing the audible call-in signal sounding appliance shall be permitted, where both of the following conditions are met:

(1) The means is key-operated or located in a locked cabinet or provided with protection to prevent use by unauthorized persons.
(2) The means operates a visual indicator and sounds a trouble signal whenever the means is in the silence position and no telephone circuits are in an off-hook condition.

24.8.10 If a selective talk system is used, means as specified in 24.8.9 shall be permitted, provided that subsequent telephone circuits going off-hook operate the distinctive off-hook signal.

24.8.11 Two-way telephone systems with common talk mode (i.e., a conference or party line circuit) shall be permitted.

24.8.12 In buildings provided with a two-way telephone communications system, at least one telephone station or jack shall be provided at the following locations:

(1) Each floor level
(2) Each notification zone
(3) Each elevator cab
(4) Elevator lobbies
(5) Elevator machine room(s)

(6) Emergency and standby power room(s)
(7) Fire pump room(s)
(8) Area(s) of refuge
(9) Each floor level inside an enclosed exit stair(s)
(10) Other room(s) or area(s) as required by the authority having jurisdiction

24.8.13 If the two-way telephone system is intended to be used by fire wardens in addition to the fire service, the minimum requirement shall be a selective talk system, where phones are selected from the control location.

24.8.14 Telephone circuits shall be selectable from the control location either individually or, if approved by the authority having jurisdiction, by floor or stairwell.

24.8.15 If the control equipment provided does not indicate the location of the caller (common talk systems), each telephone station or telephone jack shall be clearly and permanently labeled to allow the caller to identify his or her location to the control center by voice.

24.8.16 If telephone jacks are provided, two or more portable handsets, as determined by the authority having jurisdiction, shall be stored at each control center for use by emergency responders.

24.8.17 Wall-mounted telephone appliances or related jacks shall be not less than 36 in. (910 mm) and not more than 66 in. (1.68 m) above floor level with clear access to the appliance that is at least 30 in. (760 mm) wide.

24.8.18 If accessible to the general public, one telephone appliance per location shall be not more than 48 in. (1.22 m) above floor level.

24.8.19* All circuits necessary for the operation of two-way telephone communications systems shall be installed in accordance with the pathway survivability requirements in 24.3.14.7.

24.9* Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement Systems. All emergency responder communication enhancement systems shall be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with NFPA 1225.

N **24.9.1** Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, fire alarm systems shall monitor all emergency responder communication enhancement systems for all required supervisory signals.

24.10* Two-Way Emergency Communications Systems for Rescue Assistance.

24.10.1 Systems used for area of refuge ECSs, stairway communications systems, elevator landing communications systems, and occupant evacuation elevator lobby communications systems shall be listed in accordance with applicable standards, such as UL 2525, *Two-way Emergency Communications Systems for Rescue Assistance*.

24.10.2 Where required by the enforcing authority, governing laws, codes, or standards, any communications system specified in this section shall be installed in accordance with 24.10.2 through 24.10.14.

24.10.2.1 The secondary power supply for two-way ECSs shall be capable of operating the system under quiescent load for a minimum of 24 hours and then subsequently during a fire or other emergency condition for a period of 4 hours with all remote call stations activated and all master control stations annunciating the calls.

24.10.2.2 The communications system shall be capable of monitoring additional power supplies for communications equipment vital to the transmission of off-premises signals.

24.10.3* The communications system shall comprise remotely located communications stations (remote call stations), a master control station, and a primary and secondary power supply as required by Section 10.6.

24.10.3.1 When a remote call station(s) is activated by a building occupant(s), a two-way live voice communication shall be required to operate between the remote call station(s) and a constantly attended location.

24.10.3.2* The master control station shall be installed in a central control point within the building.

24.10.3.3* The constantly attended location shall be located either within the building or at a monitoring location and be approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.10.4 The remote call stations and the master control station shall communicate with each other via pathways based on their performance capabilities under abnormal (fault) conditions in accordance with the requirements for Class A, Class B, Class N, or Class X pathways specified in Chapter 12.

24.10.5 All pathways between the remote call stations and the master control station shall be monitored for integrity.

24.10.6* If the central control point is not constantly attended, the system shall have a timed automatic communications capability to connect with an off-premises constantly attended monitoring location approved by the authority having jurisdiction, where trained personnel can initiate the appropriate response.

24.10.7* In the event of an off-premises connection, a signal shall be transmitted to the off-premises monitoring location, identifying the specific building prior to initiating the live voice two-way communication.

24.10.8 Two-way ECSs shall have the capability of transmitting a verbal signal to identify the specific building address to off-premises monitoring personnel before operators complete the connection to the remote call station.

24.10.9* The physical locations of the remote call stations and the master control station shall be as designated by the building code in force and the system designer and approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.10.10 The specific location of each active remote call station shall be identified on the master control station display on a floor and area basis in accordance with 24.10.11.

24.10.11 Where all active calls are not simultaneously displayed, the master control stations shall provide the following:

(1) Previously answered calls shall be capable of being prioritized as urgent on the master control station to differentiate more urgent life safety related calls from less urgent calls.
(2) A minimum of 8 active call station identifiers shall be visible in the following order of priority:
    (a) Previously unanswered calls, oldest first

(b) Previously answered calls, prioritized as urgent, oldest first
(c) Previously answered calls, not prioritized as urgent, oldest first

24.10.12 The remote call stations shall provide for hands-free, two-way communication and provide an audible and a visual signal to indicate communication has occurred.

24.10.13 Signage.

24.10.13.1 Directions for the use of the two-way communications system, instructions for summoning assistance via the two-way communications system, and written identification, including in braille, of the location shall be posted adjacent to the two-way communications system.

24.10.13.2 Signage shall comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1, *Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*, requirements for visual characters.

24.10.14* The two-way communications systems specified in this section, as intended for different types of locations, shall be permitted to be integrated with each other or other ECSs provided they are installed in accordance with Section 24.10.

24.10.15* Training for Two-Way Communications Systems. Operators of two-way communications systems master control stations shall be trained and qualified.

24.11* Information, Command, and Control. The requirements of Section 24.11 shall apply to the communications methods and equipment used to receive and transmit information between premises sources or premises systems and the emergency command center(s).

24.11.1* Emergency Command Center for ECSs.

24.11.1.1* The location and accessibility of the emergency command center shall be determined by the risk analysis and approved by the emergency management coordinator.

24.11.1.2 The emergency command center shall contain the following where provided:

(1) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system equipment, including the following:
   (a) Fire alarm system controls
   (b) Fire alarm system annunciator
   (c) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system controls
   (d) Two-way in-building wired emergency services communications system (i.e., firefighters' telephone system) equipment
(2) In-building mass notification system equipment controls
(3) Area of refuge ECS equipment
(4) Elevator landing or occupant evacuation elevator lobby ECS equipment
(5) Distributed recipient MNS control stations where provided
(6) Tables and chairs to accommodate emergency management staff
(7) Other equipment/information deemed necessary by the facility emergency response plan such as the following:
   (a) Displays indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational
   (b) Status indicators and controls for air-handling systems
   (c) Firefighter's control panel for smoke control systems
   (d) Fire department communications unit
   (e) Controls for unlocking stairway doors simultaneously
   (f) Security systems
   (g) Emergency and standby power status indicators
   (h) Telephone for emergency use with controlled access to the public telephone system
   (i) Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, means of egress, fire protection systems, security systems, firefighting equipment, and fire department access
   (j) Generator supervision devices, manual start, and transfer features
   (k) Other monitoring, control, information display, and management systems associated with operation of the emergency command center

24.11.1.3 The level of security at the emergency command center shall be defined in the emergency response plan.

24.11.1.4* Emergency command center personnel requirements shall be defined in the documentation in the emergency response plan.

24.11.1.5* Individuals expected to operate an ECS shall be properly trained in the purpose, functions, procedures, and anticipated actions of such systems.

24.11.1.6 The emergency command center shall be capable of receiving voice messages by telephone or radio and transmitting via equipment at the emergency command center.

24.11.1.7 The emergency command center operator shall have the ability to monitor inputs/sensors and control output devices automatically, manually, or automatically with operator override.

24.11.2 Emergency Communications Control Unit (ECCU).

24.11.2.1 An emergency communications control unit (ECCU), where identified by the risk analysis, and defined in the emergency response plan, shall be provided at each emergency command center.

24.11.2.2 The system operator shall be able to broadcast live voice signals or activated prerecorded voice messages, tones, and other signals.

24.11.2.3 The signals shall be selectable to individual buildings; zones of buildings; individual outdoor loudspeaker arrays; zones of outdoor loudspeaker arrays; or a building, multiple buildings, outside areas, or a combination of these, in accordance with the emergency response plan established for the premises.

24.11.2.4 The central control emergency communications control unit shall automatically or manually assign priorities to all transmitted signals.

24.11.2.5 In wide-area mass notification systems, the emergency command center shall have a primary emergency communications control unit.

24.11.2.6 Multiple emergency communications control units shall be permitted.

24.11.3* Signals. Where identified by the risk analysis and defined in the emergency response plan, the emergency

communications control unit shall be permitted to automatically or manually send different messages or signals to different locations.

24.11.4 Power Supplies.

24.11.4.1 All control units shall meet the power supply requirements of Section 10.6 and 24.11.4.2.

24.11.4.2 The power supply for the emergency command center for ECSs shall include an uninterrupted power source with capacity sufficient to support the emergency response plan established for the specific premises.

24.11.5 Transmission. Signals shall be capable of being automatically or manually transmitted to a regional or national emergency response center or to other nearby facilities that have a need to be alerted of the emergency.

24.11.6* Other Systems. The emergency command center shall be capable of interfacing with and controlling other notification systems, such as telephone dialers, tone alert systems, computer network alerting systems, pagers, facsimile machines, textual devices, and other visual control signs, as determined by the emergency response plan.

24.11.7 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance. Inspection, testing, and maintenance shall be performed on a periodic basis, as described in Chapter 14, to verify and ensure proper system operation and readiness.

24.12* Performance-Based Design of Mass Notification Systems. The requirements of Section 24.12 shall apply to mass notification systems designed using performance-based practices.

24.12.1 Goals and Objectives. The performance-based design shall meet the following goals and objectives:

(1) The design criteria, design brief, system performance, and testing criteria are developed in accordance with this section.
(2) The system disseminates information to the target audience in an accurate and timely manner.
(3) The design and performance criteria are specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each location.
(4) Message initiation can be effected by all responding entities responsible for the safety and security of those affected by the events of concern.

24.12.2* Qualifications. The performance-based design and risk analysis shall be prepared by a design professional certified or approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.12.3 Independent Review. The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require an approved, independent third party to review the proposed design brief and provide an evaluation of the design to the authority having jurisdiction.

24.12.4 Final Determination. The authority having jurisdiction shall make the final determination as to whether the performance objectives have been met.

24.12.5 Maintenance of Design Features. The design features required for the system to continue to meet the performance goals and objectives of this Code shall be maintained for the life of the building.

24.12.6 Performance Criteria.

Δ **24.12.6.1 General.**

N **24.12.6.1.1** All designs shall meet the goals and objectives specified in 24.12.1.

N **24.12.6.1.2** Designs considered by 24.12.6.1.1 shall be considered equivalent when all of the following are met:

(1) The performance criterion in 24.12.6.2
(2) The design team concurs with the design
(3) The risk analysis considers the following factors:
    (a) Number of persons to be notified
    (b) Occupancy characteristics
    (c) Anticipated threat
    (d) Staff capabilities
    (e) Coordination with the emergency response plan

24.12.6.2 Performance Criterion. The performance criterion shall include timely and accurate notification of all persons within the boundaries of the mass notification system in a medium to which they can respond when given directions by responding entities.

24.12.6.3* Design Team. The design team shall be comprised of the design professional, the owner or owner's representative, representatives of the authority having jurisdiction, and representatives of the responding entities.

24.12.6.4 Risk Analysis. The design of the mass notification system shall be based upon a risk analysis prepared in accordance with 24.3.12 specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each facility for which it is designed.

24.12.6.5 Operational Status and System Effectiveness. The performance of the system shall reflect the documented performance and reliability of the components of those systems or features, unless design specifications are incorporated to modify the expected performance.

24.12.6.5.1 The inclusion of trained employees as part of the mass notification system shall be identified and documented.

24.12.6.5.2 Emergency Response Personnel. The design shall consider the characteristics or other conditions related to the availability, speed of response, effectiveness, roles, and other characteristics of emergency response personnel.

24.12.6.6* Design Brief. The design of the mass notification system shall include the preparation of a design brief that is prepared utilizing recognized performance-based design practices.

24.12.6.6.1 Design specifications and briefs used in the performance-based design shall be clearly stated and shown to be realistic and sustainable.

24.12.6.6.2 Specific testing requirements that are necessary to maintain reliable performance shall be stated in the design brief.

24.13 Documentation for ECSs.

24.13.1 New Systems. Documentation requirements for new ECSs shall comply with Sections 7.3 through 7.8 in addition to the minimum requirements of Section 7.2.

Chapter 25 Reserved

Chapter 26 Supervising Station Alarm Systems

26.1* Application. The performance, installation, and operation of alarm systems at a continuously attended supervising station and between the protected premises and the continuously attended supervising station shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

26.1.1* Where any system regulated by this Code sends signals to a supervising station, the entire system shall become a supervising station alarm system.

26.1.2 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 11, 12, 14, and 23 shall apply unless otherwise noted in this chapter.

26.1.3 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless otherwise noted.

26.2 General.

26.2.1 Alarm Signal Disposition.

26.2.1.1 Alarm signals initiated by manual fire alarm boxes, automatic fire detectors, waterflow from the automatic sprinkler system, or actuation of other fire suppression system(s) or equipment shall be treated as fire alarm signals.

26.2.1.2* Except as permitted by 26.2.2 and 29.10.9.7, all fire alarm signals received by a supervising station shall be immediately retransmitted to the communications center.

26.2.1.3 Fire alarm signals received at the supervising station shall be retransmitted to the communications center by one of the following methods:

(1) Signals that are identified by zone at the supervising station shall be retransmitted by zone to the communications center.
(2) Signals that are identified as an individual point or points at the supervising station shall be retransmitted by point or points to the communications center.
(3)* Signals that are received at the supervising station as events shall be retransmitted by event to the communications center.

26.2.1.4 Retransmission of subsequent signals shall comply with 26.2.1.4.1 and 26.2.1.4.2.

26.2.1.4.1 The supervising station shall continue to retransmit subsequent signals from a protected premises to the communications center until advised otherwise by the communications center.

26.2.1.4.2 Subsequent signals that are suppressed by the supervising station as directed by the communications center shall be permitted to be suppressed for a maximum of one hour.

26.2.2* Fire Alarm Signal Verification. For applications other than those addressed under the scope of 29.10.9.7, supervising station personnel shall attempt to verify alarm signals prior to reporting them to the communications center only where all the following conditions exist:

(1)* Alarm signal verification is required by the responsible fire department for a specific protected premises.
(2) Documentation of the requirement for alarm signal verification is provided by the responsible fire department to the supervising station and the protected premises.
(3) If the requirement for verification changes, the responsible fire department notifies the supervising station and the protected premises.
(4)* The verification process does not take longer than 90 seconds from the time the alarm signal is received at the supervising station until the time that retransmission of the verified alarm signal is initiated.
(5) Verification of a true fire is received from anyone on premises, or verification of an unwanted alarm signal is received only from a pre-assigned list of authorized personnel within the protected premises.
(6)* Verified alarm signals are immediately retransmitted to the communications center and include information that the signal was verified at the protected premises to be an emergency.
(7)* Alarm signals where verification is not conclusive are immediately retransmitted to the communications center.
(8)* Alarm signals that are verified as unwanted alarms are reported to the responsible fire department in a manner and at a frequency specified by the responsible fire department.

26.2.3 Alarm Signal Content. Where required by the enforcing authority, governing laws, codes, or standards, alarm signals transmitted to a supervising station shall be by addressable device or zone identification.

26.2.4 Carbon Monoxide Signal Disposition.

26.2.4.1 Carbon Monoxide Alarm Signal Disposition.

26.2.4.1.1 A carbon monoxide alarm signal shall take precedence over supervisory or trouble signals.

26.2.4.1.2 The actuation of a carbon monoxide detector or system shall be distinctively indicated as a carbon monoxide alarm signal.

Δ **26.2.4.1.3* Servicing.**

N **26.2.4.1.3.1** Servicing of a system in alarm that cannot be reset shall be in accordance with Chapter 14.

N **26.2.4.1.3.2** Servicing of a system shall occur within 4 hours of the carbon monoxide alarm signal.

26.2.4.1.4 Upon receipt of a carbon monoxide alarm signal, supervising station personnel shall perform the following actions in the order listed:

(1) Where required by the emergency response agency, immediately retransmit indication of the carbon monoxide alarm signal to the communications center
(2) Contact the responsible party(s) in accordance with the notification plan
(3) Once contacted, inform the subscriber to take one of the actions in (a) or (b):
   (a) Where the subscriber has a carbon monoxide emergency response plan, implement the plan
   (b) Where the subscriber has no carbon monoxide emergency response plan:
      i. Immediately move to fresh air, either outdoors or by an open door or window
      ii. Verify that all occupants are accounted for

iii. Do not re-enter the premises or move away from an open door or window until the emergency service responders have arrived, the premises have been aired out, and the alarm returns to its normal condition

26.2.4.2 Carbon Monoxide Trouble Signal Disposition.

26.2.4.2.1 Upon receipt of a carbon monoxide trouble signal, the responsible party(s) shall be notified.

Δ **26.2.4.2.2 Servicing.**

N **26.2.4.2.2.1** Servicing of a system in trouble shall be in accordance with Chapter 14.

N **26.2.4.2.2.2** Servicing of a system shall occur within 4 hours of the trouble indication.

26.2.4.2.3 Carbon monoxide end-of-life signals, if provided, shall be treated as trouble signals.

26.2.5 Restoral Signals.

26.2.5.1 All supervising station fire alarm systems shall be programmed to report restoral signals to the supervising station of all alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals upon restoration of the activation.

26.2.5.2 Except as permitted in 26.2.5.2.2, any signal received by the supervising station that has not restored to normal condition within 24 hours of initial receipt shall be redisplayed to an operator as a nonrestored signal.

26.2.5.2.1 A nonrestored signal that is redisplayed shall be reported to the subscriber.

26.2.5.2.2* Paragraph 26.2.5.2 shall not apply to signals received as a result of a scheduled impairment.

26.2.6 Multiple Buildings. For multiple building premises, the requirements of 10.18.5.3 shall apply to the alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals transmitted to the supervising station.

26.2.7* Change of Service.

26.2.7.1* Supervising station customers or clients and the authority having jurisdiction shall be notified in writing by the new supervising station within 30 calendar days of any change of service provider that results in signals from the client's property being handled by a new supervising station.

26.2.7.2 Where the new provider of supervising station services covered by 26.2.7.1 also provides the required testing, the new provider shall test zones, points, and signals from each affected property in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14 at or prior to the next scheduled periodic test.

26.2.7.3 Where the new provider of supervising station services covered by 26.2.7.1 does not provide the required testing, the new provider shall notify the alarm system owner of the need to test zones, points, and signals from each affected property in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14 prior to or at the next scheduled periodic test.

26.2.7.4 The supervising station shall notify the authority having jurisdiction prior to terminating service.

26.2.8 Supervising Station Signal Processing Equipment. Signal processing equipment located at the supervising station listed to UL 60950-1, *Information Technology Equipment — Safety — Part 1: General Requirements*, or UL 62368-1, *Audio/Video, Information and Communication Technology Equipment — Part 1: Safety Requirements*, and used for computer-aided alarm and supervisory signal processing shall not be required to comply with 10.3.5 if it is installed and operated in accordance with UL 1981, *Central-Station Automation Systems*, within an environment that is maintained at a level within the temperature, humidity, and voltage rating range of the equipment, and the equipment manufacturer's published instructions are available for examination.

26.2.9 Qualification of Supervising Station Operators. Supervising station operators shall be qualified in accordance with the requirements of 10.5.5.

26.2.10 Emergency Monitoring Locations.

26.2.10.1 Upon an emergency declaration made by a national, state, or local authority that results in a business disruption event that inhibits normal operation of a supervising station, fire alarm system signals shall be permitted to be received at alternate locations other than a listed central station, proprietary supervising station, or remote supervising station.

26.2.10.2 The provision of 26.2.10.1 shall be permitted to remain in effect for the duration of the emergency declaration.

26.2.10.3 Specific authorization by local authorities having jurisdiction shall not be required for emergencies declared by a higher authority.

26.2.10.4 The provision of 26.2.10.1 shall be permitted to remain in place for not more than 30 calendar days following the termination of the declared emergency.

N **26.2.11 Auxiliary Service Providers (ASPs).**

N **26.2.11.1** Where an auxiliary service provider (ASP) is used, the requirements of 26.2.11.2 through 26.2.11.3 shall be met.

N **26.2.11.2** ASPs shall include the services listed in 26.2.11.2.1 through 26.2.11.2.7.

N **26.2.11.2.1*** All communication pathways from the protected premises, through the ASP, to the supervising station shall be supervised in accordance with Section 26.6.

N **26.2.11.2.2** Failure of any communication pathway between the ASP and the supervising station shall be annunciated at the supervising station and the ASP within 90 seconds.

N **26.2.11.2.3** All alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals from fire alarm systems received by an ASP shall be electronically retransmitted, without delay, to the supervising station responsible for acknowledgement and signal processing in accordance with Section 26.6.

N **26.2.11.2.4** Where used, an ASP shall be approved

N **26.2.11.2.5** The supervising station, building owner, and AHJ shall be notified in writing of the use or change of an ASP within 30 calendar days.

N **26.2.11.2.6** The ASP shall retain records of all signals received and sent for at least 1 year.

N **26.2.11.2.7** The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 12, and 14 shall apply unless otherwise noted in this chapter.

N **26.2.11.3** ASP facilities that support the delivery of signals to a supervising station from a protected premises fire alarm system installed in accordance with this Code shall conform to the

construction, fire protection, physical security, cybersecurity, emergency lighting, power, communications infrastructure, and service resiliency requirements contained in UL 827, *Central-Station Alarm Services*.

26.3 Central Station Service Alarm Systems. Alarm systems used to provide central station service shall comply with the general requirements and the use requirements of Section 26.3.

26.3.1 System Scope. Alarm systems for central station service shall include the central station physical plant, exterior communications channels, subsidiary stations, and alarm and signaling equipment located at the protected premises.

26.3.2* Service Scope. Section 26.3 shall apply to central station service, which consists of the following elements:

(1) Installation of alarm transmitters
(2) Alarm, guard, supervisory, and trouble signal monitoring
(3) Retransmission
(4) Associated record keeping and reporting
(5) Testing and maintenance
(6) Runner service

26.3.3 Contract Requirements. The central station service elements shall be provided under contract to a subscriber by a prime contractor that has a listing for central station fire alarm services.

26.3.3.1 The prime contractor shall be responsible for code-compliant service delivery, regardless of any subcontracting arrangements involved in the delivery of service.

26.3.3.2 Signal monitoring, retransmission, and associated recordkeeping and reporting shall be provided by a company that has a listing for central station alarm services covering these elements.

26.3.4* Indication of Central Station Service. The prime contractor shall conspicuously indicate that the alarm system providing service at a protected premises complies with all the requirements of this Code through the use of a systematic follow-up program under the control of the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

26.3.4.1* Documentation indicating Code compliance of the alarm system shall be issued by the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

26.3.4.2 The documentation shall include, at a minimum, the following information:

(1) Name of the prime contractor involved with the ongoing Code compliance of the central station service
(2)* Full description of the alarm system as installed
(3) Issue and expiration dates of the documentation
(4) Name, address, and contact information of the organization issuing the document
(5) Identification of the authority(ies) having jurisdiction for the central station service installation

Δ **26.3.4.3 Document Posting.**

N **26.3.4.3.1** The documentation shall be physically posted within 3 ft (1 m) of the control unit.

N **26.3.4.3.2** The documentation shall be made available to the authority(ies) having jurisdiction upon request.

26.3.4.4 A central repository of issued documentation, accessible to the authority having jurisdiction, shall be maintained by the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

26.3.4.5* Alarm system service that does not comply with all the requirements of Section 26.3 shall not be designated as central station service.

26.3.4.6* For the purpose of Section 26.3, the subscriber shall notify the prime contractor, in writing, of the identity of the authority(ies) having jurisdiction.

26.3.4.7 The authority(ies) having jurisdiction identified in 26.3.4.2(5) shall be notified within 30 calendar days of the expiration or cancellation by the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

26.3.4.8 The subscriber shall surrender expired or canceled documentation to the prime contractor within 30 days of the termination date.

26.3.5 Facilities.

26.3.5.1 The central station building or that portion of a building occupied by a central station shall conform to the construction, fire protection, restricted access, emergency lighting, and power facilities requirements of the latest edition of UL 827, *Central-Station Alarm Services*.

26.3.5.2 Subsidiary station buildings or those portions of buildings occupied by subsidiary stations shall conform to the construction, fire protection, restricted access, emergency lighting, and power facilities requirements of the latest edition of UL 827, *Central-Station Alarm Services*.

26.3.5.2.1 All intrusion, fire, power, and environmental control systems for subsidiary station buildings shall be monitored by the central station in accordance with 26.3.5.

26.3.5.2.2 The subsidiary facility shall be inspected at least monthly by central station personnel for the purpose of verifying the operation and condition of all supervised equipment, telephones, energy storage systems, batteries, and generators, in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

26.3.5.2.3 In the event of the failure of equipment at the subsidiary station or the communications channel to the central station, a backup shall be operational within 90 seconds.

26.3.5.2.4 With respect to 26.3.5.2.3, restoration of a failed unit shall be accomplished within 5 days.

26.3.5.2.5 Each communications channel shall be continuously supervised between the subsidiary station and the central station.

26.3.5.2.6 When the communications channel between the subsidiary station and the supervising station fails, the communications shall be switched to an alternate path.

26.3.5.2.7 Managed facilities-based voice networks shall be used only to provide an alternate path between the subsidiary station and the supervising station.

26.3.5.2.8 In the subsidiary station, there shall be a communications path, such as a cellular telephone, that is independent of the telephone cable between the subsidiary station and the serving wire center.

26.3.5.2.9 A plan of action to provide for restoration of services specified by this Code shall exist for each subsidiary station.

26.3.5.2.9.1 This plan shall provide for restoration of services within 4 hours of any impairment that causes loss of signals from the subsidiary station to the central station.

26.3.5.2.9.2 An exercise to demonstrate the adequacy of the plan shall be conducted at least annually.

26.3.6 Equipment.

26.3.6.1 The central station and all subsidiary stations shall be equipped so as to receive and record all signals in accordance with 26.6.6.

26.3.6.2 Circuit-adjusting means for emergency operation shall be permitted to be automatic or to be provided through manual operation upon receipt of a trouble signal.

26.3.6.3 Computer-aided alarm and supervisory signal–processing hardware and software shall be listed for the purpose.

26.3.6.4 Power supplies shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10.

26.3.6.5 Transmission means shall comply with the requirements of Section 26.6.

26.3.6.6* Two independent means shall be provided to retransmit an alarm signal to the designated communications center.

26.3.6.6.1 The use of a universal emergency number, such as the 911 public safety answering point, shall not meet the intent of this Code for the principal means of retransmission.

26.3.6.6.2 If the principal means of retransmission is not equipped to allow the communications center to acknowledge receipt of each alarm report, both means shall be used to retransmit.

26.3.6.6.3 The retransmission means shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

26.3.6.6.4 The retransmission signal and the time and date of retransmission shall be recorded at the central station.

26.3.7 Personnel.

26.3.7.1 The central station shall have not less than two qualified operators on duty at the central station at all times to ensure disposition of signals in accordance with the requirements of 26.3.8.3.

Δ **26.3.7.2 Operation and Supervision.**

N **26.3.7.2.1** Operation and supervision shall be the primary functions of the operators.

N **26.3.7.2.2** No other interest or activity shall take precedence over the primary functions of the operators.

26.3.8 Procedures.

26.3.8.1 The procedural requirements outlined in Section 26.2 shall be followed.

26.3.8.2 The additional procedural requirements outlined in 26.3.8 shall also be followed.

26.3.8.3 Disposition of Signals.

Δ **26.3.8.3.1 Alarm Signals.**

Δ **26.3.8.3.1.1** The central station shall perform the following actions:

(1)* Retransmit the alarm to the communications center in accordance with 26.2.1 unless the signal is a result of a prearranged test.
(2) Dispatch a runner or technician to the protected premises to arrive within 2 hours after receipt of an alarm signal if equipment needs to be manually reset by the prime contractor.
(3) Immediately notify the subscriber unless the signal is a result of a prearranged test.
(4) Provide notice to the subscriber or authority having jurisdiction, or both, if required.

N **26.3.8.3.1.2** Except where prohibited by the authority having jurisdiction, the runner or technician described in 26.3.8.3.1.1(2) shall be permitted to be recalled prior to arrival at the premises if a qualified representative of the subscriber at the premises can provide the necessary resetting of the equipment and is able to place the system back in operating condition.

26.3.8.3.2 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal.

26.3.8.3.2.1 Upon failure to receive a guard's tour supervisory signal within a 15-minute maximum grace period, the central station shall perform the following actions:

(1) Communicate without unreasonable delay with personnel at the protected premises
(2) Dispatch a runner to the protected premises to arrive within 30 minutes of the delinquency if communications cannot be established
(3) Report all delinquencies to the subscriber or authority having jurisdiction, or both, if required

26.3.8.3.2.2 Failure of the guard to follow a prescribed route in transmitting signals shall be handled as a delinquency.

26.3.8.3.3* Supervisory Signals. Upon receipt of a supervisory signal that is not prearranged, the central station shall perform the following actions:

(1)* Communicate immediately with the persons designated by the subscriber and notify the fire department, law enforcement agency, or both when required by the authority having jurisdiction
(2) Dispatch a runner or maintenance person to arrive within 2 hours to investigate unless the supervisory signal is cleared in accordance with a scheduled procedure determined by 26.3.8.3.3(1)
(3) Notify the authority having jurisdiction and the subscriber when sprinkler systems or other fire suppression systems or equipment have been wholly or partially out of service for 8 hours
(4) When service has been restored, provide notice to the subscriber and the authority having jurisdiction of the nature of the signal, the time of occurrence, and the restoration of service when equipment has been out of service for 8 hours or more

26.3.8.3.4 Trouble Signals. Upon receipt of trouble signals or other signals pertaining solely to matters of equipment maintenance of the alarm systems, the central station shall perform the following actions:

(1)* If a received trouble signal does not restore within 15 minutes, communicate immediately with persons designated by the subscriber
(2) Dispatch personnel to arrive within 4 hours to initiate maintenance, if necessary
(3) When the interruption is more than 8 hours, provide notice to the subscriber and the fire department if so required by the authority having jurisdiction as to the nature of the interruption, the time of occurrence, and the restoration of service

26.3.8.3.5 Test Signals.

26.3.8.3.5.1 All test signals received shall be recorded to indicate date, time, and type.

26.3.8.3.5.2 Test signals initiated by the subscriber, including those for the benefit of an authority having jurisdiction, shall be acknowledged by central station personnel whenever the subscriber or authority inquires.

26.3.8.3.5.3* Any test signal not received by the central station shall be investigated immediately, and action shall be taken to reestablish system integrity.

26.3.8.3.5.4 The central station shall dispatch personnel to arrive within 2 hours if protected premises equipment needs to be manually reset after testing.

26.3.8.3.5.5 The prime contractor shall provide each of its representatives and each alarm system user with a unique personal identification code.

26.3.8.3.5.6 In order to authorize the placing of an alarm system into test status, a representative of the prime contractor or an alarm system user shall first provide the central station with his or her personal identification code.

26.3.9 Record Keeping and Reporting.

26.3.9.1 Complete records of all signals received shall be retained for at least 1 year.

26.3.9.2 Testing and maintenance records shall be retained as required by 14.6.3.

26.3.9.3 The central station shall make arrangements to furnish reports of signals received to the authority having jurisdiction in a manner approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

26.3.10 Testing and Maintenance. Testing and maintenance for central station service shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 14.

26.4 Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

26.4.1 Application.

26.4.1.1 Supervising facilities of proprietary alarm systems shall comply with the operating procedures of Section 26.4.

26.4.1.2 The facilities, equipment, personnel, operation, testing, and maintenance of the proprietary supervising station shall also comply with Section 26.4.

26.4.2 General.

26.4.2.1 Proprietary supervising stations shall be operated by trained, competent personnel in constant attendance who are responsible to the owner of the protected property.

26.4.2.2 The protected property shall be either a contiguous property or noncontiguous properties under one ownership.

26.4.2.3 If a protected premises control unit is integral to or colocated with the supervising station equipment, the requirements of Section 26.6 shall not apply.

26.4.3 Facilities.

26.4.3.1* The proprietary supervising station shall be located in either of the following:

(1) Fire-resistive, detached building
(2) A fire-resistive room protected from the hazardous parts of the building

26.4.3.2 Access to the proprietary supervising station shall be restricted to those persons directly concerned with the implementation and direction of emergency action and procedure.

26.4.3.3 The proprietary supervising station, as well as remotely located power rooms for batteries or engine-driven generators, shall be provided with portable fire extinguishers that comply with the requirements of NFPA 10.

26.4.3.4 The emergency lighting system shall comply with the requirements of 26.4.3.4.1 through 26.4.3.4.3.

26.4.3.4.1 The proprietary supervising station shall be provided with an automatic emergency lighting system.

26.4.3.4.2 The emergency source shall be independent of the primary lighting source.

Δ **26.4.3.4.3 Emergency Lighting System.**

N **26.4.3.4.3.1** In the event of a loss of the primary lighting for the supervising station, the emergency lighting system shall provide illumination for a period of not less than 26 hours to permit the operators to carry on operations.

N **26.4.3.4.3.2** The emergency lighting system shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

26.4.3.5 If 25 or more protected buildings or premises are connected to a subsidiary station, both of the following shall be provided at the subsidiary station:

(1) Automatic means for receiving and recording signals
(2) A telephone

Δ **26.4.3.6* Retransmission Means.**

N **26.4.3.6.1** The means of retransmission shall be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

N **26.4.3.6.2** The means of retransmission shall be in accordance with 26.3.6.6, 26.5.4.4, or Chapter 27.

26.4.4 Equipment.

26.4.4.1 Signal-Receiving Equipment.

26.4.4.1.1 Signal-receiving equipment in a proprietary supervising station shall comply with 26.4.4.

26.4.4.1.2 Provision shall be made to designate the building in which a signal originates.

26.4.4.1.3* The floor, section, or other subdivision of the building in which a signal originates shall be designated at the proprietary supervising station or at the building that is protected where required by the authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.4.1.4 Designation, as required by 26.4.4.1.2 and 26.4.4.1.3, shall use private-mode notification appliances approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.4.2 Signal-Alerting Equipment.

26.4.4.2.1 The proprietary supervising station shall have, in addition to a recording device, two different means for alerting the operator when each signal is received that indicates a change of state of any connected initiating device circuit.

26.4.4.2.1.1 One of these means shall be an audible signal that persists until manually acknowledged.

26.4.4.2.1.2 Means shall include the receipt of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals, including signals indicating restoration.

26.4.4.2.1.3 If means is provided in the proprietary supervising station to identify the type of signal received, a common audible indicating appliance shall be permitted to be used for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indication.

26.4.4.2.1.4 At a proprietary supervising station, an audible trouble signal shall be permitted to be silenced, provided that the act of silencing does not prevent the signal from operating immediately upon receipt of a subsequent trouble signal.

26.4.4.2.2 All signals required to be received by the proprietary supervising station that show a change in status shall be automatically and permanently recorded, including time and date of occurrence, in a form that expedites operator interpretation in accordance with any one of the means detailed in 26.4.4.2.2.1 through 26.4.4.2.2.4.

26.4.4.2.2.1 If a visual display is used that automatically provides change of status information for each required signal, including type and location of occurrence, any form of automatic permanent visual record shall be permitted.

(A) The recorded information shall include the content described in 26.4.4.2.2.

(B) The visual display shall show status information content at all times and be distinctly different after the operator has manually acknowledged each signal.

(C) Acknowledgment shall produce recorded information indicating the time and date of acknowledgment.

26.4.4.2.2.2 If a visual display is not provided, required signal content information shall be automatically recorded on duplicate, permanent visual recording instruments.

26.4.4.2.2.3 One recording instrument shall be used for recording all incoming signals, while the other shall be used for required alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals only.

(A) Failure to acknowledge a signal shall not prevent subsequent signals from recording.

(B) Restoration of the signal to its prior condition shall be recorded.

26.4.4.2.2.4 In the event that a system combines the use of a sequential visual display and recorded permanent visual presentation, the required signal content information shall be displayed and recorded.

(A) The visual information component shall be retained either on the display until manually acknowledged or repeated at intervals not greater than 5 seconds, for durations of 2 seconds each, until manually acknowledged.

(B) Each new displayed status change shall be accompanied by an audible indication that persists until manual acknowledgment of the signal is performed.

26.4.4.3* Redisplay of Status. A means shall be provided for the operator to redisplay the status of required signal-initiating inputs that have been acknowledged but not yet restored.

26.4.4.3.1 If the system retains the signal on the visual display until manually acknowledged, subsequent recorded presentations shall not be inhibited upon failure to acknowledge.

26.4.4.3.2 Alarm signals shall be segregated on a separate visual display in this configuration unless they are given priority status on the common visual display.

26.4.4.4 Display Rate. To facilitate the prompt receipt of alarm signals from systems handling other types of signals that are able to produce multiple simultaneous status changes, the requirements of either of the following shall be met:

(1) Record simultaneous status changes at a rate not slower than either a quantity of 50 or 10 percent of the total number of initiating device circuits connected, within 90 seconds, whichever number is smaller, without loss of any signal
(2) Display or record alarm signals at a rate not slower than one every 10 seconds, regardless of the rate or number of status changes occurring, without loss of any signals

26.4.4.5 Trouble Signals. Trouble signals and their restoration shall be automatically indicated and recorded at the proprietary supervising station.

26.4.4.5.1 The recorded information for the occurrence of any trouble condition of signaling line circuit, leg facility, or trunk facility that prevents receipt of alarm signals at the proprietary supervising station shall be such that the operator is able to determine the presence of the trouble condition.

26.4.4.5.2 Trouble conditions in a leg facility shall not affect or delay receipt of signals at the proprietary supervising station from other leg facilities on the same trunk facility.

26.4.5 Personnel.

26.4.5.1 Except as permitted in 26.4.5.2, the proprietary supervising station shall be staffed at all times by a minimum of two qualified operators.

26.4.5.2 Where the means for transmitting alarms to the communications center is automatic, the proprietary supervising station shall be permitted to be staffed by a minimum of one qualified operator at all times.

26.4.5.3 Where the proprietary supervising station is staffed by two qualified operators, one of the operators shall be permitted to be a runner.

26.4.5.4 When the runner is not in attendance at the proprietary supervising station, the runner shall establish two-way communications with the station at intervals not exceeding 15 minutes, unless otherwise permitted by 26.4.5.5.

26.4.5.5 Where two or more operators are on duty in the supervising station, a runner physically in attendance at a noncontiguous protected premises and immediately available via telephone or other approved means of communication shall not be required to maintain two-way communications at 15-minute intervals if that runner is not responsible for another protected premises.

26.4.5.6 The primary duties of the operator(s) shall be as follows:

(1) Monitor signals
(2) Operate the system
(3) Take action as required by the authority having jurisdiction

26.4.5.7 The operator(s) shall not be assigned any additional duties that would take precedence over the primary duties.

26.4.6 Operations.

26.4.6.1 Procedures.

26.4.6.1.1 The procedural requirements outlined in Section 26.2 shall be followed.

26.4.6.1.2 The additional procedural requirements outlined in 26.4.6.1 shall also be followed.

26.4.6.1.3 Communications and Transmission Channels.

26.4.6.1.3.1 All communications and transmission channels used to receive signals between the proprietary supervising station and the protected premises control unit shall be operated manually or automatically once every 24 hours to verify operation.

26.4.6.1.3.2 If a communications or transmission channel fails to operate, the operator shall immediately notify the person(s) identified by the owner or authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.6.1.3.3* Coded Retransmission. Retransmission by coded signals shall be confirmed by two-way voice communications indicating the nature of the alarm.

26.4.6.1.4 Operator Controls.

26.4.6.1.4.1 All operator controls at the proprietary supervising station(s) designated by the authority having jurisdiction shall be operated at each change of shift.

26.4.6.1.4.2 If operator controls fail, the operator shall immediately notify the person(s) identified by the owner or authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.6.1.5 Retransmission. Indication of a fire shall be immediately retransmitted to the communications center or other locations accepted by the authority having jurisdiction, indicating the building or group of buildings from which the alarm has been received.

26.4.6.1.6 Dispositions of Signals.

26.4.6.1.6.1 Alarms. Upon receipt of an alarm signal, the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following:

(1) Notify the communications center, the emergency response team, and such other parties as the authority having jurisdiction requires in accordance with 26.2.1
(2) Dispatch a runner or technician to the alarm location to arrive within 2 hours after receipt of a signal
(3) Restore the system as soon as possible after disposition of the cause of the alarm signal

26.4.6.1.6.2 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal. If a guard's tour supervisory signal is not received from a guard within a 15-minute maximum grace period, or if a guard fails to follow a prescribed route in transmitting the signals (where a prescribed route has been established), the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following:

(1) Communicate at once with the protected areas or premises by telephone, radio, calling back over the system circuit, or other means accepted by the authority having jurisdiction
(2) Dispatch a runner to arrive within 30 minutes to investigate the delinquency if communications with the guard cannot be immediately established

26.4.6.1.6.3 Supervisory Signals. Upon receipt of sprinkler system and other supervisory signals, the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following, if required:

(1) Communicate immediately with the designated person(s) to ascertain the reason for the signal
(2) Dispatch personnel to arrive within 2 hours to investigate, unless supervisory conditions are immediately restored
(3) Notify the fire department if required by the authority having jurisdiction
(4) Notify the authority having jurisdiction when sprinkler systems are wholly or partially out of service for 8 hours or more
(5)* Provide written notice to the authority having jurisdiction as to the nature of the signal, time of occurrence, and restoration of service when equipment has been out of service for 8 hours or more

26.4.6.1.6.4 Trouble Signals. Upon receipt of trouble signals or other signals pertaining solely to matters of equipment maintenance of the alarm system, the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following, if required:

(1) Communicate immediately with the designated person(s) to ascertain reason for the signal
(2) Dispatch personnel to arrive within 4 hours to initiate maintenance, if necessary
(3) Notify the fire department if required by the authority having jurisdiction
(4) Notify the authority having jurisdiction when interruption of service exists for 4 hours or more
(5) When equipment has been out of service for 8 hours or more, provide written notice to the authority having jurisdiction as to the nature of the signal, time of occurrence, and restoration of service

26.4.7 Record Keeping and Reporting.

26.4.7.1 Complete records of all signals received shall be retained for at least 1 year.

26.4.7.2 Testing and maintenance records shall be retained as required by 14.6.3.

26.4.7.3 The proprietary supervising station shall make arrangements to furnish reports of signals received to the authority having jurisdiction in a manner approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.8 Testing and Maintenance. Testing and maintenance of proprietary alarm systems shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 14.

26.5 Remote Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

26.5.1 Application and General.

26.5.1.1 Section 26.5 shall apply where central station service is neither required nor elected.

26.5.1.2 The installation, maintenance, testing, and use of a remote supervising station alarm system that serves properties under various ownership from a remote supervising station shall comply with the requirements of Section 26.5.

26.5.1.3 Remote supervising station physical facilities, equipment, operating personnel, response, retransmission, signals, reports, and testing shall comply with the minimum requirements of Section 26.5.

26.5.1.4 Remote supervising station alarm systems shall provide an automatic audible and visible indication of alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions at a location remote from the protected premises.

26.5.1.5 Audible or visual notification appliances at the protected premises shall comply with 26.5.1.5.1 and 26.5.1.5.2.

26.5.1.5.1 Audible or visual notification appliances shall not be required other than those required at the remote supervising station.

26.5.1.5.2 Where audible or visual appliances are provided at the protected premises, the alarm signals, circuits, and controls shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 18 and Chapter 23 in addition to the provisions of Section 26.5.

26.5.1.6 The loading capacities of the remote supervising station equipment for any approved method of transmission shall be as designated in Section 26.6.

26.5.2 Indication of Remote Station Service.

26.5.2.1 Owners utilizing remote station alarm systems shall provide annual documentation to the authority having jurisdiction identifying the party responsible for the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements of Chapter 14.

26.5.2.2 The documentation required by 26.5.2.1 shall take one of the following forms:

(1)* Affidavit attesting to the responsibilities and qualifications of the parties performing the inspection, testing, and maintenance and accepting responsibility of compliance with Chapter 14 and signed by a representative of the service provider
(2) Documentation indicating code compliance of the remote station alarm system issued by the organization that listed the service provider
(3) Other documentation acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

26.5.3* Facilities.

26.5.3.1 Alarm systems utilizing remote supervising station connections shall transmit alarm and supervisory signals to a facility meeting the requirements of 26.5.3.1.1, 26.5.3.1.2, 26.5.3.1.3, or 26.5.3.1.4.

26.5.3.1.1 Alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at a communications center that complies with the requirements of NFPA 1225.

26.5.3.1.2 Alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at the fire station or at the governmental agency that has public responsibility for taking prescribed action to ensure response upon receipt of an alarm signal.

26.5.3.1.3 Where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at a listed central supervising station.

26.5.3.1.4* Where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at an alternate location approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

26.5.3.2* Trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at locations in accordance with 26.5.3.2.1 and 26.5.3.2.2.

26.5.3.2.1 Trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at an approved location that has personnel on duty who are trained to recognize the type of signal received and take prescribed action.

26.5.3.2.2 Trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at an approved location other than that which receives alarm and supervisory signals.

26.5.3.3 If locations other than the communications center are used for the receipt of signals, access to receiving equipment shall be restricted in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

26.5.4 Equipment.

26.5.4.1 Signal-receiving equipment shall indicate receipt of each signal both audibly and visibly.

26.5.4.1.1 Audible signals shall meet the requirements of Chapter 18 for the private operating mode.

Δ **26.5.4.1.2** Means for silencing alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be provided and arranged so that subsequent signals re-sound.

26.5.4.1.3 A trouble signal shall be received when the system or any portion of the system at the protected premises is placed in a bypass or test mode.

26.5.4.1.4 An audible and visible indication shall be provided upon restoration of the system after receipt of any signal.

26.5.4.1.5 If visible means are provided in the remote supervising station to identify the type of signal received, a common audible notification appliance shall be permitted to be used.

26.5.4.2 Power supplies shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10.

26.5.4.3 Transmission means shall comply with the requirements of Section 26.6.

26.5.4.4 Retransmission of an alarm signal, if required, shall be by one of the following methods, which appear in descending order of preference as follows:

(1) A dedicated circuit that is independent of any switched telephone network and is capable of voice or data communications

(2) A one-way (outgoing only) telephone at the remote supervising station that utilizes a managed facilities-based voice network and is used primarily for voice transmission of alarms to a telephone at the communications center that cannot be used for outgoing calls
(3) A private radio system using the fire department frequency, where permitted by the fire department
(4) Other methods accepted by the authority having jurisdiction

26.5.5 Personnel.

26.5.5.1 The remote supervising station shall have not less than two qualified operators on duty at the remote supervising station at all times to ensure disposition of signals in accordance with the requirements of 26.5.6.

26.5.5.2 Duties pertaining to other than operation of the remote supervising station receiving and transmitting equipment shall be permitted, subject to the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

26.5.6 Procedures.

26.5.6.1 The procedural requirements outlined in Section 26.2 shall be followed.

26.5.6.2 The additional procedural requirements outlined in 26.5.6 shall also be followed.

26.5.6.3 Disposition of Signals.

26.5.6.3.1 Alarm Signals. The remote station shall perform the following actions:

(1) If the remote station is at a location other than the communications center, retransmit alarm signals to the communications center in accordance with 26.2.1.
(2) Immediately notify the owner or the owner's designated representative.

26.5.6.3.2 Supervisory Signals. Upon receipt of a supervisory signal that is not prearranged, the remote station shall perform the following actions:

(1) Immediately notify the owner or the owner's designated representative.
(2) Where required, notify the authority having jurisdiction.

26.5.6.3.3 Trouble Signals.

26.5.6.3.3.1 Upon receipt of a trouble signal that is not prearranged, the remote station shall perform the following action:

(1) Immediately notify the owner or the owner's designated representative.
(2) Where required, notify the authority having jurisdiction.

26.5.6.3.3.2 For trouble signals, the remote station operator shall be permitted to delay transmission for 15 minutes to allow for a status change in the signal that would resolve the trouble signal.

26.5.6.3.3.3 If a trouble restoral signal is received within 15 minutes, the operator shall not be required to notify the owner or the owner's designated representative or the authority having jurisdiction.

Δ 26.5.7 Operations.

N **26.5.7.1** All operator controls at the remote supervising station shall be operated at the beginning of each shift or change in personnel.

N **26.5.7.2** The status of all alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be noted and recorded at the beginning of each shift or change in personnel.

26.5.8 Record Keeping and Reporting.

Δ 26.5.8.1 Permanent Record.

N **26.5.8.1.1** A permanent record of the time, date, and location of all signals and restorations received and the action taken shall be maintained for at least 1 year.

N **26.5.8.1.2** The permanent record shall be able to be provided to the authority having jurisdiction.

26.5.8.2 Testing and maintenance records shall be retained as required in 14.6.3.

26.5.8.3 Records shall be permitted to be created by manual means.

26.5.9 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance.

26.5.9.1 Inspection, testing, and maintenance for remote supervising stations shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 14.

26.5.9.2 Where required, inspection, testing, and maintenance reports shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction in a form acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

26.6 Communications Methods for Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

26.6.1* Application.

26.6.1.1 Section 26.6 shall apply to the following:

(1) Transmitter located at the protected premises
(2)* Transmission channel between the protected premises and the supervising station or subsidiary station
(3) If used, any subsidiary station and its communications channel
(4) Signal receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising station

26.6.1.2 The minimum signaling requirement shall be an alarm signal, trouble signal, and supervisory signal, where used.

26.6.2 General.

26.6.2.1 Master Control Unit. If the protected premises master control unit is neither integral to nor colocated with the supervising station, the communications methods of Section 26.6 shall be used to connect the protected premises to either a subsidiary station, if used, or a supervising station for central station service in accordance with Section 26.3, proprietary station in accordance with Section 26.4, or remote station in accordance with Section 26.5.

26.6.2.2* Alternate Methods. Nothing in Chapter 26 shall be interpreted as prohibiting the use of listed equipment using alternate communications methods that provide a level of reliability and supervision consistent with the requirements of Chapter 10 and the intended level of protection.

26.6.2.3 Remote Programming of Transmitting Technologies. Remote programming of protected premises transmission technologies covered by 26.6.3, 26.6.4, and 26.6.5 shall be permitted when all the conditions in 26.6.2.3.1 through 26.6.2.3.8 are met.

26.6.2.3.1 A qualified person in accordance with 14.4.2.6 shall be at the protected premises at all times during the remote programming.

26.6.2.3.2 Before remote programming of protected premises transmission technologies occurs, notifications shall be made in accordance with 14.2.4.1.

26.6.2.3.3 A test plan shall be developed in accordance with 14.2.10.

26.6.2.3.4 A mitigation plan shall be initiated by the responsible party for the alarm system, which assigns an individual, or individuals, who will be charged with contacting the communications center in the event that an actual alarm occurs during the remote programming of the transmitting equipment.

26.6.2.3.5 Where the transmission technology is integral to the control unit, reacceptance testing shall occur in accordance with 14.4.2.5 and item 4, Supervising station alarm systems — transmission equipment, in Table 14.4.3.2 when executive software for the transmission technology is changed.

26.6.2.3.6 Where the transmission technology is integral to the control unit, reacceptance testing shall occur in accordance with 14.4.2.4 and item 4, Supervising station alarm systems — transmission equipment, in Table 14.4.3.2 when site-specific software for the transmission technology is changed.

26.6.2.3.7 Where the transmission technology is not integral to the control unit, testing shall occur in accordance with item 4, Supervising station alarm systems — transmission equipment, in Table 14.4.3.2.

26.6.2.3.8 At the conclusion of testing, notifications shall be in accordance with 14.2.4.2.

26.6.2.4* Equipment.

26.6.2.4.1 Alarm system equipment and installations shall comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and regulations, as applicable.

26.6.2.4.2 Equipment shall be installed in compliance with *NFPA 70*.

26.6.2.4.3 The external antennas of all radio transmitting and receiving equipment shall be protected in order to minimize the possibility of damage by static discharge or lightning.

26.6.2.5 Communications Technologies. The communications methods used to transmit signals to supervising stations shall meet the requirements of 26.6.3 for performance-based technologies, or 26.6.4 or 26.6.5 for prescriptive-based technologies.

N **26.6.2.6* Communications Pathway Management.** Any changes to the communications pathway, communications technologies, or communications hardware at the protected premises shall meet all of the following:

(1) The AHJ shall be notified.
(2) Reacceptance testing shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 14.
(3) Documentation shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 7.
(4) Secondary power shall be verified as complying with 26.6.3.13.
(5)* Communications pathways shall be permanently identified, as approved by the AHJ, at each connection point from the FACU to the service provider communications equipment.

26.6.3* Performance-Based Technologies.

26.6.3.1 Conformance. Communications methods operating on principles different from specific methods covered by this chapter shall be permitted to be installed if they conform to the performance requirements of this section and to all other applicable requirements of this Code.

26.6.3.2 Communications Integrity. The integrity of the transmission technology and its communications path shall comply with 26.6.3.2.1 through 26.6.3.2.3.

N **26.6.3.2.1** Acknowledgments to the protected premises for alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals shall only be initiated by the supervising station.

N **26.6.3.2.2** Communications equipment installed at the protected premises shall comply with 26.6.3.2.2.1 and 26.6.3.2.2.2.

N **26.6.3.2.2.1** Premises equipment installed to transmit signals shall be listed for the purpose and comply with the applicable requirements of 26.6.3.

N **26.6.3.2.2.2** Premises equipment initiating signal transmission at the control unit shall be listed independently of the communications technology and be part of the fire alarm system.

N **26.6.3.2.3** Communications service provider equipment installed at the protected premises shall comply with 26.6.3.2.3.1 and 26.6.3.2.3.2.

N **26.6.3.2.3.1** Communications services equipment from communications service providers, including MFVN providers, shall be listed as communications and information technology equipment and comply with applicable requirements of 26.6.3.12 and 26.6.3.13.

N **26.6.3.2.3.2** Communications services equipment from communications service providers complying with 26.6.4.2.1.3 and used to transmit signals shall be listed independently of the communications technology used.

Δ 26.6.3.3 Single Communications Pathway.

N **26.6.3.3.1** A single communications pathway shall be permitted unless prohibited by the AHJ or by governing laws, codes, or standards.

N **26.6.3.3.2** Where a single communications pathway is used, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) The pathway shall be supervised for integrity to ensure end-to-end communications at an interval of not more than 60 minutes.
(2) A failure of the pathway within 60 minutes shall be annunciated in accordance with Section 10.15.

Δ **26.6.3.4 Multiple Communications Pathways.** Where multiple transmission pathways are used, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) Each pathway shall be supervised for integrity to ensure end-to-end communications at an interval of not more than 6 hours.
(2) Multiple communications pathways shall be arranged so that a single point of failure on one pathway does not cause the failure of other pathways.
(3) Failure to complete a signal transmission shall be annunciated in accordance with Section 10.15.

26.6.3.5* Single Technology. A single technology shall be permitted to be used to create the multiple communications pathways if the requirements of 26.6.3.4(1) through 26.6.3.4(3) are met.

26.6.3.6 Spare System Unit Equipment. An inventory of spare equipment shall be maintained at the supervising station such that any failed piece of equipment can be replaced and the systems unit restored to full operation within 30 minutes of failure.

26.6.3.7 Loading Capacity of System Unit.

26.6.3.7.1 The maximum number of independent fire alarm systems connected to a single system unit shall be limited to 512.

26.6.3.7.2 If duplicate spare system units are maintained at the supervising station and switchover can be achieved in 30 seconds, then the system capacity shall be permitted to be unlimited.

26.6.3.8 End-to-End Communication Time for Alarm. The maximum duration between the initiation of an alarm signal at the protected premises, transmission of the signal, and subsequent display and recording of the alarm signal at the supervising station shall not exceed 90 seconds.

26.6.3.9 Unique Identifier. If a transmitter shares a transmission or communications channel with other transmitters, it shall have a unique transmitter identifier.

26.6.3.10 Recording and Display Rate of Subsequent Alarms. Recording and display of alarms at the supervising station shall be at a rate no slower than one complete signal every 10 seconds.

26.6.3.11 Signal Error Detection and Correction.

26.6.3.11.1 Communication of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be in accordance with this section to prevent degradation of the signal in transit, which in turn would result in either of the following:

(1) Failure of the signal to be displayed and recorded at the supervising station
(2) Incorrect corrupted signal displayed and recorded at the supervising station

26.6.3.11.2 Reliability of the signal shall be achieved by any of the following:

(1) Signal repetition — multiple transmissions repeating the same signal
(2) Parity check — a mathematically check sum algorithm of a digital message that verifies correlation between transmitted and received message
(3) An equivalent means to 26.6.3.11.1(1) or 26.6.3.11.1(2) that provides a certainty of 99.99 percent that the received message is identical to the transmitted message

N **26.6.3.11.3*** The integrity and signal reliability of listed communications equipment used for fire alarm signal transmission shall be compatible with the latency and jitter parameters applicable to the communications protocol.

N **26.6.3.11.4** Any communications failure due to latency or jitter conditions shall result in a trouble signal annunciated at the protected premises.

Δ **26.6.3.12 Sharing Communications Equipment On-Premises.**

N **26.6.3.12.1*** Where the fire alarm transmitter is sharing on-premises communications equipment, the shared equipment shall be listed as communications equipment, information technology equipment, or telecommunications equipment.

N **26.6.3.12.2** All shared on-premises communications equipment shall meet the secondary power requirements of 26.6.3.13.

26.6.3.13 Secondary Power.

26.6.3.13.1 Premises Equipment. The secondary power capacity for all transmitters and shared equipment necessary for the transmission of alarm, supervisory, trouble, and other signals located at the protected premises shall be a minimum of 24 hours or as permitted by 10.6.7.3.1(2), 26.6.3.13.1.1, or 26.6.3.13.1.2.

26.6.3.13.1.1 Secondary power capacity for premises equipment shall be permitted to have a minimum capacity of 8 hours where acceptable to the AHJ and where a risk analysis is performed to ensure acceptable availability is provided.

26.6.3.13.1.2* Secondary power capacity for shared and premises equipment used in additional communications paths shall not be required where the first communications path meets the performance requirements of 26.6.3.3.

N **26.6.3.13.1.3** Communications equipment used for transmission of fire alarm signals that receives primary power from the protected premises shall meet the secondary power requirements of 26.6.3.13.

26.6.3.13.2 Supervising Station. Secondary power capacity for all equipment necessary for reception of alarm, supervisory, trouble, and other signals located at the supervising station shall comply with 10.6.7.

26.6.3.14 Unique Flaws Not Covered by This Code. If a communications technology has a unique flaw that could result in the failure to communicate a signal, the implementation of that technology for alarm signaling shall compensate for that flaw so as to eliminate the risk of missing an alarm signal.

26.6.4 Digital Communicator Systems.

26.6.4.1* Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT) Used as a Signaling Interface.

26.6.4.1.1 The requirements of 26.6.4.2 shall not apply when a DACT is used as a signaling interface from a fire alarm control unit to another listed communications means.

26.6.4.1.2 When a DACT is used as a signaling interface from a fire alarm control unit to any other communications means,

the communications means shall meet the requirements of either 26.6.3 or 26.6.5.

26.6.4.2 DACT.

26.6.4.2.1* Managed Facilities-Based Voice Network (MFVN). A DACT shall be connected to a managed facilities-based voice network (MFVN) upstream of any private telephone system at the protected premises.

Δ **26.6.4.2.1.1** The connections to an MFVN shall be under the control of the subscriber for whom service is being provided.

26.6.4.2.1.2 Special attention shall be required to ensure that this MFVN connection is made only to a loop start telephone circuit and not to a ground start telephone circuit.

N **26.6.4.2.1.3*** An MFVN provider (voice or digital) shall be authorized by the regulating authority as a common carrier.

N **26.6.4.2.1.4** Acknowledgments to the protected premises for alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals shall only be initiated by the supervising station.

N **26.6.4.2.1.5** Communication equipment used for transmission of fire alarm signals that receives primary power from the protected premises shall meet the requirements of 26.6.3.13.

26.6.4.2.2 Signal Verification. All information exchanged between the DACT at the protected premises and the digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR) at the supervising or subsidiary station shall comply with 26.6.4.2.2.1 and 26.6.4.2.2.2.

26.6.4.2.2.1 Information exchanged shall be by digital code or some other approved means.

26.6.4.2.2.2 Signal verification shall be by signal repetition, digital parity check, or other approved means.

26.6.4.2.3* Requirements for DACTs.

26.6.4.2.3.1 A DACT shall be configured so that, when it is required to transmit a signal to the supervising station, it shall seize the telephone line (i.e., going off-hook) at the protected premises and disconnect an outgoing or incoming telephone call and prevent use of the telephone line for outgoing telephone calls until signal transmission has been completed. A DACT shall not be connected to a party line telephone facility.

26.6.4.2.3.2 A DACT shall have the following means:

(1) To satisfactorily obtain a dial tone
(2) To dial the number(s) of the DACR
(3) To obtain verification that the DACR is able to receive signals
(4) To transmit the signal
(5) To receive acknowledgment that the DACR has accepted that signal
(6) To not exceed 90 seconds per attempt for the time from going off-hook to on-hook

26.6.4.2.3.3* A DACT shall have means to reset and retry if the first attempt to complete a signal transmission sequence is unsuccessful. A failure to complete connection shall not prevent subsequent attempts to transmit an alarm where such alarm is generated from any other initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit, or both. Additional attempts shall be made until the signal transmission sequence has been completed, up to a minimum of 5 and a maximum of 10 attempts.

26.6.4.2.3.4 If the maximum number of attempts to complete the sequence is reached, an indication of the failure shall be made at the premises.

26.6.4.2.4 Transmission Channels.

26.6.4.2.4.1* A system employing a DACT that uses a single telephone line (number) shall also include one of the following transmission channels:

(1) One-way private radio alarm system
(2) Two-way RF multiplex system
(3) Transmission means complying with 26.6.3
(4) A second telephone line (number), where all of the following conditions are met:
    (a) Access to one of the technologies in 26.6.4.2.4.1(1), 26.6.4.2.4.1(2), or 26.6.4.2.4.1(3) is not available at the protected premises.
    (b) The AHJ approves the arrangement.
    (c) The DACT is programmed to call a second DACR line (number) when the signal transmission sequence to the first called line (number) is unsuccessful.
    (d) The DACT is capable of selecting the operable means of transmission in the event of failure of the other means.
    (e) Each telephone line is tested in accordance with 26.6.4.2.4.2 or at alternating 6-hour intervals.

26.6.4.2.4.2 The following requirements shall apply to all combinations listed in 26.6.4.2.4.1:

(1) The means for supervising each channel shall be in a manner approved for the method of transmission employed.
(2) If a signal has not been processed over the subject channel in the previous 6 hours, a test signal shall be processed.
(3) The failure of either channel shall send a trouble signal on the other channel within 4 minutes.
(4) When one transmission channel has failed, all status change signals shall be sent over the other channel.
(5) The primary channel shall be capable of delivering an indication to the DACT that the message has been received by the supervising station.
(6)* Unless the primary channel is known to have failed, the first attempt to send a status change signal shall use the primary channel.
(7) Simultaneous transmission over both channels shall be permitted.
(8) Failure of telephone lines (numbers) shall be annunciated locally.

26.6.4.2.5 DACT Transmission Means. The following requirements shall apply to all DACTs:

(1) A DACT shall be connected to two separate means of transmission at the protected premises so that a single point of failure on one means of transmission does not affect the second means of transmission.
(2) The DACT shall be capable of selecting the operable means of transmission in the event of failure of the other means.
(3) The primary means of transmission shall be a telephone line (number) connected to a managed facilities-based voice network.
(4)* The first transmission attempt shall utilize the primary means of transmission.

(5) Each DACT shall be programmed to call a second receiver when the signal transmission sequence to the first called line (number) is unsuccessful.
(6) Each transmission means shall automatically initiate and complete a test signal transmission sequence to its associated receiver at least once every 6 hours.
(7) A successful signal transmission sequence of any other type, within the same 6-hour period, shall fulfill the requirement to verify the integrity of the reporting system, provided that signal processing is automated so that 6-hour delinquencies are individually acknowledged by supervising station personnel.
(8)* If a DACT is programmed to call a telephone line (number) that is call forwarded to the line (number) of the DACR, a means shall be implemented to verify the integrity of the call forwarding feature every 4 hours.

26.6.4.3 Digital Alarm Communicator Receiver (DACR).

26.6.4.3.1 Equipment.

26.6.4.3.1.1 Spare DACRs shall be provided in the supervising or subsidiary station.

26.6.4.3.1.2 Spare DACRs shall be online or able to be switched into the place of a failed unit within 30 seconds after detection of failure.

26.6.4.3.1.3 One spare DACR shall be permitted to serve as a backup for up to five DACRs in use.

Δ **26.6.4.3.1.4** The number of incoming telephone lines to a DACR shall be limited to eight lines.

N **26.6.4.3.1.5** The number of incoming telephone lines shall be permitted to be unlimited provided the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station is duplicated and a switchover is able to be accomplished in less than 30 seconds with no loss of signal during this period.

26.6.4.3.2 Transmission Channels.

26.6.4.3.2.1* The DACR equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station shall be connected to a minimum of two separate incoming telephone lines (numbers).

Δ **26.6.4.3.2.2** The lines (numbers) shall have the following characteristics:

(1) If the lines (numbers) are in a single hunt group, they shall be individually accessible.
(2) Should the lines (numbers) not be individually accessible, separate hunt groups shall be required.
(3) The lines (numbers) shall be used for no other purpose than receiving signals from a DACT.
(4) The lines (numbers) shall be unlisted.

26.6.4.3.2.3 The failure of any telephone line (number) connected to a DACR due to loss of line voltage shall be annunciated visually and audibly in the supervising station.

26.6.4.3.2.4* The loading capacity for a hunt group shall be capable of demonstrating a 90 percent probability of immediately answering an incoming call or be in accordance with Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 and the following:

(1) Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 shall be based on an average distribution of calls and an average connected time of 30 seconds for a message.
(2) The loading figures in Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 shall presume that the lines are in a hunt group (i.e., DACT is able to access any line not in use).
(3) A single-line DACR shall not be allowed for any of the configurations shown in Table 26.6.4.3.2.4.

Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 Loading Capacities for Hunt Groups

System Loading at the Supervising Station	Number of Lines in Hunt Group				
	1	2	3	4	5–8
With DACR lines processed in parallel					
Number of initiating circuits	NA	5,000	10,000	20,000	20,000
Number of DACTs	NA	500	1,500	3,000	3,000
With DACR lines processed serially (put on hold, then answered one at a time)					
Number of initiating circuits	NA	3,000	5,000	6,000	6,000
Number of DACTs	NA	300	800	1,000	1,000

NA: Not allowed.

26.6.4.3.2.5 Each supervised burglar alarm (open/close) or each suppressed guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable DACTs as follows:

(1) Up to a four-line hunt group, by 10
(2) Up to a five-line hunt group, by 7
(3) Up to a six-line hunt group, by 6
(4) Up to a seven-line hunt group, by 5
(5) Up to an eight-line hunt group, by 4

26.6.4.3.2.6 Each guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable DACTs as follows:

(1) Up to a four-line hunt group, by 30
(2) Up to a five-line hunt group, by 21
(3) Up to a six-line hunt group, by 18
(4) Up to a seven-line hunt group, by 15
(5) Up to an eight-line hunt group, by 12

26.6.4.3.2.7 A signal shall be received on each individual incoming DACR line at least once every 6 hours.

26.6.4.3.2.8 The failure to receive a test signal from the protected premises shall be treated as a trouble signal.

26.6.5 Radio Systems.

26.6.5.1 Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems.

Δ **26.6.5.1.1 Maximum Operating Time.** The maximum end-to-end operating time parameters allowed for a two-way RF multiplex system shall be as follows:

(1) For a time lapse from initiation, both of the following shall apply:
    (a) The maximum allowable time lapse from the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station shall not exceed 90 seconds.

(b) When any number of subsequent alarm signals occur at any rate, they shall be recorded at a rate no slower than one every additional 10 seconds.

(2) For a time lapse from the occurrence, both of the following shall apply:

(a) The maximum allowable time lapse from the occurrence of an adverse condition in any transmission channel until recording of the adverse condition is started shall not exceed 200 seconds for Type 4 and Type 5 systems.

(b) The requirements of 26.6.5.1.4 shall apply.

(3) In addition to the maximum operating time allowed for alarm signals, the requirements of one of the following shall be met:

(a) A system unit that has more than 500 initiating device circuits shall be able to record not less than 50 simultaneous status changes within 90 seconds.

(b) A system unit that has fewer than 500 initiating device circuits shall be able to record not less than 10 percent of the total number of simultaneous status changes within 90 seconds.

Δ 26.6.5.1.2 Supervisory and Control Functions.

***N* 26.6.5.1.2.1** Facilities shall be provided at the supervising station for the following supervisory and control functions of the supervising or subsidiary station and the repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment:

(1) RF transmitter in use (radiating)
(2) Failure of ac power supplying the radio equipment
(3) RF receiver malfunction
(4) Indication of automatic switchover
(5) Independent deactivation of either RF transmitter controlled from the supervising station

***N* 26.6.5.1.2.2** Where the radio equipment is remotely located from the system unit, supervisory and control functions of the supervising or subsidiary station and the repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment shall be accomplished via a supervised circuit.

26.6.5.1.3 Transmission Channel.

26.6.5.1.3.1 The RF multiplex transmission channel shall terminate in an RF transmitter/receiver at the protected premises and in a system unit at the supervising or subsidiary station.

26.6.5.1.3.2 Operation of the transmission channel shall conform to the requirements of this Code whether channels are private facilities, such as microwave, or leased facilities furnished by a communications utility company.

26.6.5.1.3.3 If private signal transmission facilities are used, the equipment necessary to transmit signals shall also comply with requirements for duplicate equipment or replacement of critical components, as described in 26.6.6.3.

26.6.5.1.4* Categories. Two-way RF multiplex systems shall be divided into Type 4 or Type 5 classifications based on their ability to perform under adverse conditions.

26.6.5.1.4.1 A Type 4 system shall have two or more control sites configured as follows:

(1) Each site shall have an RF receiver interconnected to the supervising or subsidiary station by a separate channel.

(2) The RF transmitter/receiver located at the protected premises shall be within transmission range of at least two RF receiving sites.

(3) The system shall contain two RF transmitters that are one of the following:

(a) Located at one site with the capability of interrogating all of the RF transmitters/receivers on the premises

(b) Dispersed with all of the RF transmitters/receivers on the premises having the capability to be interrogated by two different RF transmitters

(4) Each RF transmitter shall operate as follows:

(a) Maintain a status that allows immediate use at all times.

(b) Provide facilities in the supervising or subsidiary station to operate any off-line RF transmitter at least once every 8 hours.

(5) The Type 4 system shall operate as follows:

(a) Failure of one of the RF receivers shall not interfere with the operation of the system from the other RF receiver.

(b) Failure of any receiver shall be annunciated at the supervising station.

(6) A physically separate channel shall be required between each RF transmitter or RF receiver site, or both, and the system unit.

26.6.5.1.4.2 A Type 5 system shall have a single control site configured as follows:

(1) A minimum of one RF receiving site
(2) A minimum of one RF transmitting site

26.6.5.1.5 Loading Capacities.

26.6.5.1.5.1 The loading capacities of two-way RF multiplex systems shall be based on the overall reliability of the signal receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station and the capability to transmit signals during adverse conditions of the transmission channels.

26.6.5.1.5.2 Allowable loading capacities shall comply with Table 26.6.5.1.5.2.

26.6.5.1.5.3 The capacity of a system unit shall be permitted to be unlimited if the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment are duplicated at the supervising station and a switchover is able to be accomplished in not more than 30 seconds, with no loss of signals during this period.

26.6.5.1.6 Adverse Conditions.

26.6.5.1.6.1 The occurrence of an adverse condition on the transmission channel between a protected premises and the supervising station that prevents the transmission of any status change signal shall be automatically indicated and recorded at the supervising station.

26.6.5.1.6.2 The indication and recording of the adverse condition shall identify the affected portions of the system so that the supervising station operator will be able to determine the location of the adverse condition by trunk or leg facility, or both.

26.6.5.1.6.3 For two-way RF multiplex systems that are part of a central station alarm system, restoration of service to the affected portions of the system shall be automatically recorded.

Table 26.6.5.1.5.2 Loading Capacities for Two-Way RF Multiplex Systems

Trunks	System Type	
	Type 4	Type 5
Maximum number of alarm service initiating device circuits per primary trunk facility	5,120	1,280
Maximum number of leg facilities for alarm service per primary trunk facility	512	128
Maximum number of leg facilities for all types of alarm service per secondary trunk facility*	128	128
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per primary trunk facility in any combination	10,240	2,560
Maximum number of leg facilities for types of alarm service per primary trunk facility in any combination*	1,024	256
System Units at the Supervising Station		
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per system unit*	10,240	10,240
Maximum number of protected buildings and premises per system unit	512	512
Maximum number of alarm service initiating device circuits per system	5,120	5,120
Systems Emitting from Subsidiary Station†	—	—

*Includes every initiating device circuit (e.g., waterflow, alarm, supervisory, guard, burglary, hold-up).
†Same as system units at the supervising station.

26.6.5.1.6.4 When service is restored to a two-way RF multiplex system, the first status change of any initiating device circuit, any initiating device directly connected to a signaling line circuit, or any combination thereof that occurred at any of the affected premises during the service interruption also shall be recorded.

Δ 26.6.5.2* One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems.

N **26.6.5.2.1** A one-way private radio system shall be in accordance with 26.6.5.2.2 or 26.6.5.2.3 through 26.6.5.2.9.

N **26.6.5.2.2** A wireless mesh network (WMN) shall utilize listed components.

26.6.5.2.3 Independent Receivers.

26.6.5.2.3.1 The requirements of 26.6.5.2 for a radio alarm repeater station receiver (RARSR) shall be satisfied if the signals from each radio alarm transmitter (RAT) are received and supervised, in accordance with Chapter 26, by at least two independently powered, independently operating, and separately located RARSRs or radio alarm supervising station receivers (RASSRs), or by one of each.

26.6.5.2.3.2 At least two separate paths shall be provided from a RAT to the ultimate RASSR.

26.6.5.2.3.3 Only one path to the RASSR shall be required to be utilized in the event alarms can be transmitted from a RAT to the RASSR and the RAT has the ability to receive a positive acknowledgment that the RASSR has received the signal.

26.6.5.2.4* Maximum Operating Time. The end-to-end operating time parameters allowed for a one-way radio alarm system shall be as follows:

(1) There shall be a 90 percent probability that the time between the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station will not exceed 90 seconds.
(2) There shall be a 99 percent probability that the time between the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station will not exceed 180 seconds.
(3) There shall be a 99.999 percent probability that the time between the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station will not exceed 7.5 minutes (450 seconds).
(4) The RAT shall cease transmitting at 7.5 minutes (450 seconds) after initiation of an alarm signal.
(5) When any number of subsequent alarm signals occurs at any rate, they shall be recorded at an average rate no slower than one every additional 10 seconds.
(6) In addition to the maximum operating time allowed for alarm signals, the system shall be able to record not less than 12 simultaneous status changes within 90 seconds at the supervising station.
(7) The system shall be supervised to ensure that at least two independent RARSRs or one RARSR and one independent RASSR are receiving signals for each RAT during each 24-hour period.

26.6.5.2.5 Supervision.

26.6.5.2.5.1 Equipment shall be provided at the supervising station for the supervisory and control functions of the supervising or subsidiary station and for the repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment.

26.6.5.2.5.2 A supervised circuit shall be provided where the radio equipment is remotely located from the system unit and the conditions of 26.6.5.2.5.2(A) through 26.6.5.2.5.2(C) are met.

(A) The following conditions shall be supervised at the supervising station:

(1) Failure of ac power supplying the radio equipment
(2) Malfunction of RF receiver
(3) Indication of automatic switchover, if applicable

(B) Interconnections between elements of transmitting equipment, including any antennas, shall be supervised either to cause an indication of failure at the protected premises or to transmit a trouble signal to the supervising station.

(C) Personnel shall be dispatched to arrive within 12 hours to initiate maintenance after detection of primary power failure.

26.6.5.2.6 Transmission Channels. Transmission channels shall comply with 26.6.5.2.6.1 through 26.6.5.2.6.7.

Δ **26.6.5.2.6.1** The one-way RF transmission channel shall originate with a RAT at the protected premises and terminate at the RF receiving system of an RARSR or RASSR capable of receiving transmissions from such transmitting devices.

26.6.5.2.6.2 A receiving network transmission channel shall terminate at an RARSR at one end and with either another RARSR or an RASSR at the other end.

26.6.5.2.6.3 Operation of receiving network transmission channels shall conform to the requirements of this Code whether channels are private facilities, such as microwave, or leased facilities furnished by a communications utility company.

26.6.5.2.6.4 If private signal transmission facilities are used, the equipment necessary to transmit signals shall also comply with requirements for duplicate equipment or replacement of critical components as described in 26.6.6.3.

Δ **26.6.5.2.6.5** The system shall provide information that indicates the quality of the received signal for each RARSR supervising each RAT in accordance with 26.6.5.2.

N **26.6.5.2.6.6** The system shall provide information at the supervising station when such signal quality falls below the minimum signal quality levels set forth in 26.6.5.2.

26.6.5.2.6.7 Each RAT shall be installed in such a manner so as to provide a signal quality over at least two independent one-way RF transmission channels, of the minimum quality level specified, that satisfies the performance requirements in 26.6.2.4 and 26.6.6.

26.6.5.2.7 System Categories. One-way radio alarm systems shall be divided into two categories on the basis of the following number of RASSRs present in the system:

(1) A Type 6 system shall have one RASSR and at least two RARSRs.
(2) A Type 7 system shall have more than one RASSR and at least two RARSRs.
(3) In a Type 7 system, when more than one RARSR is out of service and, as a result, any RATs are no longer being supervised, the affected supervising station shall be notified.
(4) In a Type 6 system, when any RARSR is out of service, a trouble signal shall be annunciated at the supervising station.

26.6.5.2.8 Loading Capacities.

26.6.5.2.8.1 The loading capacities of one-way radio alarm systems shall be based on the overall reliability of the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station and the capability to transmit signals during adverse conditions of the transmission channels.

26.6.5.2.8.2 Loading capacities shall comply with 26.6.5.2.8.2(A) and 26.6.5.2.8.2(B).

(A) Allowable loading capacities shall be in accordance with Table 26.6.5.2.8.2(A), except as modified by the following:

(1) Each guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable RATs by 15.
(2) Each supervised burglar alarm (open/close) or each suppressed guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable RATs by 5.

(B) If the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment is duplicated at the supervising station and a switchover is able to be accomplished in not more than 30 seconds, with no loss of signals during this period, the capacity of a system unit shall be permitted to be unlimited.

Table 26.6.5.2.8.2(A) Loading Capacities of One-Way Radio Alarm Systems

Radio Alarm Repeater Station Receiver (RARSR)	System Type	
	Type 6	Type 7
Maximum number of fire alarm service initiating device circuits per RARSR	5,120	5,120
Maximum number of RATs for fire	512	512
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per RARSR in any combination*	10,240	10,240
Maximum number of RATs for all types of fire alarm service per RARSR in any combination*	1,024	1,024
System Units at the Supervising Station		
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per system unit*	10,240	10,240
Maximum number of fire-protected buildings and premises per system unit	512	512
Maximum number of fire alarm service initiating device circuits per system unit	5,120	5,120

*Includes every initiating device circuit (e.g., waterflow, fire alarm, supervisory, guard, burglary, hold-up).

26.6.5.2.9 Adverse Conditions. The system shall be supervised to ensure that at least two independent radio alarm repeater station receivers (RARSRs) are receiving signals for each radio alarm transmitter (RAT) during each 24-hour period.

26.6.5.2.9.1 The occurrence of a failure to receive a signal by either RARSR shall be automatically indicated and recorded at the supervising station.

26.6.5.2.9.2 The indication shall identify which RARSR failed to receive such supervisory signals.

26.6.5.2.9.3 Received test signals shall not be required to be indicated at the supervising station.

• **26.6.6 Display and Recording Requirements for All Transmission Technologies.**

26.6.6.1* Any status changes, including the initiation or restoration to normal of a trouble condition, that occur in an initiating device or in any interconnecting circuits or equipment, including the local protected premises controls from the location of the initiating device(s) to the supervising station, shall be presented in a form to expedite prompt operator interpretation.

26.6.6.2 Status change signals shall provide the following information:

(1) Identification of the type of signal to show whether it is an alarm, supervisory, delinquency, or trouble signal
(2) Identification of the signal to differentiate between an initiation of an alarm, a supervisory, a delinquency, or a

trouble signal and a clearing from one or more of these conditions

(3) Identification of the site of origin of each status change signal

(4)* Identification of specific types of signals that dictate a different response

26.6.6.3* If duplicate equipment for signal receiving, processing, display, and recording is not provided for supervising stations other than proprietary station systems, the installed equipment shall be designed so that any critical assembly is able to be replaced from on-premises spares.

26.6.6.4* The system shall be able to be restored to service within 30 minutes.

Δ **26.6.6.5*** Any method of recording and display or indication of change of status signals shall be permitted, provided that the status signals are not test signals required by 26.6.4.2.5 at a DACR and all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Each change of status signal requiring action to be taken by the operator shall result in an audible signal and not less than two independent methods of identifying the type, condition, and location of the status change.

(2) Each change of status signal shall be automatically recorded in a manner that includes the time and date the signal was received and the type of signal, condition, and location, as required by 26.6.6.1.

(3) Failure of an operator to acknowledge or act upon a change of status signal shall not prevent subsequent alarm signals from being received, indicated or displayed, and recorded.

(4) Change of status signals requiring action to be taken by the operator shall be displayed or indicated in a manner that clearly differentiates them from those that have been acted upon and acknowledged.

(5) Each incoming signal to a DACR shall cause an audible signal that persists until manually acknowledged.

26.6.7 Testing and Maintenance Requirements for All Transmission Technologies. Testing and maintenance of communications methods shall be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

Chapter 27 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems

27.1 Application.

27.1.1 The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the proper configuration, performance, installation, and operation of public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems.

27.1.1.1 Public emergency alarm reporting systems shall consist of alarm boxes, other signal initiating devices or technologies, and alarm processing equipment that communicate on a wired or wireless network(s), one-way or two-way, meeting the requirements of this chapter.

27.1.1.2 Public emergency alarm reporting systems shall include systems that use a communications infrastructure that is publicly owned, operated, and controlled or where public emergency alarm reporting systems and equipment are used in other applications.

27.1.2 The installation and use of public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

27.1.3 The requirements of this chapter shall apply to systems and equipment for the transmission and reception of alarm and other emergency signals, including those from auxiliary alarm systems, connected to the public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.1.4 The requirements of Chapters 10, 11, and 14 shall apply unless otherwise noted in this chapter.

27.1.5 Only those requirements from Chapter 7 that are required by Chapter 14 shall apply.

27.1.6 The application of public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems to provide defined reporting functions from or within private premises shall be permitted where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.1.7* Where a protected premises fire alarm system or other emergency system at the protected premises has its signals sent to a communications center via public emergency alarm reporting system, the protected premises system shall become an auxiliary alarm system.

27.2 General.

27.2.1* Public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be designed, installed, operated, and maintained in accordance with this chapter to provide reliable transmission and receipt of alarms in a manner acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

27.2.2 A public emergency alarm reporting system, as described herein, shall be permitted to be used for the transmission of other signals or calls of a public emergency nature, provided that such transmission does not interfere with the transmission and receipt of fire alarms.

27.2.3* All devices shall be designed to function satisfactorily under the climatic and environmental conditions to which they could be exposed.

27.2.3.1 All devices shall be identified as suitable for the location and conditions for which they are installed.

27.2.4 All circuits, paths, and equipment necessary for the receipt of signals from a protected premises shall be monitored for integrity.

27.3 Management and Maintenance.

27.3.1 All systems shall be under the control of a designated jurisdictional employee.

27.3.2 Maintenance by an organization or person other than from the jurisdiction or an employee of the jurisdiction shall be by written contract, guaranteeing performance acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

27.3.3 Where maintenance is provided by an organization or person(s) other than the jurisdiction or its employees, complete written records of the installation, maintenance, test, and extension of the system shall be forwarded to the designated employee in a time period and manner approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.3.4 All equipment shall be installed in locations accessible to the authority having jurisdiction for the purpose of maintenance and inspection.

27.3.5 Records of wired public emergency alarm reporting system circuits shall include all of the following:

(1) Outline plans showing terminals and box sequence
(2) Diagrams of applicable office wiring
(3) List of materials used, including trade name, manufacturer, and year of purchase or installation

27.3.6 Public emergency alarm reporting systems as defined in this chapter shall, in their entirety, be subject to a complete operational acceptance test upon completion of system installation.

Δ **27.3.6.1** The test(s) required by 27.3.6 shall be made in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

N **27.3.6.1.1** In no case shall the operational functions tested be less than those stipulated in Chapter 14.

27.3.6.2 Operational acceptance tests shall be performed on any alarm-reporting devices, as covered in this chapter, that are installed or modified subsequent to the test required by 27.3.6.

27.3.7 Personnel Qualification. Personnel shall be qualified and experienced in accordance with the requirements of 10.5.6.

27.4 Communications Methods.

27.4.1 Application.

27.4.1.1 A public emergency alarm reporting system shall include wired or wireless network(s), for one-way signaling or two-way command and control communications between alarm boxes, alarm processing equipment, and the communications center.

27.4.1.2 A public emergency alarm reporting system shall be permitted to be used with emergency communications systems covered under Chapter 24.

27.4.2 Wired Network(s). The terms *wired network* and *public cable plant* shall be considered the same and interchangeable throughout this chapter.

27.4.2.1 All wired networks or public cable plants shall meet the requirements of Section 27.7.

27.4.2.1.1 Fiber-optic cabling shall be considered an acceptable transmission medium, provided that the cabling and installation comply with the requirements of Section 27.7 and the conversion equipment used to interface to the fiber-optic signal complies with all applicable requirements of Chapter 27.

27.4.2.2 Alarm processing equipment at the communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.5.2 and 27.5.4.

27.4.2.3 Alarm processing equipment at a remote communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.4.2.2 and 27.5.3.

27.4.2.4 Alarm boxes shall meet one of the following requirements:

(1) Publicly accessible boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1, 27.6.2, and 27.6.5.
(2) Auxiliary boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1, 27.6.3, and 27.6.5.
(3) Master boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1 through 27.6.3 and 27.6.5.

27.4.3 Wireless Network(s). The terms *wireless network* and *radio system* shall be considered the same and interchangeable throughout this chapter.

27.4.3.1 All wireless networks shall meet the requirements of 27.4.3.2 through 27.4.3.5.

27.4.3.2 In addition to the requirements of this Code, all wireless equipment shall be designed and operated in compliance with all applicable rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) or, where required, the National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA).

27.4.3.3* Unlicensed radio frequencies shall not be permitted.

27.4.3.4 Fire alarm signals, other emergency alarm signals, and monitoring for integrity signals shall be permitted on the same radio frequency, dedicated for that purpose.

27.4.3.5 The wireless network capacity for the number of alarm boxes permitted on a single radio frequency shall comply with one of the following:

(1) For networks that use one-way radio communications, not more than 500 alarm boxes are permitted on a single radio frequency.
(2) For networks that use two-way radio communications, not more than 250 alarm boxes are permitted on a single radio frequency.
(3) For networks that use two-way radio communications where a radio frequency that differs from that used for receipt of alarms is used for responses, not more than 500 alarm boxes are permitted on a single radio frequency.

27.4.3.6 Alarm processing equipment at the communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.5.2 and 27.5.5.

27.4.3.7 Alarm processing equipment at a remote communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.4.3.6 and 27.5.3.

27.4.3.8 Alarm boxes shall meet one of the following requirements:

(1) Publicly accessible boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1, 27.6.2, and 27.6.6.
(2) Auxiliary boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1, 27.6.3, and 27.6.6.
(3) Master boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1 through 27.6.3 and 27.6.6.

27.5 Alarm Processing Equipment. The alarm processing equipment required to receive and control the public emergency alarm reporting system shall be installed in the communications center or remote communications center used by emergency response agencies as defined in NFPA 1225.

27.5.1 General. The requirements of 27.5.2 shall apply to all processing equipment, wired or wireless, for a public emergency alarm reporting network.

27.5.2 Alarm Processing Equipment at Communications Center.

27.5.2.1 Type A and Type B Systems.

27.5.2.1.1 Alarm systems shall be Type A or Type B.

27.5.2.1.2 A Type A system shall be provided where the number of all alarms required to be retransmitted exceeds 2500 per year.

27.5.2.1.3 Where a Type A system is required, the automatic electronic retransmission of incoming alarms shall be permitted, provided that both of the following conditions are met:

(1) Approved facilities are provided for the automatic receipt, storage, retrieval, and retransmission of alarms in the order received.
(2) The operator(s) of the dispatch facility has the capability to immediately override the automatic retransmission and revert to manual retransmission.

27.5.2.1.4 A Type B system shall be permitted where the number of alarms from alarm boxes is 2500 or less per year provided the following conditions are met:

(1) Alarms from alarm boxes are automatically transmitted to an emergency response facility where approved equipment is provided for the automatic receipt, storage, and retrieval of alarms.
(2) Audible and visual alerting devices are provided at the emergency communications center and the emergency response facility.
(3) All circuits and pathways used for alarm receiving and alerting equipment are monitored for integrity between the emergency communications center and the emergency response facility.
(4) Audible and visual trouble signals are provided at both the emergency communications center and the emergency response facility to indicate the failure of the circuit or pathway.

27.5.2.2 Visual Recording Devices.

27.5.2.2.1 Alarms from alarm boxes shall be automatically received and recorded at the communications center.

27.5.2.2.2 A device for producing a permanent graphic recording of all alarm, supervisory, trouble, and test signals received or retransmitted, or both, shall be provided at each communications center for each alarm circuit and tie circuit.

27.5.2.2.3 Reserve recording devices shall be provided in accordance with 27.5.2.2.3.1 and 27.5.2.2.3.2.

27.5.2.2.3.1 Where each circuit is served by a dedicated recording device, the number of reserve recording devices required on-site shall be equal to at least 5 percent of the circuits in service and in no case less than one device.

27.5.2.2.3.2 Where two or more circuits are served by a common recording device, a reserve recording device shall be provided on-site for each circuit connected to a common recorder.

Δ **27.5.2.2.4** Type B wired systems shall comply with the following:

(1) One recording device shall be installed in each emergency response facility.
(2) At least one recording device shall be installed in the communications center.

27.5.2.2.5 Permanent visual records shall comply with 27.5.2.2.5.1 and 27.5.2.2.5.2.

27.5.2.2.5.1 A permanent visual record and an audible signal shall be required to indicate the receipt of an alarm.

27.5.2.2.5.2 The permanent record shall indicate the exact location from which the alarm is being transmitted.

27.5.2.2.6 The audible signal device shall be permitted to be common to two or more box circuits and arranged so that the emergency alarm operator is able to manually silence the signal temporarily by a self-restoring switch.

27.5.2.2.7 Facilities shall be provided with a device that automatically records the date and time of receipt of each alarm.

27.5.2.3 System Integrity.

27.5.2.3.1 Wired circuits upon which transmission and receipt of alarms depend shall be constantly monitored for integrity to provide prompt warning of conditions adversely affecting reliability.

27.5.2.3.2 The power supplied to all required circuits and devices of the system shall be constantly monitored for integrity.

27.5.2.4 Trouble Signals.

27.5.2.4.1 Trouble signals shall be indicated where there is a trained and competent person on duty at all times.

27.5.2.4.2 Trouble signals shall meet the following:

(1) Be distinct from alarm signals
(2) Be indicated visually
(3) Be indicated audibly

27.5.2.4.3 The audible signal shall be permitted to be common to more than one circuit that is monitored for integrity.

27.5.2.4.4 A switch for silencing the audible trouble signal shall be permitted, provided that the visual signal remains operating until the silencing switch is restored to its normal position.

27.5.2.4.5 The audible signal shall be responsive to faults on any other circuits that occur prior to restoration of the silencing switch to its normal position.

27.5.2.5 Power Supply.

27.5.2.5.1 Each box circuit or wireless receiving system shall be powered by one of the following:

(1)* Form 4A, which is an inverter, powered from a common rectifier, receiving power by a single source of alternating current with a floating storage battery having a 24-hour standby capacity
(2)* Form 4B, which is an inverter, powered from a common rectifier, receiving power from two sources of alternating current with a floating storage battery having a 4-hour standby capacity

27.5.2.5.2 Form 4A and Form 4B shall be permitted to distribute the system load between two or more common rectifiers and batteries.

27.5.2.5.3 The capacity of batteries, motor generators, rectifiers, or other permitted power supplies shall exceed the calculated load of all connected circuits, so that circuits developing grounds or crosses with other circuits each shall be able to be supplied by an independent source to the extent required by 27.5.2.5.1.

27.5.2.5.4 Provision shall be made to connect any circuit to any battery, generator, or rectifier, or other permitted power supply.

27.5.2.5.5 Individual circuits supplied from common leads shall be protected by the installation of enclosed fuses located at the point where the circuit conductors receive their supply.

27.5.2.5.6 Local circuits at communications centers shall be supplied in accordance with 27.5.2.5.6.1 and 27.5.2.5.6.2.

27.5.2.5.6.1 The source of power for local circuits required to operate the essential features of the system shall be monitored for integrity.

27.5.2.5.6.2 Local circuits at communications centers shall be permitted to be connected to the same power source as box circuits, wireless receiving system circuits, or a separate power source.

27.5.2.5.7 Visual and audible means to indicate a 15 percent or greater reduction of normal power supply (rated voltage) shall be provided.

27.5.2.5.8 Where the electrical service/capacity of the equipment required under Section 12.8 of NFPA 1225 satisfies the needs of equipment in this chapter, such equipment shall not be required to be duplicated.

27.5.2.6 Rectifiers, Converters, Inverters, and Motor Generators.

27.5.2.6.1 Rectifiers shall be supplied from the secondary of an isolating transformer.

27.5.2.6.1.1 The primary of the isolating transformer shall be connected to a circuit not exceeding 250 volts.

27.5.2.6.2 Complete spare units or spare parts shall be in reserve.

27.5.2.6.3 Systems with at least one rectifier shall comply with 27.5.2.6.3.1 and 27.5.2.6.3.2.

27.5.2.6.3.1 One spare rectifier shall be provided for every 10 operating rectifiers on a system.

27.5.2.6.3.2 All systems shall have at least one spare rectifier.

27.5.2.6.4 Leads from rectifiers or motor generators that have a float-charged battery shall be protected by fuses rated at a minimum of 1 ampere and a maximum of 200 percent of connected load at nominal circuit voltage.

27.5.2.6.5 Leads from rectifiers or motor generators that do not have a float-charged battery shall be protected by fuses rated at a minimum of 3 amperes and a maximum of 200 percent of connected load at nominal circuit voltage.

27.5.2.7 Engine-Driven Generators. The installation of engine-driven generator sets shall conform to the provisions of NFPA 37, NFPA 110, and NFPA 1225.

27.5.2.8 Float-Charged Batteries.

Δ **27.5.2.8.1** Float-charged batteries shall be of the storage type.

N **27.5.2.8.1.1** Primary batteries (i.e., dry cells) shall not be used.

27.5.2.8.1.2 Vented lead-acid batteries shall be in approved transparent materials.

27.5.2.8.1.3 Other types of batteries shall be in containers identified or approved for the purpose.

27.5.2.8.2 Float-charged batteries shall be above building grade level.

27.5.2.8.3 Float-charged batteries shall be located on the same floor of the building as the operating equipment.

27.5.2.8.4 Float-charged batteries shall be accessible for maintenance and inspection.

27.5.2.8.5 Float-charged batteries shall be installed in accordance with Article 480 of *NFPA 70*.

27.5.2.8.6 Overcurrent protection shall be provided and arranged such that the intentional or unintentional opening of the overcurrent devices between either the batteries or rectifiers does not render the public emergency alarm reporting system inoperable.

27.5.2.8.7 Batteries shall be mounted to provide effective isolation from the ground or working platform and from other batteries.

27.5.2.8.7.1 Mounting equipment shall be listed and identified for the location.

27.5.2.8.7.2 It shall be permissible for the authority having jurisdiction to waive this requirement to allow the use of alternative mounting equipment where it is assured that equivalent objectives can be achieved.

Δ **27.5.2.8.8** The battery mounting shall be protected against deterioration.

N **27.5.2.8.9** The battery mounting shall provide stability, especially in geographic areas subject to seismic disturbance.

27.5.2.9 Equipment Fire Protection. Where applicable, electronic computer/data processing equipment shall be protected in accordance with NFPA 75.

27.5.3* Remote Communications Center. Where the communications center is remotely located from the wired or wireless alarm processing equipment, the requirements of 27.5.3.1 through 27.5.3.7, in addition to all of the requirements of Section 27.5, shall apply.

Δ **27.5.3.1 Equipment Use and Listing.**

N **27.5.3.1.1** All equipment shall be listed for its intended use.

N **27.5.3.1.2** All equipment shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

27.5.3.2 Alarm processing equipment located remote from the communications center shall be capable of providing basic dispatching information independent of the communications center.

Δ **27.5.3.3 Alarm Processing Equipment.**

N **27.5.3.3.1** The alarm processing equipment shall be located where it can be monitored for alarm and trouble conditions.

N **27.5.3.3.2** The alarm processing equipment shall be accessible to be manned in case of a pathway or communications failure with the communications center.

27.5.3.4 Wired or wireless alarm repeating systems used to repeat signals between a remote communications center and the alarm processing equipment location shall meet the requirements of 27.5.3.4.1 through 27.5.3.4.7.

27.5.3.4.1 There shall be a minimum of two complete and independent alarm repeater systems, including batteries and power supplies, to provide redundancy.

27.5.3.4.2 If the alarm repeater system is configured with one alarm repeater in standby mode, the system shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be capable of detecting a communications failure
(2) Automatically switch to the backup system without interruption or loss of any alarm or trouble transmission

27.5.3.4.3 Alarm repeater systems shall not be used for any purpose other than alarm communications between the communications center and the alarm processing equipment.

27.5.3.4.4 Wireless alarm repeaters shall operate on a licensed frequency dedicated for this purpose.

27.5.3.4.4.1 Wireless alarm repeaters shall be licensed to a public entity.

27.5.3.4.4.2 Unlicensed frequencies shall not be permitted.

27.5.3.4.5 The communications method used for the alarm repeater, wired or wireless, shall be two-way.

27.5.3.4.6 The public emergency alarm reporting system communications infrastructure shall be used to repeat alarm and trouble signals between the alarm processing equipment and a remote communications center.

Δ **27.5.3.4.7** Where it is not possible to use the public emergency alarm reporting system communications infrastructure to provide communications between the alarm processing equipment and the remote communications center, an alternative repeater method meeting the following shall be permitted:

(1) The method shall be publicly owned, operated, and controlled.
(2) The method shall meet the requirements of 27.5.3, with the exception of 27.5.3.4.2.

•

27.5.3.5 Pathways between the remote communications center and the alarm processing equipment shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be monitored for integrity
(2) Be dedicated and not used for any other purpose

27.5.3.6 When communications between the communications center and the alarm processing equipment fails, the requirements of 27.5.3.6.1 through 27.5.3.6.3 shall apply.

27.5.3.6.1 A pathway or communications trouble condition shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be detected and annunciated at both the communications center and the alarm processing equipment location within 200 seconds
(2) Meet the requirements of 27.5.2.4

27.5.3.6.2 Visual and audible trouble alarm indications pertaining to a pathway or communications failure between the communications center and the alarm processing equipment location shall be distinct from all other trouble alarms.

27.5.3.6.3 The alarm processing equipment shall be manned by trained personnel until communications can be reestablished.

27.5.3.7 Power supplies shall be provided in accordance with 27.5.2.5.

27.5.4 Wired Network Systems.

27.5.4.1 System Arrangement and Operation.

27.5.4.1.1 For a Type B system, the effectiveness of noninterference and succession functions between box circuits shall be no less than between boxes in any one circuit.

27.5.4.1.2 A metallic box open circuit condition shall cause a warning signal in all other circuits, and, thereafter, the circuit(s) not in the open circuit condition shall be automatically restored to operative condition.

27.5.4.1.3 Box circuits shall be sufficient in number and laid out so that the areas that would be left without box protection in case of disruption of a circuit do not exceed those covered by 20 properly spaced boxes where all or any part of the circuit is of aerial open-wire, or by 30 properly spaced boxes where the circuit is entirely in underground or messenger-supported cable.

27.5.4.1.4 Where all boxes on any individual circuit and associated equipment are designed and installed to provide for receipt of alarms through the ground in the event of a break in the circuit, the circuit shall be permitted to serve twice the number of aerial open-wire and cable circuits, respectively, as are specified in 27.5.4.1.3.

27.5.4.1.5 The installation of additional boxes in an area served by the number of boxes spaced as indicated in 27.5.4.1.1 through 27.5.4.1.4 shall not constitute geographical overloading of a circuit.

27.5.4.1.6 Sounding devices for signals shall be provided for box circuits.

27.5.4.1.6.1 Where multiple circuits of a Type A system are used, a common sounding device shall be permitted at the communications center.

27.5.4.1.6.2 In a Type B system, a sounding device shall be installed as follows:

(1) The sounding device shall be installed in each emergency response facility at the same location as the recording device for that circuit.
(2) Where installed at the communications center, a common sounding device shall be permitted.

27.5.4.2 Constant-Current Systems. Constant-current systems shall comply with the requirements of 27.5.4.2.1 through 27.5.4.2.6.

27.5.4.2.1 Means shall be provided for manually regulating the current in box circuits so that the operating current is maintained within 10 percent of normal throughout changes in external circuit resistance from 20 percent above normal to 50 percent below normal.

27.5.4.2.2 The voltage supplied to maintain normal line current on box circuits shall comply with both of the following:

(1) The voltage shall not exceed 150 volts, measured under no-load conditions.
(2) The voltage shall be such that the line current cannot be reduced below the approved operating value by the simultaneous operation of four boxes.

27.5.4.2.3 Visual and audible means to indicate a 20 percent or greater reduction in the normal current in any alarm circuit shall be provided.

27.5.4.2.4 All devices connected in series with any alarm circuit shall function when the alarm circuit current is reduced to 70 percent of normal.

27.5.4.2.5 Meters shall comply with 27.5.4.2.5.1 and 27.5.4.2.5.2.

27.5.4.2.5.1 Meters shall be provided to indicate the current in any box circuit and the voltage of any power source.

27.5.4.2.5.2 Meters used in common for two or more circuits shall be provided with cut-in devices designed to reduce the probability of cross-connecting circuits.

27.5.4.2.6 Necessary switches, testing, and signal transmitting and receiving devices shall be provided to allow the isolation, control, and test of each circuit up to at least 10 percent of the total number of box and dispatch circuits, but never less than two circuits.

27.5.4.3 Grounded Common-Current Systems. Where common-current source systems are grounded, the requirements of 27.5.4.3.1 and 27.5.4.3.2 shall apply.

27.5.4.3.1 Where common-current source systems are grounded, both of the following shall be met:

(1) The resistance of the ground shall not exceed 10 percent of resistance of any connected circuit.
(2) The ground shall be located at one side of the battery.

27.5.4.3.2 Visual and audible indicating devices shall be provided for each box and dispatch circuit to give immediate warning of ground leakage current that will have a detrimental effect on circuit operation.

27.5.4.4 Telephone (Series) Reporting Systems.

27.5.4.4.1 A permanent visual recording device installed in the communications center shall be provided to record all incoming box signals.

27.5.4.4.2 A spare recording device shall be provided for five or more box circuits.

27.5.4.4.3 A second visual means of identifying the calling box shall be provided.

27.5.4.4.4 Audible signals shall indicate all incoming calls from box circuits.

27.5.4.4.5 All voice transmissions from boxes for emergencies shall be recorded with the capability of instant playback.

27.5.4.4.6 A voice-recording facility shall be provided for each operator handling incoming alarms to eliminate the possibility of interference.

27.5.4.4.7 Box circuits shall be sufficient in number and laid out so that the areas that would be left without box protection in case of disruption of a circuit do not exceed those covered by 20 properly spaced boxes where all or any part of the circuit is of aerial open-wire, or 30 properly spaced boxes where the circuit is entirely in underground or messenger-supported cable.

27.5.4.4.8 Where all boxes on any individual circuit and associated equipment are designed and installed to provide for receipt of alarms through the ground in the event of a break in the circuit, the circuit shall be permitted to serve twice the number of aerial open-wire and cable circuits, respectively, as is specified in 27.5.4.4.7.

27.5.4.4.9 The installation of additional boxes in an area served by the number of boxes spaced as indicated in 27.5.4.4.7 shall not constitute geographical overloading of a circuit.

27.5.5 Wireless Network.

27.5.5.1 System Arrangement and Operation.

27.5.5.1.1* Type A systems shall comply with 27.5.5.1.1.1 through 27.5.5.1.1.7.

27.5.5.1.1.1 Two separate receiving networks shall be required for each frequency.

27.5.5.1.1.2 Each receiving network shall include the following:

(1) Antenna
(2) RF receiver
(3) Signaling processing equipment
(4) Time/date alarm printer
(5) Audible alerting device
(6) Power supply

27.5.5.1.1.3 Both receiving networks shall be installed at the communications center.

27.5.5.1.1.4 The failure of one receiving network shall not interfere with the other receiving network's ability to receive messages from boxes.

27.5.5.1.1.5 Where the system configuration is such that a polling device is incorporated into the receiving network to allow remote or selective initiation of box tests, a separate device shall be included in each of the two required receiving networks.

27.5.5.1.1.6 The polling devices shall meet all of the following:

(1) Be configured for automatic cycle initiation in their primary operating mode
(2) Be configured for continuous self-monitoring
(3) Be integrated into the network(s) to provide automatic switchover and operational continuity in the event of failure of either device

27.5.5.1.1.7 Test signals from boxes shall not be required to include the date as part of their permanent recording, provided that the date is automatically printed on the recording tape at the beginning of each calendar day.

27.5.5.1.2 Type B systems shall comply with 27.5.5.1.2.1 through 27.5.5.1.2.3.

27.5.5.1.2.1 For each frequency used, a single, complete receiving network shall be permitted in each emergency response facility, provided that the communications center conforms to 27.5.5.1.1.1 through 27.5.5.1.1.3.

27.5.5.1.2.2 Where the jurisdiction maintains two or more alarm reception points in operation, one receiving network shall be permitted to be at each alarm reception point.

Δ **27.5.5.1.2.3** Where alarm signals are transmitted from the communications center to an emergency response facility using wireless equipment to receive and record the alarm message, both of the following shall apply:

(1) A second receiving network conforming to 27.5.5.1.2.1 shall be provided at each emergency response facility.
(2) The receiving network shall employ a frequency other than that used for the receipt of box messages.

27.5.5.1.3 A device for producing a permanent graphic recording of all alarm, supervisory, trouble, and test signals received or retransmitted, or both, shall be provided at the communications center.

27.5.5.1.4* Where box message signals to the communications center or acknowledgment of message receipt signals from the communications center to the box are repeated, associated repeating facilities shall conform to the requirements of 27.5.5.1.1.2(1), 27.5.5.1.1.2(2), 27.5.5.1.1.2(3), and 27.5.5.1.1.2(6) and include two separate transmitters.

27.5.5.2 Power. Power shall be provided in accordance with 27.5.2.5.

27.5.5.3 Monitoring for Integrity.

27.5.5.3.1 All wireless box systems shall comply with 27.5.5.3.1.1 and 27.5.5.3.1.2.

27.5.5.3.1.1 All wireless box systems shall provide constant monitoring of each radio frequency in use.

27.5.5.3.1.2 Both an audible and a visual indication of any sustained signal in excess of a 15-second duration shall be provided for each receiving system at the communications center.

27.5.5.3.2 The power supplied to all required circuits and devices of the system shall be monitored for integrity.

27.5.5.3.3* Each wireless box shall automatically transmit a test message at least once in each 24-hour period.

27.5.5.3.4 Receiving equipment associated with wireless-type systems shall comply with 27.5.5.3.4.1 and 27.5.5.3.4.2.

27.5.5.3.4.1 Receiving equipment associated with wireless-type systems, including any related repeater(s), shall be tested at least hourly.

27.5.5.3.4.2 The receipt of test messages that do not exceed 60-minute intervals shall meet the requirement in 27.5.5.3.4.1.

27.5.5.3.5 Radio repeaters upon which receipt of alarms depend shall be provided with dual receivers, transmitters, and power supplies.

27.5.5.3.5.1 Failure of the primary receiver, transmitter, or power supply shall cause an automatic switchover to the secondary receiver, transmitter, or power supply.

27.5.5.3.5.2 Manual switchover shall be permitted, provided that it is completed within 30 seconds.

27.5.5.3.6 Trouble signals shall activate a sounding device located where there is always a trained, competent person on duty.

27.5.5.3.7 Trouble signals shall meet the following:

(1) Be distinct from alarm signals
(2) Be indicated visually
(3) Be indicated audibly

27.5.5.3.7.1 The audible trouble signal shall be permitted to be common to two or more monitored circuits.

27.5.5.3.7.2 A switch for silencing the audible trouble signal shall be permitted where the visual trouble signal remains operating until the silencing switch is restored to its normal position.

27.5.5.3.8 The audible signal shall be responsive to subsequent faults in other monitored functions prior to restoration of the silencing switch.

27.5.5.4 Physical Protection of Transmission Line. The antenna transmission line between the transmitter and the antenna shall be installed in rigid metal, intermediate metal conduit, or electrical metallic tubing in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

27.6 Alarm Boxes.

27.6.1* General. The requirements of 27.6.1.1 through 27.6.1.6 shall apply to all alarm boxes.

27.6.1.1 Concurrent operation of at least four boxes shall not result in the loss of an alarm.

27.6.1.2 Boxes and associated equipment, when in an abnormal condition, shall not disable the public emergency alarm reporting system circuit.

27.6.1.3 Boxes shall be designed to comply with both of the following:

(1) Retransmission does not occur when a box-actuating device is held in the actuating position.
(2) The box shall be capable of activation as soon as the actuating device is restored.

27.6.1.4* Boxes, when actuated, shall give a visual or audible indication to the user that the box is operating or that the signal has been transmitted to the communications center.

27.6.1.5 Box cases and parts that are accessible to the public shall be permitted to be of nonconductive material.

27.6.1.6 Box cases and parts that are accessible to the public and that are constructed of conductive materials shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Articles 250 and 760 of *NFPA 70*.

N **27.6.1.7** Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, alarm box identification nameplates shall be mounted on the access door.

27.6.2* Publicly Accessible Alarm Boxes.

27.6.2.1 Fundamental Requirements. The requirements of 27.6.2.1.1 through 27.6.2.1.11 shall apply to all publicly accessible alarm boxes.

27.6.2.1.1 Means for actuation of alarms by the public shall be located where they are visible, unobstructed, and readily accessible.

27.6.2.1.2 The box housing shall comply with the following:

(1) Protect the internal components
(2)* Be identified for the location installed

27.6.2.1.3 Doors on boxes shall remain operable under adverse climatic conditions, including icing and salt spray.

27.6.2.1.4 Boxes shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be recognizable for their intended use
(2) Have instructions for use that are acceptable to the AHJ on their exterior surfaces

27.6.2.1.5 Boxes shall be securely mounted on poles, pedestals, or structural surfaces as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.2.1.6* The location of publicly accessible boxes shall be designated by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.2.1.7 Schools, hospitals, nursing homes, and places of public assembly shall have a box located at the main entrance, as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.2.1.8 Boxes shall be conspicuously visible and be highlighted with a distinctive color.

27.6.2.1.9 All publicly accessible boxes mounted on support poles shall be identified by a wide band of distinctive colors or signs placed 8 ft (2.44 m) above the ground and visible from all directions wherever possible.

27.6.2.1.10* Location-designating lights shall comply with 27.6.2.1.10.1 and 27.6.2.1.10.2.

27.6.2.1.10.1 Location-designating lights of distinctive color, visible for at least 1500 ft (460 m) in all directions, shall be installed over boxes.

27.6.2.1.10.2 The street light nearest the box, where equipped with a distinctively colored light, shall meet 27.6.2.1.10.1.

27.6.2.1.11 Where boxes are installed inside a structure, the installation shall comply with 27.6.2.1.11.1 through 27.6.2.1.11.4.

27.6.2.1.11.1 The box shall be placed as close as is practicable to the point of entrance of the circuit.

27.6.2.1.11.2* Outside plant cables entering buildings or other structures shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or electrical metallic tubing.

27.6.2.1.11.3 Schedule 80 PVC or RTRC rigid nonmetallic conduit shall be permitted for underground installations, provided that all elbows are rigid or intermediate metal conduit.

27.6.2.1.11.4 The installation shall comply with the requirements of the applicable raceway article of *NFPA 70*.

27.6.3 Auxiliary Alarm Box.

27.6.3.1 Fundamental Requirements. The requirements of 27.6.3.1.1 through 27.6.3.1.6 shall apply to all auxiliary alarm boxes.

27.6.3.1.1 The authority having jurisdiction shall designate the location of the auxiliary box.

27.6.3.1.2* Outside plant cables entering buildings or other structures shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or electrical metallic tubing.

27.6.3.1.2.1 Schedule 80 PVC or RTRC rigid nonmetallic conduit shall be permitted for underground installations, provided that all elbows are rigid or intermediate metal conduit.

27.6.3.1.2.2 The use of schedule 40 PVC shall be permitted where encased by not less than 2 in. (300 mm) of concrete.

27.6.3.1.2.3 The installation shall comply with the requirements of the applicable raceway article of *NFPA 70*.

Δ **27.6.3.1.3*** Wiring between the auxiliary alarm system and the auxiliary alarm box or master alarm box shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or electrical metallic tubing
(2) Meet the requirements of pathway survivability Level 2 *(see 12.4.3)*

27.6.3.1.4 Where installed outside a structure, the requirements of 27.6.2.1.2 and 27.6.2.1.5 shall apply.

27.6.3.1.5 Where the auxiliary box is a wired box, the requirements of Section 27.7 shall apply.

27.6.3.1.6 Where the auxiliary box is a wireless box, the requirements of 27.6.6 shall apply.

27.6.3.2 Auxiliary Alarm Systems.

27.6.3.2.1 Application. The equipment and circuits necessary to connect a protected premises to a public emergency alarm reporting system shall comply with the requirements of 27.6.3.2.

27.6.3.2.1.1 Where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, the use of systems described in Chapter 27 shall be permitted to provide defined reporting functions from or within private premises.

27.6.3.2.1.2 The requirements of Section 27.7 shall also apply to wired auxiliary alarm systems.

27.6.3.2.2 Types of Systems.

27.6.3.2.2.1* Auxiliary alarm systems shall be local-energy type with the following requirements:

(1) Local-energy-type systems shall be permitted to be of the coded or noncoded type.
(2) Power supply sources for local-energy-type systems shall conform to Chapter 10.
(3) Transmitter trouble signals shall be indicated at the control unit and the building fire command center in accordance with 10.15.7.

27.6.3.2.2.2 The interface of auxiliary alarm systems with the three types of public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be in accordance with Table 27.6.3.2.2.2.

27.6.3.2.2.3 The application of auxiliary alarm systems shall be limited to the initiating devices specified in Table 27.6.3.2.2.3.

27.6.3.2.3 System Arrangement and Operation.

27.6.3.2.3.1 A separate auxiliary transmitter shall be provided for each building, or where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, for each group of buildings of single ownership or occupancy.

27.6.3.2.3.2 The same box shall be permitted to be used as a public emergency alarm reporting system box and as a transmitting device for an auxiliary alarm system where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, provided that the box is located at the outside of the entrance to the protected property.

27.6.3.2.3.3 Where 27.6.3.2.3.2 is applied, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require the box to be equipped with a signal light to differentiate between automatic and manual operation, unless local outside alarms at the protected property serve the same purpose.

27.6.3.2.3.4 The transmitting device shall be located as required by the authority having jurisdiction.

Table 27.6.3.2.2.2 Application of Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems with Auxiliary Alarm Systems

Reporting Systems	Local-Energy Type
Wired	Yes
Wireless	Yes
Telephone series	Yes

Table 27.6.3.2.2.3 Application of Initiating Devices with Auxiliary Alarm Systems

Initiating Devices	Local-Energy Type
Manually actuated alarm-initiating device	Yes
Waterflow or actuation of the fire-extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s)	Yes
Automatic detection devices	Yes

27.6.3.2.3.5 Design and arrangement of auxiliary alarm systems shall meet the following:

(1) The system shall be designed and arranged so that a single fault on the auxiliary alarm system does not jeopardize operation of the public emergency alarm reporting system.
(2) The system shall not, in case of a single fault on either the auxiliary or public emergency alarm reporting system, transmit a false alarm on either system.

27.6.3.2.3.6 A means that is available only to the agency responsible for maintaining the public emergency alarm reporting system shall be provided for disconnecting the auxiliary loop to the connected property.

27.6.3.2.3.7 Notification shall be given to the designated representative of the property when the auxiliary box is not in service.

27.6.3.2.3.8 An auxiliary alarm system shall be used only in connection with a public emergency alarm reporting system that is approved for the service.

27.6.3.2.3.9 A system approved by the authority having jurisdiction shall meet the requirement in 27.6.3.2.3.8.

27.6.3.2.3.10 Permission for the connection of an auxiliary alarm system to a public emergency alarm reporting system, and acceptance of the type of auxiliary transmitter and its activating mechanism, circuits, and components connected thereto, shall be obtained from the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.3.2.3.11 Paragraph 27.6.3.2 shall not require the use of audible alarm signals other than those necessary to operate the auxiliary alarm system.

27.6.3.2.3.12 Where it is desired to provide evacuation signals in the protected property, the notification appliances, circuits, and controls shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 23 in addition to the provisions of 27.6.3.2.

27.6.3.2.3.13 Where an auxiliary alarm system is in an alarm condition that has been acknowledged, deactivated, or bypassed, subsequent actuation of initiating devices on other initiating device circuits or subsequent actuation of addressable initiating devices on signaling line circuits shall cause an alarm signal to be transmitted to the communications center.

27.6.3.2.3.14 Where an auxiliary transmitter is located within a private premises, it shall be installed in accordance with 27.6.2.1.11 and 27.7.2.

27.6.3.2.3.15 Where data communications between a microprocessor-based control unit and an auxiliary alarm system are utilized, they shall comply with all of the requirements in 27.6.3.2.3.15(A) through 27.6.3.2.3.15(C).

(A) The monitoring for integrity shall include communications test messages transmitted between the control unit and the auxiliary alarm system.

(B) The communications test message shall comply with all of the following:

(1) The communications test message shall be initiated by either the control unit or the auxiliary alarm system.
(2) The communications test message shall require a response from the corresponding unit.
(3) An invalid response or no response from the control unit or the auxiliary alarm system shall be recognized as a communications failure.
(4) A communications failure shall initiate a specific communications failure trouble message. *[See 27.6.3.2.3.15(B)(3).]*
(5) A communications failure trouble message as referenced in 27.6.3.2.3.15(B)(2) shall be both of the following:
   (a) Transmitted from the auxiliary alarm system
   (b) Automatically indicated within 200 seconds at the communications center
(6) A trouble condition in 27.6.3.2.3.15(B)(4) shall activate an audible and distinctive visual signal at the auxiliary box indicating a communications failure.
(7) A trouble condition shall be indicated at the control unit and the building fire command center in accordance with 10.15.7.

Δ **(C)** Where a separate device is required to interface the control unit to the auxiliary alarm system, all communication paths shall be both of the following:

(1) Monitored for integrity
(2) Compliant comply with 27.6.3.2.3.15

27.6.4 Master Alarm Boxes. Master alarm boxes shall comply with the requirements of 27.6.2 and 27.6.3.

27.6.5 Wired Network Boxes. The requirements of Section 27.7 shall apply to wired network boxes.

27.6.5.1 Telephone Boxes. The requirements of Section 27.7 shall also apply to telephone boxes.

27.6.5.1.1 Where a handset is used, the caps on the transmitter and receiver shall be secured to reduce the probability of the telephone box being disabled due to vandalism.

27.6.5.1.2 Telephone boxes shall be designed to allow the communications center operator to determine whether or not the telephone box has been restored to normal condition after use.

27.6.6 Wireless Network Boxes.

27.6.6.1 In addition to the requirements of this Code, wireless boxes shall be designed and operated in compliance with all applicable rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) or, where required by other governing laws, the National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA).

27.6.6.2* Each wireless box shall automatically transmit a test message at least once in each 24-hour period.

27.6.6.3 Wireless network boxes shall be capable of transmitting no less than three specific signals to the communications center, in addition to the box number, with priority as follows:

(1) Alarm
(2) Tamper
(3) Test

27.6.6.4 Wireless boxes shall transmit to the communications center with priority as follows:

(1) No less than two repetitions for “alarm”
(2) No less than one repetition for “tamper”
(3) No less than one repetition for “test”

27.6.6.5 Where wireless network boxes transmit more than one alarm signal, in addition to those in 27.6.6.3, each such signal shall be individually identifiable.

27.6.6.6 Where wireless network boxes transmit more than one alarm signal, they shall be designed to prevent the loss of supplemental or concurrently activated signals.

27.6.6.7* Where wireless network boxes transmit more than one alarm signal, the priority of each alarm shall be as assigned by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.6.8 An actuating device held or locked in the activated position shall not prevent the activation and transmission of other signals.

27.6.6.9 The primary power source for wireless boxes shall be permitted to be from one or more of the following, as approved by the authority having jurisdiction:

(1) Utility distribution system
(2) Solar photovoltaic power system
(3) User power
(4) Self-powered, using either an integral battery or other stored energy source

27.6.6.10 Boxes powered by a utility distribution system shall comply with 27.6.6.10.1 through 27.6.6.10.6.

27.6.6.10.1 Boxes shall comply with 27.6.6.10.1.1 and 27.6.6.10.1.2.

27.6.6.10.1.1 Boxes shall have an integral standby, sealed, rechargeable battery that is capable of powering box functions for at least 60 hours in the event of primary power failure.

27.6.6.10.1.2 Transfer to standby battery power shall be automatic and without interruption to box operation.

27.6.6.10.2 A local trouble indication shall activate upon primary power failure.

27.6.6.10.3 Boxes operating from primary power shall be capable of operation with a dead or disconnected battery.

27.6.6.10.4 A battery charger shall be provided in compliance with 10.6.10.3, except as modified in 27.6.6.10.

27.6.6.10.5 When the primary power has failed, boxes shall transmit a power failure message to the communications center as part of subsequent test messages until primary power is restored.

27.6.6.10.6 A low-battery message shall be transmitted to the communications center where the remaining battery standby time is less than 54 hours.

27.6.6.11 Boxes powered by a solar photovoltaic system shall comply with 27.6.6.11.1 through 27.6.6.11.5.

27.6.6.11.1 Solar photovoltaic power systems shall provide box operation for not less than 6 months.

27.6.6.11.2 Solar photovoltaic power systems shall be monitored for integrity.

27.6.6.11.3 The battery shall have power to sustain operation for a minimum period of 15 days without recharging.

27.6.6.11.4 Boxes shall comply with 27.6.6.11.4.1 and 27.6.6.11.4.2.

27.6.6.11.4.1 The box shall transmit a trouble message to the communications center when the charger has failed for more than 24 hours.

27.6.6.11.4.2 The trouble message shall be part of all subsequent transmissions.

27.6.6.11.5 Where the remaining battery standby duration is less than 10 days, a low-battery message shall be transmitted to the communications center.

27.6.6.12 User-powered boxes shall have an automatic self-test feature.

27.6.6.13 Self-powered boxes shall comply with 27.6.6.13.1 through 27.6.6.13.3.

27.6.6.13.1 Self-powered boxes shall operate for a period of not less than 6 months.

27.6.6.13.2 Self-powered boxes shall comply with 27.6.6.13.2.1 and 27.6.6.13.2.2.

27.6.6.13.2.1 Self-powered boxes shall transmit a low-power warning message to the communications center for at least 15 days prior to the time the power source will fail to operate the box.

27.6.6.13.2.2 The low-power warning message shall be part of all subsequent transmissions.

27.6.6.13.3 Self-powered boxes shall comply with 27.6.6.13.3.1 and 27.6.6.13.3.2.

27.6.6.13.3.1 Use of a charger to extend the life of a self-powered box shall be permitted where the charger does not interfere with box operation.

27.6.6.13.3.2 The box shall be capable of operation for not less than 6 months with the charger disconnected.

27.7 Public Cable Plant. Metallic and fiber-optic cabling systems and interconnections between alarm transmission equipment and alarm-receiving equipment shall comply with the requirements of Section 27.7.

27.7.1 Requirements for Metallic and Fiber-Optic Systems — Metallic and Fiber-Optic Interconnections.

27.7.1.1 Circuit Conductors and Optical Fibers.

27.7.1.1.1 Exterior metallic conductors and optical fiber cables, other than those provided by a public utility on a lease basis, shall conform to International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) specifications or an approved equivalent.

27.7.1.1.2 Where a public box is installed inside a building, the circuit from the point of entrance to the public box shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or electrical metallic tubing in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

27.7.1.1.3 Wires and optical fibers shall be terminated to prevent breaking from vibration or stress.

27.7.1.1.4 Circuit conductors and optical fiber cables on terminal racks shall meet the following:

(1) Be tagged at both ends of the conductor or optical fiber cable to indicate its origin and destination
(2) Be isolated from conductors of other systems wherever possible
(3) Be protected from physical damage

27.7.1.2 Cables. The requirements of 27.7.1.2 shall apply to 27.7.1.3 through 27.7.1.6.

27.7.1.2.1 Exterior metallic conductors and optical fiber cables shall conform to IMSA specifications or an approved equivalent.

27.7.1.2.2 Overhead, underground, or direct-burial cables shall be specifically approved for the purpose.

27.7.1.2.3 Metallic conductors and optical fiber cables used in interior installations shall comply with both of the following:

(1) *NFPA 70*
(2) Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and practices

27.7.1.2.4 Conductors or optical fibers used to transmit signals of other systems that are under the control of a governmental agency shall be permitted to be contained within the same multi-conductor cable as conductors or optical fibers used to transmit signals of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

27.7.1.2.5 By special permission as defined in *NFPA 70*, cables not under the control of a governmental agency shall be permitted to contain conductors or optical fibers used to transmit signals of a public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.7.1.2.6 Signaling wire containing metallic protection or strength members and conductive optical fiber cables shall comply with 27.7.1.2.6.1 and 27.7.1.2.6.2.

27.7.1.2.6.1 Signaling wires supplied by a power source having a voltage or current rating sufficient to introduce a hazard shall be installed in accordance with Part II of Article 760 of *NFPA 70*.

27.7.1.2.6.2 Conductive optical fiber cables shall be grounded and protected in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

27.7.1.2.7 Metallic cables shall comply with 27.7.1.2.7.1 and 27.7.1.2.7.2.

27.7.1.2.7.1 All metallic cables, with all taps and splices made, shall be tested for insulation resistance when installed but before connection to terminals.

27.7.1.2.7.2 Tests shall indicate an insulation resistance of at least 200 megohms per mile between any one conductor and all other conductors, the sheath, and the ground.

27.7.1.3 Underground Cables.

27.7.1.3.1 Underground metallic conductors and optical fiber cables in duct systems or direct burial shall be permitted to be brought aboveground only at locations approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.7.1.3.1.1 Protection from physical damage or heat incidental to fires in adjacent buildings shall be provided.

27.7.1.3.2 Only optical fiber and power-limited cables and conductors shall be permitted to be located in duct systems and manholes that contain power-limited public emergency alarm reporting system conductors.

27.7.1.3.3 Where located in duct systems or manholes that contain power circuit conductors over 250 volts to ground, metallic conductors and optical fiber cables for emergency alarm shall be both of the following:

(1) Located as far as possible from such power cables
(2) Separated from such power cables by a noncombustible barrier or other means approved by the authority having jurisdiction to protect the emergency alarm cables from physical damage

27.7.1.3.4 All cables installed in manholes shall be racked and marked for identification.

27.7.1.3.5 Raceways or ducts entering buildings from underground duct systems shall be sealed with an identified sealing compound or other means acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction to prevent the entrance of moisture or gases from the underground duct system.

27.7.1.3.6 All cable joints shall be located in manholes, emergency response facilities, or other accessible locations acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction where equivalent protection is provided to minimize physical damage to the cable.

27.7.1.3.6.1 Cable joints shall be made to provide and maintain conductivity, optical continuity for optical fiber cable, insulation, and protection at least equal to that afforded by the cables that are joined.

27.7.1.3.6.2 Open cable ends shall be sealed against moisture.

27.7.1.3.7 Direct-burial cable, without enclosure in ducts, shall be laid in grass plots, under sidewalks, or in other places where the ground is not likely to be opened for other underground construction.

27.7.1.3.7.1 Where splices are made, such splices shall be accessible for inspection and tests.

27.7.1.3.7.2 Such cables shall be both of the following:

(1) Buried at least 18 in. (460 mm) deep
(2) In duct or conduit where crossing streets or other areas likely to be opened for other underground construction

27.7.1.4 Aerial Construction.

27.7.1.4.1 Cables containing conductors or fiber optical fibers used to transmit signals of public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be located below all other cables and conductors, except those used for communications purposes.

27.7.1.4.1.1 Precautions shall be provided where passing through trees, under bridges, over railroads, and at other places where subject to physical damage.

27.7.1.4.1.2 Conductors and cables for public emergency alarm reporting system use shall not be attached to a crossarm that carries electric light and power conductors.

27.7.1.4.1.3 Conductors that operate at 250 volts or less and are part of the public emergency alarm reporting system shall be permitted to share the crossarm with conductors and cables for public emergency alarm reporting systems.

27.7.1.4.2 Aerial cable shall be either supported by messenger wire of approved tensile strength or conform to one of the following:

(1) IMSA specifications as a self-supporting cable assembly or an approved equivalent
(2) Optical fiber cable with integral supporting means or all-dielectric self-supporting (ADSS) type

27.7.1.4.3 Single wire shall comply with 27.7.1.4.3.1 and 27.7.1.4.3.2.

27.7.1.4.3.1 Single wire shall meet IMSA specifications and conform to one of the following:

(1) Be at least No. 10 Roebling gauge if of galvanized iron or steel
(2) Be at least 10 AWG if of hard-drawn copper
(3) Be at least 12 AWG if of approved copper-covered steel
(4) Be at least 6 AWG if of aluminum

27.7.1.4.3.2 Span lengths shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommendations.

27.7.1.4.4 Wires to buildings shall contact only intended supports.

27.7.1.4.5 Wires to buildings shall enter through an approved weatherhead or sleeves slanting upward and inward.

27.7.1.4.6 Drip loops shall be formed on wires outside of buildings.

27.7.1.5 Leads Down Poles.

Δ **27.7.1.5.1** Leads down poles shall be protected from physical damage.

N **27.7.1.5.2** Leads with metallic covering shall form a continuous conducting path to ground.

N **27.7.1.5.3** Installation of leads shall prevent water from entering the conduit or box.

27.7.1.5.4 Leads to boxes shall have 600-volt insulation listed or approved for wet locations, as defined in *NFPA 70*.

27.7.1.6 Wiring Inside Buildings.

27.7.1.6.1 At the communications center, all conductors, cables, and optical fiber cables shall extend as directly as possible to the operations center in conduits, ducts, shafts, raceways, or overhead racks and troughs listed or identified as suitable to provide protection against physical damage.

27.7.1.6.2* Where installed in buildings, conductors and optical fiber cables shall be installed in any of the following wiring methods:

(1) Electrical metallic tubing
(2) Intermediate metal conduit
(3) Rigid metal conduit

27.7.1.6.2.1 Where installed in buildings, conductors and optical fiber cables shall be permitted to be installed in rigid nonmetallic conduit where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.7.1.6.3 Conductors and optical fiber cables shall comply with 27.7.1.6.3.1 and 27.7.1.6.3.2.

27.7.1.6.3.1 Conductors and optical fiber cables shall have an approved insulation.

27.7.1.6.3.2 The insulation or other outer covering shall be flame retardant and moisture resistant.

27.7.1.6.4 Conductors and optical fiber cables shall comply with 27.7.1.6.4.1 and 27.7.1.6.4.2.

27.7.1.6.4.1 Conductors and optical fiber cables shall be installed as far as possible without splices or joints.

27.7.1.6.4.2 Splices or joints shall be permitted only in listed junction boxes, terminal boxes, or other enclosures approved by the AHJ.

27.7.1.6.5 Enclosures shall comply with 27.7.1.6.5.1 and 27.7.1.6.5.2.

27.7.1.6.5.1 Enclosures containing public emergency alarm reporting system circuits shall be provided with red covers or doors.

27.7.1.6.5.2 The words "public emergency alarm reporting system circuit" shall be marked on all enclosures, terminal boxes, and junction locations to prevent unintentional interference.

27.7.1.6.6 Termination enclosures, terminals, splices, and joints for metallic conductors and optical fiber cables shall conform to *NFPA 70*.

27.7.1.6.7 Metallic conductors and optical fiber cables and wiring exposed to a hazard shall be protected in an approved manner.

27.7.1.6.8 Terminals and cross-connecting facilities for metallic conductors and optical fiber cables shall be located in or adjacent to the operations room.

27.7.1.6.9 Where signal conductors, nondielectric optical fiber cables, and electric light and power wires are run in the same shaft, they shall be either separated by at least 2 in. (51 mm), or encased in a noncombustible enclosure.

27.7.2 Signal Transmission and Receiving Circuits. Signal transmission and receiving circuits shall comply with the requirements of 27.7.2.1 and 27.7.2.2.

27.7.2.1 General.

27.7.2.1.1 ANSI/IEEE C2, *National Electrical Safety Code*, shall be used as a guide for the installation of outdoor circuitry.

27.7.2.1.2 Installation shall provide for the following:

(1) Continuity of service
(2) Protection from mechanical damage
(3) Disablement from heat that is incidental to fire
(4) Damage by floods, corrosive vapors, or other causes

27.7.2.1.3 Open local circuits within single buildings shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 23.

27.7.2.1.4 All circuits shall be routed so as to allow tracing of circuits for trouble.

27.7.2.1.5 Circuits shall not pass over, under, or through or be attached to buildings or property not owned by or under the control of the authority having jurisdiction or the agency responsible for maintaining the system.

27.7.2.1.5.1 The requirements of 27.7.2.1.5 shall not apply where the circuit is terminated at a public emergency alarm reporting system initiating device on the building or property.

27.7.2.2 Interior Box Circuits.

27.7.2.2.1 A means accessible only to the authority having jurisdiction or the agency responsible for maintaining the public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be provided to disconnect all circuit conductors inside a building or other structure.

27.7.2.2.2 Definite notification shall be given to the designated building representative when the interior box(es) is out of service.

27.7.3* Circuit Protection.

27.7.3.1 The protective devices shall be located close to or be combined with the cable terminals.

27.7.3.2 Surge protective devices designed and approved for the purpose shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be installed at a location accessible to qualified persons
(2) Be marked with the name of the manufacturer and model designation

27.7.3.3 All surge protective devices shall be connected to a ground in accordance with *NFPA 70*.

27.7.3.4 All fuses, fuseholders, and adapters shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Be plainly marked with their ampere rating
(2) All fuses rated over 2 amperes be of the enclosed type

27.7.3.5 Circuit protection required at the communications center shall be provided in every building that houses communications center equipment.

27.7.3.6 Each metallic conductor entering an emergency response facility from partially or entirely aerial lines shall be protected by a surge protective device.

27.7.3.7 All metallic conductors entering the communications center shall be protected by the following devices, in the order named, starting from the exterior circuit:

(1) Fuse rated at 3 amperes minimum to 7 amperes maximum and not less than 2000 volts
(2) Surge protective device(s)
(3) Fuse or circuit breaker rated at ½ ampere

27.7.3.8 In regard to 27.7.3.7, the ½-ampere protection on the tie circuits shall be omitted at subsidiary communications centers.

27.7.3.9 Open aerial metallic conductors and metallic cable shall comply with 27.7.3.9.1 and 27.7.3.9.2.

27.7.3.9.1 At junction points of open aerial metallic conductors and metallic cable, each conductor shall be protected by a surge protective device of the weatherproof type.

27.7.3.9.2 A connection shall also be between the surge protective device ground, any metallic sheath, and the messenger wire.

27.7.3.10 Aerial open-wire and nonmessenger-supported, two-conductor cable circuits shall be protected by a surge protective device at intervals not to exceed 2000 ft (610 m).

27.7.3.11 Where used for aerial construction, surge protective device, other than of the air-gap or self-restoring types, shall not be installed in public emergency alarm reporting circuits.

27.7.3.12 All protective devices used for aerial construction shall be accessible for maintenance and inspection.

27.8 Emergency Communications Systems (ECS).

27.8.1* Public emergency alarm reporting systems that are capable of two-way wired or wireless communications with command and control capabilities and/or voice communications capabilities shall be permitted to be used as part of the communications infrastructure of an emergency communications system (ECS), provided that it does not interfere with the public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.8.2 The method of interfacing and monitoring for integrity between the public emergency alarm reporting system and the ECS shall be in accordance with 27.6.3.2.3 and treated as an auxiliary alarm system connected to a protected premises.

27.8.3 Wired or wireless alarm boxes shall be permitted for shared use with an ECS meeting the requirements of Chapter 27.

27.8.4 Trouble and alarm indications in the emergency communications system shall be visually and audibly annunciated at the communications center, except under fault conditions that prevent such a notification process.

27.8.5 When a fault condition prevents communications between the emergency communications system and the communications center, an audible and visual trouble indication shall be activated at the control unit.

Δ **27.8.6*** Connections and interfaces between the public emergency alarm reporting system and the ECS shall be monitored for integrity.

N **27.8.6.1** Faults shall be annunciated at the communications center.

N **27.8.6.2** Faults shall be annunciated within the protected premises at a location approved by the AHJ.

N **27.8.7** Connections and interfaces to the public emergency alarm reporting system shall meet the requirements of pathway survivability Level 2 or Level 3 to minimize impairment or disruption to normal operation.

N **27.8.8** Power supplies for interfaces to the public emergency alarm reporting system shall meet the requirements of Section 10.6.

Chapter 28 Reserved

Chapter 29 Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Signaling Systems

29.1 Application.

29.1.1* The performance, selection, installation, operation, and use of single- and multiple-station alarms and household alarm systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

N **29.1.2** Fuel gas detection and warning equipment shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 715.

29.1.3* Equipment covered by this chapter shall be installed in all occupancies where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

29.1.4 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 11, 12, 14, 17, 18, 21, 23, 24, 26, and 27 shall not apply unless otherwise noted.

29.1.5* The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to installations in manufactured homes.

29.1.6 This chapter shall apply to the life safety of occupants and not to the protection of property.

29.2* Purpose.

29.2.1 Fire warning equipment for residential occupancies shall provide a reliable means to notify the occupants of the presence of a threatening fire and the need to escape to a place of safety before such escape might be impeded by untenable conditions in the normal path of egress.

Δ **29.2.2** Carbon monoxide warning equipment shall provide a reliable means to notify the occupants of the presence of carbon monoxide levels that constitute a potential life safety risk and the need for action as a consequence of those levels.

29.3 Basic Requirements.

29.3.1* All devices, combinations of devices, and equipment to be installed in conformity with this chapter shall be approved, labeled, or listed for the purposes for which they are intended.

Δ **29.3.2** Fire and carbon monoxide warning equipment shall be installed in accordance with the listing and manufacturer's published instructions.

Δ **29.3.3*** The installation of smoke, heat, fire, or carbon monoxide alarms or systems, or combinations of these, shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

N **29.3.3.1** The requirements of 29.7.1 and 29.8.1 shall be met in their entirety with the installations of smoke alarms or smoke detectors and carbon monoxide alarms or carbon monoxide detectors.

N **29.3.3.2** The installation of additional smoke, heat, fire, or carbon monoxide alarms or detectors, shall be permitted.

N **29.3.3.3** The installation of additional smoke, heat, fire, or carbon monoxide alarms or detectors shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

N **29.3.3.4** The duplication of devices meeting the requirements of this chapter shall be considered supplementary as defined in 3.3.312.

N **29.3.3.5** The installation of supplementary devices shall comply with this chapter.

29.3.4 Supplementary functions, including the extension of an alarm beyond the installed location, shall be permitted if they do not interfere with the performance requirements of this chapter.

Δ 29.4 Remote Annunciation.

N **29.4.1** Remote annunciation from single- and multiple-station alarms shall be permitted if signals at the remote annunciator properly identify the hazard.

N **29.4.2** Integral or remote devices using listening technologies to send alarm signals from smoke alarms and carbon monoxide alarms to a listed control unit shall not be allowed unless the listening technology is specifically listed for the intended purpose.

N **29.4.2.1** Supervisory signals shall be permitted to be transmitted from devices using listening technologies to a listed control unit.

29.5 Notification.

29.5.1* Unless otherwise permitted by 29.5.3, fire warning equipment to be installed in residential occupancies shall produce the three-pulse temporal pattern (T3) emergency evacuation signal described in ANSI/ASA S3.41, *Audible Emergency Evacuation (E2) and Evacuation Signals with Relocation Instructions (ESRI)*, whenever the intended response is to evacuate the building.

29.5.2 The T3 emergency evacuation signal shall be permitted to be used for other devices when the desired response is immediate evacuation.

Δ **29.5.3** Where mechanically powered single-station heat alarms are used as supplementary devices, unless required by applicable laws, codes, or standards, such devices shall not be required to produce the T3 emergency evacuation signal.

29.5.4* Carbon monoxide warning equipment to be installed in residential occupancies shall produce the T4 signal in accordance with 18.4.3.2.

Δ **29.5.5*** Fire warning equipment producing the T3 signal incorporating voice notification shall meet either or both 29.5.5.1 and 29.5.5.2.

N **29.5.5.1** The voice message is shall be contained completely within the 1.5-second pause period of the T3 signal.

N **29.5.5.2** The voice message shall comply with all of the following:

(1) The voice message is first preceded once by a minimum of eight cycles of the T3 signal.
(2) The voice message periodically interrupts the T3 signal for no longer than 10 seconds, followed by a minimum of two cycles of the T3 signal between each voice message.
(3) The initial eight-cycle period is not required to be repeated.

Δ **29.5.6*** Carbon monoxide warning equipment producing the T4 signal incorporating voice notification shall meet either or both of 29.5.6.1 and 29.5.6.2.

N **29.5.6.1** The voice message shall be contained completely within the 5-second pause period of the T4 signal.

N **29.5.6.2** The voice message shall comply with all of the following:

(1) The voice message is first preceded once by a minimum of six cycles of the T4 signal.
(2) The voice message periodically interrupts the T4 signal for no longer than 10 seconds, followed by a minimum of two cycles of the T4 signal between each voice message.
(3) The initial six-cycle period is not required to be repeated.

Δ **29.5.7** All audible notification signals shall meet the performance requirements of 18.4.4, 18.4.6.1, 18.4.6.2, and 29.5.10.

29.5.8* Where visual notification appliances are provided, they shall meet the requirements of Section 18.5.

Δ **29.5.9*** Since hearing disabilities are not always apparent, the responsibility for advising the appropriate person(s) of the existence of this disability shall be that of the party with the hearing disability.

29.5.10* Where low frequency sounders, tactile notification appliances, or both are required in rooms by governing laws, codes, or standards, they shall comply with either of the following:

(1) The low frequency sounders shall have a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz ± 10 percent.
(2) Tactile notification appliances shall meet the requirements of Section 18.10.

•

29.5.11 Signals from notification appliances shall not be required to be synchronized.

29.6 Assumptions.

29.6.1* Occupants.

29.6.1.1 The requirements of this chapter shall assume that occupants are capable of self-rescue.

29.6.1.2 Occupants intimate with the ignition of a fire shall not be assumed to be protected by the requirements of this chapter.

29.6.2* Escape Route.

29.6.2.1 The requirements of this chapter shall assume that the occupants have an escape plan.

29.6.2.2 An escape route shall be assumed to be available to occupants and to be unobstructed prior to the fire or carbon monoxide event.

29.6.2.3* The escape route shall be along the normal path of egress for the occupancy.

Δ **29.6.3* Equipment.** The performance of fire and carbon monoxide warning equipment discussed in this chapter shall depend on such equipment being properly selected, installed, operated, tested, and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this Code and with the manufacturer's published instructions provided with the equipment.

29.7* Carbon Monoxide Detection. The warning functions intended in this standard shall be performed by single or multiple-station alarms or by detectors connected to a control unit and associated equipment.

29.7.1 Required Detection.

Δ **29.7.1.1*** Where installed, listed carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors shall be located as follows:

(1) Outside of each separate dwelling unit sleeping area, within 21 ft (6.4 m) of any door to a sleeping room, with the distance measured along a path of travel
(2) On every occupiable level of a dwelling unit, including basements, excluding attics and crawl spaces
(3) In all sleeping and guest rooms containing fuel-burning equipment
(4) In other locations where required by applicable laws, codes, or standards

•

N **29.7.1.2*** Each carbon monoxide alarm or carbon monoxide detector shall be located on the wall, ceiling, or other location as specified in the manufacturer's published instructions that accompany the unit.

29.7.2 Carbon Monoxide Alarm Interconnection. Unless exempted by applicable laws, codes, or standards, carbon monoxide alarms used to provide a warning function, and where two or more alarms are installed within a dwelling unit, suite of rooms, or similar area, shall be arranged so that the operation of any carbon monoxide alarm causes all carbon monoxide alarms within these locations to sound.

29.8 Detection and Notification. The use of fire alarm system smoke detectors and notification appliances shall be permitted to meet the fire-warning requirements for smoke alarms specified in 29.8.1.

29.8.1* Required Smoke Detection.

29.8.1.1* Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards for a specific type of occupancy, listed single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed as follows:

(1)* In all sleeping rooms and guest rooms
(2)* Outside of each separate dwelling unit sleeping area, within 21 ft (6.4 m) of any door to a sleeping room, with the distance measured along a path of travel
(3) On every level of a dwelling unit, including basements
(4) On every level of a residential board and care occupancy (small facility), including basements and excluding crawl spaces and unfinished attics
(5)* In the living area(s) of a guest suite
(6) In the living area(s) of a residential board and care occupancy (small facility)

Δ **29.8.1.2** Where the area addressed in 29.8.1.1(2) is separated from the adjacent living areas by a door, a smoke alarm or smoke detector shall be installed in the following locations:

(1) In the area between the door and the sleeping rooms
(2) On the living area side of the door as specified by 29.8.1.1 and 29.8.1.3

29.8.1.3 In addition to the requirements of 29.8.1.1(1) through 29.8.1.1(3), where the interior floor area for a given level of a dwelling unit, excluding garage areas, is greater than 1000 ft^2 (93 m^2), smoke alarms shall be installed per 29.8.1.3.1 and 29.8.1.3.2.

Δ **29.8.1.3.1*** All points on the ceiling shall comply with one of the following:

(1) Have a smoke alarm or smoke detector within 30 ft (9.1 m) travel distance
(2) Have an equivalent of one smoke alarm or smoke detector per 500 ft^2 (46 m^2) of floor area

29.8.1.3.2 Where dwelling units include great rooms or vaulted/cathedral ceilings extending over multiple floors, smoke alarms located on the upper floor that are intended to protect the aforementioned area shall be permitted to be considered as part of the lower floor(s) protection scheme used to meet the requirements of 29.8.1.3.1.

29.8.2 Required Occupant Notification.

29.8.2.1 Fire warning equipment used to provide required or optional detection shall produce audible fire alarm signals that comply with 29.8.2.1.1 or 29.8.2.1.2.

29.8.2.1.1* Interconnected Smoke and Heat Alarms. For other than mechanically powered single-station heat alarms and unless exempted by applicable laws, codes, or standards, smoke or heat alarms used to provide a fire-warning function, and where two or more alarms are installed within a dwelling unit, suite of rooms, or similar area, shall be arranged so that the operation of any smoke or heat alarm causes all alarms within these locations to sound.

29.8.2.1.2 Household Fire Alarm System. Where a household fire alarm system is used to provide a fire-warning function, notification appliances shall be installed to meet the performance requirements of 29.5.7.

29.8.2.2* Unless otherwise permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, audible fire alarm signals shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Sound only in an individual dwelling unit, suite of rooms, or similar area
(2) Not be arranged to operate the audible portions of fire warning equipment or fire alarm systems outside these locations

29.8.2.3 Remote annunciation shall be permitted.

29.9 Power Supplies.

Δ **29.9.1 Smoke and Heat and Carbon Monoxide Alarms.** Smoke and heat and carbon monoxide alarms shall meet the requirements of 29.8.2.1.1 and be powered by one of the following means:

(1) A commercial light and power source along with a secondary power source that is capable of operating the device as follows:
   (a) Smoke alarms and heat alarms for at least 7 days in the normal condition, followed by 4 minutes of T3 signal
   (b) Carbon monoxide alarms with sufficient capacity to operate the T4 signal(s) for at least 12 continuous hours
(2) When a commercial light and power source is not available, a noncommercial ac power source along with a secondary power source that is capable of operating the device as described in 29.9.1(1) and 29.9.1(2)
(3) A nonrechargeable, nonreplaceable primary battery that meets the requirements of 29.9.2
(4) When a battery primary power supply is specifically permitted by governing laws, codes, or standards, a battery meeting the requirements of 29.9.7 or the requirements of 29.9.2
(5) A suitable spring-wound mechanism for the nonelectrical portion of a listed single-station alarm with a visible indication to show that sufficient operating power is not available

29.9.2 Primary Power Source Nonreplaceable Primary Battery. If smoke, heat, or carbon monoxide alarms are powered by a nonrechargeable, nonreplaceable primary battery, the battery shall be monitored to ensure the following conditions are met:

(1) Single-station smoke alarm power requirements are met for at least 10 years of battery life, including required periodic testing.
(2) Single-station carbon monoxide alarm power requirements are met for at least 10 years of battery life, including required periodic testing.
(3) Multiple-station alarm power requirements are met for at least 7 years of battery life, including required periodic testing.
(4) A distinctive audible trouble signal occurs before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes.
(5) At the battery voltage at which a trouble signal is obtained, the unit is capable of producing a fire alarm signal for at least 4 minutes, or a carbon monoxide alarm signal for at least 12 continuous hours in accordance with 29.5.4, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.
(6) The audible trouble signal is produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.
(7) The trouble signal is allowed to be silenced for up to 12 hours.
(8) A visible "power on" indicator is provided.

Δ **29.9.3 Household Fire and Carbon Monoxide Alarm Systems.**

Δ **29.9.3.1** Power for household alarm systems shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Household fire and carbon monoxide alarm systems shall have two independent power sources consisting of a primary source that uses commercial light and power and a secondary source that uses a rechargeable battery.
(2) The secondary source shall be capable of operating the household alarm system for at least 24 hours in the normal condition, followed by 4 minutes of fire alarm or 12 hours of carbon monoxide alarm in accordance with 29.5.4.
(3) The secondary power source shall be supervised so that a distinctive audible and visible trouble signal results upon removal or disconnection of a battery or a low-battery condition.
(4) A rechargeable battery used as a secondary power source shall meet the following criteria:
   (a) Be automatically recharged by an AC circuit of the commercial light and power source
   (b) Be recharged within 48 hours
   (c) Provide a distinctive audible trouble signal before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes
(5) Low-power wireless systems shall comply with the performance criteria of Section 23.16, except as modified by 29.10.8.1.1.

N **29.9.3.2** The secondary power source for a household carbon monoxide system shall not be required to operate the system for 12 hours of alarm if the power source of carbon monoxide detectors and carbon monoxide audible notification appliances incorporating a low-power radio (wireless) transmitter/transceiver is capable of providing at least 24 hours in the normal condition, followed by 12 hours of alarm.

Δ **29.9.4 AC Primary Power Source.** The ac power source specified in 29.9.1 and 29.9.3 shall comply with the following conditions:

(1) A visible "power on" indicator is provided.
(2) All electrical systems installed by other than a qualified electrician are powered from a source not in excess of 30 volts that meets the requirements for power-limited fire alarm circuits as covered in Article 760 of *NFPA 70*.
(3)* A restraining means is used at the plug-in of any cord-connected installation, unless the unit utilizes a secondary (standby) power source meeting the requirements of Section 29.9 and loss of the ac primary power source results in annunciation of an audible trouble signal meeting 29.10.6.5.
(4) AC primary (main) power is supplied either from a dedicated branch circuit or the unswitched portion of a branch circuit also used for power and lighting.
(5) Operation of a switch (other than a circuit breaker) does not cause loss of primary (main) power.
(6) Alarms powered by branch circuits protected by arc-fault circuit-interrupters (AFCI) or ground-fault circuit-interrupters (GFCI) have a secondary power source.
(7) Neither loss nor restoration of primary (main) power will cause an alarm signal that exceeds 2 seconds.
(8) Where a secondary (standby) battery is provided, the primary (main) power supply is of sufficient capacity to operate the system under all conditions of loading with any secondary (standby) battery disconnected or fully discharged.

Δ **29.9.5 Secondary (Standby) Power Source.**

N **29.9.5.1** Where alarms include a battery that is used as a secondary power source, the following conditions shall be met:

(1) The secondary power source is supervised.
(2) Supervision of the secondary power source causes a distinctive audible or visible trouble signal upon removal or disconnection of a battery or a low-battery condition.
(3) Acceptable replacement batteries are clearly identified by the manufacturer's name and model number on the unit near the battery compartment.
(4) A rechargeable battery used as a secondary power source meets the following criteria:
   (a) Is automatically recharged by the primary power source
   (b) Is recharged within 4 hours where power is provided from a circuit that can be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker, or within 48 hours where power is provided from a circuit that cannot be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker
   (c) Provides a distinctive audible trouble signal before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes
   (d) At the battery condition at which a trouble signal is obtained, is capable of producing a fire alarm signal for at least 4 minutes or a carbon monoxide signal for 12 continuous hours, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation
   (e) Produces an audible trouble signal at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days

N **29.9.5.2** Where required by law for disposal reasons, rechargeable batteries shall be removable.

29.9.6 Visual Notification Appliance (with Single- or Multiple-Station Alarm). If a visual notification appliance is used in conjunction with a single- or multiple-station alarm for compliance with 29.5.8, the notification appliance shall not be required to be supplied with a secondary power source.

29.9.7 Primary Replaceable Battery, Sole Power Source (Nonrechargeable). If alarms are powered solely by a replaceable primary battery, the battery shall be monitored to ensure the following conditions are met:

(1) All power requirements are met for at least 1 year of battery life, including weekly required periodic testing.
(2) A distinctive audible trouble signal before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes.
(3) For a system-connected unit employing a lock-in alarm feature, automatic transfer is provided from alarm to a trouble condition when the unit has insufficient power to support an alarm condition.
(4) At the battery voltage at which a trouble signal is obtained, the unit is capable of producing a fire alarm signal for at least 4 minutes or a carbon monoxide alarm signal for at least 12 continuous hours, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.
(5) The audible trouble signal is produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.
(6) Acceptable replacement batteries are clearly identified by the manufacturer's name and model number on the unit near the battery compartment.
(7) A noticeable, visible indication is displayed when a primary battery is removed from the unit.

Δ **29.9.8 Primary Power Source (Rechargeable Battery).** If alarms are powered by a rechargeable battery, the following conditions shall be met:

(1) The battery, with proper charging, is able to power the alarm for a life of 1 year.
(2) The battery is automatically recharged by a circuit of the commercial light and power source.
(3) The battery is recharged within 4 hours where power is provided from a circuit that can be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker or within 48 hours where power is provided from a circuit that cannot be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker.
(4) A distinctive audible trouble signal will sound before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes.
(5) For a unit employing a lock-in alarm feature, automatic transfer is provided from alarm to a trouble condition.
(6) At the battery condition at which a trouble signal is obtained, the unit is capable of producing a fire alarm signal for at least 4 minutes or a carbon monoxide alarm signal for 12 continuous hours, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.
(7) The audible trouble signal is produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.

(8) If the alarm is designed to allow removal of the battery, a noticeable and visible notification is displayed when the battery is removed.

Δ **29.9.9 Secondary (Standby) Non-Battery Power Source.** Where alarms include a secondary power source (non-battery), the following conditions shall be met:

(1) The secondary power source is supervised.
(2) The secondary power source causes a distinctive audible or visible trouble signal upon depletion or failure.
(3) A distinctive audible trouble signal is provided before the power source is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes.
(4) At a power source condition at which a trouble signal is obtained, the power source is capable of producing a fire alarm signal for at least 4 minutes or a carbon monoxide alarm signal for at least 12 continuous hours, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.
(5) The audible trouble signal is produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.
(6) A rechargeable secondary power source is automatically recharged.
(7) A rechargeable secondary power source is recharged within 4 hours where power is provided from a circuit that can be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker or within 48 hours where power is provided from a circuit that cannot be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker.

29.10 Equipment Performance.

29.10.1 Self-Diagnostic. Any failure of any nonreliable or short-life component that renders a detection device inoperable shall result in a trouble signal or otherwise be apparent to the occupant of the living unit without the need for test.

Δ **29.10.2* Smoke Alarms, Smoke Detectors, and Other Non-Heat Fire Detectors.** Each device shall be in compliance with applicable standards such as UL 217, *Smoke Alarms*, or UL 268, *Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems.*

29.10.3 Carbon Monoxide Alarms and Detectors.

29.10.3.1* Each carbon monoxide alarm shall be in compliance with UL 2034, *Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms.*

29.10.3.2 Each carbon monoxide detector shall comply with both of the following:

(1) The sensitivity testing and alarm thresholds of UL 2034, *Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms*
(2) UL 2075, *Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors*

N **29.10.3.3** Each carbon monoxide alarm or carbon monoxide detector installed in an unconditioned room or space shall be tested and listed to the unconditioned space requirements in UL 2034, *Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms*, or UL 2075, *Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors. (See 29.3.1 for basic requirements.)*

29.10.3.4 All signals produced from periodic testing of carbon monoxide alarms or detectors shall be identical to the signal produced when the unit is in alarm.

29.10.3.5 Trouble signals shall be distinctive from alarm signals.

29.10.3.6 Unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer's published instructions, carbon monoxide alarms and detectors shall be replaced when they fail to respond to tests.

29.10.4 Heat Alarms and Heat Detectors.

29.10.4.1* Each heat alarm and heat detector, including a heat alarm or heat detector integrally mounted on a smoke alarm or smoke detector, shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Detect abnormally high temperature or rate-of-temperature rise
(2) Be listed for not less than 50 ft (15.2 m) spacing

29.10.4.2* Fixed-temperature alarms or detectors shall comply with both of the following conditions:

(1) Have a temperature rating at least 20°F (11°C) above the maximum expected temperature in the room or space where installed
(2) Have a temperature rating not more than 50°F (28°C) higher than the maximum expected temperature in the room or space where installed

29.10.5 Operability. Single- and multiple-station alarms, including heat alarms, shall be provided with a convenient means for testing its operability by the occupant, system owner, or other responsible parties.

29.10.6 Control Unit.

29.10.6.1 The control unit shall be automatically restoring upon restoration of electrical power.

29.10.6.2* The control unit shall be of a type that "locks in" on an alarm condition.

29.10.6.3 Smoke detection circuits shall not be required to lock in.

29.10.6.4 If a reset switch is provided, it shall be of a self-restoring (momentary operation) type.

29.10.6.5 A means for silencing the trouble notification appliance(s) shall be permitted only if the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) The means is key-operated or located within a locked enclosure, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.
(2) The means transfers the trouble indication to an identified lamp or other acceptable visible indicator, and the visible indication persists until the trouble condition has been corrected.

29.10.6.6 A means for turning off actuated alarm notification appliances shall be permitted only if the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) The means is key-operated or located within a locked cabinet or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.
(2) The means includes the provision of a visible alarm silence indication.
(3) The silenced position is indicated by a distinctive signal.
(4) The switch is a momentary or self-restoring switch.

29.10.6.7 Initiating devices and notification appliances connected to household control units shall be monitored for integrity so that the occurrence of a single open or single ground fault in the interconnection, which prevents normal operation of the interconnected devices, is indicated by a distinctive trouble signal.

29.10.6.8 The control unit shall be in compliance with applicable standards such as UL 985, *Household Fire Warning System Units*; UL 1730, *Smoke Detector Monitors and Accessories for Individual Living Units of Multifamily Residences and Hotel/Motel Rooms*; or UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*.

Δ **29.10.6.9** Any data exchange between the control unit and separate independent devices via remote access shall not compromise the integrity of the alarm system.

29.10.6.10 Remote resetting and silencing of a control unit from other than the protected premises shall be inhibited for a minimum of 4 minutes from the initial activation of any fire or carbon monoxide alarm signal.

•

29.10.7 Combination System.

Δ **29.10.7.1** If designed and installed to perform additional functions, fire and carbon monoxide warning equipment shall operate reliably and without compromise to its primary functions.

29.10.7.2 Fire signals shall take precedence over any other signal or functions, even if a non-fire signal is actuated first.

29.10.7.3 Fire and carbon monoxide signals shall be distinctive so that a fire or carbon monoxide signal can be distinguished from all other signals.

29.10.7.4 The use of a common audible notification appliance shall be permitted when fire devices activate a T3 signal and carbon monoxide devices activate a T4 signal.

29.10.7.5 Faults in other systems or components shall not affect the operation of the household fire alarm system or carbon monoxide detection system.

29.10.7.6 Where common wiring is employed for a combination system, the equipment for other than the fire and carbon monoxide alarm system shall be connected to the common wiring of the system so that short circuits, open circuits, grounds, or any fault in this equipment or interconnection between this equipment and the fire and carbon monoxide alarm system wiring does not interfere with the supervision of the fire and carbon monoxide alarm system or prevent alarm or trouble signal operation.

29.10.7.7 Audible notification signals shall be provided in the following priority order:

(1) Fire alarm
(2) Carbon monoxide
(3) Other

29.10.7.8* Installations that include the connection of single- or multiple-station alarms with other input or output devices shall be permitted.

29.10.7.8.1 An open, ground fault, or short circuit of the wiring connecting input or output devices to the single- or multiple-station alarms shall not prevent operation of each individual alarm.

29.10.7.8.2 Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms and carbon monoxide alarms shall be permitted to be connected to a control unit located within the dwelling unit.

29.10.7.8.3 If single- or multiple-station alarms are connected to a control unit, the following shall occur:

(1) The actuation of a single- or multiple-station smoke alarm initiates a fire alarm signal at the control unit located within the dwelling unit.
(2) The actuation of a single- or multiple-station carbon monoxide alarm initiates a carbon monoxide alarm signal at the control unit located within the dwelling unit.

29.10.7.8.4 A fire sprinkler waterflow alarm initiating device shall be permitted to be connected to the multiple-station alarms or household fire alarm system to actuate a fire alarm signal.

29.10.8 Wireless Devices.

29.10.8.1 Wireless Systems. Household fire alarm systems and carbon monoxide detection systems utilizing low-power wireless transmission of signals within the protected dwelling unit shall comply with the requirements of Section 23.16, except as modified by 29.10.8.1.1.

29.10.8.1.1 The requirements of 23.16.4.2 shall not apply where periodic monitoring for integrity complies with all of the following:

(1) Each low-power transmitter/transceiver shall transmit check-in signals at intervals not exceeding 80 minutes.
(2) Any transmission interruption between a low-power radio transmitter/transceiver and the receiver/fire alarm control unit exceeding 4 hours shall cause a latching trouble signal at the household fire alarm control unit/operator interface.
(3) Low-power transmitters/transceivers shall be limited to serving a single initiating device; however, the initiating device shall be permitted to send multiple types of alarm signals.
(4) Redundant retransmission devices (repeaters) shall be provided such that disconnecting or failure of any single retransmission device (repeater) does not interrupt communications between any low-power transmitter/transceiver and the receiver/fire alarm control unit.

29.10.8.2 Nonsupervised Wireless Interconnected Alarms.

29.10.8.2.1 Nonsupervised, low-power wireless alarms shall be capable of reliably communicating at a distance of 100 ft (30.5 m) indoors as tested to an equivalent open area test distance.

29.10.8.2.2 Fire alarm signals shall have priority over all other signals.

29.10.8.2.3 The maximum allowable response delay from activation of an initiating device to receipt and alarm/display by the receiver/control unit shall be 20 seconds.

29.10.8.2.4* Wireless interconnected smoke alarms (in receive mode) shall remain in alarm as long as the originating unit (transmitter) remains in alarm.

29.10.8.2.5 The occurrence of any single fault that disables a transceiver shall not prevent other transceivers in the system from operating.

29.10.9 Supervising Stations.

29.10.9.1* Household alarm systems shall be permitted to be supervised by a supervising station or by a public emergency alarm reporting system.

29.10.9.1.1 Transmission of signals from single- and multiple-station alarms to a constantly attended supervising station or public emergency alarm reporting system shall be processed by a household alarm system.

N **29.10.9.1.1.1** Remote devices using listening technologies shall not send smoke alarm or carbon monoxide alarm signals directly to a supervising station.

29.10.9.1.2 Where off-premises supervision is provided, the system shall transmit at least a general alarm signal.

29.10.9.1.3 Transmission of trouble signals and supervisory signals shall be permitted.

29.10.9.2* Supervising station systems and services shall meet the requirements of Chapter 26 for the type of system and type of service selected, except as modified by 29.10.9.5 through 29.10.9.10.

29.10.9.3 Public emergency alarm reporting systems shall meet the requirements of Chapter 27, except as modified by 29.10.9.7 through 29.10.9.10.

29.10.9.4 Public emergency alarm reporting systems shall transmit signals to an emergency services communications system meeting the requirements of NFPA 1225.

29.10.9.5 Supervising station systems shall not be required to comply with requirements for indication of central station service in 26.3.4.

29.10.9.6 Alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at a listed central supervising station.

29.10.9.7* Alarm signals shall be permitted to be verified prior to reporting them to the fire service, provided that the verification process does not delay the reporting by more than 90 seconds.

29.10.9.8 Household fire alarm systems shall be programmed by the manufacturer to generate at least a monthly test of the communication or transmission means.

Δ **29.10.9.9** The activation of a fire alarm signal through a user interface shall require two simultaneous or sequential operations.

29.10.9.10 Communications methods shall comply with 29.10.9.10.1 through 29.10.9.10.7.

29.10.9.10.1 Where a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) is used, the DACT serving the protected premises shall comply with both of the following:

(1) Require one telephone line
(2) Require a call to one digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR) number

29.10.9.10.2 Where a DACT is used, the DACT test signals shall be transmitted at least monthly.

29.10.9.10.3 Where a communication or transmission means other than DACT is used, only a single communication technology and path shall be required to serve the protected premises.

29.10.9.10.4 Where a communication or transmission means other than DACT is used, all equipment necessary to transmit an alarm signal shall comply with both of the following conditions:

(1) Be provided with a minimum of 24 hours of secondary power capacity
(2) Transmit a specific trouble signal upon loss of primary power

29.10.9.10.5 Failure of the communication path referenced in 29.10.9.10.3 shall be annunciated at the supervising station and at the protected premises within not more than 7 days of the failure.

29.10.9.10.6 A dedicated cellular telephone connection shall be permitted to be used as a single means to transmit alarms to a constantly attended remote monitoring location.

29.10.9.10.7 Transmission devices connected to the supervising station shall be in compliance with applicable standards such as UL 985, *Household Fire Warning System Units*.

29.10.9.10.8 Transmission devices connected to the supervising station sharing on-premises equipment shall be listed as communications or information technology equipment.

29.10.10 Cybersecurity.

29.10.10.1* All control units shall be designed for cybersecurity as determined by the manufacturer.

29.10.10.2 All devices that are connected wirelessly to a control unit and rely on the control unit for occupant notification activation shall not diminish the cybersecurity of the control unit.

29.10.10.3 All system or software updates required or initiated by the manufacturer shall not diminish the cybersecurity of the control unit.

29.10.10.4* All alarms that use IP or cellular communication shall be designed for cybersecurity as determined by the manufacturer.

29.11 Installation.

29.11.1 General.

29.11.1.1 All equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and applicable electrical standards.

29.11.1.2 All devices shall be so located and mounted that accidental operation is not caused by jarring or vibration.

29.11.1.3 All equipment shall be mounted so as to be supported independently of its attachment to wires.

Δ **29.11.1.4** The supplier or installing contractor shall comply with 29.11.1.4.1 and 29.11.1.4.2.

N **29.11.1.4.1** The supplier or installing contractor shall provide the system owner or other responsible parties with the following:

(1) An instruction booklet illustrating typical installation layouts
(2) Instruction charts describing the operation, method, and frequency of testing and maintenance of the warning equipment

(3) Printed information for establishing an emergency evacuation plan
(4) Printed information to inform system owners where they can obtain repair or replacement service, and where and how parts requiring regular replacement, such as batteries or bulbs, can be obtained within 2 weeks
(5) The instructions required in Section 29.14

N **29.11.1.4.2** The supplier or installing contractor shall provide the system owner or other responsible parties with information noting the following requirements:

(1) Replace smoke alarms and carbon monoxide alarms that fail to respond to tests.
(2) Replace smoke alarms and carbon monoxide alarms that have been in service longer than 10 years from the date of manufacture unless otherwise stated in the manufacturer's published instructions.

29.11.2 Interconnection of Multiple-Station Alarms.

29.11.2.1* The interconnection of alarms shall comply with the following:

(1) Alarms shall not be interconnected in numbers that exceed the manufacturer's published instructions.
(2) In no case shall more than 18 initiating devices be interconnected (of which 12 can be smoke alarms) where the interconnecting means is not supervised.
(3) In no case shall more than 64 initiating devices be interconnected (of which 42 can be smoke alarms) where the interconnecting means is supervised.
(4) Alarms of different manufacturers shall not be interconnected unless listed as being compatible with the specific model.
(5) When alarms of different types are interconnected, all interconnected alarms shall produce the appropriate audible response for the phenomena being detected or remain silent.

29.11.2.2 A single fault on the interconnecting means between multiple-station alarms shall not prevent single-station operation of any of the interconnected alarms.

29.11.2.3 Remote notification appliance circuits of multiple-station alarms shall be capable of being tested for integrity by activation of the test feature on any interconnected alarm.

29.11.2.4 Activation of the test feature shall result in the operation of all interconnected notification appliances.

Δ **29.11.3* Smoke Alarms and Smoke Detectors.** Smoke alarms, smoke detectors, combination of devices, and equipment shall comply with the following:

(1) Be installed in accordance with the product listing and manufacturer's published instructions
(2) Comply with requirements in 29.11.3.1 through 29.11.3.4 unless specifically listed for the application

29.11.3.1* Peaked Ceilings. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors mounted on a peaked ceiling shall be located within 36 in. (910 mm) horizontally of the peak, but not closer than 4 in. (100 mm) vertically to the peak.

29.11.3.2* Sloped Ceilings. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors mounted on a sloped ceiling having a rise greater than 1 ft in 8 ft (1 m in 8 m) horizontally shall be located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the high side of the ceiling, but not closer than 4 in. (100 mm) from the adjoining wall surface.

29.11.3.3* Wall Mounting. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors mounted on walls shall be located not farther than 12 in. (300 mm) from the adjoining ceiling surface.

Δ **29.11.3.4 Specific Location Requirements.** The installation of smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located where ambient conditions, including humidity and temperature, are outside the limits specified by the manufacturer's published instructions.
(2) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located within unfinished attics or garages or in other spaces where temperatures can fall below 40°F (4.4°C) or exceed 100°F (38°C).
(3)* Where the mounting surface could become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.
(4)* Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance unless the devices are listed for resistance to common nuisance sources from cooking in accordance with UL 217, *Smoke Alarms*, or UL 268, *Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*.
(5) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within an area of exclusion determined by a 10 ft (3.0 m) radial distance along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance except as permitted in 29.11.3.4(6).
(6)* Where the 10 ft (3.0 m) area of exclusion would prohibit the placement of a smoke alarm or smoke detector required by other sections of this Code, and where the kitchen or cooking area and adjacent spaces have no clear interior partitions or headers, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be permitted to be installed at a radial distance between 6 ft (1.8 m) and 10 ft (3.0 m) from any stationary or fixed cooking appliance if the devices are listed for resistance to common nuisance sources from cooking in accordance with UL 217 or UL 268.
(7)* Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from a door to a bathroom containing a shower or tub unless listed for installation in close proximity to such locations.
(8) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the supply registers of a forced air heating or cooling system or installed within the direct airflow from such registers.
(9)* Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the tip of the blade of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan unless the room configuration restricts meeting this requirement.
(10) Where stairs lead to other occupiable levels, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be located so that smoke rising in the stairway cannot be prevented from reaching smoke alarms and smoke detectors by an intervening door or obstruction.
(11) For stairways leading up from a basement, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be located on the basement ceiling near the entry to the stairs.
(12)* For tray-shaped ceilings (coffered ceilings), smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be installed on the

highest portion of the ceiling or on the sloped portion of the ceiling within 12 in. (300 mm) vertically down from the highest point.

(13) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with 17.7.4.2.4.

29.11.4* Heat Alarms and Heat Detectors.

29.11.4.1* On smooth ceilings, heat alarms and heat detectors shall be installed within the strict limitations of their listed spacing.

29.11.4.2* For sloped ceilings having a rise greater than 1 ft in 8 ft (1 m in 8 m) horizontally, the heat alarm or heat detector shall be located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the peak.

29.11.4.3 The spacing of additional heat alarms or heat detectors, if any, shall be based on a horizontal distance measurement, not on a measurement along the slope of the ceiling.

29.11.4.4* Heat alarms or heat detectors shall be mounted on the ceiling at least 4 in. (100 mm) from a wall or on a wall with the top of the heat alarm or heat detector not less than 4 in. (100 mm), nor more than 12 in. (300 mm), below the ceiling.

29.11.4.5 Where the mounting surface could become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, the heat alarms or heat detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.

29.11.4.6 In rooms with open joists or beams, all ceiling-mounted heat alarms or heat detectors shall be located on the bottom of such joists or beams.

29.11.4.7* Heat alarms or heat detectors installed on an open-joisted ceiling shall have their smooth ceiling spacing reduced where this spacing is measured at right angles to solid joists; in the case of heat alarms or heat detectors, this spacing shall not exceed one-half of the listed spacing.

N **29.11.4.8** Heat alarms and heat detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.6.3.

29.11.5 Wiring and Equipment. The installation of wiring and equipment shall be in accordance with the requirements of Article 760 of *NFPA 70*.

29.11.6 Installation and Inspection Record. Where a form is required by the AHJ to document the installation and inspection of a household alarm system or single- or multiple-station alarms, 7.8.2(3) shall be used to document the record of completion and inspection.

29.12 Optional Functions. The following optional functions of fire-warning equipment shall be permitted:

(1) Notification of the fire department, either directly or through an alarm monitoring service
(2) Monitoring of other safety systems, such as fire sprinklers for alarm or proper operating conditions
(3) Notification of occupants or others of potentially dangerous conditions, such as the presence of fuel gases or toxic gases such as carbon monoxide
(4) Notification of occupants or others of the activation of intrusion (burglar alarm) sensors
(5) Any other function, safety related or not, that could share components or wiring

29.13 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance.

29.13.1 Fire and carbon monoxide alarm equipment shall be maintained and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and per the requirements of 14.4.5, 14.4.6, and 14.4.8.

29.13.2 All fire and carbon monoxide alarm equipment shall be restored to a normal condition after each alarm or test.

29.14 Markings and Instructions.

29.14.1 Markings.

29.14.1.1 Alarms and Detectors.

Δ **29.14.1.1.1** All alarms and detectors shall comply with 29.14.1.1.1.1 to 29.14.1.1.1.2.

N **29.14.1.1.1.1** All alarms and detectors shall be plainly marked with the following information on the unit:

(1) Manufacturer's or listee's name, address, and model number
(2) A mark or certification that the unit complies with the definition of *listed* in 3.2.5
(3) Electrical rating (where applicable)
(4) Manufacturer's published operating and maintenance instructions
(5) Test instructions
(6) Replacement and service instructions
(7) Explanation of signal indicators, including identification of lights, switches, meters, and similar devices, regarding their function, unless their function is obvious
(8) Distinction between alarm and trouble signals on units employing both
(9) Reference to an installation diagram and system owner's manual
(10) Date of manufacture in the format YEAR (in four digits), MONTH (in letters), and DAY (in two digits) located on the outside of the alarm

N **29.14.1.1.1.2** All alarms and detectors shall be plainly marked on the unit in accordance with the following:

(1) The sensitivity setting for an alarm having a fixed setting
(2) For an alarm that is intended to be adjusted in the field, the range of sensitivity
(3) The marked sensitivity indicated as a percent per foot obscuration level
(4) A nominal value plus tolerance marking

29.14.1.1.2 Where space limitations prohibit inclusion of 29.14.1.1.1(4) and 29.14.1.1.1(6), it shall be permitted to include this information in the installation instructions instead.

29.14.1.2 Carbon Monoxide Alarms and Carbon Monoxide Detectors. In addition to 29.14.1.1, carbon monoxide alarms or carbon monoxide detectors shall be marked with the following information:

(1) Statement that indicates the unit is not suitable as a fire detector
(2) Warning that carbon monoxide is odorless, colorless, and tasteless
(3) Emergency actions to be taken
(4) Recommended replacement date
(5) If listed for use in an unconditioned area

29.14.1.3 Household Alarm Control Units.

Δ **29.14.1.3.1** Unless otherwise permitted by 29.14.1.3.2, all household alarm control units shall be plainly marked with the following information on the unit:

(1) Manufacturer's or listee's name, address, and model number
(2) A mark or certification that the unit complies with the definition of *listed* in 3.2.5
(3) Electrical rating (where applicable)
(4) Identification of all user interface components and their functions (such as, but not limited to, lights, switches, and meters) located adjacent to the component
(5) Manufacturer's published operating and maintenance instructions
(6) Test instructions
(7) Replacement and service instructions
(8) Reference to an installation wiring diagram and homeowner's manual, if not attached to control unit, by drawing number and issue number and/or date

29.14.1.3.2 Where space limitations prohibit inclusion of 29.14.1.3.1(5) and 29.14.1.3.1(7), it shall be permitted to include this information in the installation instructions instead.

29.14.2 Instructions.

Δ **29.14.2.1 Alarms and Detectors.** The following information shall be included in the instructions provided with alarms and detectors:

(1) Installation instructions
(2) Operating instructions
(3) Testing instructions
(4) Maintenance instructions
(5) Replacement and service instructions

29.14.2.2 Carbon Monoxide Alarms and Carbon Monoxide Detectors. In addition to 29.14.2.1, the following information shall be included in the instructions provided with carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors:

(1) Statement indicating that smoke might not be present during a carbon monoxide alarm condition
(2)* Information on the actions to be taken in case of an alarm
(3) Minimum and recommended distances from fuel-burning equipment

Annex A Explanatory Material

Annex A is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only. This annex contains explanatory material, numbered to correspond with the applicable text paragraphs.

A.1.2 Fire alarm systems intended for life safety should be designed, installed, and maintained to provide indication and warning of abnormal fire conditions. The system should alert building occupants and summon appropriate aid in adequate time to allow for occupants to travel to a safe place and for rescue operations to occur. The fire alarm system should be part of a life safety plan that also includes a combination of prevention, protection, egress, and other features particular to that occupancy.

A.1.2.4 The intent of this paragraph is to make it clear that the protection requirements are derived from the applicable building or fire code, not from *NFPA 72*.

A.1.6.5 Where dimensions are expressed in inches, it is intended that the precision of the measurement be 1 in., thus plus or minus ½ in. The conversion and presentation of dimensions in millimeters would then have a precision of 25 mm, thus plus or minus 13 mm. It is not intended that the application or enforcement of these values be more precise than the precision expressed.

Δ **A.3.2.1 Approved.** The National Fire Protection Association does not approve, inspect, or certify any installations, procedures, equipment, or materials nor does it approve or evaluate testing laboratories. In determining the acceptability of installations or procedures, equipment, or materials, the "authority having jurisdiction" may base acceptance on compliance with NFPA or other appropriate standards. In the absence of such standards, said authority may require evidence of proper installation, procedure, or use. The "authority having jurisdiction" may also refer to the listings or labeling practices of an organization that is concerned with product evaluations and is thus in a position to determine compliance with appropriate standards for the current production of listed items.

A.3.2.2 Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). The phrase "authority having jurisdiction," or its acronym AHJ, is used in NFPA standards in a broad manner because jurisdictions and approval agencies vary, as do their responsibilities. Where public safety is primary, the authority having jurisdiction may be a federal, state, local, or other regional department or individual such as a fire chief; fire marshal; chief of a fire prevention bureau, labor department, or health department; building official; electrical inspector; or others having statutory authority. For insurance purposes, an insurance inspection department, rating bureau, or other insurance company representative may be the authority having jurisdiction. In many circumstances, the property owner or his or her designated agent assumes the role of the authority having jurisdiction; at government installations, the commanding officer or departmental official may be the authority having jurisdiction.

A.3.2.3 Code. The decision to designate a standard as a "code" is based on such factors as the size and scope of the NFPA standard, its intended use and form of adoption, and whether it contains substantial enforcement and administrative provisions.

A.3.2.5 Listed. The means for identifying listed equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation; some organizations do not recognize equipment as listed unless it is also labeled. The authority having jurisdiction should utilize the system employed by the listing organization to identify a listed product.

A.3.3.6 Acoustically Distinguishable Space (ADS). All parts of a building or area intended to have occupant notification are subdivided into ADSs as defined. Some ADSs might be designated to have voice communications capability and require that those communications be intelligible. Other spaces might not require voice intelligibility or might not be capable of reliable voice intelligibility. An ADS might have acoustical design features that are conducive for voice intelligibility, or it might be a space where voice intelligibility could be difficult or impossible to achieve. Each is still referred to as an ADS.

In smaller areas, such as those under 400 ft^2 (40 m^2), walls alone will define the ADS. In larger areas, other factors might have to be considered. In spaces that might be subdivided by temporary or movable partitions, such as ballrooms and meeting rooms, each individual configuration should be considered a separate ADS. Physical characteristics, such as a change in ceiling height of more than 20 percent, or a change in acoustical finish, such as carpet in one area and tile in another, would require those areas to be treated as separate ADSs. In larger areas, there might be noise sources that require a section to be treated as a separate ADS. Any significant change in ambient noise level or frequency might necessitate an area be considered a separate ADS.

In areas of 85 dBA or greater ambient sound pressure level, meeting the pass/fail criteria for intelligibility might not be possible, and other means of communications might be necessary. So, for example, the space immediately surrounding a printing press or other high-noise machine might be designated as a separate ADS, and the design might call for some form of effective notification but not necessarily require the ability to have intelligible voice communications. The aisles or operator's control stations might be separate ADSs where intelligible voice communication might be desired.

Significant differences in furnishings — for example, an area with tables, desks, or low dividers adjacent to an area with high shelving — would require separate consideration. The entire desk area could be a single acoustic zone, whereas each area between shelving could be a unique zone. Essentially, any noteworthy change in the acoustical environment within an area will mandate consideration of that portion of the area to be treated as an acoustic zone. Hallways and stairwells will typically be considered as individual acoustic zones.

Spaces confined by walls with carpeting and acoustical ceilings can be deemed to be one ADS. An ADS should be an area of consistent size and material. A change of materials from carpet to hard tile, the existence of sound sources, such as decorative waterfalls, large expanses of glass, and changes in ceiling height, are all factors that might separate one ADS from another.

Each ADS might require different components and design features to achieve intelligible voice communication. For example, two ADSs with similar acoustical treatments and noise levels might have different ceiling heights. The ADS with the lower ceiling height might require more ceiling-mounted loudspeakers to ensure that all listeners are in a direct sound field *(see Figure A.3.3.6)*. Other ADSs might benefit from the use of

alternate loudspeaker technologies, such as line arrays, to achieve intelligibility.

An ADS that differs from another because of the frequency and level of ambient noise might require the use of loudspeakers and system components that have a wider frequency bandwidth than conventional emergency communications equipment. However, designers should not use higher bandwidth loudspeakers in all locations, unless needed to overcome certain acoustic and ambient conditions. This is because the higher bandwidth appliance will require more energy to perform properly. This increases amplifier and wire size and power supply requirements.

In some spaces, it might be impractical to achieve intelligibility, and, in such a case, alternatives to voice evacuation might be required within such areas.

There might be some areas of a facility where there are several spaces of the same approximate size and the same acoustic properties. For example, there might be an office space with multiple individual offices, each with one loudspeaker. If one or two are satisfactorily tested, there is no need to test all of them for speech intelligibility.

A.3.3.12.3 Manual Fire Alarm Box. The term *box* is currently the term used by building codes and nationally recognized testing laboratories. They are also called manual fire alarm stations, pull stations, and call points. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.20 Ancillary Functions. Ancillary functions can include general paging, background music, or other non-emergency signals. (SIG-ECS)

N **A.3.3.31 Auxiliary Service Provider (ASP).** Auxiliary service providers (ASPs) that first receive and redirect or modify fire alarm system signals from the protected premises before they are received by the supervising station need to be further regulated. Although these entities and their equipment and services are set up to automatically retransmit signals to the supervising station, this signal transmission can compromise the safeguards placed in this Code to ensure reliable signal transmission from the protected premises to the supervising station and timely response by emergency responders. An internet service provider or other common carrier that routes signals directly to the supervising station should not be considered an ASP.

Entities that operate or offer building owners an auxiliary service provide a combination of on-premises fire alarm communicators and pathways from the protected premises to its facility, receivers, or servers prior to the supervising station. The pathway(s) of the ASP includes that from the supervised fire alarm communicator at the protected premises to itself, and secondarily from itself to the supervising station *(see Figure A.3.3.31)*. Any failure of the pathway(s) needs to include annunciation at the protected premises that the fire alarm signal(s) was not acknowledged by the supervising station and notification to the supervising station of a failed communication. It is common for the fire alarm service company to provide the supervising station identification to the ASP to ensure signals are received at the prearranged supervising station. ASPs might provide other business services. Only fire alarm signals from the protected premises to the supervising station for signal processing are meant to comply with this Code. (SIG-SSS)

A.3.3.32 Average Ambient Sound Level. The term *average ambient sound level* is also called the equivalent A-weighted sound level measured over t hours, where t is the time period over which the measurement is made. The standard industry symbol is $L_{A,eq,t}$. Where a measurement is taken over a 24-hour time period, the designation would be $L_{A,eq,24}$.

A.3.3.33 Backbone. In a Class N network, all endpoints (i.e., alarm devices or panels) connect to a redundant backbone that has multiple paths. No panel or alarm device is directly connected to another. Class N must have a redundant backbone so that the loss of a single path (cable, fiber, or wireless segment) will not cause loss of communication between any two endpoints (i.e., alarm devices or panels). A backbone can interconnect diverse networks in the same building, in different buildings, in a campus environment, or over wide areas.

A.3.3.34 Battery. Common usage permits this designation to be applied to a single cell used independently. Cells can be connected in series or parallel, or both, to provide the required operating voltage and current levels. (SIG-TMS)

A.3.3.42 Ceiling. Areas with a suspended ceiling have two ceilings, one visible from the floor and one above the suspended ceiling.

A.3.3.42.3 Sloping Peaked-Type Ceiling. Curved or domed ceilings can be considered peaked with the slope figured as the slope of the chord from highest to lowest point.

Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(a) for an illustration of smoke or heat detector spacing on peaked-type sloped ceilings.

A.3.3.42.4 Sloping Shed-Type Ceiling. Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(b) for an illustration of smoke or heat detector spacing on shed-type sloped ceilings.

A.3.3.44.3 Smooth Ceiling. Open truss constructions are not considered to impede the flow of fire products unless the

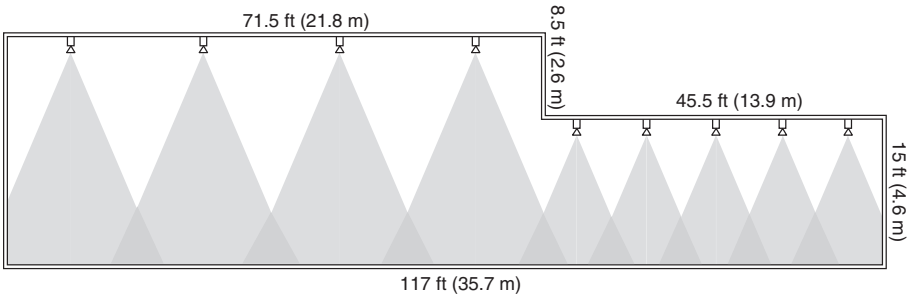
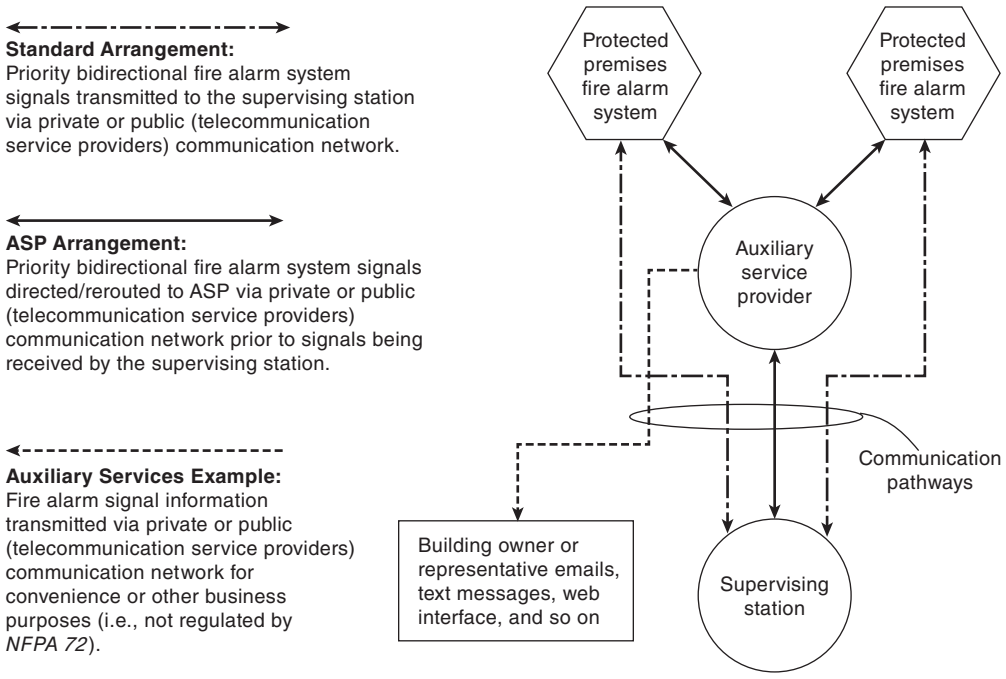


FIGURE A.3.3.6 Illustration Demonstrating the Effect of Ceiling Height. ***(Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)***



Note: Acknowledgments to the protected premises fire alarm signals are only initiated by the supervising station.

N **FIGURE A.3.3.31 Typical Auxiliary Service Provider (ASP) Concept.**

upper member, in continuous contact with the ceiling, projects below the ceiling more than 4 in. (100 mm).

A.3.3.45.4 Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Cell. VRLA cells provide a means for recombination of internally generated oxygen and the suppression of hydrogen gas evolution to limit water consumption. (SIG-TMS)

A.3.3.52.2 Radio Channel. The width of the channel depends on the type of transmissions and the tolerance for the frequency of emission. Channels normally are allocated for radio transmission in a specified type for service by a specified transmitter.

A.3.3.56 Coded. Notification signal examples are numbered strokes of an impact-type appliance and numbered flashes of a visual appliance.

Δ **A.3.3.62 Communications Center.** Examples of functions of a communications center are as follows:

(1) Communications between the public and the communications center
(2) Communications between the communications centers, the emergency response agency (ERA), and emergency response facilities (ERFs)
(3) Communications within the ERA and between different ERAs
(4) Communications with the public emergency alarm reporting system [**1225,** 2022]

The central operating part of the public emergency alarm reporting system is usually located at the communications center.

A.3.3.67 Condition. See Figure A.3.3.67 that describes the Condition — Signal — Response model used in this Code. There are varying degrees of conditions that require varying degrees of response that are initiated by various types of signals. A condition could be present without being detected (either because detection of the condition was not required or was not feasible), in which case, there is no signal or response. A condition could be detected, resulting in a signal, but there could be no required response. A signal could be generated erroneously in the absence of a condition (due to malfunction or other causes) resulting in an unwarranted response. The condition is normal when no abnormal conditions are present.

A.3.3.67.1.1 Alarm Condition. When an alarm condition is present, damage to life or property has begun or will begin. Detection, signaling, and response, effected quickly, can limit or prevent damage. The extent of damage is often reduced with inverse proportion to the time required for detection, signaling, and response. The amount of time available for detection, signaling, and response is generally not a known quantity and damage might not be preventable. Alarm conditions can result due to the presence of fire, chemicals, freezing temperatures, or other circumstances.

A.3.3.67.1.2 Pre-Alarm Condition. Some examples of pre-alarm conditions include the following: the presence of a very small amount of visible smoke (at levels below listed initiating device alarm thresholds), the presence of a smoke-like odor, a somewhat elevated temperature, and a gradually increasing temperature. Any abnormal condition that typically precedes an alarm condition can be termed a *pre-alarm condition.*

The amount of time available for investigating the cause of a pre-alarm condition is not a known quantity. If conditions deteriorate to the point of alarm, time is no longer available for investigation. Pre-alarm conditions might or might not progress to alarm conditions.

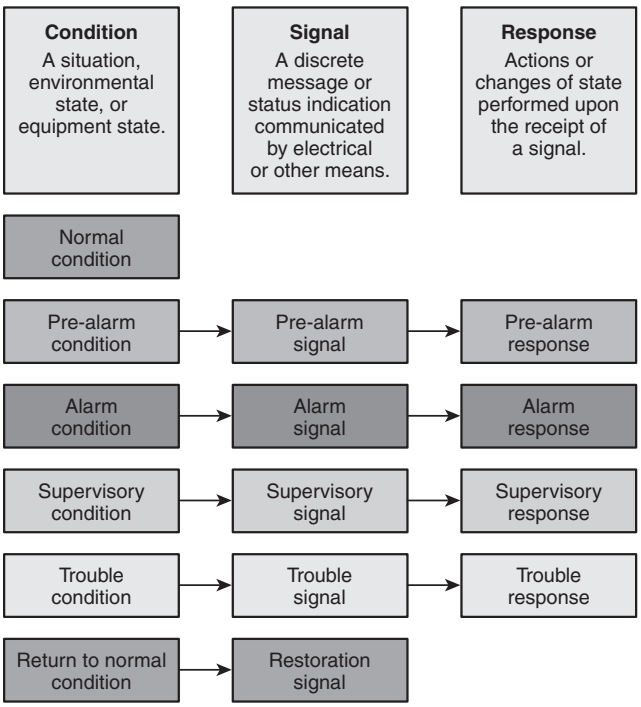


FIGURE A.3.3.67 Condition-Signal-Response Model.

The detection of pre-alarm conditions could be desirable in some occupancies, particularly if environmental conditions are ordinarily well controlled (e.g., integrated circuit fabrication facility) and personnel are trained to respond appropriately. In other occupancies, the detection of pre-alarm conditions might not be desirable or necessary.

The term *pre-alarm condition* is different from the terms *positive alarm sequence, alarm verification,* and *pre-signal.*

A.3.3.67.1.3 Supervisory Condition. A supervisory condition occurs when one system supervises another system, process, or equipment for failure or impairment, and a functional failure or impairment to operation of the supervised system, process or equipment has occurred. A supervisory condition might be a regularly occurring and expected event such as a valve closed on a sprinkler system. A closed valve is an abnormal condition for the sprinkler system, but it does not constitute a trouble condition in the fire alarm or signaling system.

In some cases, a fault in one system, causing a trouble condition in that system, results in a supervisory condition in another system because the other system is supervising some function of the faulted system, and the supervised function has been impaired. In those cases, both supervisory and trouble conditions exist at the same time.

Some examples of supervisory conditions can include the following:

(1) An event causing the activation of a supervisory initiating device used to monitor an environmental parameter, system element, component, or function, whose failure poses a risk to life, property, or mission (e.g., sprinkler valve closed, water tank low water level, low building temperature, emergency communications system impairment, and so forth).
(2) The failure of a guard to remain within established constraints while on tour, usually indicated by the absence of a guard's tour supervisory signal within prescribed timing requirements, or the presence of a guard's tour supervisory signal outside of prescribed sequencing requirements, or the presence of a delinquency signal.
(3) Public safety radio communications enhancement system antenna malfunction, signal booster failure, or battery depletion.
(4) In some cases, the presence of smoke in an HVAC duct or in other places as defined by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.3.3.67.1.4 Trouble Condition. A trouble condition is a fault in the fire alarm or signaling system. The system or some aspect of it is somehow broken. This is different from a supervisory condition that is an abnormal condition in a system that is supervised by the fire alarm or signaling system. Abnormal conditions, such as a closed valve in a sprinkler system, not caused by a fault are not considered trouble conditions.

In some cases, a fault in one system, causing a trouble condition in that system, results in a supervisory condition because another system is supervising some function of the faulted system, and the supervised function has been impaired by the fault *(see A.3.3.67.1.3, Supervisory Condition).* In those cases, both supervisory and trouble conditions exist at the same time.

A.3.3.71.1 Autonomous Control Unit (ACU). Although an ACU might incorporate provisions for messages or signals from external sources, the ACU is fully capable of building controls without the need for sources outside the building. An ACU is allowed to be located within a primary building and supply circuits to immediately adjacent support buildings such as detached storage buildings. Larger buildings will generally have their own ACUs to allow individual control within each building.

A.3.3.78 Design Professional. An architect/engineer working for the owner in the preparation of bid documents, overseeing systems covered by this standard as part of a design-build project, or an engineer performing a risk analysis, would be considered a design professional under the requirements of this standard. (SIG-ECS)

N **A.3.3.79.1 Acoustic Leak Detector.** These devices are also known as ultrasonic gas detectors. Acoustic leak detectors can be spot-type or line-type. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.79.3 Automatic Fire Detector. For this Code, automatic fire detectors are classified as follows: automatic fire extinguishing or suppression system operation detector, fire–gas detector, heat detector, other fire detectors, radiant-energy-sensing fire detector, and smoke detector.

A.3.3.79.6 Combination Detector. These detectors do not utilize a mathematical evaluation principle of signal processing more than a simple "or" function. Normally, these detectors provide a single response resulting from either sensing method, each of which operates independent of the other. These detectors can provide a separate and distinct response resulting from either sensing method, each of which is processed independent of the other. Typical examples are a combination of a heat detector with a smoke detector or a combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature heat detector.

A.3.3.79.9 Fixed-Temperature Detector. The difference between the operating temperature of a fixed-temperature device and the surrounding air temperature is proportional to the rate at which the temperature is rising. The rate is commonly referred to as *thermal lag*. The air temperature is always higher than the operating temperature of the device.

Typical examples of fixed-temperature sensing elements are as follows:

(1) *Bimetallic*. A sensing element comprised of two metals that have different coefficients of thermal expansion arranged so that the effect is deflection in one direction when heated and in the opposite direction when cooled.
(2) *Electrical Conductivity*. A line-type or spot-type sensing element in which resistance varies as a function of temperature.
(3) *Fusible Alloy*. A sensing element of a special composition metal (eutectic) that melts rapidly at the rated temperature.
(4) *Heat-Sensitive Cable*. A line-type device in which the sensing element comprises, in one type, two current-carrying wires separated by heat-sensitive insulation that softens at the rated temperature, thus allowing the wires to make electrical contact. In another type, a single wire is centered in a metallic tube, and the intervening space is filled with a substance that becomes conductive at a critical temperature, thus establishing electrical contact between the tube and the wire.
(5) *Liquid Expansion*. A sensing element comprising a liquid that is capable of marked expansion in volume in response to an increase in temperature.

A.3.3.79.10 Flame Detector. Flame detectors are categorized as ultraviolet, single wavelength infrared, ultraviolet infrared, or multiple wavelength infrared.

A.3.3.79.14 Line-Type Detector. Typical examples are rate-of-rise pneumatic tubing detectors, projected beam smoke detectors, and heat-sensitive cable.

A.3.3.79.15 Multi-Criteria Detector. A multi-criteria detector is a detector that contains multiple sensing methods that respond to fire signature phenomena and utilizes mathematical evaluation principles to determine the collective status of the device and generates a single output. Typical examples of multi-criteria detectors are a combination of a heat detector with a smoke detector, or a combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature heat detector that evaluates both signals using an algorithm to generate an output such as pre-alarm or alarm. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. Other examples are detectors that include sensor combinations that respond in a predictable manner to any combination of heat, smoke, carbon monoxide, or carbon dioxide.

A.3.3.79.16 Multi-Sensor Detector. Typical examples of multi-sensor detectors are a combination of a heat detector with a smoke detector, or a combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature heat detector that evaluates both signals using an algorithm to generate an output such as pre-alarm or alarm. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. Other examples are detectors that include sensor combinations that respond in a predictable manner to any combination of heat, smoke, carbon monoxide, or carbon dioxide.

A.3.3.79.21 Rate Compensation Detector. A typical example of a rate compensation detector is a spot-type detector with a tubular casing of a metal that tends to expand lengthwise as it is heated and an associated contact mechanism that closes at a certain point in the elongation. A second metallic element inside the tube exerts an opposing force on the contacts, tending to hold them open. The forces are balanced in such a way that, on a slow rate-of-temperature rise, there is more time for heat to penetrate to the inner element, which inhibits contact closure until the total device has been heated to its rated temperature level. However, on a fast rate-of-temperature rise, there is not as much time for heat to penetrate to the inner element, which exerts less of an inhibiting effect so that contact closure is achieved when the total device has been heated to a lower temperature. This, in effect, compensates for thermal lag.

A.3.3.79.22 Rate-of-Rise Detector. Typical examples of rate-of-rise detectors are as follows:

(1) *Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Tubing*. A line-type detector comprising small-diameter tubing, usually copper, that is installed on the ceiling or high on the walls throughout the protected area. The tubing is terminated in a detector unit that contains diaphragms and associated contacts set to actuate at a predetermined pressure. The system is sealed except for calibrated vents that compensate for normal changes in temperature.
(2) *Spot-Type Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Detector*. A device consisting of an air chamber, a diaphragm, contacts, and a compensating vent in a single enclosure. The principle of operation is the same as that described for pneumatic rate-of-rise tubing.
(3) *Electrical Conductivity–Type Rate-of-Rise Detector*. A line-type or spot-type sensing element in which resistance changes due to a change in temperature. The rate of change of resistance is monitored by associated control units, and an alarm is initiated when the rate of temperature increase exceeds a preset value.

A.3.3.79.24 Spark/Ember Detector. These devices are normally intended to operate in the infrared part of the spectrum.

A.3.3.79.25 Spot-Type Detector. Typical examples are bimetallic detectors, fusible alloy detectors, certain pneumatic rate-of-rise detectors, certain smoke detectors, and thermoelectric detectors.

A.3.3.80 Device (Class N). Class N devices include components connected to a Class N network that monitor the environment (e.g., smoke, heat, contact closure, manual "in case of fire" pull) and/or provide some output(s) (e.g., dry contact, audible/visual alert/notification, addressable loudspeaker) that are required to provide the real-time functionality necessary for the protection of life and property. In this way, a component connected to the network used for noncritical functions (i.e., maintenance) can be differentiated and excluded from the monitoring for integrity requirements of Class N.

Also in this way, transport equipment (e.g., switches, routers, hubs, media converters) and other equipment (e.g., printers, storage devices) can be differentiated from the requirements applied to Class N devices if they do not provide life safety–specific environmental monitoring, inputs, or outputs for the life safety system. This is not to say that this equipment is not important to the overall operation of the system, just that this

equipment is not considered a "device" in the context of Class N. Equipment that does not meet the definition of a device cannot be specifically supervised but rather generally supervised as they are part of the supervised pathways that service the Class N devices themselves.

N **A.3.3.83 Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT).** The DACT uses legacy POTS lines, emulated lines from an MFVN, listed communications equipment, or any combination thereof to connect and transmit signals to a DACR to indicate a status change of the fire alarm system. (SIG-SSS)

A.3.3.90 Double Doorway. Refer to Figure 17.7.6.6.4.3(A) for an illustration of detector location requirements for double doors.

A.3.3.96 Ember. Class A and Class D combustibles burn as embers under conditions where the flame typically associated with fire does not necessarily exist. This glowing combustion yields radiant emissions in parts of the radiant energy spectrum that are radically different from those parts affected by flaming combustion. Specialized detectors that are specifically designed to detect those emissions should be used in applications where this type of combustion is expected. In general, flame detectors are not intended for the detection of embers.

Δ **A.3.3.99 Emergency Communications System (ECS).** The definition is not intended to include the emergency responder communication enhancement systems addressed in NFPA 1225 nor to address the public switched telephone network.

A.3.3.101 Emergency Communications System — Emergency Command Center. An emergency command center can also include the mass notification system control.

A.3.3.102 Emergency Control Function Interface Device. The emergency control function interface device is a listed relay or other listed appliance that is part of the fire alarm system. An example of an emergency control function interface device is the fire alarm control relay that removes power to a fan control unit.

A.3.3.103 Emergency Control Functions. Emergency control functions are meant to be observed functions, not equipment or devices. Examples of emergency control functions are fan control (operation or shutdown), smoke damper operation, elevator recall, elevator power shutdown, door holder release, shutter release, door unlocking, activation of exit marking devices, and so forth. Fans, elevators, smoke dampers, door holders, shutters, locked doors, or exit marking devices themselves are not emergency control functions.

Δ **A.3.3.105 Emergency Response Agency (ERA).** An ERA includes any public, governmental, private, industrial, or military organization that engages in the operations specified in the definition. [**1225,** 2022]

Δ **A.3.3.106 Emergency Response Facility (ERF).** Examples of ERFs include a fire station, a police station, an ambulance station, a rescue station, a ranger station, and similar facilities. [**1225,** 2022]

A.3.3.108 Endpoint (Class N). An endpoint device originates and/or terminates a communication stream and does not forward it to other devices.

An FACU, ACU, ECCU endpoint originates and/or terminates a communication stream with autonomy. If data is sent to or received from other locations, that communications stream forms a new path. The new path could even employ a different communications protocol and, where permitted, have a different pathway class designation as defined in Section 12.3.

Subsection 12.3.6(2) shows Class N communication paths do not require redundant paths when connected to a single endpoint device. However, a connection to an FACU, ACU, or ECCU must be redundant even when those elements are an endpoint on a Class N communication path, with the excepted allowance of 20 ft (6.1 m) inside a raceway or enclosure defined in 12.6.7.

A.3.3.109 Evacuation. Evacuation does not include the relocation of occupants within a building.

A.3.3.117 Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU). In addition to the functions identified in the definition, a fire alarm control unit might have an integral operator interface, supply power to detection devices, notification appliances, transponder(s), or off-premises transmitter(s) or any combination of these. The control unit might also provide transfer of condition to relay or devices connected to the control unit. There can be multiple fire alarm control units in a fire alarm system.

A.3.3.117.2.1 Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Control Unit. A dedicated function fire alarm control unit could serve more than one emergency control function, for example a dedicated function fire alarm control unit could serve as a single control unit for sprinkler system monitoring and elevator recall. In that case, the control unit should be labeled as follows:

Sprinkler Waterflow AND Elevator Recall Control and Supervisory Control Unit

A.3.3.120.1 Combination System. Examples of non-fire systems are security, card access control, closed circuit television, sound reinforcement, background music, paging, sound masking, building automation, time, and attendance.

A.3.3.120.4 Protected Premises (Local) Fire Alarm System. A protected premises fire alarm system is any fire alarm system located at the protected premises. It can include any of the functions identified in Section 23.3. Where signals are transmitted to a communications center or supervising station, the protected premises fire alarm system also falls under the definition of one of the following systems: central station service alarm system, remote supervising station alarm system, proprietary supervising station alarm system, or auxiliary alarm system. The requirements that pertain to these systems apply in addition to the requirements for the protected premises fire alarm systems.

A.3.3.121 Fire Command Center. The fire command center should contain the following features as applicable to the specific facility:

(1) Emergency voice/alarm communications system unit
(2) Fire department communications unit
(3) Fire detection and alarm system annunciator unit
(4) Annunciator unit visually indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational
(5) Status indicators and controls for air-handling systems
(6) The required firefighter's control panel for smoke control systems installed in the building
(7) Controls for unlocking stairway doors simultaneously
(8) Sprinkler valve and waterflow detector display panels
(9) Emergency and standby power status indicators

(10) Telephone for fire department use with controlled access to the public telephone system
(11) Fire pump status indicators
(12) Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, means of egress, fire protection systems, firefighting equipment, and fire department access
(13) Worktable
(14) Generator supervision devices, manual start, and transfer features
(15) Public address system
(16) Other emergency systems identified in emergency response plan

A.3.3.139 Hearing Loss. The severity of hearing loss is measured by the degree of loudness, as measured in decibels, a sound must attain before being detected by an individual. Hearing loss can be ranked as mild, moderate, severe, or profound. It is quite common for someone to have more than one degree of hearing loss (e.g., mild sloping to severe). The following list shows the rankings and their corresponding decibel ranges:

(1) Mild:
   (a) For adults: between 25 and 40 dB
   (b) For children: between 15 and 40 dB
(2) Moderate: between 41 and 55 dB
(3) Moderately severe: between 56 and 70 dB
(4) Severe: between 71 and 90 dB
(5) Profound: 90 dB or greater

NIOSH defines material hearing impairment as an average of the hearing threshold levels for both ears that exceeds 25 dB at 1000, 2000, 3000, and 4000 Hz.

The American Medical Association indicates that a person has suffered material impairment when testing reveals a 25 dB average hearing loss from audiometric zero at 500, 1000, 2000, and 3000 Hz. OSHA has recognized that this is the lowest level of hearing loss that constitutes any material hearing impairment.

A.3.3.147 Identified (as applied to equipment). Some examples of ways to determine suitability of equipment for a specific purpose, environment, or application include investigations by a qualified testing laboratory (listing and labeling), an inspection agency, or other organizations concerned with product evaluation. [**70,** 2023]

A.3.3.148 Immediately (as used in Chapter 26). Actions that are performed "immediately" should be performed within a maximum of 90 seconds from receipt of a signal.

A.3.3.149 Impairment. An impairment is a system component or function that is not working properly, which can result in the system or unit not functioning when required. This might be due to an intentional act, such as closing a valve or disabling an initiating device. The impairment also might be caused by a deficiency in a piece of equipment or subsystem. An example of emergency impairment is physical damage to a control unit or wiring. Examples of a planned impairment include the addition of new devices or appliances or the reprogramming of system software.

A.3.3.150 In Writing. The definition of *in writing* should be applied to any documentation mandated by this Code whereby a statement or notification, or both, is required to be provided by the sender to a separate and distinct entity or to multiple entities, such as between an inspection, testing, and maintenance service provider and a building owner or between a supervising/central station provider and the authority having jurisdiction.

Such correspondence should be authorized and recognized by the sender as an official representation of their organization and clearly identifiable from the recipient's perspective as having been authorized by the sender. Examples of correspondence made *in writing* could include, but not be limited to, hard copy or digital notification that includes company letterhead or other type of company designation, authorized signatory or signatories either in digital form or on hard copy, or in an email signature block, or any combination thereof. Examples where such correspondence would be required could include, but not be limited to, test plans, inspection and testing reports, notification of deficiencies/corrections, change of supervising/central station providers, notification of recalled equipment, or suspected low audibility levels for alarm signaling.

The definition of *in writing* should not be applied to text messages, voice mails, notations on scratch paper, or any similar means of notification that fail to reflect the verifiable and authenticated nature of correspondence that is submitted *in writing*, as that term is defined by this Code.

A.3.3.152.2 Automatic Extinguishing System Supervisory Device. Examples of abnormal conditions include the following:

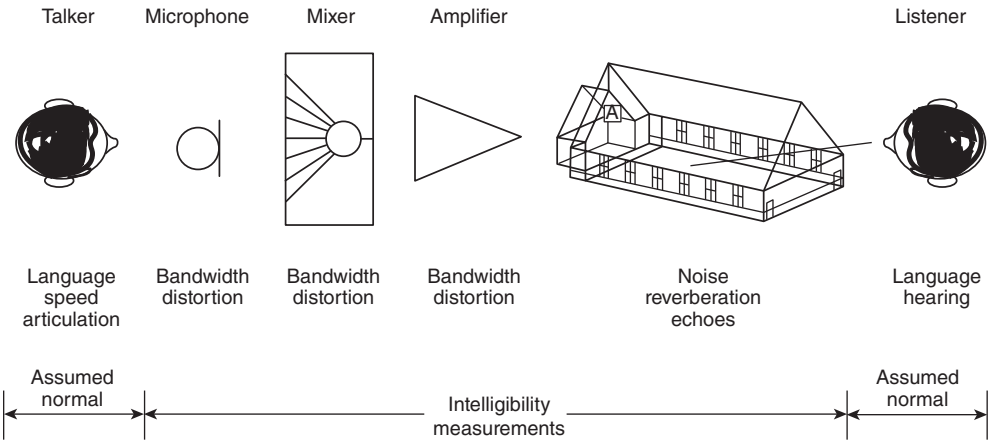
(1) A control valve that has changed position, such as a normally open valve in the closed position.
(2) Pressure levels that exceed or are less than needed, such as a dry pipe system having low air pressure.
(3) Liquid agent levels that exceed or are less than needed, such as a foam concentrate tank having inadequate foam to meet design requirements.
(4) Room temperatures below 40°F (4.4°C).
(5) Loss of power to a fire pump.
(6) A fire pump running.
(7) High engine temperature.
(8) Engine overspeed.

A.3.3.156 Intelligible. The term *intelligible* is intended to address only the communications channel and the acoustic environment as shown in Figure A.3.3.156. Intelligibility assumes that the talker or recorded voice message is in a language and using words known to the listener. It also assumes that the listener has normal hearing.

•

A.3.3.157.2 Fire Alarm Control Interface. Some mass notification systems' autonomous control units (ACUs) might not be listed to UL 864 for fire alarm service. Any component that is connected to the fire alarm system must be connected through a listed interface that will protect the functions of other systems should one system experience a failure. This can be through isolation modules, control relays, or other approved means that are listed for the intended use. As an example, failure of a stand-alone ACU should not affect any function of the FACU.

A.3.3.166 Local Operating Console (LOC). An LOC allows users within a building to activate prerecorded messages, deliver live voice messages, observe current status of the main autonomous control unit (ACU), or have similar such ACU operator functions at various locations within the building. An LOC serves a similar function as a remote fire alarm annunciator. However, there can be multiple LOC locations within a



Δ **FIGURE A.3.3.156 Voice Signal Path.** *(Source: K. Jacob, Bose® Professional Systems)*

building, such as on each floor, at each main entry point, at the switchboard or receptionist's console, or as determined by a risk analysis.

Δ **A.3.3.172 Managed Facilities-Based Voice Network (MFVN).** Managed facilities-based voice network (MFVN) service is functionally equivalent to traditional public-switched telephone network–based (PSTN-based) service provided by authorized common carriers [i.e., public utility telephone companies, Incumbent Local Exchange Carriers (ILEC), Local Exchange Carriers (LEC), Competitive Local Exchange Carriers (CLEC), and other Federal Communications Commission–licensed (FCC-licensed) carriers offering interconnection to facilities and unbundled network elements in order to provide such telecommunications services], with respect to dialing, dial plan, call completion, carriage of signals and protocols, and loop voltage treatment and provides all of the following features:

(1) A loop start telephone circuit service interface.
(2) Pathway reliability that is assured by proactive management, operation, and maintenance by the MFVN provider.
(3) Eight hours of standby power supply capacity for MFVN communications equipment, either located at the protected premises or field deployed. Industry standards followed by the authorized common carriers that operate MFVNs specifically engineer the selection of the size of the batteries, or other permanently located standby power source, in order to provide 8 hours of standby power with a reasonable degree of accuracy. Of course, over time, abnormal ambient conditions and battery aging can have an adverse effect on battery capacity. The MFVN field-deployed equipment typically monitors the condition of the standby battery and signals potential battery failure to permit the communications service provider to take appropriate action.
(4) Twenty-four hours of standby power supply capacity for MFVN communications equipment located at the communications service provider's central office.
(5) Installation of network equipment at the protected premises with safeguards to prevent unauthorized access to the equipment and its connections.
(6) Carrier communications and virtual signaling traffic traveled over a fully managed network, such as network facilities owned or leased by a private network connection or a combination thereof.

When providing telephone service to a new customer, MFVN providers give notice to the telephone service subscriber of the need to have any connected alarm system tested by authorized fire alarm service personnel in accordance with 26.6.2.6 and applicable requirements of Chapter 14 to make certain that all signal transmission features have remained operational. These features include the proper functioning of line seizure and the successful transmission of signals to the supervising station. In this way, the MFVN providers assist their new customers in complying with a testing procedure similar to that outlined in 26.2.7 for changes to providers of supervising station service.

The evolution of the deployment of telephone service has moved beyond the sole use of metallic conductors connecting a telephone subscriber's premises with the nearest telephone service provider's control and routing point (wire center). In the last 25 years, telephone service providers have introduced a variety of technologies to transport multiple, simultaneous telephone calls over shared communication pathways. To facilitate the further development of the modernization of the telephone network, the authorized common carriers (public utility telephone companies) have transitioned their equipment into an MFVN capable of providing a variety of communications services in addition to traditional telephone service.

Similarly, the evolution of digital communications technology has permitted entities other than the authorized common carriers (public utility telephone companies) to deploy robust communications networks and offer a variety of communications services, including telephone service.

These alternate service providers fall into two broad categories. The first category includes those entities that have emulated the MFVN provided by the authorized common carriers. The second category includes those entities that offer telephone service using means that do not offer the rigorous quality assurance, operational stability, and consistent features provided by an MFVN.

This Code intends to only recognize the use of the telephone network transmission of alarm, supervisory, trouble, and other emergency signals by means of MFVNs.

For example, this Code intends to permit an MFVN to provide facilities-based telephone (voice) service that interfaces with the premises fire alarm or emergency signal control unit through a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT)

using a loop start telephone circuit and signaling protocols fully compatible with and equivalent to those used in PSTNs. The loop start telephone circuit and associated signaling can be provided through traditional copper wire telephone service ("plain old telephone service", or POTS) or by means of equipment that emulates the loop start telephone circuit and associated signaling and then transmits the signals over a pathway using packet switched (IP) networks or other communications methods that are part of an MFVN.

Providers of MFVNs have disaster recovery plans to address both individual customer outages and widespread events such as tornados, ice storms, or other natural disasters, which include specific network power restoration procedures equivalent to those of traditional landline telephone services. (SIG-SSS)

A.3.3.174 Manufacturer's Published Instructions. Manufacturer's applicable documentation can be subject to revision.

A.3.3.175 Mass Notification Priority Mode. Nonemergency mass notification activations are not intended to initiate this mode of operation.

A.3.3.176 Mass Notification System. A mass notification system can use intelligible voice communications, visual signals, text, graphics, tactile, or other communications methods. The system can be used to initiate evacuation or relocation or to provide information to occupants. The system can be intended for fire emergencies, weather emergencies, terrorist events, biological, chemical or nuclear emergencies, or any combination of these. The system can be automatic, manual, or both. Access to and control of the system can be from a single, on-site location or can include multiple command locations, including some remote from the area served. Systems can be wired, wireless, or some combination of the two.

A.3.3.180 Minimum Hearing Distance. In most cases, the minimum hearing distance is at a location where an occupant stands directly under or next to an audible notification appliance. What height should be used for the "ear"? For normal occupancy and use that distance might be easy to define. The average human height is about 68 in. (1.73 m) with the ear being about 62–63 in. (1.57–1.6 m) high. The designer might use 66 in. (1.68 m) as a reasonable selection. However, designers need to consider how the space will be used and whether the use and occupancy of the space might affect the minimum hearing distance. Consider an exercise facility where the audible notification appliances are installed on the perimeter walls at a height of 90 in. (2.29 m). An exercise machine, such as a stair climber, could elevate a person so that their ear is very close to the appliance.

Regardless of the designer's selection of a minimum hearing distance, it is possible, though not always "normal," for a person to get closer and to experience damaging sound levels. For example, someone on a ladder changing a light bulb or accessing high shelves could be significantly closer to an audible notification appliance than other users of the space. Should that possibility be considered when determining the minimum hearing distance? Other mitigation, such as training and personal protective equipment (PPE) (e.g., hearing protection) might be used to protect people in those instances.

The maximum allowable sound pressure level (110 dBA) is based on possible damage to human ears. Systems that expose other animals or life that might be damaged by sound pressure waves, might require additional consideration of loudness, frequency content, and sound patterns.

N **A.3.3.190 Network Connectable Equipment.** Examples of external systems include, but are not limited to, building controls and elevator controls.

A.3.3.192 Nonrequired. There are situations where the applicable building or fire code does not require the installation of a fire alarm system or specific fire alarm system components, but the building owner wants to install a fire alarm system or component to meet site-specific needs or objectives. A building owner always has the option of installing protection that is above the minimum requirements of the Code. It is the intent of the Code that any fire alarm system, or fire alarm system components installed voluntarily by a building owner, meet the requirements of the applicable portions of the Code. However, it is not the intent of the Code that the installation of a nonrequired fire alarm system, or fire alarm system components, trigger requirements for the installation of additional fire alarm system components or features. For example, the installation of a fire alarm control unit and fire detectors to service a specific area, such as a computer room or flammable liquid storage room, does not trigger a requirement for audible or visual notification appliances, manual fire alarm boxes, or other fire alarm system features in other parts of the building.

A.3.3.194.1.2 Textual Audible Notification Appliance. An example of a textual audible notification appliance is an electrical acoustic transducer that reproduces a voice or tone signal, such as a loudspeaker.

A.3.3.194.3.1 Textual Visual Notification Appliance. Textual visual notification appliances provide temporary text, permanent text, or symbols and include, but are not limited to, annunciators, monitors, CRTs, displays, and printers.

A.3.3.198 Observation. Examples of observations could include, but are not limited to, manufacturer's suggested device replacement, executive software updates, corroded electrical component replacement, and other similar items not directly impacting a system's ability to complete its intended function at the point in time when the observation is made.

A.3.3.199 Occupiable. The term *occupiable* is used in this Code and in other governing laws, codes, or standards to determine areas that require certain features of a system. It is important for designers to understand that unless otherwise required, spaces that are not occupiable might not require or need coverage by initiating devices or occupant notification appliances. For example, most closets would not be considered to be occupiable. However, a space of the same size used as a file room would be considered occupiable.

A.3.3.201 Octave Band. Frequencies are generally reported based on a standard, preferred center frequency, f_c. The bandwidth of a particular octave band has a lower frequency, f_n, and an upper frequency, f_{n+1}. The relationships are as follows:

[A.3.3.201a]

$$f_{n+1} / f_n = 2^k$$

where:
k = 1 for octave bands
k = $^1/_3$ for one-third octave bands

and

[A.3.3.201b]

$$f_c = f_n 2^{1/2}$$

For example, the 500 Hz octave band (center frequency) has a lower limit of 354 and an upper limit of 707 Hz. The octave band with a center frequency of 1000 Hz has a lower frequency of 707 Hz and an upper frequency of 1414 Hz.

A.3.3.208 Ownership. Inspection, testing, and maintenance is the responsibility of the property or building owner, or it can be transferred by contract. Systems installed, owned, or leased by a tenant are the responsibility of the tenant. The installing company should provide written notice of these responsibilities to the system user.

A.3.3.234.1 Auxiliary Alarm System. Alarms from an auxiliary alarm system are received at the communications center on the same equipment and by the same methods as alarms transmitted from public alarm boxes.

A.3.3.241 Qualified. *Qualified* might also mean that the person has knowledge of the installation, construction, or operation of apparatus and the hazards involved.

•

A.3.3.257 Remote Access. Remote devices include but are not limited to laptop computers, cellular handheld devices, cloud-based systems, applications, and other similar equipment or software. Remote access communications are not intended to be used for supervising station alarm reporting system.

A.3.3.266 Response. Responses can be effected manually or automatically. One response to a signal might be to activate notification appliances or transmitters, which in turn generate additional signals. See A.3.3.67.

A.3.3.266.1 Alarm Response. Examples include activation of alarm notification appliances, elevator recall, smoke control measures, emergency responder dispatch, and deployment of resources in accordance with a risk analysis and the associated emergency response plan.

A.3.3.266.2 Pre-Alarm Response. Examples include the activation of appropriate notification appliances, dispatch of personnel, investigation of circumstances and problem resolution in accordance with a risk analysis and action plan, preparation for a potential alarm response, and so forth.

A.3.3.266.3 Supervisory Response. Examples include the activation of supervisory notification appliances, the shutdown of machines, fan shutdown or activation, dispatch of personnel, investigation of circumstances and problem resolution in accordance with a risk analysis and action plan, and so forth.

A.3.3.266.4 Trouble Response. Examples include the activation of trouble notification appliances, dispatch of service personnel, deployment of resources in accordance with an action plan, and so forth.

A.3.3.276 Shop Drawings. Shop drawings typically include the property location, scaled floor plans, equipment wiring details, typical equipment installation details, riser details, conduit/conductor size, and routing information needed to install a fire alarm and/or signaling system.

A.3.3.277 Signal. See A.3.3.67.

A.3.3.277.1 Alarm Signal. Examples of alarm signals include outputs of activated alarm initiating devices, the light and sound from activated alarm notification appliances, alarm data transmission to a supervising station, and so forth.

A.3.3.277.5 Fire Alarm Signal. Examples include outputs from activated fire alarm initiating devices (manual fire alarm box, automatic fire detector, waterflow switch, etc.), the light and sound from activated fire alarm notification appliances, fire alarm data transmission to a supervising station, and so forth.

A.3.3.277.6 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal. The term *guard's tour supervisory signal*, associated with systems supporting guard's tour supervisory service, is a message indicating that a guard has actuated a guard's tour reporting station (not in itself an indication of a supervisory condition). Guard's tour supervisory signals are not a subset of the general category of supervisory signals as used in this Code.

A.3.3.277.7 Pre-Alarm Signal. Examples include outputs of analog initiating devices prior to reaching alarm levels, the light and sound from activated pre-alarm notification appliances, aspiration system outputs indicating smoke at levels below the listed alarm threshold, and so forth.

A.3.3.277.9 Supervisory Signal. Examples include activated supervisory signal-initiating device outputs, supervisory data transmissions to supervising stations, the light and sound from activated supervisory notification appliances, a delinquency signal indicating a guard's tour supervisory condition, and so forth.

The term *guard's tour supervisory signal*, associated with systems supporting guard's tour supervisory service, is a message indicating that a guard has activated a guard's tour reporting station (not in itself an indication of a supervisory condition). Guard's tour supervisory signals are not a subset of the general category of supervisory signals as used in this Code.

A.3.3.277.10 Trouble Signal. Examples include off-normal outputs from integrity monitoring circuits, the light and sound from activated trouble notification appliances, trouble data transmission to a supervising station, and so forth.

A.3.3.285 Sleeping Area. Bedrooms (or sleeping rooms) separated by other use areas, such as kitchens or living rooms (but not bathrooms), are considered separate sleeping areas.

A.3.3.290.2 Ionization Smoke Detection. Ionization smoke detection is more responsive to invisible particles (smaller than 1 micron in size) produced by most flaming fires. It is somewhat less responsive to the larger particles typical of most smoldering fires. Smoke detectors that use the ionization principle are usually of the spot type.

A.3.3.290.3 Photoelectric Light Obscuration Smoke Detection. The response of photoelectric light obscuration smoke detectors is usually not affected by the color of smoke.

Smoke detectors that use the light obscuration principle are usually of the line type. These detectors are commonly referred to as projected beam smoke detectors.

A.3.3.290.4 Photoelectric Light-Scattering Smoke Detection. Photoelectric light-scattering smoke detection is more responsive to the visible particles (larger than 1 micron in size) produced by most smoldering fires. It is somewhat less responsive to the smaller particles typical of most flaming fires. It is

also less responsive to black smoke than to lighter colored smoke. Smoke detectors that use the light-scattering principle are usually of the spot type.

A.3.3.290.5 Video Image Smoke Detection (VISD). VISD is a software-based method of smoke detection that can analyze images for changes in features such as brightness, contrast, edge content, loss of detail, and motion. The detection equipment can consist of cameras producing digital or analog (converted to digital) video signals and processing unit(s) that maintain the software and interfaces to the fire alarm control unit.

N **A.3.3.293.1 Executive Software.** Executive software is sometimes referred to as firmware, BIOS, or executive program and can include integrated fundamental cybersecurity protection. (SIG-TMS)

N **A.3.3.293.2 Site-Specific Software.** This software should be configured in accordance with the manufacturer's guidance to maintain product efficacy and other critical functionality, such as cybersecurity. (SIG-TMS)

A.3.3.296 Spark. The overwhelming majority of applications involving the detection of Class A and Class D combustibles with radiant energy–sensing detectors involve the transport of particulate solid materials through pneumatic conveyor ducts or mechanical conveyors. It is common in the industries that include such hazards to refer to a moving piece of burning material as a *spark* and to systems for the detection of such fires as *spark detection systems.*

N **A.3.3.329 Unconditioned Area.** Unconditioned areas are different from outdoor installations that are exposed to outside weather and environmental conditions. Examples of unconditioned areas include warehouses, attics, garages, and storage areas without HVAC systems.

A.3.3.332 Unwanted Alarm. Unwanted alarms are any alarms that occur when there is no hazard condition present. These are sometimes also called false alarms. Because the term *false* has been used by many people to mean many different things, this Code is instead using the terms *unwanted, fault, nuisance, unintentional, unknown,* and *malicious* to categorize the different types of alarms. Unwanted alarms might be intentional, unintentional, or unknown. If they were caused intentionally, they might have been done by someone with the intent to cause disruption and should be classified as malicious. However, an unintentional alarm might occur when, for example, a child actuated a manual fire alarm box not knowing the consequences. Similarly, someone accidentally causing mechanical damage to an initiating device that results in an alarm is causing an unintentional alarm.

A.3.3.332.2 Nuisance Alarm. Nuisance alarms are unwanted alarms. Sometimes nuisance alarms might be called false alarms. In this Code, any unwanted alarm is considered false because they are not indicative of real hazards. Because the term *false* has been used by many people to mean many different things, this Code is instead using the terms *unwanted, nuisance,* and *malicious* to categorize the different types of alarms. They occur when some condition simulates a fire or other hazardous condition. For example, cigarette smoke can activate smoke detectors and smoke alarms. In that case, there might not be anything wrong with the smoke detector or smoke alarm — it is doing its job responding to the condition or stimulus that it was designed to detect. Another example would be a heat detector or heat alarm that activates when someone inadvertently points a hair dryer towards it. A malicious alarm occurs when someone intentionally activates the detector or alarm when there is no fire hazard. See the definitions of malicious, unintentional, unknown, and unwanted alarms.

A.3.3.334 Video Image Flame Detection (VIFD). Video image flame detection (VIFD) is a software-based method of flame detection that can be implemented by a range of video image analysis techniques. VIFD systems can analyze images for changes in features such as brightness, contrast, edge content, loss of detail, and motion. The detection equipment can consist of cameras producing digital or analog (converted to digital) video signals and processing unit(s) that maintain the software and interfaces to the fire alarm control unit.

A.3.3.343 Wireless Mesh Network (WMN) (as used in Chapter 26). Each node participates in routing by forwarding data for other nodes. The data hops from node to node until it reaches the receiving point. Which nodes forward data can be predetermined or determination can be made dynamically on the basis of network connectivity. Wireless mesh networks are often designed to self-form and self-heal. Wireless mesh networks can be implemented with various wireless technologies. (SIG-SSS)

A.3.3.346.2 Signaling Zone. A notification zone is the smallest discrete area used for any announcements or signaling. Depending on the emergency response plan, a signaling zone can encompass several notification zones. For example, in most high-rise buildings, each single floor (fire area) is a notification zone. Most emergency response plans call for the signaling zone to be the fire floor, floor above, and a floor below.

For example, the floors of a high rise that are playing the evacuation message and the "wait in place" message would be in the same notification zone, because they are activated simultaneously. The word "identical" clarifies that the notification zone is communicating a common message.

A.7.1.3 Unless otherwise identified, only the minimum documentation requirements of 7.2.1 apply. More stringent documentation requirements found in other chapters and other laws, codes, and standards, as well as project specifications, should identify any other documentation sections in this chapter that would be applicable.

A.7.2 It is not intended that all of the details outlined in Sections 7.3 through 7.5 be required for every project. In general, the more complex the system, the more stringent the requirements become for documentation. It is recognized that some projects would require only the minimum documentation listed in Section 7.2. Other projects might require more detailed documentation. Sections 7.3 through 7.5 provide menus of additional means of documenting a system. The intent is for other governing laws, codes, or standards; other parts of this Code; or project specifications or drawings to select the additional specific pieces of documentation from Sections 7.3 through 7.5.

A.7.2.1 In many cases, the installer might not have adequate record drawings or other completion documentation for the existing system. As an example, where a temporary school building is being installed, the fire alarm system subpanel in the temporary building should be fully documented, but the fire alarm system for the entire existing school might be so old

that adequate documentation might not exist. In this example, documentation required in Section 7.2 should be completed only for the new subpanel and the interfaces to the existing school fire alarm system.

A.7.2.1(1) The purpose for a written narrative is to provide a description of the work to be performed and could be as simple as "Install additional three smoke detectors to provide coverage for newly installed meeting room." However, it could be desirable to include why or by whose direction the work is being done, such as "at owner's request," "per specifications dated …," or "at the direction of … ." See also Section 23.3 for additional system feature documentation requirements.

A.7.2.1(12) Paragraph 26.6.2.5 allows for the following three communications pathway options when a supervising station fire alarm system is provided:

(1) Performance-based technologies
(2) Digital alarm communicator systems
(3) Radio systems, which includes one-way private and two-way RF systems

Chapter 26 includes several requirements specific to each of these communications pathway alternatives. In order to verify the provided communication path(s), and any shared equipment, comply with Code requirements, the following are examples of information that should be submitted as the minimum documentation for a supervising station fire alarm system:

(1) Performance-based technologies
    (a) The type of performance-based transmitter(s) to be used such as IP communicators, cellular radios, and so forth
    (b) Whether communications with the supervising station will be via a single pathway or a multiple pathway
    (c) An indication of the use, where applicable, of shared equipment such as routers, modems, and LANs within the protected premises
    (d) Battery calculations for the shared equipment, which should meet the requirements of 26.6.3.13
(2) Digital alarm communicator system
    (a) The primary communications pathway, which should be a telephone line
    (b) The secondary communications pathway, which should comply with 26.6.4.2.4
(3) Radio system
    (a) The type of radio system that will be used (private one-way or two-way RF)
    (b) The secondary power provided for the radio transmitter

Where the transmitter equipment is located separately from the main fire alarm control unit, an indication of its protection in accordance with 10.4.4 should also be provided within the minimum documentation.

A.7.3.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

A.7.3.2 Design (layout) documents should contain information related to the system that could include specifications, shop drawings, sequence of operation, battery calculations, notification appliance voltage drop calculations for visual notification appliances and loudspeakers, and product technical data sheets.

Design (layout) documents could include such items as preliminary plans issued as guidance and direction, risk analysis, emergency response plan, or a combination of these.

Deviations from requirements of governing laws, codes, standards, or preliminary plan requirements specified by an engineer should be clearly identified and documented as such.

Documentation of equivalency, where applicable, should be provided in accordance with Section 1.5 and be included with the record drawings.

It is the intent that existing systems that are altered should have design (layout) documents prepared that are applicable only to the portion(s) of the system being altered.

A.7.3.3 Preliminary plans such as those used for bidding, solicitation, or for obtaining permits could contain information as follows:

Performance criteria required in support of alternative means and methods for other codes, standards, or construction features should be clearly identified on the design (layout) documentation.

Such information should reference applicable waivers, appeals, variances, or similarly approved deviations from prescriptive criteria.

Preliminary documents could include the following:

(1) Specifications and narrative applicable to the project
(2) Interface requirements between systems such as fire alarm, mass notification, security, HVAC, smoke control, paging, background music, audio visual equipment, elevators, access control, other fire protection systems, and so forth
(3) Sequence of operation
(4) Survivability of system circuits and equipment, when applicable
(5) Notification zones, when applicable
(6) Message content for voice systems
(7) Means of system monitoring that is to be provided, when applicable
(8) Codes and editions applicable to the system(s)
(9) Special requirements of the owner, governing authority, or insurance carrier, when applicable
(10) Voice delivery components beyond standard industry products required to achieve intelligibility

When devices are located (spaced) on preliminary drawings, the devices should be located (spaced) in accordance with standards, listings, and limitations of the equipment specified. When devices are not located (spaced) on the preliminary documents, a note should be included directing that the spacing should be per listing(s) and this Code.

When known, acoustic properties of spaces should be indicated on the preliminary design (layout) documents.

The architect/engineer preparing bid documents should not simply require a contractor to install a fire alarm system in accordance with codes, but rather outline the intended minimum performance criteria to be achieved in accordance with Section 7.3, with guidance from A.7.3.3.

A.7.3.4.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

A.7.3.6 The Risk Analysis Checklist in Figure A.7.3.6 is not mandatory, but it can be used to initiate the thought process for identifying hazards in a facility. System risk analysis as described for technological events should at a minimum qualitatively identify risks, likelihoods, impacts and consequences, controls, countermeasures, and mitigations for the following:

(1) Account management, including default passwords; user account management; privileged account management; system, service, and operating system accounts; authentication and authorization; multifactor authentication; session limitations; and access failed attempt retry rates and limits, including account timeouts and lockout settings
(2) Personally identifiable information (PII) maintained by the system
(3) Data that might be considered confidential in nature such as floor plans, system wiring, IP addresses and ports, or diagnostic information
(4) Logging and audit trail management and access
(5) Software bill of materials (SBOM) as it relates to third-party code modules, libraries, open-source software (OSS), and commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) software
(6) Software and firmware development methodologies and known system code vulnerabilities, including deployed encryption methodologies
(7) Update and patch management
(8) Known cybersecurity vulnerabilities inherent to or affecting the system
(9) Configuration management
(10) Known or expected external system threats, including risks associated with malware, open communications ports, and configuration
(11) Potential insider threats due to intentional or unintentional access privilege abuse or leakage
(12) Common controls such as firewalls
(13) Components hosted on any non-life-safety dedicated equipment, such as shared use computers or the cloud
(14) System monitoring capabilities, including monitoring for integrity, monitoring of system components and assets, and system status monitoring
(15) System communication pathway vulnerabilities, including physical and wireless pathway susceptibility to disconnection, interception and insertion of data, and jamming

A.7.3.7 When a system or component is installed in accordance with performance-based design criteria, such systems should be reviewed and acceptance tested by a design professional to verify that performance objectives are attained.

Due to unique design and construction challenges, fire protection concepts are often established on performance-based engineering practices. When such practices have been approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the engineer of record should sign off on the final installation documents to ensure that all conditions have been satisfied. Such engineering analysis could be beyond the qualifications of the code authority. As such, it is imperative that the engineer of record review and accept final concepts as accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.7.3.9.1 Evaluation documentation can also include documentation such as that associated with performance-based alternatives and documentation related to equivalencies as well as any other special documentation that is specific to a particular system. Examples of where evaluations might be required are found in 23.4.3.1 and 24.5.24.2.

A.7.4.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

A.7.4.2 It is important to note that shop drawings and particularly the word "sheets" do not necessarily mean physical paper sheets, but could be on electronic media.

A.7.4.6(2)(g) Designations should include an indication of where pathway survivability is being provided.

A.7.4.9 For an example of an input/output matrix of operation, see A.14.6.1.1.

A.7.5.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

A.7.5.3.1(1) An owner's manual should contain the following documentation:

(1) A detailed narrative description of the system inputs, evacuation signaling, ancillary functions, annunciation, intended sequence of operations, expansion capability, application considerations, and limitations.
(2) A written sequence of operation in matrix or narrative form.
(3) Operator instructions for basic system operations, including alarm acknowledgment, system reset, interpretation of system output (LEDs, CRT display, and printout), operation of manual evacuation signaling and ancillary function controls, and change of printer paper.
(4) A detailed description of routine maintenance and testing as required and recommended and as would be provided under a maintenance contract, including testing and maintenance instructions for each type of device installed. This information should include the following:
    (a) Listing of the individual system components that require periodic testing and maintenance
    (b) Step-by-step instructions detailing the requisite testing and maintenance procedures, and the intervals at which these procedures are to be performed, for each type of device installed
    (c) A schedule that correlates the testing and maintenance procedures
(5) A service directory, including a list of names and telephone numbers of those who provide service for the system.

A.7.5.5.2 For an example of an input/output matrix of operation, see A.14.6.1.1.

A.7.5.5.5 It is important that the documentation required by this section is available for technicians so they will be able to recognize variations of system configuration during acceptance, reacceptance, and periodic testing. It is also necessary for enforcement personnel in order to prevent confusion when they could otherwise misidentify an approved variation for being non-code compliant. This documentation is also necessary for those who might design additions or modifications.

A.7.5.6.1 It is the intent of this section to permit using forms other than Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(f) as long as they convey the same information.

RISK ANALYSIS CHECKLIST

Facility name: _____ Facility location: _____

Prepared by: _____ Date prepared: _____

Title and contact information: _____

ECS system type: _____

PART ONE: Identification of Assets or Operations at Risk

Use Part One of this checklist to identify the following assets or operations at risk at your facility

❑ People

- ❑ Employees
- ❑ Visitors and guests
- ❑ Contractors working on site
- ❑ Emergency responders
- ❑ Community surrounding the facility

❑ Property

- ❑ Physical property
  - ❑ Corporate offices
  - ❑ Manufacturing facilities
  - ❑ Call center
  - ❑ Distribution centers
  - ❑ Data-processing center
  - ❑ Research and development labs
  - ❑ Property on the premises of others
  - ❑ Vital papers, records, and drawings
- ❑ Utilities
  - ❑ Telecommunications
  - ❑ Electricity
  - ❑ Water
  - ❑ Gas
  - ❑ Steam
  - ❑ Heating/ventilation/air conditioning
  - ❑ Pollution control
  - ❑ Sewerage system
  - ❑ Other critical infrastructure
- ❑ Intellectual property
  - ❑ Copyright and patent infringement
  - ❑ Trademark infringement
  - ❑ Theft of intellectual property
  - ❑ Theft of information
- ❑ Computers and computer networks
  - ❑ Software applications
  - ❑ Electronic data
- ❑ Inventory
  - ❑ Raw materials
  - ❑ Finished product

❑ Operations

- ❑ Manufacturing processes
- ❑ Delivery of services
- ❑ Administrative support services
- ❑ Research and development
- ❑ Supply chain

❑ Environment

- ❑ Air
- ❑ Water
- ❑ Ground

❑ Organization

- ❑ Economic and financial condition
- ❑ Licenses, patents, or trademarks
- ❑ Reputation and image as well-managed company
- ❑ Contractual obligations
- ❑ Community relationships
- ❑ Regional and national impact
- ❑ Regulatory compliance and relationships with vendors

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

Δ FIGURE A.7.3.6 Risk Analysis Checklist.

RISK ANALYSIS CHECKLIST *(continued)*

PART TWO: Determination of Facility Hazards

Use Part Two of this checklist to determine the potential hazards that might impact your facility.

❑ Natural Hazards—Geological

- ❑ Earthquake
- ❑ Tsunami
- ❑ Volcano
- ❑ Landslide, mudslide, subsidence
- ❑ Glacier, iceberg

❑ Natural Hazards—Meteorological

- ❑ Flood, flash flood, tidal surge
- ❑ Drought
- ❑ Windstorm, tropical cyclone, hurricane, tornado, water spout, dust/sand storm
- ❑ Extreme temperatures (heat, cold)
- ❑ Lightning strikes
- ❑ Famine
- ❑ Geomagnetic storm
- ❑ Snow, ice, hail, sleet, avalanche

❑ Natural Hazards—Biological

- ❑ Diseases (pandemic)
- ❑ Animal or insect infestation or damage

❑ Human-Caused Accidental Events

- ❑ Hazardous material (explosive, flammable liquid, flammable gas, flammable solid, oxidizer, poison, radiological, corrosive) spill or release
- ❑ Natural gas leak
- ❑ Nuclear power plant incident
- ❑ Hazmat incident off site
- ❑ Explosion/fire
- ❑ Wildfire (forest, range, urban, wildland, urban interface)
- ❑ Transportation accident (motor vehicle, railroad, watercraft, aircraft pipeline)
- ❑ Building/structure failure or collapse
- ❑ Entrapment
- ❑ Mechanical breakdown
- ❑ Energy/power/utility failure
- ❑ Fuel/resource shortage
- ❑ Air/water pollution, contamination
- ❑ Water control structure/dam/levee failure
- ❑ Communications systems interruptions
- ❑ Financial issues, economic depression, inflation, financial system collapse
- ❑ Misinformation

❑ Human-Caused Intentional Events

- ❑ Terrorism (explosive, chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, cyber)
- ❑ Sabotage or vandalism
- ❑ Civil disturbance, public unrest, mass hysteria, riot
- ❑ Enemy attack, war
- ❑ Insurrection
- ❑ Strike or labor dispute
- ❑ Demonstration
- ❑ Disinformation
- ❑ Criminal activity (vandalism, arson, theft, fraud, embezzlement, data theft)
- ❑ Electromagnetic pulse
- ❑ Physical or information security breach
- ❑ Sniper incident
- ❑ Crime, theft, or robbery
- ❑ Product defect or contamination
- ❑ Harassment
- ❑ Arson
- ❑ Bomb threat
- ❑ Lost person
- ❑ Child abduction
- ❑ Kidnap
- ❑ Extortion
- ❑ Hostage incident
- ❑ Workplace violence

❑ Technological-Caused Events

- ❑ Telecommunications
- ❑ Central computer, mainframe, software, or application (internal/external)
- ❑ Energy/power/utility
- ❑ Ancillary support equipment

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

Δ **FIGURE A.7.3.6** *Continued*

A.7.5.6.2 Protected premises fire alarm systems are often installed under construction or remodeling contracts and subsequently connected to a supervising station alarm system under a separate contract. All contractors should complete the portions of the record of completion documentation for the portions of the connected systems for which they are responsible. Several partially completed documents might be accepted by the authority having jurisdiction provided that all portions of the connected systems are covered in the set of documents.

A.7.5.6.3 The requirements of Chapter 14 should be used to perform the installation wiring and operational acceptance tests required when completing the record of completion.

The record of completion form shall be permitted to be used to record decisions reached prior to installation regarding intended system type(s), circuit designations, device types, notification appliance type, power sources, and the means of transmission to the supervising station.

A.7.5.6.6.4 It is the intent that if an original or current record of completion is not available for the overall system, the installer would provide a new record of completion that addresses items discovered about the system. The installer will complete the respective sections related to the overall system that have been discovered under the current scope of work. It is not the intent of this section to require an in-depth evaluation of an existing system solely for the purpose of completing a system-wide record of completion.

A.7.5.8 This section is intended to provide a basis for the authority having jurisdiction to require third-party verification and certification that the authority having jurisdiction and the system owner can rely on to reasonably assure that the fire alarm system installation complies with the applicable requirements. Where the installation is an extension, modification, or reconfiguration of an existing system, the intent is that the verification be applicable only to the new work and that reacceptance testing be acceptable.

N **A.7.6.7.1.1** Maintaining cybersecurity includes performing due diligence to ensure the trustworthiness of installers, maintenance people, and users. Background checks are an obvious example, but also important is management of credentials, separation of duties, least privilege, need-to-know, and account maintenance. A former employee who has been terminated and is disgruntled might cause significant damage to systems if their access privileges are not promptly revoked.

N **A.7.6.7.2.1** Logs and audit trails are critically important to establishing whether a system has been attacked, who the attacker might be, or the avenue of attack. For example, changes to a system configuration or software version could be legitimate or illegitimate; unless it is known when and who made these changes, it can be very difficult to assess the intent. Also, if particular credentials are being used inappropriately, information contained in logs and audit trails are often necessary to properly respond. In this context, logs and audit trails themselves require appropriate protection. Individuals and accounts with privileges that are being tracked should not also have privileges to access and change the logs or audit trails.

A.7.7.1.2 It is intended that archived records be allowed to be stored in electronic format as long as hard copies can be made from them when required.

A.7.7.2 The intent is that paper and/or electronic documents should not be stored inside the control unit because control units are not typically approved for the storage of combustible material.

Examples of system documents include the following:

(1) Record drawings (as-builts)
(2) Equipment technical data sheets
(3) Alternative means and methods, variances, appeals, approvals, and so forth
(4) Performance-based design documentation in accordance with 7.3.7
(5) Risk analysis documentation in accordance with 7.3.6
(6) Emergency response plan in accordance with 7.3.8
(7) Evaluation documentation in accordance with 7.3.9
(8) Software and firmware control documentation in accordance with 23.2.2

A.7.7.2.7 Documentation stored in electronic media can become obsolete, for example, 5.25 in. and 3.5 in. disks and tape drives are not supported by current technology. Updating the stored media to current technology concerns the programs used to operate them, and the computer or hardware used to interface to the system installed. Thus, it is necessary to ensure that all components are still compatible with the installed system.

A.7.7.3.2 It is recognized that there are circumstances in which the security and protection of some system documents will require measures other than that prescribed in this Code. Since a common expectation of a mass notification system is to function during security and/or terrorist events, it could be crucial that system design be protected.

Where such conditions have been identified, the stakeholders should clearly identify what and how system documents should be maintained to satisfy the integrity of this section regarding reviews, future service, modifications, and system support.

Due to freedom of information laws allowing for public access to documents submitted to and retained by code officials, it could be necessary for secure documents to be reviewed by code officials at alternate locations. Such conditions should be identified by the stakeholders and discussed with the authorities having jurisdiction(s) in advance.

A.7.8.1.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

A.7.8.2(1) Examples of completed record of completion forms are shown in Figure A.7.8.2(1)(a) through Figure A.7.8.2(1)(f).

In Figure 7.8.2(a), section 6, an example of a dual pathway is a circuit that is a continuous circuit connected to an FACU at two terminal locations, and an example of a separate pathway is a circuit that is only connected to the FACU at one terminal location.

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.
Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.

Form Completion Date: 2 November 2019 Supplemental Pages Attached: 0

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters
Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI
Description of property: Business and Office Building
Name of property representative: Joe Bago Donits
Address: As above
Phone: (743) 225-9768 Fax: (743) 225-9768 E-mail: jbago@WLST.net

2. INSTALLATION, SERVICE, TESTING, AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Installation contractor: Sparkee's Electric
Address: 1954 Nimitz Highway, Honolulu, HI 76542
Phone: (978) 456-9876 Fax: (978) 456-9876 E-mail: shortcircuitguy@sparkee.net
Service organization: None
Address:
Phone: Fax: E-mail:
Testing organization: Jim's Protection, Inc.
Address: 2300 Daly Boulevard, Austin, TX
Phone: (407) 738-4587 Fax: (407) 738-4598 E-mail: testerjim@JPI.com
Effective date for test and inspection contract: 25 January 2011
Monitoring organization: Look the Other Way, Inc.
Address: 995 Highway 35W, Minneapolis, MN
Phone: (412) 456-9078 Fax: (412) 456-7272 E-mail: Look@otherway.com
Account number: 56734598 Phone line 1: (212) 978-6576 Phone line 2: (212) 978-9978
Means of transmission: IP
Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: Honolulu FD Phone: (808) 455-5555

3. DOCUMENTATION

On-site location of the required record documents and site-specific software: Building Mgrs. Office Room 203

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

This is a: ☑ New system ❑ Modification to existing system Permit number: 11-907645
NFPA 72 edition: 2019

4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: Halter Cabinet Model number: 1019-7647

4.2 Software and Firmware

Firmware revision number: 7.0 B Executive Rev 9.11

4.3 Alarm Verification

☑ This system does not incorporate alarm verification.
Number of devices subject to alarm verification: _____ Alarm verification set for _____ seconds

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(a) Example of Completed System Record of Completion.**

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

5. SYSTEM POWER

5.1 Control Unit

5.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: 120 VAC
Control panel amps: 7.3 Amps
Overcurrent protection: Type: Breaker
Amps: 20 Amps
Branch circuit disconnecting means location: Breaker Panel — Room B-23
Number: 23

5.1.2 Secondary Power

Type of secondary power: Battery
Location, if remote from the plant: Rear Yard
Calculated capacity of secondary power to drive the system:
In standby mode (hours): 24
In alarm mode (minutes): 15

5.2 Control Unit

❑ This system does not have power extender panels
❑ Power extender panels are listed on supplementary sheet A

6. CIRCUITS AND PATHWAYS

Pathway Type	Dual Pathway	Separate Pathway	Class	Survivability Level
Signaling Line		X	A	1
Device Power				
Initiating Device		X	B	1
Notification Appliance		X	B	1
Other (specify):				

7. REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS

Type	Location
Tabular	Front Lobby

8. INITIATING DEVICES

Type	Quantity	Addressable or Conventional	Alarm or Supervisory	Sensing Technology
Manual Pull Stations	12	Addressable	Alarm	
Smoke Detectors	8	Addressable	Alarm	Photoelectric
Duct Smoke Detectors				
Heat Detectors				
Gas Detectors	1	Conventional	Supervisory	
Carbon Monoxide Detectors				
Waterflow Switches	2	Conventional	Alarm	
Tamper Switches	4	Conventional	Supervisory	

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(a)** *Continued*

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

9. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

Type	Quantity	Description	Connected to a Notification Appliance Circuit (NAC)	Connected to a Signaling Line Circuit (SLC)
Audible	18	Horns	✓	
Visual	24	Strobes	✓	
Combination Audible and Visual	6	Horns/Strobes	✓	

10. SYSTEM CONTROL FUNCTIONS

Type	Quantity
Hold-Open Door Releasing Devices	4
HVAC Shutdown	2
Fire/Smoke Dampers	
Door Unlocking	1
Elevator Recall	2
Elevator Shunt Trip	

11. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

❑ This system does not have interconnected systems.

❑ Interconnected systems are listed on supplementary sheet _____ .

12. CERTIFICATION AND APPROVALS

12.1 System Installation Contractor

This system as specified herein has been installed according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: *Harry Johnson* Printed name: Harry Johnson Date: 11 November 2019

Organization: Sparkee's Electric Title: Principal Phone: (987) 456-9876

12.2 System Operational Test

This system as specified herein has tested according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: *Jim Riverbottom* Printed name: Jim Riverbottom Date: 14 January 2011

Organization: Jim's Protection, Inc. Title: President Phone: (407) 738-4583

12.3 Acceptance Test

Date and time of acceptance test: 0830 hrs. — 18 November 2019

Installing contractor representative: Jim Johnson

Testing contractor representative: Reginald O'Haraquest

Property representative: Danny MacIntosh

AHJ representative: Inspector DiDonato

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

Δ FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(a) ***Continued***

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to emergency communications systems.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 2 November 2019 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

❑ Fire alarm with in-building fire emergency voice alarm communication system (EVAC)

❑ Mass notification system

☑ Combination system, with the following components:

❑ Fire alarm ❑ EVACS ☒ MNS ❑ Two-way, in-building, emergency communications system

❑ Other (specify): _____

NFPA 72 edition: 2019 Additional description of system(s): _____

2.1 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System

Manufacturer: Halter Cabinet Model number: 1018-7648

Number of single voice alarm channels: 2 Number of multiple voice alarm channels: 0

Number of loudspeakers: 99 Number of loudspeaker circuits: 12

Location of amplification and sound processing equipment: Fire Control Room

Location of paging microphone stations:

Location 1: Fire Control Room

Location 2: Security Office

Location 3: _____

2.2 Mass Notification System

2.2.1 System Type:

☑ In-building MNS–combination

❑ In-building MNS ❑ Wide-area MNS ❑ Distributed recipient MNS

❑ Other (specify): _____

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

Δ FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(b) Example of Completed Emergency Communications System Supplementary Record of Completion.

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

2.2.2 System Features:

☑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS autonomous control unit ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface

❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Distributed-recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface

❑ Wide-area MNS to high power loudspeaker array (HPLA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface

❑ Other (specify): _____

2.2.3 MNS Local Operating Consoles

Location 1: Fire Control Room

Location 2: Security Office

Location 3: _____

2.2.4 High-Power Loudspeaker Arrays

Number of HPLA loudspeaker initiation zones: 0

Location 1: _____

Location 2: _____

Location 3: _____

2.2.5 Mass Notification Devices

Combination fire alarm/MNS visual devices: 48 MNS-only visual devices: _____

Textual signs: _____ Other (describe): _____

Supervision class: _____

2.2.6 Special Hazard Notification

☑ This system does not have special suppression predischarge notification.

❑ MNS systems DO NOT override notification appliances required to provide special suppression predischarge notification.

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

3.1 Telephone System

Number of telephone jacks installed: 15 Number of warden stations installed: 3

Number of telephone handsets stored on site: 6

Type of telephone system installed: ❑ Electrically powered ☑ Sound powered

3.2 Area of Refuge Emergency Communications Systems

Number of stations: 0 Location of central control point: _____

Days and hours when central control point is attended: _____

Location of alternate control point: _____

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: _____

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(b)** ***Continued***

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS *(continued)*

3.3 Elevator Emergency Communications Systems

Number of elevators with stations: 2 Location of central control point: Fire Control Room

Days and hours when central control point is attended: 24

Location of alternate control point: None

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: None

3.4 Other Two-Way Communications System

Describe: _____

4. CONTROL FUNCTIONS

This system actuates the following control functions specific to emergency communications systems:

Type	Quantity
Mass Notification Override of Alarm Signaling Systems or Appliances	1

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(b)** ***Continued***

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to power systems that incorporate generators, SEPSS systems, remote battery systems, or other complex power systems. This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval. It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record. Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 2 November 2019 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: 0

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. SYSTEM POWER

2.1 Control Unit

2.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: 120 volt Control panel amps: 7.3

Overcurrent protection: Type: Circuit Breaker Amps: 20

Location (of primary supply panelboard): Main Electrical Room in Basement

Disconnecting means location: Panel E2 — Electric Room

2.1.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator:

Location of fuel storage: Type of fuel: Diesel

2.1.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems

Equipment powered by SEPSS system: None

Location of SEPSS system:

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): In alarm mode (minutes):

2.1.4 Batteries

Location: FACU Type: Gel Cell Nominal voltage: 24 Amp/hour rating: 16

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 24 In alarm mode (minutes): 15

2.2 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System or Mass Notification System

2.2.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of EVACS or MNS panel: 120 volt EVACS or MNS panel amps: 8.8

Overcurrent protection: Type: Circuit Breaker Amps: 20

Location (of primary supply panelboard): Main Electrical Room in Basement

Disconnecting means location: Panel E2 — Electric Room

NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

Δ FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(c) Example of Completed Power Systems Supplementary Record of Completion.

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. SYSTEM POWER *(continued)*

2.2.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: Diesel

2.2.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems

Equipment powered by SEPSS system: None

Location of SEPSS system: N/A

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): N/A In alarm mode (minutes): N/A

2.2.4 Batteries

Location: ECS Panel Type: Gel Cell Nominal voltage: 24 Amp/hour rating: 20

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 24 In alarm mode (minutes): 15

2.3 Notification Appliance Power Extender Panels

❑ This system does not have power extender panels.

2.3.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of power extender panel(s): 120 volt Power extender panel amps: 8

Overcurrent protection: Type: Circuit Breaker Amps: 20

Location (of primary supply panelboard): See Table

Disconnecting means location: _____

2.3.2 Engine Driven Generator

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: Diesel

2.3.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems

Equipment powered by SEPSS system: None

Location of SEPSS system: _____

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.3.4 Batteries

Location: Power Panel Type: Gel Cell Nominal voltage: 24 Amp/hour rating: 12

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 24 In alarm mode (minutes): 15

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(c)** ***Continued***

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. SYSTEM POWER *(continued)*

2.4 Supervising Station Transmission Equipment

☑ This system does not use transmission equipment within the building powered by any other source than the alarm system control unit.

2.4.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of shared transmission equipment: 120 VAC

Shared transmission equipment panel amps: 73 amps

Overcurrent protection: Type: Breaker Amps: 20 amps

Location (of primary supply panelboard): Breaker Panel B-23

Disconnecting means location: Electric Room

2.4.2 Engine Driven Generator

Location of generator: _____

Location of fuel storage: _____ Type of fuel: _____

2.4.3 Stored-Energy Emergency Power Supply Systems

Equipment powered by SEPSS system: _____

Calculated capacity of SEPSS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): _____ In alarm mode (minutes): _____

2.4.4 Batteries

Location: FACU Type: Gel Nominal voltage: 12 Amp/hour rating: 16

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 24 In alarm mode (minutes): 15

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

Δ **FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(c)** ***Continued***

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER PANEL SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of notification appliance power extender panels.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 2 November 2019 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: 0

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER EXTENDER PANELS

Make and Model	Location	Area Served	Power Source
Firelite W123	3rd Floor	3rd Floor	Panel 3E
SK + ABC	6th Floor	6th Floor	Panel 3G

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72

Δ FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(d) Example of Completed Notification Appliance Power Panel Supplementary Record of Completion.

INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of systems that are interconnected to the main system.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 2 November 2019 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

Description	Location	Purpose
Fan Shutdown	Roof	Shut down fans on fire alarm activation
Elevator Recall	Elevator Room	Recall elevators in case of alarm on lobby smoke detectors

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72

Δ FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(e) Example of Completed Interconnected Systems Supplementary Record of Completion.

DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES AND STANDARDS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It enables the designer and/or installer to document and justify deviations from accepted codes or standards.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 2 November 2019 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES OR STANDARDS

Description	Purpose
Waterflow switch set to a 120-second trip	Issue has been identified that there are water surges during evening hours

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72

Δ **FIGURE A.7.8.2(1)(f) Example of Completed Deviations from Adopted Codes and Standards Supplementary Record of Completion.**

A.7.8.2(2) Figure 7.8.2(g) through Figure 7.8.2(l) are sample forms intended to reflect the general information that should be provided as part of a system inspection and test report, but they are not intended to mandate a specific format for the report. A report format customized to the specific system configuration, devices, appliances, and system functions being tested meets the intent of the requirement.

In Figure 7.8.2(k), Section 2.1, an example of a single-voice-channel emergency communications system is a system that provides a single message or evacuation signal to multiple floors or areas at the same time. An example of a multiple-voice-channel emergency communications system is a system that can provide multiple messages or evacuation signals to multiple floors or areas at the same time.

A.10.3.1 Terms used by testing laboratories for equipment that is listed or labeled could include "certified," "approved," or "listed."

In seismic hazard zones, the fire alarm designer should verify seismic certification requirements for control equipment with the AHJ.

A.10.3.3 This requirement does not apply to notification appliance circuits.

A.10.3.5(1) The requirement of 10.3.5(1) does not preclude transfer to secondary supply at less than 85 percent of nominal primary voltage, provided the requirements of 10.6.7 are met.

A.10.4.1 Fire alarm specifications can include some or all of the following:

(1) Address of the protected premises
(2) Owner of the protected premises
(3) Authority having jurisdiction
(4) Applicable codes, standards, and other design criteria to which the system is required to comply
(5) Type of building construction and occupancy
(6) Fire department response point(s) and annunciator location(s)
(7) Type of fire alarm system to be provided
(8) Calculations (e.g., secondary supply and voltage drop calculations)
(9) Type(s) of fire alarm initiating devices, supervisory alarm initiating devices, and evacuation notification appliances to be provided
(10) Intended area(s) of coverage
(11) Complete list of detection, signaling, and annunciator zones
(12) Complete list of emergency control functions
(13) Complete sequence of operations detailing all inputs and outputs

A.10.4.4 Switches and visible indicators referenced in 10.4.4 are those intended for use by the system owner and first responders. It is not the intent of the committee to require all control unit diagnostic indicators or configuration switches used by the installation/service personnel required to be installed within these limits. Control units that do not have such operator interface are not bound by this requirement; however; the installer should consider best practice for ease in serviceability.

A.10.4.5 The control units that are to be protected are those that provide notification of a fire to the occupants and responders. The term *control unit* does not include equipment such as annunciators and addressable devices. Requiring smoke detection at the transmitting equipment is intended to increase the probability that an alarm signal will be transmitted to a supervising station prior to that transmitting equipment being disabled due to the fire condition.

Where the area or room containing the control unit is provided with total smoke detection coverage, additional smoke detection is not required to protect the control unit. Where total smoke detection coverage is not provided, the Code intends that only one smoke detector is required at the control unit even when the area of the room would require more than one detector if installed according to the spacing rules in Chapter 17. The intent of selective coverage is to address the specific location of the equipment.

The location of the required detection should be in accordance with 17.7.4.2.1.

A.10.4.5.1 Subsection 10.4.5 permits the use of a heat detector if ambient conditions are not suitable for smoke detection. It is important to also evaluate whether the area is suitable for the control unit.

A.10.5.3 It is not the intent to require personnel performing simple inspections or operational tests of initiating devices to require factory training or special certification, provided such personnel can demonstrate knowledge in these areas.

A.10.5.3.1 The requirements for inspection personnel can vary depending on the type of inspection being performed. The purpose for initial and reacceptance inspections is to ensure compliance with approved design documents and to ensure installation in accordance with this Code and other required installation standards. Therefore, the acceptance inspection should be performed by someone who is familiar with the specific requirements, the design documents, and the applicable codes and standards. This implies that acceptance inspections should be performed by the persons or entities responsible for the system design and by authorities having jurisdiction.

Once a system or a change to a system has been accepted, the inspection needs also change. The purpose for periodic inspections is to assure that obvious damages or changes that might affect the system operability are visually identified. Those persons performing periodic system inspections might or might not be familiar with all the specific system design goals and requirements. While many periodic inspections could uncover design faults, the intent of this Code is for such problems to be discovered at the acceptance inspection. The Code does not intend to require persons performing periodic inspections necessarily to be knowledgeable or qualified for inspecting and verifying the design of a system.

A.10.5.3.2 Testing personnel knowledge should include equipment selection, placement, and installation requirements of this Code and the manufacturer's published documentation.

A.10.5.3.4(1) Factory training and certification is intended to allow an individual to service equipment only for which he or she has specific brand and model training.

Δ **A.10.5.3.4(2)** Nationally recognized fire alarm certification programs might include those programs formerly offered by the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) and those currently offered by the International Public Safety Institute (IPSI), the National Institute for Certification in Engineer-

ing Technologies (NICET), and the Electronic Security Association (ESA).

NOTE: These organizations and the products or services offered by them have not been independently verified by NFPA nor have the products or services been endorsed or certified by NFPA or any of its technical committees.

A.10.5.3.4(3) Licenses and certifications offered at a state or local level are intended to recognize those individuals who have demonstrated a minimum level of technical competency in the area of fire alarm servicing.

A.10.5.3.5 This is not intended to require certification where it is not offered or required by the manufacturer.

A.10.5.5.1(2) An example of an organization providing alarm-monitoring-operator training is The Monitoring Association (TMA). Note that this reference is for informational purposes only, information concerning the product or service has been provided by the manufacturer or other outside sources, and the information concerning the product or service has not been independently verified nor has the product or service been endorsed or certified by the NFPA or any of its technical committees.

A.10.5.6.4.2(2) An example of an organization providing public emergency alarm reporting system certification is the International Municipal Signal Association. Note that this reference is for information purposes only. Information concerning the product or service has been provided by the manufacturer or other outside sources, and the information concerning the product or service has not been independently verified, nor has the product or service been endorsed or certified by NFPA or any of its technical committees.

A.10.5.6.4.2(4) Factory training and certification are intended to allow individuals to service only the equipment for which they have specific brand and model training.

A.10.6.1 Exceptions exist in Chapter 23 for low-power wireless systems and in Chapter 29 for household low-power wireless systems and smoke alarms.

A.10.6.3.1 Paragraph 10.6.3.1 permits the use of an EPSS/SEPSS as the sole power source for a system. Using the EPSS/SEPSS option means that there is no primary and secondary supply. The EPSS/SEPSS serves both purposes, but from one supply point. Because of this, the risk of common mode failures should be considered because certain faults in the EPSS/SEPSS will leave the signaling system without any power.

A.10.6.4 Emergency power supply systems (EPSS) containing engine-driven generators are found in NFPA 110 and stored-energy emergency power supply systems (SEPSS) classifications are found in NFPA 111. Previous editions of *NFPA 72* referenced energy storage systems (ESS) and uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) systems. A UPS used for this purpose is an SEPSS. A UPS can also be included with an EPSS.

A.10.6.4.4 NFPA 855 provides requirements for mitigating the hazards associated with an SEPSS when the rated energy capacity of the SEPSS exceeds the values in Section 1.3 of NFPA 855.

A.10.6.5.1.2 Multiple pieces of system equipment can be connected to a branch circuit, subject to the current capacity of the circuit. It is not intended that a branch circuit be limited to a single piece of equipment. It is not intended that the circuit supply power to other than system equipment. For example, a branch circuit could power both a fire alarm control unit and an NAC power supply, but it could not power both a fire alarm control unit and a sprinkler system air compressor.

A.10.6.5.2.2 The purpose of this requirement is to ensure that circuit disconnecting means for fire alarm and signaling systems are readily identifiable so that users will not mistakenly disconnect the power to the system or so that they can quickly disconnect power without having to search the electrical panelboard chart to identify the circuit. The intent of this requirement is not to require specific text for identification. Marking can include one of the following:

(1) "FIRE ALARM" for fire alarm systems
(2) "EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS" for emergency communications systems
(3) "FIRE ALARM/EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM" for combination fire alarm and emergency communications systems
(4) "CARBON MONOXIDE" for carbon monoxide detection systems

It would be acceptable to show the text using upper and/or lower case, such as "fire alarm," or "Fire Alarm," or "FIRE ALARM."

A.10.6.6 Where a computer system of any kind is used to receive and process alarm or supervisory signals, an EPSS/SEPSS, or a UPS listed to the requirements of an applicable standard such as UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, with sufficient capacity to operate the system until the secondary supply is capable of operating the fire alarm system might be required to prevent signal loss or a greater than 10-second signal delay.

EPSS/SEPSS equipment often contains an internal bypass arrangement to supply the load directly from the line. These internal bypass arrangements are a potential source of failure. EPSS/SEPSS equipment also requires periodic maintenance. It is, therefore, necessary to provide a means of promptly and safely bypassing and isolating the EPSS/SEPSS equipment from all power sources while maintaining continuity of power supply to the equipment normally supplied by the EPSS/SEPSS.

A.10.6.7.2 When a fire alarm system is used to alert occupants, the associated premises are generally evacuated during prolonged power outages. When this is not the case, as in emergency shelters or certain government facilities, additional secondary power should be required to address a more prolonged outage. These outages might be expected to result from weather or earthquake in locations subject to these events. Reasonable judgment should be employed when requiring additional secondary capacity.

When a fire alarm system is used to protect property, the associated premises might be vacant for prolonged periods (weekend, long holiday) or in very remote locations. When this is the case, and when the risk of loss is significant, additional secondary power should be required to address a more prolonged outage. These outages might be expected to result from weather or earthquake in locations subject to these events. Reasonable judgment should be employed when requiring additional secondary capacity.

A.10.6.7.2.14 Correction factors are intended to address normal aging and temperature effects on battery capacity. As a lead-acid battery ages, rated capacity will decrease to

80 percent, which is considered the end of service life. As a minimum, a correction factor of 1.25 should be applied for aging to ensure the battery can meet its current demand at the end of service life. At initial installation, lead-acid battery capacity can be as low as 90 percent and should gradually increase when it is subjected to several deep discharge/charging cycles or when it remains on float-charge for several weeks.

Battery calculations should include correction factors established for the battery technology to ensure that the required calculated amp-hour capacity remains available during the service life of the batteries and to compensate for changes in capacity where the batteries will be operated outside their nominal temperature range.

Temperature also affects lead-acid batteries. For additional information on lead-acid battery sizing considerations refer to IEEE 485, *Recommended Practice for Sizing Lead-Acid Batteries for Stationary Applications*.

Different battery technologies will require different correction factors.

A.10.6.7.2.15 For combination systems, such as a combination carbon monoxide and fire alarm system, where the carbon monoxide notification appliances are capable of being operated separately from the fire alarm system notification appliances, only the carbon monoxide notification appliances are required to operate for 12 hours.

A.10.6.7.3 The secondary power supply is not required to supply power to the fire alarm system through parallel distribution paths. Automatic transfer switches are commonly used to allow secondary power to be supplied over the same distribution system as the primary power.

The generator does not need to be dedicated to the fire alarm system.

A.10.6.8.1 Examples include the following:

(1) A building lighting power supply required for illumination in a required video image smoke detection means
(2) A notification appliance circuit power supply located remotely
(3) A power supply for transmitter required to transmit signals off premises
(4) Power over Ethernet (PoE), where provided for control units, circuit interfaces, or other equipment essential to system operation, and located remotely from the main control unit

A.10.6.9.2 Because digital alarm communicator systems establish communications channels between the protected premises and the central station via the public switched telephone network, the requirement to supervise circuits between the protected premises and the central station *(see 12.6.1 and 12.6.2)* is considered to be met if the communications channel is periodically tested in accordance with 26.6.4.2.5.

A.10.6.9.3 This requirement is intended to prevent all of the supervising station alarm systems in a given geographic area from transmitting simultaneous trouble signals (and overwhelming the associated supervising stations) in the event of a widespread power failure. A trouble signal is not intended to be transmitted if primary power is restored within the time delay.

A.10.6.10 The valve-regulated lead-acid (VRLA) battery type of rechargeable battery is currently used in protected premises applications.

This rechargeable-type battery is generally used in place of primary batteries in applications that have a relatively high current drain or that require the extended standby capability of much lower currents. The nominal voltage of a single starved electrolyte cell is 2 volts, and the battery is available in multiples of 2 volts (e.g., 2, 4, 6, 12). Batteries should be stored according to the battery manufacturer's published instructions. These batteries are often incorrectly referred to as "sealed lead-acid," "gel," or "maintenance-free batteries."

There are two technologies available. The most common type is referred to as "absorbed glass mat" or AGM. In this technology, the electrolyte is immobilized by being absorbed into fiberglass mats that surround the plates. Nearly all VRLA batteries in use in US fire protection applications are AGM.

The second technology is referred to as gelled electrolyte. In this technology, the electrolyte is immobilized in a silica gel. This technology is predominately seen in European applications. While some manufacturers refer to the battery as a gel battery in the literature, this needs to be confirmed by the technician. Gel batteries require higher float voltages than AGM, and floating an AGM battery at gel voltages will shorten the battery life.

A.10.6.10.1.3 Examples of listing standards are UL 1989, *Standby Batteries*, and UL 2054, *Household and Commercial Batteries*.

A.10.6.10.3.4 The circuitry and methods for charging batteries of various types are to be evaluated by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to ensure they are appropriate for the purpose. During primary power use, batteries are trickle-charged if they are off-line and waiting to be put under load in the event of a loss of power.

Float-charged batteries are fully charged and connected across the output of the rectifiers to smooth the output and to serve as a standby source of power in the event of a loss of line power. Other charging methods are used to restore capacity to a battery after it has been utilized during a loss of primary power.

A.10.6.10.6 Manufacturers of fire alarm and emergency communications systems provide a means for supervising the battery charger's capability to properly charge the battery(ies). There typically is no means to test the battery charger for this trouble condition in the field.

A.10.7.3 Mass notification signals might, at times, be more important to the building or area occupants than the fire alarm signal. Stakeholders should perform a risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.12 to determine which, if any, messages should receive priority.

A.10.7.9 In addition, the override of circuits should be indicated at the control panel of each system to ensure signals are restored to normal.

A.10.10.4 Control unit signals can be audible, visual, or both for any particular function. Some older systems used only audible indicators that had to be coded for users to know what the signal meant. Where a control unit uses both audible and visual indicators, the purpose of the audible signal is to get someone's attention. In large system configurations, there might be multi-

ple control units with audible signals. Also, there might be several different functions requiring an audible alert as a part of the whole signal. Thus, there could be several different audible signals. It is not the intent of this Code to have separate and distinct audible signals where clear visual distinction provides the user with the needed information. Visual signals, whether a lamp with a text label, an LCD screen, a computer monitor, or other textual visual appliances, are better forms of human interface.

A.10.10.5 A valve supervisory, a low-pressure switch, or another device intended to cause a supervisory signal when activated should not be connected in series with the end-of-line supervisory device of initiating device circuits, unless a distinctive signal, different from a trouble signal, is indicated.

A.10.11.1 Activation of an initiating device is usually the instant at which a complete digital signal is achieved at the device, such as a contact closure. For smoke detectors or other automatic initiating devices, which can involve signal processing and analysis of the signature of fire phenomena, activation means the instant when the signal analysis requirements are completed by the device or fire alarm control unit software.

A separate fire alarm control unit contemplates a network of fire alarm control units forming a single large system as defined in Section 23.8.

For some analog initiating devices, activation is the moment that the fire alarm control unit interprets that the signal from an initiating device has exceeded the alarm threshold programmed into the fire alarm control unit.

For smoke detectors working on a system with alarm verification, where the verification function is performed in the fire alarm control unit, the moment of activation of smoke detectors is sometimes determined by the fire alarm control unit.

It is not the intent of this paragraph to dictate the time frame for the local fire safety devices to complete their function, such as fan wind-down time, door closure time, or elevator travel time.

A.10.11.2 The intent of this requirement is to ensure that persons who are deaf or hard of hearing are alerted to seek additional information regarding an emergency situation. Persons who are deaf or hard of hearing are not always alerted by the loudspeakers that provide evacuation tones or voice instructions. It is intended that the loudspeakers and visual notification appliances located in the same area be activated together whenever tones, recorded voice instructions, or live voice instructions are being provided. (SIG-ECS)

A.10.11.4 The recommended coded signal designations for buildings that have four floors and multiple basements are provided in Table A.10.11.4.

Table A.10.11.4 Recommended Coded Signal Designations

Location	Coded Signal
Fourth floor	2–4
Third floor	2–3
Second floor	2–2
First floor	2–1
Basement	3–1
Sub-basement	3–2

A.10.11.6 Resetting of alarm signals should not require the simultaneous operation of multiple reset switches or the disconnection of any wiring or equipment to reset the alarm condition.

A.10.12 It is the intent that both visual and audible appliances are shut off when the notification appliance silence feature is activated on the fire alarm control unit.

Per the ADA, it is important not to provide conflicting signals for the hearing or visually impaired.

A.10.12.2 Where it is desired to deactivate the notification appliances for fire service operations inside the building and signal evacuated occupants that an alarm is still present, it is recommended that a separate non-silenceable notification zone be provided on the exterior of the building. The audible and visual notification appliances located at the building entrances could serve as a warning to prevent occupant reentry.

A.10.15.9 The purpose of automatic trouble re-sound is to remind owners, or those responsible for the system, that the system remains in a fault condition. A secondary benefit is to possibly alert occupants of the building that the fire alarm system is in a fault condition.

A.10.15.10.7 In large, campus-style arrangements with proprietary supervising stations monitoring protected premises systems, and in other situations where off-premises monitoring achieves the desired result, the authority having jurisdiction is permitted to allow the reactivation to occur only at the supervising station. Approval by the authority having jurisdiction is required so it can consider all fire safety issues and make a determination that there are procedures in place to ensure that the intent is met; in other words, someone is available to take action to correct the problem.

A.10.16.2 The operability of controlled mechanical equipment (e.g., smoke and fire dampers, elevator recall arrangements, and door holders) should be verified by periodic testing. Failure to test and properly maintain controlled mechanical equipment can result in operational failure during an emergency, with potential consequences up to and including loss of life.

A.10.18.1.2 The visible annunciation required by 10.18.1.2 must remain "on" even if other appliances are silenced, shut off, or disabled. Most often, a control unit will sound an audible signal and display a visual alert of an incoming signal. The audible signal is permitted to be deactivated, but the visual signal must remain active. Or, a system in a high-noise area might use high-power visual appliances for occupant alerting. Deactivating those signals, without resetting the system, is not permitted to deactivate the visual means required by 10.18.1.2.

A.10.18.3 The primary purpose of annunciation is to enable responding personnel to quickly and accurately determine the status of equipment or emergency control functions that might affect the safety of occupants.

A.10.18.5 Fire alarm system annunciation should, as a minimum, be sufficiently specific to identify a fire alarm signal in accordance with the following:

(1) If a floor exceeds 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2) in area, the floor should be subdivided into detection zones of 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2) or less, consistent with the existing smoke and fire barriers on the floor.

(2) If a floor exceeds 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2) in area and is undivided by smoke or fire barriers, detection zoning should be determined on a case-by-case basis in consultation with the authority having jurisdiction.
(3) Waterflow switches on sprinkler systems that serve multiple floors, areas exceeding 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2), or areas inconsistent with the established detection system zoning should be annunciated individually.
(4) In-duct smoke detectors on air-handling systems that serve multiple floors, areas exceeding 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2), or areas inconsistent with the established detection system zoning should be annunciated individually.
(5) If a floor area exceeds 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2), additional zoning should be provided. The length of any zone should not exceed 300 ft (91 m) in any direction. If the building is provided with automatic sprinklers throughout, the area of the alarm zone should be permitted to coincide with the allowable area of the sprinkler zone.

A.10.18.6 *Emergency Services Interfaces.* Annunciators, information display systems, and controls for portions of a system provided for use by emergency service personnel should be designed, arranged, and located in accordance with the needs of the organizations intended to use the equipment.

A.10.19.1 Amplifiers generally require significant power regardless of load. To reduce the secondary power demand, there is no requirement to monitor the integrity of amplifiers during non-alarm operation on secondary power. This allows the amplifiers to be shut down while the system is operating on secondary power until an alarm occurs. When an alarm occurs, monitoring of integrity must resume so that an operator is aware of current conditions and so that any backup amplifiers can be engaged.

Backup amplifying and evacuation signal–generating equipment is recommended with automatic transfer upon primary equipment failure to ensure prompt restoration of service in the event of equipment failure.

A.10.19.1.3 Manufacturers of fire alarm and emergency communications systems provide a means for supervising the tone-generating equipment capability to properly generate tones. There typically is no means to test the tone generator failure for this trouble condition in the field.

A.10.21 The term *impairments* encompasses a broad range of circumstances wherein a system or portion thereof is taken out of service for a variety of reasons. Systems are routinely impaired to allow hot work (e.g., open flame operations) to be performed in areas with automatic detection, construction, painting, and so forth, as well as to conduct normal system maintenance and testing. Impairments can be limited to specific initiating devices and/or functions (e.g., disconnecting the supervising station connection during system testing), or they can involve taking entire systems or portions of systems out of service. Section 10.21 is intended to help building owners control impairments of the system(s) in their building(s) and to ensure that systems are restored to full operation and/or returned to service afterward.

Additional requirements for impairments and out-of-service conditions are in 14.2.2.2.

A.10.21.5 It is important for the authority having jurisdiction, typically the local fire official, to be informed when systems have been out of service for more than 8 hours so that appropriate measures can be taken. The term *out of service* is meant to refer to the entire system or a substantial portion thereof.

A.10.21.6 The need for mitigating measures is typically determined on a case-by-case basis. This considers the building, occupancy type, nature and duration of impairment, building occupancy level during impairment period, active work being conducted on the fire alarm system during the impairment, condition of other fire protection systems and features (i.e., sprinklers, structural compartmentation, etc.), and hazards and assets at risk.

Appropriate mitigating measures range from simple occupant notification to full-time fire watch. Determining factors vary from testing-related impairments and maintenance activities during normal business through extensive impairments to high-value, high-hazard situations.

A.10.22 See 3.3.332 for the definitions of unwanted alarms.

Δ **A.11.1.1** Cybersecurity is not required for every system or application; it is only required when other sections of this Code, authorities, or regulations mandate that cybersecurity be incorporated into the system(s). Generally, there are greater cybersecurity concerns when systems are connected to external networks.

N **A.11.1.2** An example of a system that requires no cybersecurity is a dip-switch configurable control unit with no network connection.

N **A.11.2** The security practices for the design, development, production, and service of network connectable equipment includes the overall cybersecurity posture of the manufacturing company itself. For example, it does not matter how well a system is designed or deployed from a cybersecurity perspective if the manufacturer does not adequately secure its own development, manufacturing, and patch/update distribution systems. Threat actors can compromise products by installing covert back doors during initial development, or during the development and distribution of software updates.

N **A.11.2(5)** Other agencies using this Code might be required to meet specific laws and regulations pertaining to cybersecurity when installing any fire alarm or signaling systems. Therefore, system manufacturers, designers, and installers should be aware of any additional requirements needed to meet the specific laws and regulations.

N **A.11.3** In general, there could be overlap in what this section requires and the end user's IT department's requirements. That overlap could require additional coordination in the case of Class N networks or internet communications, as IT departments could have more stringent requirements and certifications than listed in this Code. In those instances, IT compliance beyond this Code could be required for the owner.

An example of a Security Level 1 (SL1) system consists of a fire alarm system with notification appliances and initiating devices that are connected using a proprietary protocol two-wire interface and that is not connected to the internet.

An example of a Security Level 2 (SL2) system consists of a signaling system with devices connected to a control unit using internet protocol communications on a dedicated network that do not connect to the internet.

An example of a Security Level 3 (SL3) system consists of internet gateway module for off-premises transmission of signals from a fire alarm system with notification appliances and initiating devices that are connected using a proprietary protocol two-wire interface. In this case the gateway is SL3, and the remainder of the system is SL1.

N **A.11.4** An assumption is often made that attacks are launched remotely from the internet. However, there are many examples of attackers gaining access to a facility to enable an attack. For example, a system that has no networking capability, with only a RS-232 serial port can be connected to an RS-232-to-Ethernet adapter. This could be intended benignly, as a way of enabling remote monitoring or remote service, but it is a risk that should be considered nonetheless.

The protection by metal raceways or metal armored cables of interconnecting conductors, cables, or other physical pathways is also recommended for use in Security Level 1 applications. For improved physical security in systems where control units and data access points are not installed in restricted areas, using security tamper switches to produce a tamper signal for notification when an enclosure is opened should be considered. Tamper resistant fasteners can be employed on junction box covers to provide additional physical protection.

N **A.11.7** Figure A.11.7 depicts typical system firewall/gateway operation. Such functionality, when deployed, could take the form of physical hardware, firmware, or both. The firewall/gateway might be physically integrated into the control unit, as shown in the integrated control unit graphic, or a separate device/service that interacts with the control unit, as shown in the nonintegrated control unit.

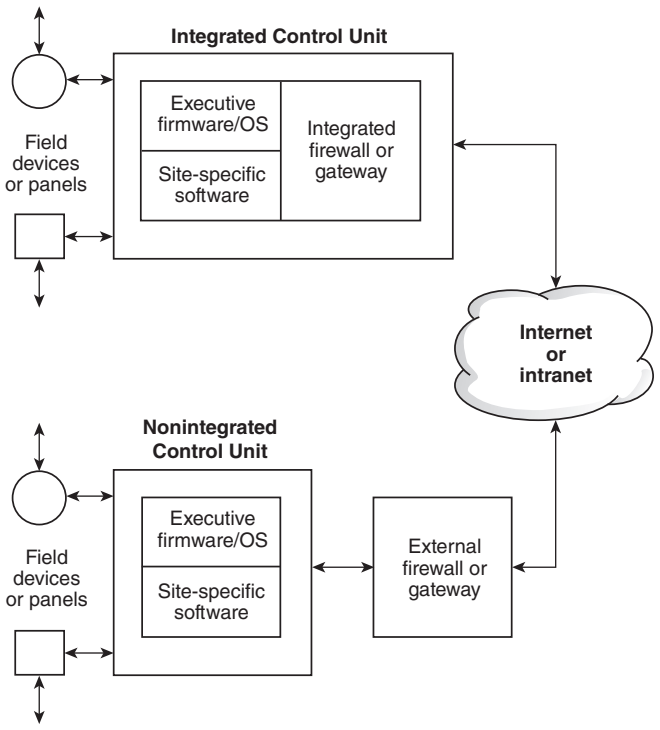
Many networks have additional protections, such as multiple firewalls.

N **A.11.8.3** As security vulnerabilities are discovered, existing systems could be affected. It is important for manufacturers to provide solutions when vulnerabilities are discovered. Likewise, it is important to carefully manage the update and patch management infrastructure to ensure that corrections are available, have not been modified or spoofed, and are applied successfully.

A.12.2.1 In the 2007 edition of *NFPA 72*, initiating device circuit, signaling line circuit, and notification appliance circuit performance class/style tables were rooted in "copper" wiring methods. Fire alarm control units use new communications technologies, such as Ethernet, fiber optics, and wireless, which do not fit in the "copper" wiring methods.

Δ **A.12.2.3.3** Fire alarm systems include fire detection and alarm notification, guard's tour, sprinkler waterflow, and sprinkler supervisory systems. Circuits controlled and powered by the fire alarm system include circuits for the control of building systems safety functions, elevator capture, elevator shutdown, door release, smoke doors and damper control, fire doors and damper control, and fan shutdown, but only where these circuits are powered by and controlled by the fire alarm system. [**70:**760.1 Informational Note No. 1]

A.12.2.3.4 It is important for the intended functionality of circuit integrity cable or electrical circuit integrity systems to follow manufacturer's installation instructions. An electrical circuit integrity system has detailed installation requirements, and additional requirements can be found in the manufacturer's installation instructions, *NFPA 70* or the listing organizations' guide information.



N **FIGURE A.11.7 System Typical Firewall/Gateway Operation.**

A.12.2.3.5 In the event of an introduction of a fault and subsequent alarm condition, operational ability should be restored within 200 seconds, and the alarm condition received at the fire alarm control unit is to be within 10 seconds after the expiration of the 200 seconds. Any subsequent alarms initiated after the initial 200-second window should be actuated in accordance with 10.11.1.

A.12.2.4.3 Technologies that do not use metallic conductors (e.g., wireless or fiber optics) are not affected by ground connections.

A.12.3 The intent of the circuit designations is not to create a hierarchal ranking; rather it is to provide guidance on the levels of performance.

Users of the Chapter 12 designations should review whether there are other abnormal conditions not specified in Chapter 12 that the pathways need to annunciate and operate through for their application.

A.12.3.1 Fiber-optic or wireless pathways are examples of Class A circuitry not impaired by earth ground connection or short-circuits and therefore do not annunciate those conditions as a fault.

A.12.3.3 Class C is intended to describe technologies that supervise the communication pathway by polling or continuous communication "handshaking," such as the following:

(1) Fire alarm control unit or supervising station connections to a wired LAN, WAN, or Internet

(2) Fire alarm control unit or supervising station connections to a wireless LAN, WAN, and Internet
(3) Fire alarm control unit digital alarm communicator transmitter or supervising station digital alarm communicator receiver connections to the public switched telephone network

Individual pathway segments are not required to be monitored. Supervision is accomplished by end-to-end communications.

A.12.3.4 Class D is intended to describe pathways that are not supervised but have a fail-safe operation that performs the intended function when the connection is lost. Examples of such pathways include the following:

(1) Power to door holders where interruption of the power results in the door closing
(2) Power to locking hardware that release upon an open circuit or fire alarm operation

A.12.3.5 Class E is intended to describe pathways that do not require supervision as described in Section 12.6.

Δ **A.12.3.6** The Class N pathway designation is added to specifically address the use of modern network infrastructure when used in fire alarm or signaling systems.

Class N networks can be specified for ancillary functions but are not required for supplemental reporting described in 23.12.4. *(See Figure A.23.12.4.)*

Ethernet network devices are addressable but with an important distinction from device addresses on a traditional SLC multi-drop loop. A device with an Ethernet address is, in most cases, a physical endpoint connected to a dedicated cable. Traditional SLC devices are all wired on the same communication line (in parallel), similar to an old party-line telephone system. By comparison, Ethernet's network switches direct each data packet to its intended recipient device like our modern phone systems.

Class N uses redundant paths as a means to compensate for Ethernet wiring that does not report a single connection to ground, a basic requirement of Class B. Thus, the physical separation of Class A and Class X, and equipment redundancy described in 12.3.7, is not inherently required of Class N. In other words, failure of a single switch is permitted to take down a Class N segment and is only required to report the loss of communication. Where redundant path segments are intended to have survivability similar to Class A or Class X, the physical separation requirements and overall equipment redundancy must be specified in addition to the Class N designation.

As a visual model, Class N could be likened to a redundant pathway backbone, which are allowed to have Class C branch paths to single endpoint devices. Therefore, every effort is made in this section to clearly distinguish the single endpoint device from the transport equipment required to have redundant paths.

Class N requires redundant, monitored pathway segments to and from a control unit(s) where any interruption in communications could potentially affect multiple endpoint devices. Typically, interconnected communications equipment such as Ethernet switches, wireless repeaters, or media converters are used in combination to create pathways. Chapter 12 describes the required behavior of Class N pathways. All equipment must meet the requirements of other chapters in *NFPA 72* (such as, but not limited to, requirements pertaining to secondary power supplies, equipment listings, and environment conditions).

Redundant pathways, isolated from ground, are actually common practice in robust Ethernet designs. Managed network switches commonly have specific uplink ports that are intended for load sharing and allow two parallel connections. For compliance with Class N, a trouble condition must be reported if either of these connections fails. *[See Figure A.12.3.6(a) and Figure A.12.3.6(b).]*

Class N pathways can use metallic conductor communications cable, such as a 100 ohm balanced twisted pair (e.g., Category 5E), including single-pair or multi-pair cable, or other communications media, such as optical fiber cable or wireless transmission, or a combination of two or more such transport mediums.

Where a conductor-based media is used for Class N, the intention is not to monitor faults on individual conductors but rather to monitor the operational capability and performance of the pathway as a whole. Similar to Class C, end-to-end verification is used in Class N.

Primary and required redundant pathways are independently and continuously verified for their ability to support end-to-end communications to and from each endpoint device and its associated control equipment. Pathway segments that service more than one device must have at least one verified redundant pathway segment. Should any primary pathway segment fail, communication is supported by the redundant pathway segment(s). Failure of either a primary or redundant pathway will indicate a trouble signal.

Redundant pathway segments are generally independent and do not normally share media with the primary pathways. However, there are exceptions, such as different frequencies for wireless components or ring topologies. *[See Figure A.12.3.6(7).]*

A Class N network can be made more reliable with physically distinct pathway segments (i.e., an alternate conduit, or cable tray route, or wireless transmission frequency range, or a combination of distinct media). In addition to the required primary segments and redundant segments, a Class N pathway is permitted to have nonrequired segments. *[See Figure A.12.3.6(c).]* Additional nonrequired pathway segments are allowed to be connected and not independently monitored for integrity as long as two paths are monitored to meet the redundancy requirement of Class N.

Traditionally, NFPA has used the word *device* for input components and the term *appliance* for components used in notification. With respect to Class N, the term *device* includes appliances and other intelligent, addressable components that perform a programmable input or output function. Examples of Class N devices include the following:

(1) Input components such as alarm initiating modules switches and sensors
(2) Output components such as output modules, Ethernet loudspeakers (i.e., IEEE 8802.3 PoE loudspeakers), intelligent visual notification appliances (strobes), textual signage, and intelligent audio amplifiers

Transmission equipment components (e.g., media converters, Ethernet switches, patch panels, cross-connects) are connected to the Class N pathway merely to transport instruc-

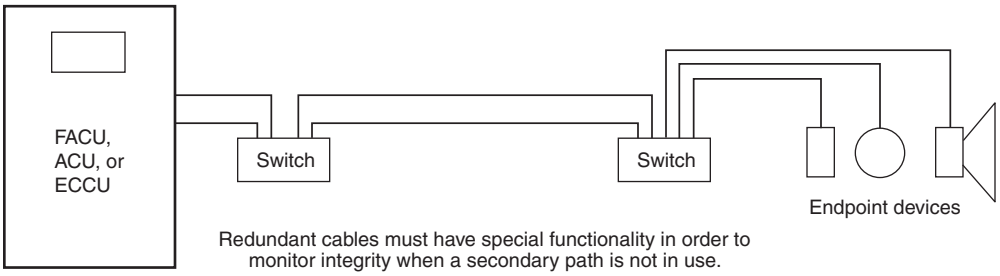
tions between other equipment. As such, they are not considered devices with respect to Class N pathways.

The audio amplifier listed above is an example of an addressable device that can receive a digital audio input from the Class N pathway and then provide a notification appliance circuit (NAC) output with Class A, B, or X pathways. Other endpoint devices can similarly provide alternate class pathways for visual notification appliances (strobes) (NACs) or initiating devices (IDCs). From the perspective of the Class N pathway, communications terminate at this endpoint device. However, since these types of endpoints can support multiple notification appliance devices or initiating devices, path segments are subject to the redundant pathway requirement unless protected in an enclosure or raceway less than 20 ft (6 m) in length. *(See 12.6.7.) [See Figure A.12.3.6(c).]*

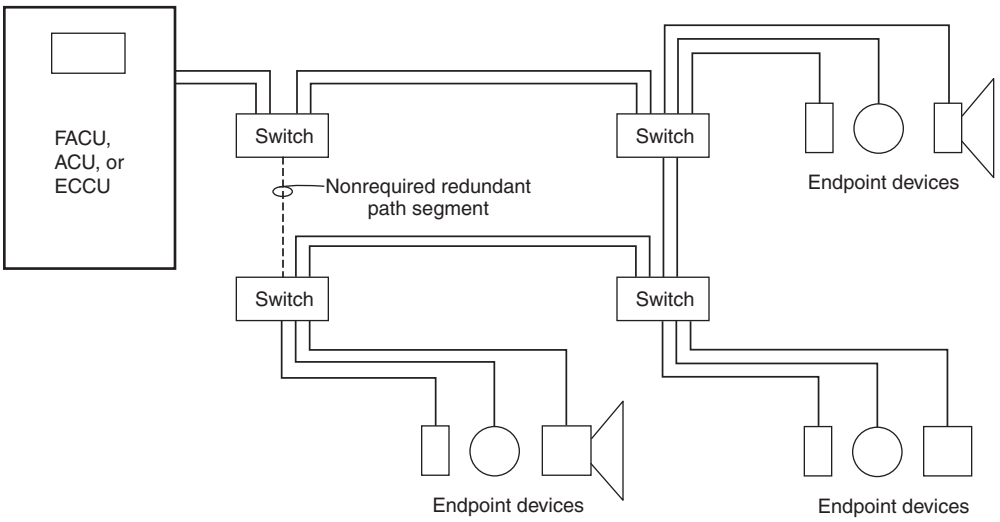
Class N connections between control equipment are required to have redundant monitored pathway segments if a failure of a primary pathway segment in between control equipment could impair the operation of the control equipment. *[See Figure A.12.3.6(d).]*

Class N is also permitted to include dual port devices that provide both transmission and input/output functions. Endpoint devices can have multiple connection ports and support dual pathway segment connections; thus the term *endpoint device* is not intended to prohibit more than one connection to a device. Even with dual connections, where other devices depend on the path, primary and redundant paths are required. But, where an endpoint device has two connection ports, and when a secondary nonrequired connection is added, there is no requirement to separately supervise the nonrequired redundant pathway segment. *[See Figure A.12.3.6(e).]*

A.12.3.6(6) Operational conditions of the pathway include factors such as latency, throughput, response time, arrival rate, utilization, bandwidth, and loss. Life safety equipment connected to a Class N network actively monitors some or all of the pathway's operational conditions so that an improperly installed or configured pathway or a subsequently degraded pathway or segment is detected by the life safety equipment and reported as a trouble signal. The trouble condition is reported when operational conditions of the pathway(s) have deteriorated to the point where the equipment is no longer capable of meeting its minimum performance requirements, even if some level of communication to devices is still maintained. Performance requirements include the activation of an alarm within 10 seconds, the reporting of a trouble signal within 200 seconds, and delivery of audio messages with required intelligibility. End-to-end communications might be operational under system idle conditions, but in the event of an alarm, the increased load on a degraded pathway could cause a partial or complete failure to deliver required life safety signals. Such predictable failure must be actively detected and reported.



Δ FIGURE A.12.3.6(a) Class N Pathway Block Diagram — Example 1.



Δ FIGURE A.12.3.6(b) Class N Pathway Block Diagram — Example 2.

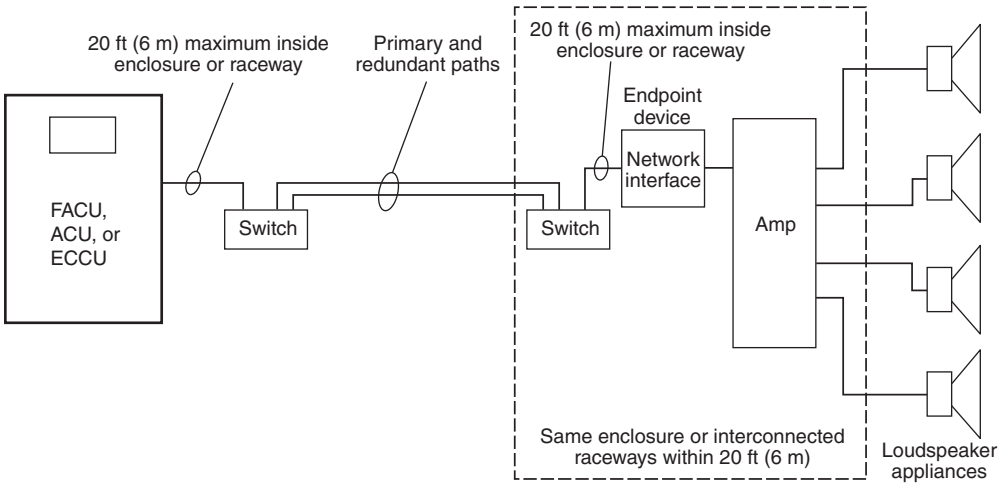


FIGURE A.12.3.6(c) Class N Pathway to Endpoint with Multiple Devices.

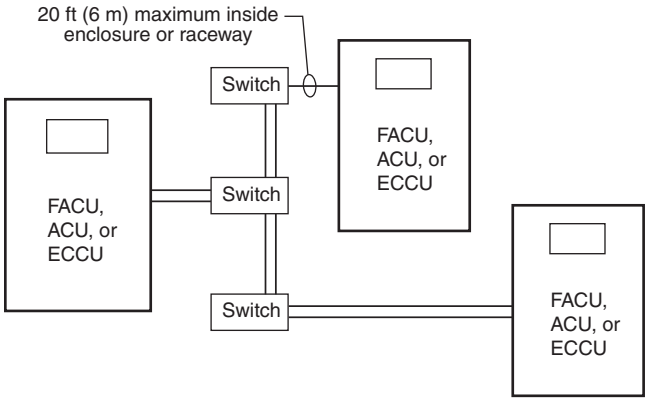
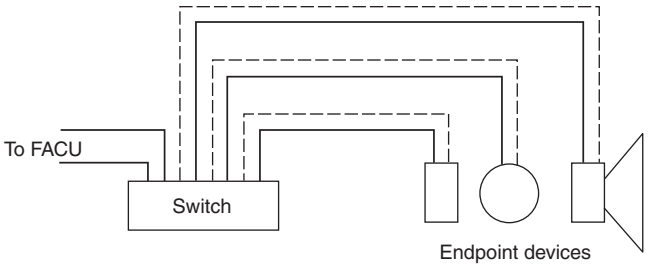


FIGURE A.12.3.6(d) Class N Pathway Block Diagram with Multiple Control Units.



A nonrequired redundant cable to an endpoint device is permitted and does not require separate supervision.

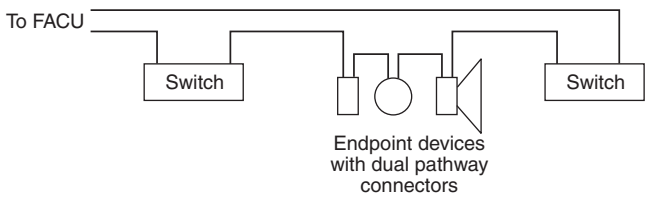
FIGURE A.12.3.6(e) Class N Pathway Block Diagram with Device with Dual Pathway Connection.

Δ **A.12.3.6(7)** Devices with dual path connections are permitted to be connected in a daisy-chain of devices on a ring. Again, where Class N pathway segments support multiple devices, verified redundant pathway segment(s) are required. This can be accomplished with a ring topology, as long as each segment of the ring is verified as functional, and the failure of any one segment does not result in the loss of functionality of more than one device. In this arrangement, primary and redundant pathway segments share the same media and provide two possible directions of communications in a ring topology *[see Figure A.12.3.6(7)]*. This daisy-chain configuration is also permitted between multiple control units that require verified primary and redundant pathway segments.

A.12.3.8 A goal of 12.3.8 is to provide adequate separation between the outgoing and return cables. This separation is required to help ensure protection of the cables from physical damage. The recommended minimum separation to prevent physical damage is 12 in. (300 mm) where the cable is installed vertically and 48 in. (1.22 m) where the cable is installed horizontally.

Examples of physical pathways could include metallic conductors and optical fiber cables.

A.12.3.8.1(3) This exception would not permit an entire room of emergency control function interface devices controlled by the fire alarm system to be installed on a circuit where the feed and return legs are installed in the same raceway for rooms smaller than 1000 ft^2 (93 m^2) in area.



Communications continue from either direction in a ring topology.

FIGURE A.12.3.6(7) Class N Pathway Block Diagram with Daisy-Chained Devices with Dual Pathway Connection.

Where a circuit enters a room that contains emergency control function interface devices (e.g., control modules/relays connected to and programmed to shut down HVAC units and other fire and life safety control functions), loss of both "legs" of this circuit could disable important fire and life safety control functions that might be essential for prevention of circulation of smoke or another required operation, such as elevator recall functions.

A.12.4 The intent of the pathway survivability designation is to provide options for the protection of the pathway circuits as shown in Table A.12.4 and not to create a hierarchical ranking. Other chapters within *NFPA 72* or other code-making jurisdictions can select the survivability option that best meets their needs.

A.12.4.3 Methods of survivability protection might alternate within a protected premises. For example, 2-hour fire-resistive cable might extend from a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated enclosure.

Fire alarm system notification appliances, control modules, jacks, and initiating devices are not capable of resisting attack by fire. Connecting these devices to circuits that require survivability and span multiple zones or floors will result in a circuit that is no longer survivable. For example, two-way, in-building communications system (firefighter's telephone) jacks that are connected to a circuit serving multiple floors could be shorted by the fire. It is recommended that a Level 2 or Level 3 survivable circuit serving multiple zones or floors be installed as Class X or Class N or those circuits be designed to serve a single fire zone.

• **A.12.4.4** See A.12.4.3.

A.12.4.5 As identified in A.12.4 and Table A.12.4, pathways are not ranked in a hierarchy of protection. As such, a Level 4 is not intended to be better than a Level 1. Rather, each provides a separate means of achieving an acceptable level of protection based on system performance and construction. Nonsprinklered buildings having less than 2-hour construction — such as a single-story nursing facility — might incorporate partial evacuation or relocation of occupants upon fire alarm signal activation. The provisions of a pathway survivability Level 4 might be appropriate for the fire alarm or signaling system installed in such facility. Figure A.24.3.14.4.6.3 provides examples of how a user might use various options within a multistory building to achieve an intended level of protection. These provisions might include 1-hour separations, separation by ⅓ diagonal of the area, Class N or Class X pathways, fire-rated enclosures, or other means of protection. Additional explanatory material related to pathway survivability use is provided in A.24.3.14.4.2 through A.24.3.14.4.4, A.24.3.14.4.6.1 through A.24.3.14.4.6.4, A.24.3.14.9, and A.24.3.14.12.1.

A.12.5 Shared pathway designations propose a list of shared pathways, some of which are only allowable for nonrequired functions. Other sections of this Code determine which of the shared pathways are allowed to be used as paths for required fire alarm signaling. Refer to 23.8.2.6 for shared communications requirements.

A.12.5.1 In a Shared Pathway Level 0, common equipment can be used to establish life safety and non-life-safety pathways.

A.12.5.2 In a Shared Pathway Level 1, common equipment can be used to establish life safety and non-life-safety pathways.

A.12.5.3 In a Shared Pathway Level 2, common equipment can be used to establish life safety and non-life-safety pathways.

A.12.5.4 In a Shared Pathway Level 3, life safety equipment is not shared with equipment of non-life-safety systems.

A.12.6 The provision of a double loop or other multiple path conductor or circuit to avoid electrical monitoring is not acceptable.

A.12.6.6 This Code does not have jurisdiction over the monitoring integrity of conductors within equipment, devices, or appliances.

A.12.7 The nomenclature described in Section 12.7 can be found on drawings, specifications, and the actual installed circuits. Some examples of the nomenclature are X.2.3, A, B.3.

A.14.2.1.1 Initial and re-acceptance inspections are performed to ensure compliance with approved design documents whatever the quality or origin. This involves inspection to ensure that the correct equipment has been used and properly located and installed. Ensuring compliance helps to assure both operational reliability and mission reliability. This concept applies to any type of system, not just fire alarm or signaling systems. At this stage of a system's life, the responsibilities for such inspections rest with the designers of the systems and with the various applicable authorities having jurisdiction.

A.14.2.1.2 If a system is designed to meet a specific mission or set of goals, then operational testing will assure that the system has mission reliability. For example, during acceptance testing, the design ambient noise level might not be present. Authorities having jurisdiction and technicians should not be trying to achieve the +5/15 dB or +5/10 dB requirements at acceptance, as they might not know what the maximum average or peak noise levels are. They need only measure the system and determine if it meets the required design level. Therefore, the design level needs to be documented and communicated to them.

Acceptance and re-acceptance testing includes proper operation, and non-operation, of the fire alarm or signaling system's ability to properly interface to other systems. The best way to ensure a proper interface operation is to observe the actual operation of the interfaced system. However, exercising an emergency control function every time a related initiating device is actuated might not be desirable or practical, or in some cases might not be permitted. *NFPA 72* permits testing of the fire alarm or signaling system up to the end point connection to the interfaced system or emergency control function. Refer to A.14.4.3.2 Table 14.4.3.2 Item 24.

A.14.2.1.3 Visual inspections contribute to the assurance of operational and mission reliability but do not ensure either.

A.14.2.1.4 Periodic testing of fire alarm and signaling systems is not necessarily done as a complete system test. *NFPA 72* requires parts of the systems to be tested at different frequencies. At any one particular test, only a fraction of the system can be tested. Periodic testing contributes to the assurance of operational and mission reliability but does not ensure either.

Periodic testing of the interface between a fire alarm or signaling system in some other system or emergency control function is permitted by *NFPA 72* to be performed without actually operating the interfaced system or function. Refer to A.14.4.3.2 Table 14.4.3.2 Item 24.

Δ Table A.12.4 Performance Criteria Options for Pathway Survivability Levels

Required Performance Criteria	Pathway Survivability				
	Level 0 (12.4.1)	**Level 1 (12.4.2)**	**Level 2 (12.4.3)**	**Level 3 (12.4.4)**	**Level 4 (12.4.5)**
Per 12.2.3.3 and Section 12.4 of this Code, all pathways must comply with *NFPA 70* applicable requirements.	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Wiring methods permitted are installed in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions (12.2.3.4).	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Building is fully protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13.	—	YES	—	YES	—
Any interconnecting conductors, cables, or other physical pathways are protected by metal raceways or metal armored cables.	—	YES	—	—	—
One or more of the following are required: (1) 1-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable (2) 1-hour fire-rated cable system (electrical circuit integrity systems) (3) 1-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area (4) Performance alternative approved by the AHJ	—	—	—	—	YES
One or more of the following are required: (1) 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable (2) 2-hour fire-rated cable system (electrical circuit integrity systems) (3) 2-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area (4) Performance alternative approved by the AHJ	—	—	YES	YES	—

A.14.2.2.1.2 Testing should be performed in such a way that testing personnel can promptly respond to signals as they are initiated during testing and can ensure that devices are reporting with the correct locations and addresses, programming errors are not overlooked, ground faults are acknowledged promptly, and fire and trouble/supervisory signals are responded to immediately when signals are not related to the testing taking place.

A.14.2.3.1 See definition of *Ownership* in 3.3.208.

A.14.2.3.6 Service personnel should be able to do the following:

(1) Understand the requirements contained in *NFPA 72* and the fire alarm requirements contained in *NFPA 70*
(2) Understand basic job site safety laws and requirements
(3) Apply troubleshooting techniques, and determine the cause of fire alarm system trouble conditions
(4) Understand equipment specific requirements, such as programming, application, and compatibility
(5) Read and interpret fire alarm system design documentation and manufacturer's inspection, testing, and maintenance guidelines
(6) Properly use tools and test equipment required for testing and maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components
(7) Properly apply the test methods required by *NFPA 72*

A.14.2.4 Prior to any scheduled inspection or testing, the service company should consult with the building or system owner or the owner's designated representative. Issues of advance notification in certain occupancies, including advance notification time, building posting, systems interruption and restoration, evacuation procedures, accommodation for evacuees, and other related issues, should be agreed upon by all parties prior to any inspection or testing.

A.14.2.7.1 As an example, testing of the elevator fire service and shutdown functions will usually require a coordinated multi-discipline effort with presence of qualified service personnel for the fire alarm system, the elevator system, and other building systems. The presence of inspection authorities might also be needed in some jurisdictions. The development of a test plan should be considered to ensure that the testing of these features is accomplished in a coordinated and timely manner. This plan should also ensure that all appropriate parties and personnel are present when needed, and that the testing requirements for both the fire alarm system and the elevator system are fulfilled. See Section 21.3 and Section 21.4 for specific elevator emergency control functions.

A.14.2.9 This section provides the option to adopt a performance-based inspection and testing method as an alternate means of compliance for Sections 14.3 and 14.4. The prescriptive test and requirements contained in this Code are essentially qualitative. Equivalent or superior levels of performance can be demonstrated through quantitative performance-based analyses. This section provides a basis for implementing and monitoring a performance-based program acceptable under this option (provided that approval is obtained by the authority having jurisdiction). The concept of a performance-based inspection and testing program is to establish the requirements and frequencies at which inspection and testing must be performed to demonstrate an acceptable level of operational reliability. The goal is to balance the inspection and testing frequency with proven reliability of the system or component. The goal of a performance-based inspection program is also to adjust inspection and testing frequencies commensurate with historical documented equipment performance and desired reliability. Frequencies of inspection and testing under a performance-based program might be extended or reduced from the prescriptive inspection and testing requirements contained in this Code when continued inspection and testing has been documented indicating a higher or lower degree of reliability as compared to the authority having jurisdiction's expectations of performance. Additional program attributes should be considered when adjusting inspection and testing.

A fundamental requirement of a performance-based program is the continual monitoring of fire system/component failure rates and determining if they exceed the maximum allowable failure rates as agreed upon with the authority having jurisdiction. The process used to complete this review should be documented and be repeatable. Coupled with this ongoing review is a requirement for a formalized method of increasing or decreasing the frequency of inspection and testing when systems exhibit either a higher than expected failure rate or an increase in reliability as a result of a decrease in failures. A formal process for reviewing the failure rates and increasing or decreasing the frequency of inspection and testing must be well documented. Concurrence from the authority having jurisdiction on the process used to determine test frequencies should be obtained in advance of any alterations to the inspection and testing program. The frequency required for future inspections and tests might be reduced to the next inspection frequency and maintained there for a period equaling the initial data review or until the ongoing review indicates that the failure rate is no longer being exceeded — for example, going from an annual to a semiannual testing when the failure rate exceeds the authority having jurisdiction's expectations, or from annual to every 18 months when the failure trend indicates an increase in reliability.

See also NFPA 551 for additional guidance.

A.14.2.10 The test plan is intended to clarify exactly what is to be tested and how it is to be tested. Testing of fire alarm and signaling systems is often done in a segmented fashion to accommodate the availability of testing or other personnel or to minimize the interruption of building operations. Where a building owner has contracted the performance of inspection, testing, and maintenance activities to outside entities, the test plan, what will and will not be tested, should be reviewed by those parties. Building operations can be affected by testing of the fire alarm or signaling system itself and by the operation of emergency control functions actuated by the fire alarm or signaling system. The boundary of the fire alarm or signaling system extends up to and includes the emergency control function interface device. The testing requirements prescribed in *NFPA 72* for fire alarm and signaling systems end at the emergency control function interface device. The purpose of the test plan is to document what devices will and will not actually be tested.

The testing of emergency control functions, releasing systems, or interfaced equipment is outside the scope of *NFPA 72*. Requirements for testing other systems are found in other governing laws, codes, or standards. Requirements for integrated testing of combined systems also fall under the authority of other governing laws, codes, standards, or authority having jurisdiction. NFPA 3 provides guidance for such test-

ing. NFPA 3 recognizes the importance of the development of an integrated testing plan.

Further information on testing associated with emergency control functions can be found in Table 14.4.3.2, Item 24 and its related annex material in A.14.4.3.2.

A.14.3.1 Equipment performance can be affected by building modifications, occupancy changes, changes in environmental conditions, device location, physical obstructions, device orientation, physical damage, improper installation, degree of cleanliness, or other obvious problems that might not be indicated through electrical supervision.

The intent of 14.3.1 is to prevent an inspection being made at intervals exceeding those allowed by Table 14.3.1. Annual inspections should be made every 12 months; monthly inspections should be made every 30 days, and so forth. For example, it is not acceptable to conduct an annual inspection in January of year one, and December of year two (23 month frequency) just because Table 14.3.1 requires an inspection once each year.

A.14.3.2 In addition to safety considerations, other reasons for delaying fire alarm inspections include nationally or regionally declared disasters, such as pandemics, weather-related emergencies, or other governmentally recognized disruptions.

A.14.4.2 Reacceptance testing is performed to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices, appliances, emergency control function devices, control units, and so forth. It is not the intent of the committee to unduly burden the system owner with increased costs for repeated testing of devices not directly affected by the replacement of devices with like devices.

For example, if a 2 amp fuse is replaced with another 2 amp fuse in the fire alarm control unit, verification of the circuit(s) served by the fused supply is required, but it would not be necessary to test 10 percent of initiating devices not directly affected by replacing the fuse. Likewise, it is not necessary to test all these initiating devices whenever a smoke detector is replaced with a like smoke detector.

When wiring changes are made to correct improperly supervised circuits, a test of the affected device or appliance is required, but not a test of 10 percent of initiating devices not directly affected.

N **A.14.4.2.3** Control unit hardware could include, but is not limited to, the central processing unit, power supply, integrated off-premises transmitter, and signaling line circuit.

Δ **A.14.4.3** Fire alarm system testing can be conducted using silent testing and the bypassing of emergency control functions. All input signals should be verified according to the system sequence of operation to ensure they create the appropriate outputs. Tests of audible notification appliances and emergency control functions should be conducted at the conclusion of satisfactory tests of all inputs.

The intent is to reduce the amount of time spent causing audible and visual occupant notification during tests in an occupied building. This will decrease the negative (cry wolf) impact on occupants caused by excessive operation of notification appliances. System printouts or history logs are an effective way of verifying the correct receipt of signals. However, many outputs such as occupant notification and emergency control functions are tested for correct operation because logs do not necessarily verify operation of the system output. Operation of audible and visual notification appliances could be accomplished in a lump sum fashion after all inputs are proven correct by silent testing. All inputs tested in this manner must be proved to cause the appropriate signal by verifying alarm receipt at the controls as each device is actuated. Manufacturer-specific protocols such as “walk test” or “alarm bypass” are an acceptable means of testing under this section. Other methods of mitigating the negative impact include off-hours tests when the building is not occupied.

A.14.4.3.1 If the authority having jurisdiction strongly suspects significant deterioration or otherwise improper operation by a central station, a surprise inspection to test the operation of the central station should be made, but extreme caution should be exercised. This test is to be conducted without advising the central station. However, the communications center must be contacted when manual alarms, waterflow alarms, or automatic fire detection systems are tested so that the fire department will not respond. In addition, persons normally receiving calls for supervisory alarms should be notified when items such as gate valves and functions such as pump power are tested. Confirmation of the authenticity of the test procedure should be obtained and should be a matter for resolution between plant management and the central station.

Δ **A.14.4.3.2 Table 14.4.3.2 Item 9(4).** Ohmic testing is a means to determine the state of health of a VRLA battery’s cells by measuring some form of a cell’s internal resistance. Typically, ohmic testing equipment uses one of three techniques — conductance, impedance, or resistance — to make these measurements.

In simplest technical terms, ohmic technology is based on Ohm’s law, which expresses the relationship between volts, amperes, and ohms in an electrical circuit. Ohmic testing attempts to use voltage and current to determine the resistive characteristic of a battery’s cells. As the cells in a battery age and start to lose capacity, the internal components of the battery are undergoing a degradation process. The degradation of these components (plates, grids, internal connection straps) within the battery’s cells causes an increased resistance in the conduction paths of the cell, which in turn causes a change in the internal ohmic values. A measured increase in impedance or resistance, or a decrease in conductance, indicates the battery is losing its ability to produce the energy it was designed to deliver when called upon to support the connected loads.

The key to effective application of ohmic testing is the appropriate trending of test results over time compared to a baseline or reference value. Studies have demonstrated that an individual battery produces a unique ohmic "signature" and the use of ohmic testing equipment to trend changes in this signature from installation through the life of the battery is the most effective use of the technology. A program that involves ohmic testing on a regular interval to note changes in the battery is a good maintenance practice.

An ohmic baseline reference value is a benchmark value based on data collected from known good batteries. Reference values can be determined from site-specific measurement, or from testing a sample of new healthy batteries, or by using a generic baseline value to get started.

(1) The best baseline is one established on the installed battery within three to six months after installation and trend accordingly using good record keeping. Ideally the

individual ohmic value should be measured at installation and again after the battery has been on float charge for at least 72 hours in order for it to reach a high state of stabilization. These initial "site-specific" values should be recorded and permanently affixed to the battery as a baseline for subsequent tests over the life of the battery. The ohmic value will typically increase for conductance and decrease for resistance and impedance between the initial installation and after being on float-charge for 90 to 180 days (10 percent to 15 percent depending on battery type and size). Six months after installation measure and compare the ohmic readings to the readings taken at installation. Use whichever value is greater for conductance or lower for resistance and impedance as the baseline for that particular battery at that site going forward.

(2) A sample of new healthy batteries in a fully charged state can be tested to obtain a baseline value representative of a new battery. A sample size of at least 30 batteries from one manufacturer with the same make, model, amp-hour rating, age (within 6 months), and manufacturing lot is recommended. Record the following information for the batteries:

(a) Battery manufacturer
(b) Model number
(c) Date of manufacture
(d) Manufacturing lot number (if available)
(e) Battery temperature
(f) Whether or not the battery has had a freshening charge
(g) Battery voltage
(h) Ohmic test value

Calculate the average ohmic value of the batteries. Do not include batteries that deviate more than 30 percent from the average because they could be outside of an acceptable range. Use the average value as a baseline starting point for this model battery.

(3) A generic baseline value for a specific battery model can often be found by contacting the ohmic test equipment manufacturer or from the battery manufacturer. While it is important to note that the use of generic reference values might not be as accurate, it is still possible to identify grossly failed batteries and significant changes in battery condition by applying this method. Generic baseline values are typical averages to be used as general guidelines and should only be used when no other data is available. When testing older batteries for which no initial site-specific ohmic value is available, reference values can be obtained in the following ways:

(a) Contact the equipment or battery manufacturer for assistance.
(b) Consult your company documentation to see if reference values were created for the battery you are testing.
(c) Using ohmic readings of recently installed batteries of the same manufacturer and model of the battery, manufacturer and model of the alarm panel/system, charging circuit, and temperature at time of measurements, calculate the average ohmic value of the best 8 to 10 batteries and use this value as a baseline reference.

As a battery ages and loses capacity, the internal ohmic values change. Although the change might not be perfectly consistent over all battery models and sizes, experience and extensive test data shows that a deviation of ohmic values from the established baseline by 30 percent or more for conductance and 40 percent or more for resistance or impedance indicates that the actual battery capacity has dropped to 80 percent or lower. (For lead-acid batteries, capacity drops off rapidly once the 80 percent capacity point is reached in the lifetime curve, so this is known as the "knee" of the capacity vs. lifetime curve). This 80 percent capacity is the level at which battery manufacturers recommend battery replacement. Figure A.14.4.3.2 illustrates an ohmic trend of a 5-year design life battery with an actual expected service life of 3 years. Note that while battery Unit #1 still has good ohmic readings, semiannual measurements show Unit #2 failing prematurely. For this case, it is desirable to replace both units at the same time. If one unit fails at 2½ years, it is likely the second unit will fail in one of the next semiannual tests. Full replacement ensures that all units will "float" together. One exception might be when a unit fails in the first year.

Ohmic testing can be a safe, simple, accurate, and reliable means of determining the state of health of VRLA batteries. It is important however to understand the following basic guidelines in order to maximize the benefits and avoid possible misleading test results:

(1) Follow safety regulations: wear eye protection and remove metal jewelry, and so forth prior to working with batteries.
(2) Conduct a visual inspection prior to testing. A cracked case, leaking terminal or post, or bulging battery should be replaced, not tested.
(3) Temperature changes affect measured ohmic values and battery capacity. Ohmic measurements should be taken at 77°F (25°C) ±13°F (7°C).
(4) For maximum accuracy and consistency, batteries should be tested when in a fully charged state.
(5) Check the battery charging current prior to test. The charging current should be stable and be within the normal float current recommendations of the battery manufacturer for the battery model. If it is not, it is likely that the batteries have recently been discharged and a test is not appropriate until this float current stabilizes.
(6) Whenever possible, ohmic readings should be taken each time with the same instrument, but as a minimum with the same model. Changing models will skew the data and require re-establishing the baseline.
(7) When test equipment is provided with an alert, set the ohmic baseline and/or thresholds prior to beginning the test to provide an indication of any deviations from baseline.
(8) It is essential to take ohmic measurements at the battery terminal or post. For consistency and accuracy, subsequent tests should always have probes or clamps placed at the same point while avoiding battery hardware such as bolt heads or washers. Connecting on the hardware will influence the readings and could cause replacement of a healthy battery.
(9) Maintain good contact at the test point for the duration of the test. If the probe or clamp slips off during the test, an incorrect reading will result.
(10) For batteries with fully insulated quick disconnect connectors, the battery should be taken offline by

removing the quick disconnects from the battery terminals and then measuring and recording the internal ohmic value of the battery.

(11) Do not condemn a battery based upon results of a single test without any trending data or an established baseline for that specific battery.

(12) When one or more units in a battery falls outside the acceptable range from baseline, replace the entire string.

(13) While testing online is the preferred method, it should be noted that the capability of ohmic meters varies. As such, the test equipment manufacturer might provide instructions to disconnect the battery and test offline. A battery tested online can display a different value than when tested offline due to the charger circuit and load being across the battery. Always test the same way, either online or offline, to have consistent and meaningful results. When ohmic testing is performed online, a change in current occurs due to the ohmic test set signal that could impact battery voltage readings. Because battery float voltage is directly tied to float current, the sum of the voltages of each battery cell/unit have to equal the charger float voltage of the battery string. If a load is applied from the ohmic test set that depresses one cell/unit, then the others have to rise somewhat to offset it. As ohmic testing progresses through the battery string, each cell/unit gets pulled down by the ohmic test set somewhat, and the charger must boost the string current to maintain the voltage, raising the voltage of the cells/units that have not yet been tested. For this reason, voltage readings should be taken with a voltmeter prior to performing ohmic testing online.

Table 14.4.3.2 Item 9(5). Battery capacity is determined by the mass of active material contained in the battery and is a measure of the battery's stored energy. The rated capacity of small VRLA batteries used in fire alarm or signaling system applications is typically measured in ampere-hours (Ah) where the ampere-hour rating is based on the battery's capability to provide a constant current at the nominal battery voltage for 20 hours. The rated capacity might vary from manufacturer to manufacturer.

The *actual* battery capacity during service life, often referred to as the state of charge (SOC), can vary significantly from *rated* capacity due to aging, charge and discharge cycles, temperature, and other factors. The unique failure modes of VRLA batteries due to aging and internal degradation are attributed for a high failure rate where the *actual* battery capacity has degraded to 80 percent of the manufacturer's *rated* capacity. As a result, battery manufacturers often recommend replacement much sooner than the rated design life for critical systems.

A test of battery capacity is designed to determine if the battery is capable of continuing to deliver the voltage level specified by the manufacturer. The results of a capacity test can also be used to estimate where the battery is in its service life. A test of capacity is performed by applying a constant current load to the battery based on the manufacturer's published discharge rates until voltage falls to specified levels. Although discharging the battery for capacity testing concerns some, VRLA batteries are designed to handle numerous discharges within the limits established by the battery manufacturer.

The discharge rate selected for testing should be representative of the battery duty cycle. At shorter test times, the test duration has a greater effect on the capacity calculation. For example, a 1-minute difference in actual test time for a 5-minute discharge rate compared to a 3-hour discharge rate will result in a greater deviation of the calculated capacity. The battery is also operating less efficiently at shorter discharge rates and the effects of aging and degradation might not be as prevalent during shorter discharges.

Fire alarm or signaling system loading is typically insufficient for the practical application of a battery load test because the system load cannot be varied to maintain a constant current equal to the battery manufacturer's published discharge rates. The fixed load applied by the system will result in final voltage levels that are deceptively high. Battery sizing is also a factor. The calculated system loads for the battery duty cycle (e.g., 24 hours standby followed by 5 minutes in an alarm) will rarely align with published discharge rates necessary for load testing. In many applications where the battery size is large in comparison to the required system current, the system loading could be too small to accurately determine battery capacity. In these cases, a battery near failure could conceivably satisfy the low discharge rate applied by the fire alarm or signaling system.

In order to satisfy the load test requirements of Table 14.4.3.2, battery capacity testing can be performed in the following manner or in accordance with other methods such as those identified in IEEE 1188, *Recommended Practice for Maintenance, Testing, and Replacement of Valve-Regulated Lead-Acid (VRLA) Batteries for Stationary Applications*:

(1) Referring to the battery manufacturer's specifications, determine the load current for the 3-hour battery rating to the selected end voltage, typically 1.67 volts per cell (10.2 volts for a 12-volt system or 20.4 volts for a 24-volt system).

(2) Record the battery temperature at the negative terminal.

(3) Disconnect the charger and connect a load bank to the battery terminals.

(4) Apply the constant current specified for the 3-hour rate to the battery. Once the constant current is applied, continue the test until the battery terminal voltage decreases to the specified end voltage.

(5) Stop the test when the selected end voltage is reached.

(6) Record the actual test duration in minutes.

(7) Disconnect the load bank and reconnect the charger.

(8) Calculate percent battery capacity as follows:

[A.14.4.3.2]

$$\%\,\text{capacity} = \frac{T_{actual}}{180 \times K_T} \times 100$$

where:

T_{actual} = the test duration in minutes

K_T = the temperature correction factor for the actual battery temperature at the start of the test from Table A.14.4.3.2. Additional temperature correction factors can be obtained from IEEE 1188.

(9) Replace the battery if the battery capacity is less than or equal to 80 percent. Replace the battery at the next scheduled test interval if the battery capacity is less than 85 percent.

As a good practice, a new battery should be fully charged and then load tested following the battery manufacturer's recommendations prior to installation. A new fully charged battery should have a capacity of at least 90 percent.

Table 14.4.3.2, Item 17. Where the manufacturer publishes limits of accuracy for the operation of an initiating device, the test method should verify actuation is within the tolerances provided.

Table 14.4.3.2, Item 17(10)(b). See A.17.19.2.2.2.

Table 14.4.3.2 Item 22(1) and 22(2). If, during the course of the periodic test of audible appliances, it is suspected that alarm sound levels could be lower than the required minimum, the system owner or the system owner's designated representative should be notified in writing. Such notification will allow the building owner or designated building representative to determine whether sound pressure level readings should be taken for the area(s) in question.

Table 14.4.3.2, Item 24. The extent of testing of a fire alarm or signaling system, including devices that were not tested, should be documented in accordance with the test plan in 14.2.10. *NFPA 72* does not require testing of an emergency control function, such as elevator recall, but does require testing of the emergency control function interface device, such as the relay powered by the fire alarm or signaling system. Where the emergency control function is not being tested concurrent with the fire alarm or signaling system testing, measurement of the emergency control function interface device output should be verified using the proper test devices. This might require reading or observing the condition of a relay, a voltage measurement, or the use of another type of test instrument. Once testing is complete, verification that any disabled or disconnected interface devices have been restored to normal is essential, and this verification should be documented in the testing results.

Testing of the emergency control functions themselves is outside of the scope of *NFPA 72*. A complete end-to-end test that demonstrates the performance of emergency control functions actuated by the fire alarm or signaling system might be required by some other governing laws, codes, or standards, or the authority having jurisdiction. In that situation, other applicable installation standards and design documents, not *NFPA 72*, would address testing and performance of the emergency control functions. NFPA 4 provides requirements for integrated (end-to-end) system testing.

It is important to note that the appropriate NFPA standard would provide the acceptance criteria for the overall emergency control function operation requirements, including performance and test methods, while *NFPA 72* covers the required performance and testing of the emergency function interface device.

For instance, if an end-to-end test for a building with an engineered smoke control system is required by some other governing laws, codes, standards, or the authority having jurisdiction, the test protocol would have unique criteria for the smoke control system design, and a special inspector would be responsible for the overall operation and performance of the smoke control system in accordance with the appropriate standard (NFPA 92 and NFPA *101*) during the testing, including measuring pressure differentials and ensuring proper fan and damper operation. Refer to the following extract from NFPA *101* on smoke control:

9.3.2 System Design. The engineer of record shall clearly identify the intent of the system, the design method used, the appropriateness of that method, and the required means of inspecting, testing, and maintaining the system. [***101*:**9.3.2]

9.3.3 Acceptance Testing. Acceptance testing shall be performed by a special inspector in accordance with Section 9.13. [***101*:**9.3.3]

Even though the fire alarm or signaling system initiating device might actuate the smoke control system, the actual testing of the dampers and fan operation would be as required by the smoke control design and not part of the fire alarm or signaling system.

Other emergency control operation requirements might be as follows: For fan shutdown and smoke damper operation, the fan and damper operations would be in accordance with NFPA 90A and NFPA 105 respectively, and those equipment operations would be verified by those responsible for HVAC systems in combination with the fire alarm system personnel. Guidance for elevator inspection and testing can be found in ASME A17.2, *Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks*. For elevator systems, the recall function, elevator power shutdown, and hat illumination would be done with the elevator mechanics present during the test. This operational test is often accomplished during routine periodic fire alarm testing. For fire door holder and fire shutter release, it would be expected that the emergency control function operation of the doors/shutters would be verified in accordance with NFPA 80 and NFPA *101* during the test. In some cases, the door manufacturer representative might need to be present to reset the equipment.

A.14.4.4 It is suggested that the annual test be conducted in segments so that all devices are tested annually.

The intent of 14.4.4 is to prevent a test from being made at intervals exceeding those allowed by Table 14.4.3.2. Annual tests should be made every 12 months; monthly tests should be made every 30 days, and so forth. For example, it is not acceptable to conduct an annual test in January of year one, and December of year two (23-month frequency), just because Table 14.4.3.2 requires a test once each year. See the definition of *frequency* in 3.3.130 for minimum and maximum time between testing events.

A.14.4.4.1 In addition to safety considerations, other reasons for delaying fire alarm testing include nationally or regionally declared disasters, such as pandemics, weather-related emergencies, or other governmentally recognized disruptions.

A.14.4.4.3 Detectors that cause unwanted alarms should be tested at their lower listed range (or at 0.5 percent obscuration if unmarked or unknown). Detectors that actuate at less than this level should be replaced.

A.14.4.4.7 It is not intended to require testing the pathways at every device or circuit junctions.

A.14.4.5.3 It is intended that smoke alarms and connected appliances be considered as a "fire protection system" for the purpose of applying the responsibility provisions in 14.2.3.

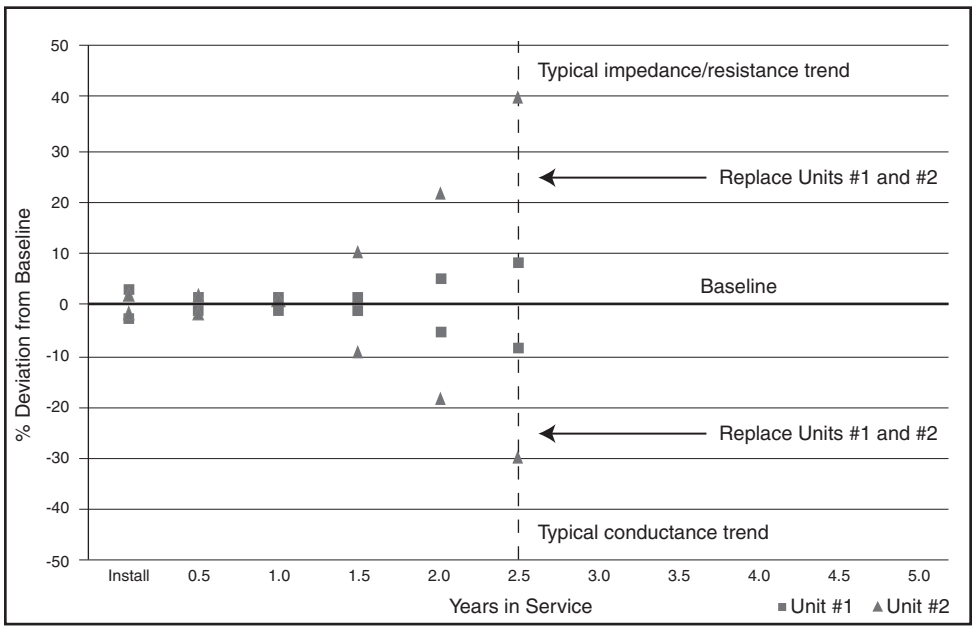


FIGURE A.14.4.3.2 Example Ohmic Trend Analysis for a 24-Volt Battery Made Up of Two 12-Volt Units.

Δ Table A.14.4.3.2 Temperature Correction Factors

Temperature		
°F	(°C)	K_T
65	18.3	0.92
66	18.9	0.927
67	19.4	0.935
68	20	0.942
69	20.6	0.948
70	21.1	0.955
71	21.7	0.96
72	22.2	0.97
73	22.8	0.975
74	23.4	0.98
75	23.9	0.985
76	24.5	0.99
77	25	1
78	25.6	1.002
79	26.1	1.007
80	26.7	1.011
81	27.2	1.017
82	27.8	1.023
83	28.3	1.03
84	28.9	1.035
85	29.4	1.04
86	30	1.045
87	30.6	1.05
88	31.1	1.055
89	31.6	1.06
90	32.2	1.065
95	35	1.09
100	37.8	1.112

A.14.4.5.4 Permanent occupants (whether renters or owners) of a dwelling unit should be provided with training and information sufficient to operate, inspect, test, and maintain their own alarms. The information should cover basic maintenance requirements, testing, and troubleshooting procedures, and contact information for further support. It is not intended that occupants be trained to a level similar to a factory technician or to qualify them to redesign, program, or extend their alarms without further training.

A.14.4.6.3 Permanent occupants (whether renters or owners) of a dwelling unit should be provided with training and information sufficient to operate, inspect, test, and maintain their own household alarm system. The information should cover basic maintenance requirements, testing and troubleshooting procedures, and contact information for further support. It is not intended that occupants be trained to a level similar to a factory technician or to qualify them to redesign, program, or extend their systems.

A.14.4.8.1.3 Permanent occupants (whether renters or owners) of a dwelling unit should be provided with training and information sufficient to operate, inspect, test, and maintain their own alarm systems. The training should cover basic maintenance requirements, testing and troubleshooting procedures, and contact information for further support. It is not intended that occupants be trained to a level similar to a factory technician or to qualify them to redesign, program, or extend their systems.

A.14.4.12 See Annex D, Speech Intelligibility.

A.14.6.1 For final determination of record retention, see 14.4.4.3 for sensitivity options.

A.14.6.1.1 Examples of acceptable methods used to define the required sequence of operations and to document the actual sequence of operations include a logic diagram *[see Figure*

A.14.6.1.1(a)] and an input/output matrix *[see Figure A.14.6.1.1(b)]*.

A.14.6.1.2 With many software-based fire systems, a copy of the site-specific software is required to restore system operation if a catastrophic system failure should occur. Without a back-up copy readily available on site, recovery of system operation by authorized service personnel can be substantially delayed.

The intent of this requirement is to provide authorized service personnel with an on-site copy of the site-specific software. The on-site copy should provide a means to recover the last installed and tested version of the site-specific operation of the system. This typically would be an electronic copy of the source files required to load an external programming device with the site-specific data. This requirement does not extend to the system executive software, nor does it require that the external programmer software if required be stored on site.

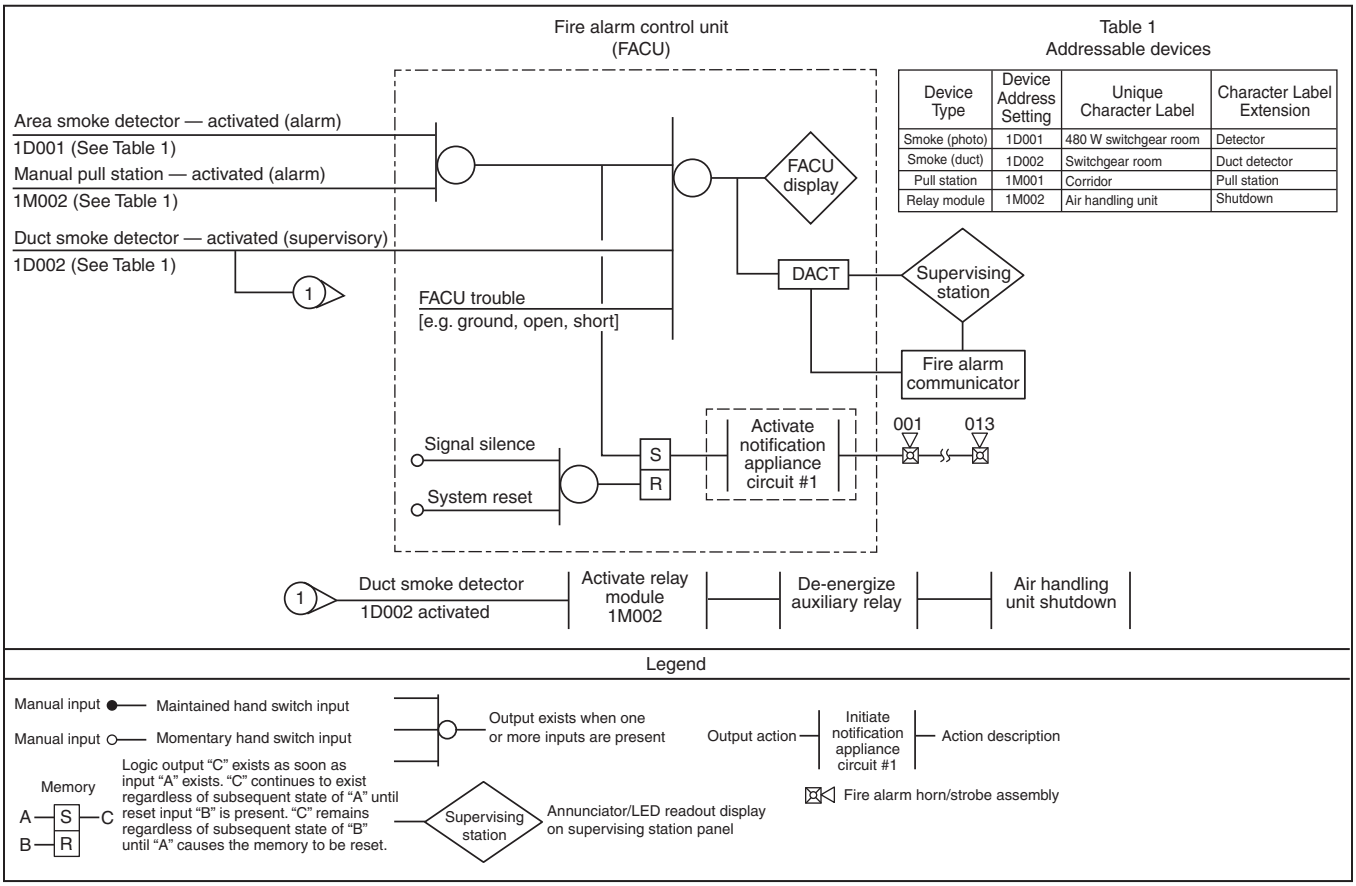
It is intended that this copy of the software be an electronic version stored on a nonrewritable media containing all of the file(s) or data necessary to restore the system and not just a printed version of the operation stored on electronic media. One example of a nonrewritable medium is a CD-R.

A.17.1.1 Examples of initiating devices include, but are not limited to, fire detection devices, carbon monoxide or other gas detection devices, devices that detect the operation of fire suppression and extinguishing systems, waterflow detectors, pressure switches, manual fire alarm boxes, and other supervisory-signal-initiating devices (including guard tour reporting) used to ensure timely warning for the purposes of life safety and the protection of a building, a space, a structure, an area, or an object.

A.17.1.2 The initiating devices chapter does not specify requirements for having or using any particular type of initiating device for a particular application. The requirements to have certain initiating devices are found in other NFPA codes and standards, or in other governing laws, codes, or standards. In a few instances other parts of this Code might require some minimal complement of initiating devices. For example, 10.4.5 requires a smoke detector at control unit locations but does not require complete smoke detection of any particular area. Similarly, 23.8.5.1.2 requires at least one manual fire alarm box on any fire alarm system that is connected to a supervising station and that also employs automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices. Thus, a system that might be required solely for the purpose of monitoring a sprinkler system and sending a signal off premises would still require a smoke detector at any control unit locations as well as a single manual pull station.

A.17.3 Annex B, Engineering Guide for Automatic Fire Detector Spacing, provides a detailed design guide for the implementation of the performance-based design of fire alarm systems.

A.17.4.2.3 Situations exist where supplemental enclosures are necessary to protect the physical integrity of an initiating



N FIGURE A.14.6.1.1(a) Typical Logic Diagram.

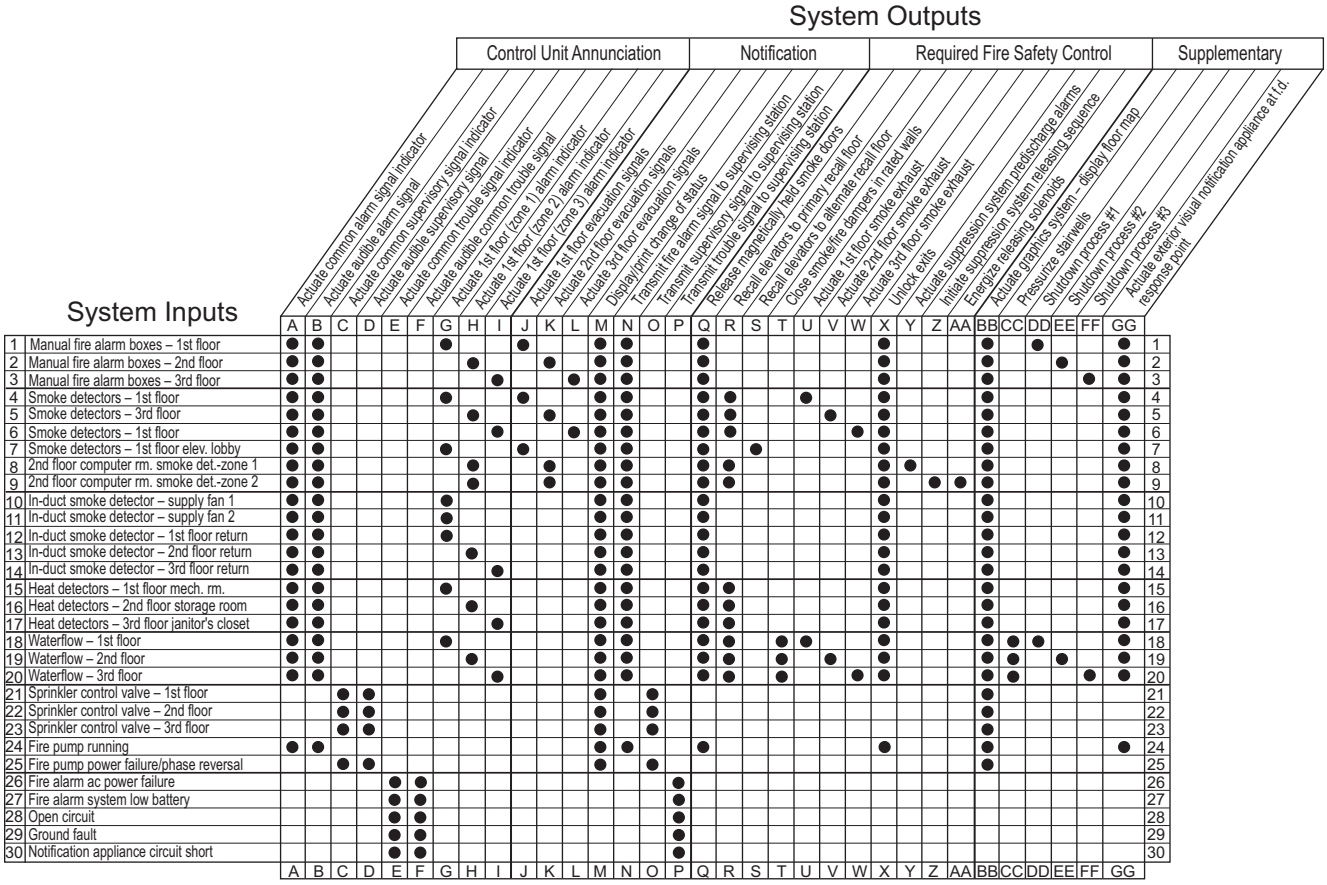


FIGURE A.14.6.1.1(b) Typical Input/Output Matrix.

device. Protective enclosures should not interfere with the performance characteristics of the device. If the enclosure degrades the performance, methods should be detailed in the manufacturer's published instructions of the protection device that clearly identify the degradation. In some cases, adjustments to initiating device sensitivity or range of operation are necessary to ensure the objective and performance of the system.

A.17.4.6 The monitoring of circuit integrity relies on the interruption of the wiring continuity when the connection to the initiating device is lost. Terminals and leads, as illustrated in Figure A.17.4.6(a) and Figure A.17.4.6(b), monitor the presence of the device on the initiating device circuit.

A.17.4.7 Detectors have built-in status indicators that aid in identifying individual detectors with an active alarm or supervisory condition. These indicators should be readily visible to responding personnel unless other means are provided to aid in the purpose. Other methods can include means at the control panel to independently identify the detector's status along with the location of the detector and its purpose or it can include the addition of a remote alarm indicator.

A.17.4.7.1 Embossed plastic tape, pencil, ink, or crayon should not be considered to be a permanently attached placard.

A.17.4.7.2 Remote alarm and supervisory indicators should be located in an area where they are readily visible to responding personnel. Many times, they are located in the general vicinity of the concealed detector. Separate indicators for alarm and supervisory signals are not required so long as each condition can be independently identified (i.e., multicolor LED, or flashing LED vs steady LED).

A.17.4.8 Some applications that do not require full area protection do require detection to initiate action when specific objects or spaces are threatened by smoke or fire, such as at elevator landings that have ceilings in excess of 15 ft (4.6 m) and for protection of fire alarm control units. In high-ceiling areas, to achieve the desired initiation, such as for elevator recall and protection of fire alarm control units (FACUs), detection should be placed on the wall above and within 60 in. (1.52 m) from the top of the elevator door(s) or FACU. Multiple objects or a space can be protected by a single detector unit.

A.17.5.2 This requirement is based on the generally accepted principle that the ceiling jet is approximately 10 percent of the distance from the base of the fire to the ceiling. To this figure, an additional safety factor of 50 percent has been added. Performance-based methods are available to predict the impact of partitions on the flow of smoke to detectors and can be used to substantiate a less restrictive design criterion.

A.17.5.3 The requirement of 17.5.3 recognizes that there are several different types of detector coverage.

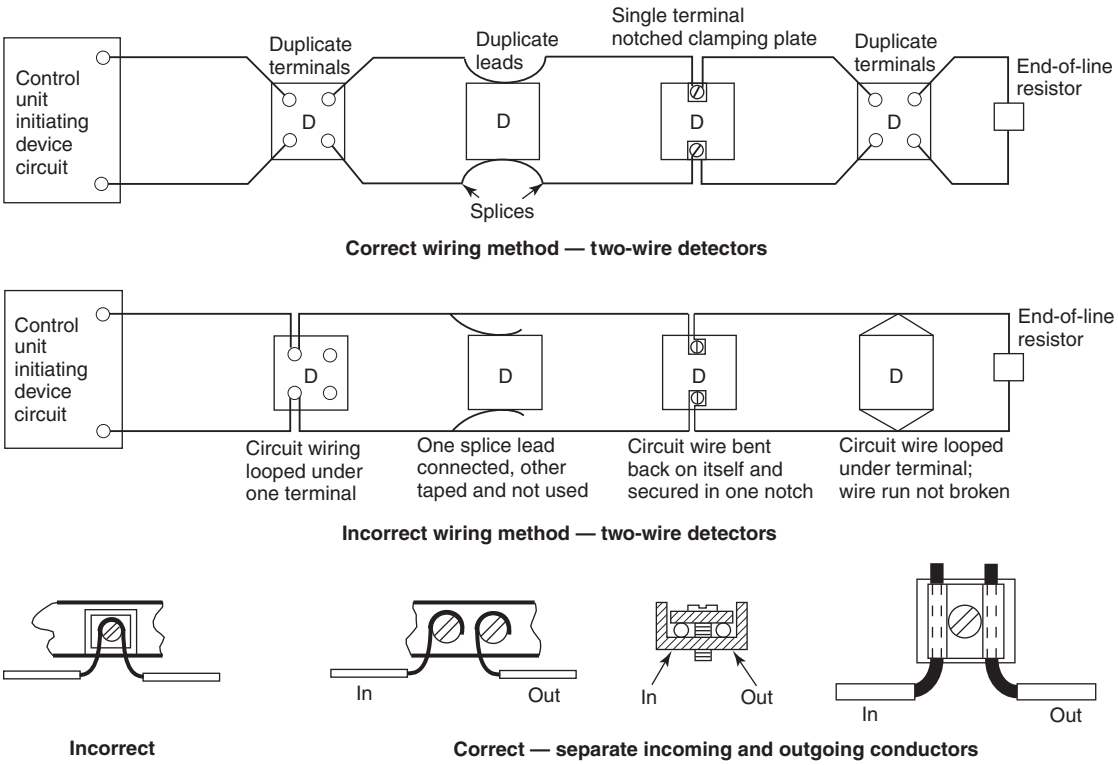
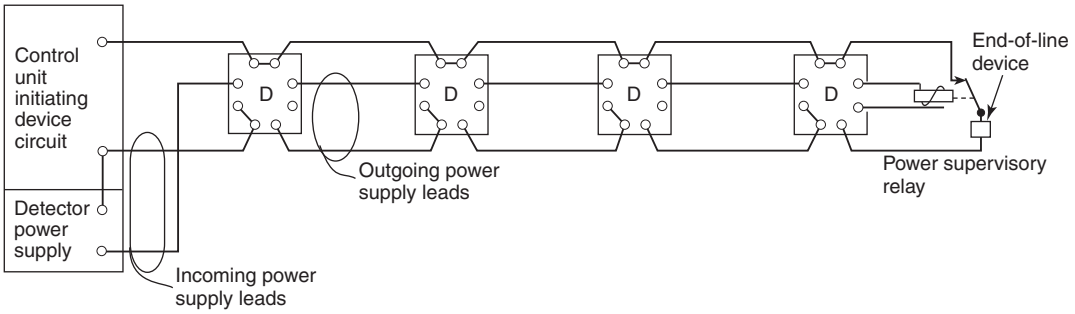
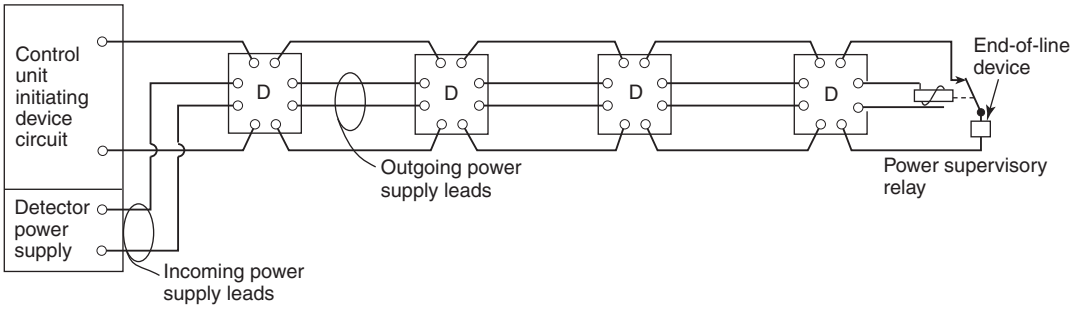


FIGURE A.17.4.6(a) Correct (and Incorrect) Wiring Methods.



Illustrates four-wire smoke detector employing a three-wire connecting arrangement. One side of power supply is connected to one side of initiating device circuit. Wire run broken at each connection to smoke detector to provide supervision.



Illustrates four-wire smoke detector employing a four-wire connecting arrangement. Incoming and outgoing leads or terminals for both initiating device and power supply connections. Wire run broken at each connection to provide supervision.

D = Detector

FIGURE A.17.4.6(b) Wiring Arrangements for Four-Wire Detectors.

A.17.5.3.1 The degree of detection coverage is generally a design issue. Usually the design of detection correlates with the smoke compartmentation of the building.

Vertical spaces such as stairways and elevator shafts are often difficult design challenges. For elevator shafts, Section 21.4 provides design criteria to achieve correlation with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.

Stairways can be equipped with smoke detection but the number and location are determined by the design of the stairway.

Generally at least one smoke detector should be located at the top of the stairway. Additional detectors should be located on additional floors to achieve design objectives.

A.17.5.3.1.6 Total coverage requires that a fire above the suspended ceiling be detected. Detector spacing and location for above ceiling spaces are addressed in 17.7.4.5.4. If that above-ceiling space is used as an air return plenum, this detection can be provided either by smoke detectors placed in accordance with 17.7.5.2 or where the air leaves the smoke compartment in accordance with 17.7.6.4.2.2.

A.17.5.3.2 If there are no detectors in the room or area of fire origin, the fire could exceed the design objectives before being detected by remotely located detectors. When coverage other than total coverage is required, partial coverage can be provided in common areas and work spaces such as corridors, lobbies, storage rooms, equipment rooms, and other tenantless spaces. The intent of selective coverage is to address a specific hazard only.

Where a specific area is to be protected, all points within that area should be within 0.7 × the adjusted detector spacing for spot-type detectors as required by 17.6.3 and 17.7.4.2. Note that an area does not necessarily mean an entire room. It is possible to provide properly spaced detectors to provide detection for only part of a room. Similarly, the Code permits protection of a specific hazard. In that case, detectors within a radius of 0.7 × the adjusted detector spacing from the hazard provide the required detection. An example of protection of specific risk is the smoke detector required by Section 21.3 to be within 21 ft (6.4 m) of an elevator, where elevator recall is required.

It should also be noted that fire detection by itself is not fire protection. Also, protection goals could be such that detection being provided for a specific area or hazard might require a form of total coverage for that particular area or hazard. That is, it might be necessary to provide detectors above suspended ceilings or in small closets and other ancillary spaces that are a part of, or an exposure to, the area or hazard being protected.

A.17.5.3.3 The requirement of 17.5.3.3 recognizes there will be instances where, for example, a facility owner would want to apply detection to meet certain performance goals and to address a particular hazard or need, but that detection is not required. Once installed, of course, acceptance testing, annual testing, and ongoing maintenance in accordance with this Code is expected. The intent of this section is to allow the use of a single detector, or multiple detectors provided for specific protection, with spacing to meet specific fire safety objectives as determined in accordance with 17.6.1.1 and 17.7.1.1.

A.17.6.1.1 The performance objective statement should describe the purpose of the detector placement and the intended response of the fire alarm control unit to the detector activation. This statement can include a narrative description of the required response time of the detectors, a narrative of the sequence of operations, a tabular list of programming requirements or some other method.

The performance objective of a fire detection system is usually expressed in terms of time and the size fire the system is intended to detect, measured in British thermal units per second (Btu/sec) or kilowatts (kW). Typically, the fire alarm system designer does not establish this criterion. It is usually obtained from the design documentation prepared by the designer responsible for the strategy of the structure as a whole. Where a prescriptive design is being provided, this requirement is fulfilled by stating in the design documentation that the design conforms to the prescriptive provisions of this Code.

A.17.6.1.3 In a performance-based design environment, the performance objectives for the fire alarm system are not established by the fire alarm system designer.

A fire protection strategy is developed to achieve those goals. General performance objectives are developed for the facility. These general objectives give rise to specific performance objectives for each fire protection system being employed in the facility. Consequently, the performance objectives and criteria for the fire alarm system are part of a much larger strategy that often relies on other fire protection features, working in concert with the fire alarm system to attain the overall fire protection goals for the facility.

In the performance-based design environment, the designer uses computational models to demonstrate that the spacing used for automatic fire detectors connected to the fire alarm system will achieve the objectives established by the system, by showing that the system meets the performance criteria established for the system in the design documentation. Consequently, it is imperative that the design objectives and performance criteria to which the system has been designed are clearly stated in the system documentation.

N **A.17.6.1.4** An example of an applicable standard for heat-sensing fire detectors is UL 521, *Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems*.

A.17.6.1.5 In order to predict the response of a heat detector using current fire modeling programs and currently published equations describing plume dynamics, two parameters must be known: operating temperature and response time index (RTI). The RTI is the quantification of the rate of heat transfer from the ceiling jet to the detector sensing element per unit of time, expressed as a function of ceiling jet temperature, ceiling jet velocity, and time. Spot-type heat detectors manufactured prior to July 1, 2008, were not required to be marked with an RTI.

A.17.6.2.3 Detectors should be selected to minimize this temperature difference in order to minimize response time. However, a heat detector with a temperature rating that is somewhat in excess of the highest normally expected ambient temperature is specified in order to avoid the possibility of premature operation of the heat detector to non-fire conditions. Heat-sensing fire detectors of a low temperature classification per Table 17.6.2.1 are intended only for installation in areas where the ambient temperature is controlled.

Δ **A.17.6.3.1.1** Maximum linear spacings on smooth ceilings for spot-type heat detectors are determined by full-scale fire tests. *[See Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(c).]* These tests assume that the detectors

are to be installed in a pattern of one or more squares, each side of which equals the maximum spacing as determined in the test, as illustrated in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(a). The detector to be tested is placed at a corner of the square so that it is positioned at the farthest possible distance from the fire while remaining within the square. Thus, the distance from the detector to the fire is always the test spacing multiplied by 0.7 and can be calculated as shown in Table A.17.6.3.1.1. Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(b) illustrates the smooth ceiling spacing layout for line-type heat detectors.

Once the correct maximum test distance has been determined, it is valid to interchange the positions of the fire and the detector. The detector is now in the middle of the square, and the listing specifies that the detector is adequate to detect a fire that occurs anywhere within that square — even out to the farthest corner.

In laying out detector installations, designers work in terms of rectangles since building areas are generally rectangular in shape. The pattern of heat spread from a fire source, however, is not rectangular in shape. On a smooth ceiling, heat spreads out in all directions in an ever-expanding circle. Thus, the coverage of a detector is not, in fact, a square, but rather a circle whose radius is the linear spacing multiplied by 0.7.

This is graphically illustrated in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(d). With the detector at the center, by rotating the square, an infinite number of squares can be laid out, the corners of which create the plot of a circle whose radius is 0.7 times the listed spacing. The detector will cover any of these squares and, consequently, any point within the confines of the circle.

So far, this explanation has considered squares and circles. In practical applications, very few areas turn out to be exactly square, and circular areas are extremely rare. Designers deal generally with rectangles of odd dimensions and corners of rooms or areas formed by wall intercepts, where spacing to one wall is less than one-half the listed spacing. To simplify the rest of this explanation, the use of a detector with a listed spacing of 30 ft × 30 ft (9.1 m × 9.1 m) should be considered. The principles derived are equally applicable to other types.

Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g) illustrates the derivation of this concept. In Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g), a detector is placed in the center of a circle with a radius of 21 ft (0.7 × 30 ft) [6.4 m (0.7 × 9.1 m)]. A series of rectangles with one dimension less than the permitted maximum of 30 ft (9.1 m) is constructed within the circle. The following conclusions can be drawn:

(1) As the smaller dimension decreases, the longer dimension can be increased beyond the linear maximum spacing of the detector with no loss in detection efficiency.
(2) A single detector covers any area that fits within the circle. For a rectangle, a single, properly located detector should be permitted if the diagonal of the rectangle does not exceed the diameter of the circle.
(3) Relative detector efficiency actually is increased, because the area coverage in square meters is always less than the 900 ft^2 (84 m^2) permitted if the full 30 ft × 30 ft (9.1 m × 9.1 m) square were to be used. The principle illustrated here allows equal linear spacing between the detector and the fire, with no recognition for the effect of reflection from walls or partitions which, in narrow rooms or corridors, is of additional benefit. For detectors that are not centered, the longer dimension should always be used in laying out the radius of coverage.

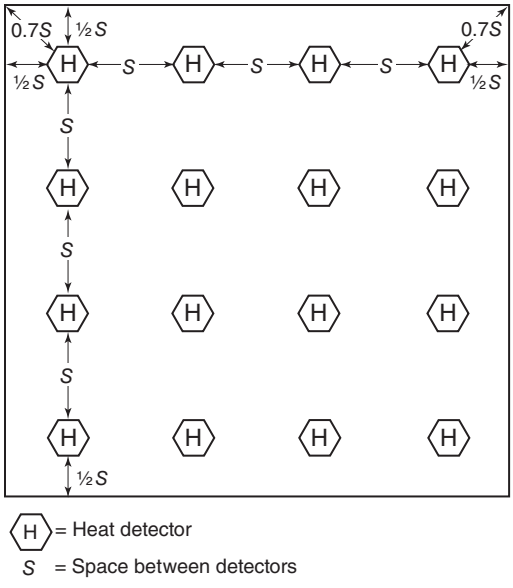
Areas so large that they exceed the rectangular dimensions given in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g) require additional detectors. Often, proper placement of detectors can be facilitated by breaking down the area into multiple rectangles of the dimensions that fit most appropriately *[see Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(e) and Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(f)]*. For example, refer to Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h). A corridor 10 ft (3.0 m) wide and up to 82 ft (25.0 m) long can be covered with two 30 ft (9.1 m) spot-type detectors. An area 40 ft (12.2 m) wide and up to 74 ft (22.6 m) long can be covered with four spot-type detectors. Irregular areas need more careful planning to make certain that no spot on the ceiling is more than 21 ft (6.4 m) away from a detector. These points can be determined by striking arcs from the remote corner. Where any part of the area lies beyond the circle with a radius of 0.7 times the listed spacings, additional detectors are required.

Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h) illustrates smoke or heat detector spacing layouts in irregular areas.

A.17.6.3.1.3.1 Figure A.17.6.3.1.3.1 illustrates the proper mounting placement for detectors.

Table A.17.6.3.1.1 Test Spacing for Spot-Type Heat Detectors

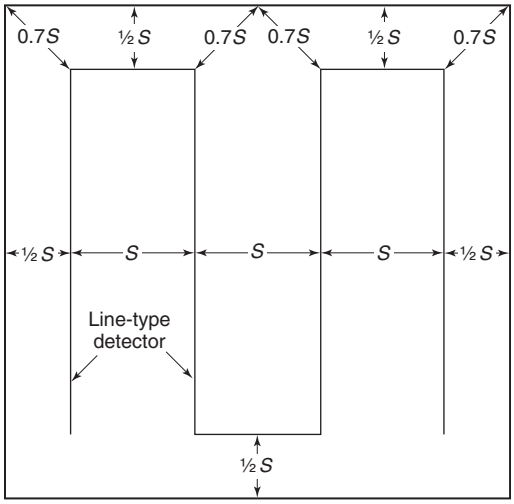
Test Spacing		Maximum Test Distance from Fire to Detector (0.7*D*)	
ft	m	ft	m
50 × 50	15.2 × 15.2	35.0	10.7
40 × 40	12.2 × 12.2	28.0	8.5
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	21.0	6.4
25 × 25	7.6 × 7.6	17.5	5.3
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	14.0	4.3
15 × 15	4.6 × 4.6	10.5	3.2



Δ **FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(a) Spot-Type Heat Detectors.**

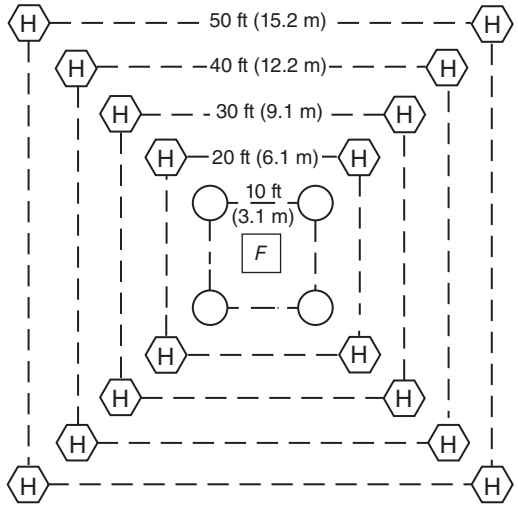
A.17.6.3.2 In addition to the special requirements for heat detectors that are installed on ceilings with exposed joists, reduced spacing also could be required due to other structural characteristics of the protected area, such as possible drafts or other conditions that could affect detector operation.

See Figure A.17.6.3.2 for an example of reduced spacing for solid joist construction.



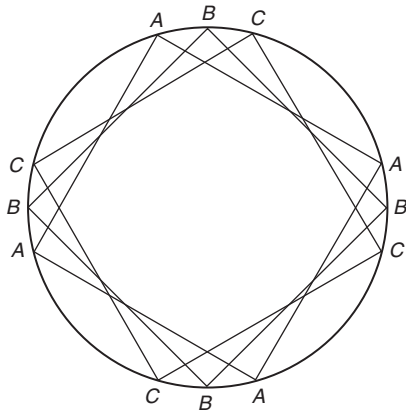
S = Space between detectors

FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(b) Line-Type Detectors — Spacing Layouts, Smooth Ceiling.

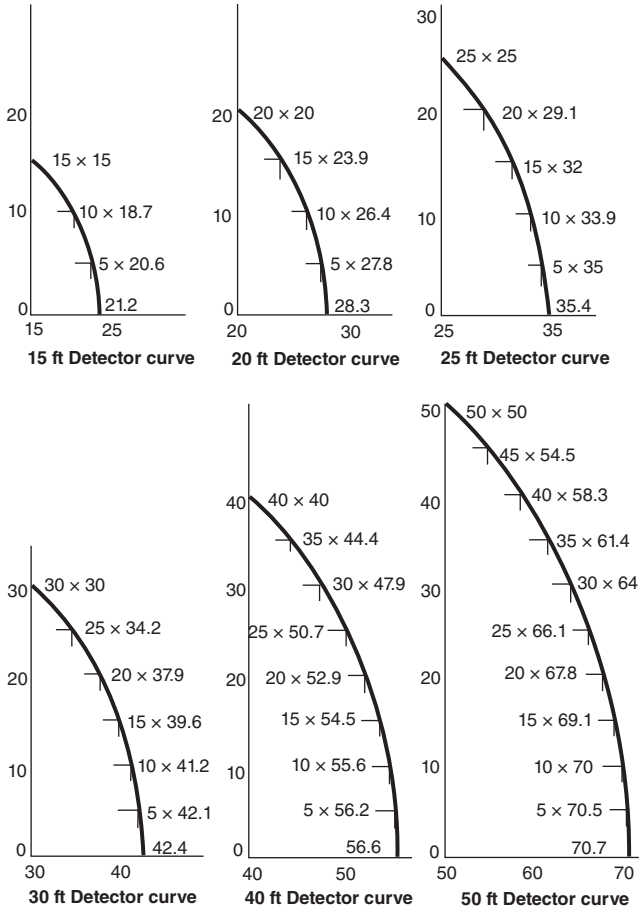


F = Test fire, denatured alcohol, 190 proof. Pan located approximately 36 in. (0.9 m) above floor.
◯ = Indicates normal sprinkler spacings on 10 ft (3.1 m) schedules.
H = Indicates normal heat detector spacing on various spacing schedules.

Δ FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(c) Fire Test Layout.

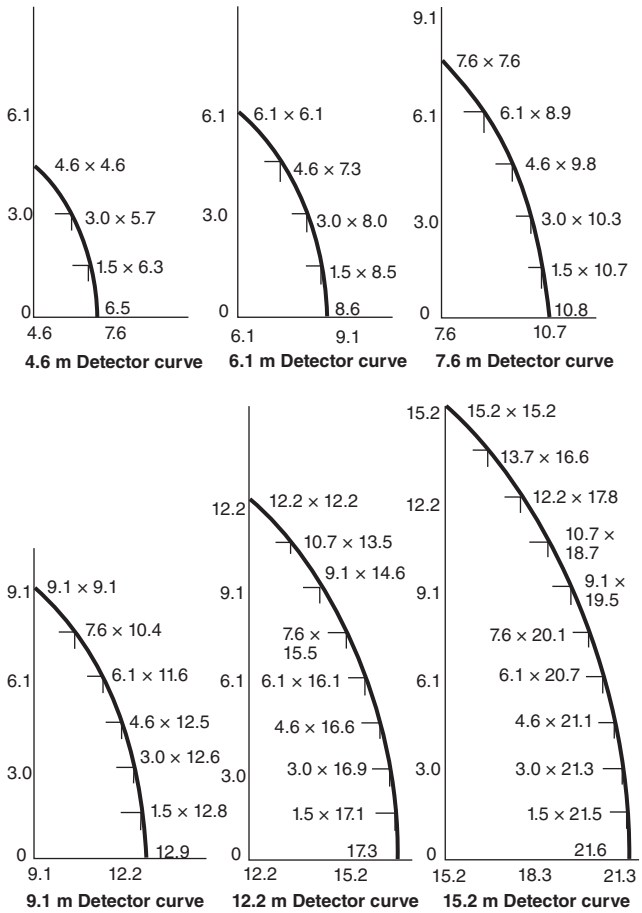


Δ FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(d) Detector Covering Any Square Laid Out in Confines of Circle in Which Radius Is 0.7 Times Listed Spacing.



Note: All measures are in feet.

Δ FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(e) Typical Rectangles for Detector Curves of 15 ft to 50 ft.



Note: All measures are in meters.

Δ FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(f) Typical Rectangles for Detector Curves of 4.6 m to 15.2 m.

A.17.6.3.3 The location and spacing of heat detectors should consider beam depth, ceiling height, beam spacing, and fire size.

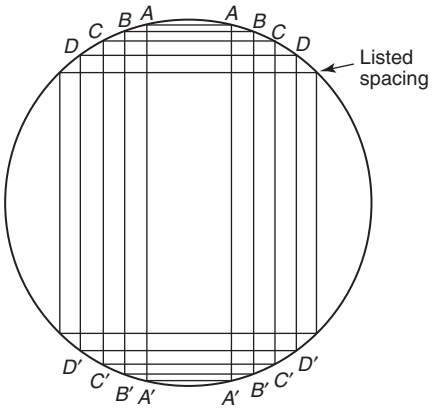
If the ratio of beam depth (*D*) to ceiling height (*H*), (*D/H*), is greater than 0.10 and the ratio of beam spacing (*W*) to ceiling height (*H*), (*W/H*), is greater than 0.40, heat detectors should be located in each beam pocket.

If either the ratio of beam depth to ceiling height (*D/H*) is less than 0.10 or the ratio of beam spacing to ceiling height (*W/H*) is less than 0.40, heat detectors should be installed on the bottom of the beams.

A.17.6.3.4 Figure A.17.6.3.4(a) illustrates smoke or heat detector spacing for peaked-type sloped ceilings.

Figure A.17.6.3.4(b) illustrates smoke or heat detector spacing for shed-type sloped ceilings.

A.17.6.3.5.1 Both 17.6.3.5.1 and Table 17.6.3.5.1 are constructed to provide detector performance on higher ceilings [to 30 ft (9.1 m) high] that is essentially equivalent to that which would exist with detectors on a 10 ft (3.0 m) ceiling. Table 17.6.3.5.1 is only applicable to spot-type heat detectors.



Rectangles

A = 10 ft × 41 ft = 410 ft^2 (3.1 m × 12.5 m = 38 m^2)
B = 15 ft × 39 ft = 585 ft^2 (4.6 m × 11.9 m = 54 m^2)
C = 20 ft × 37 ft = 740 ft^2 (6.1 m × 11.3 m = 69 m^2)
D = 25 ft × 34 ft = 850 ft^2 (7.6 m × 10.4 m = 79 m^2)
Listed spacing for heat detectors only = 30 ft × 30 ft = 900 ft^2 (9.1 m × 9.1 m = 84 m^2)

Note: Smoke detectors are not listed for spacing. Use manufacturer's coverage recommendations and this figure.

FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(g) Detector Spacing, Rectangular Areas.

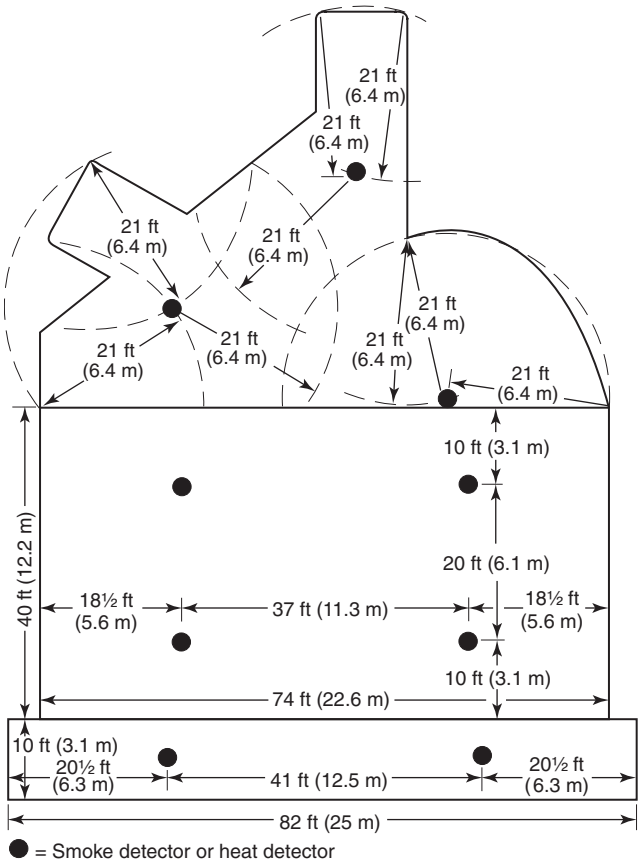
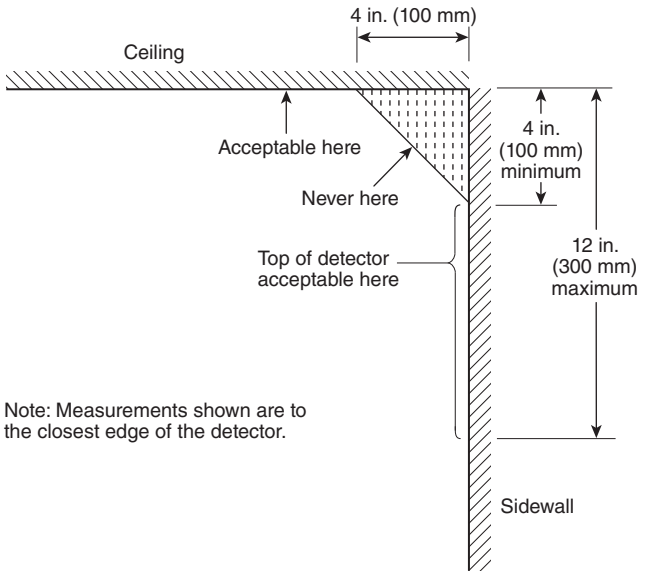


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(h) Smoke or Heat Detector Spacing Layout in Irregular Areas.



Δ FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.3.1 Example of Proper Mounting for Heat Detectors.

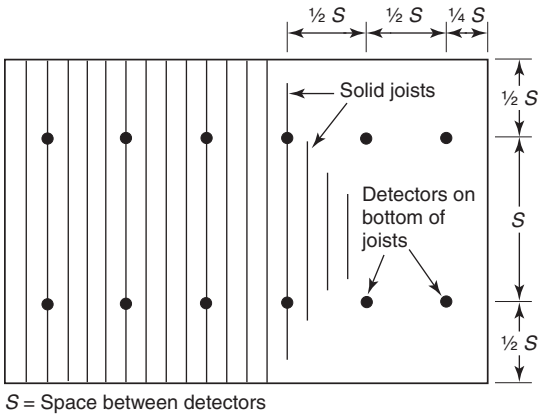
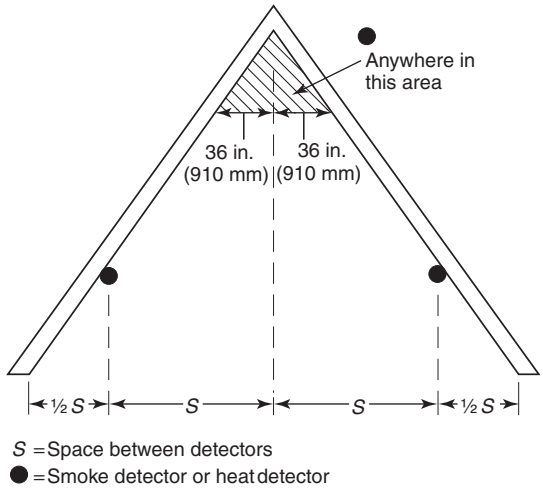
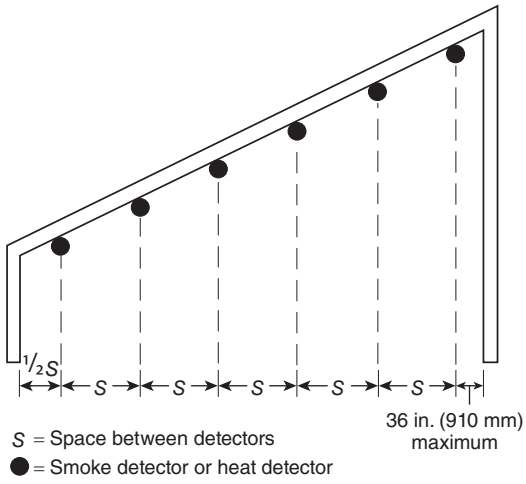


FIGURE A.17.6.3.2 Detector Spacing Layout, Solid Joist Construction.



Δ FIGURE A.17.6.3.4(a) Smoke or Heat Detector Spacing Layout, Sloped Ceilings (Peaked Type).



Δ FIGURE A.17.6.3.4(b) Smoke or Heat Detector Spacing Layout, Sloped Ceilings (Shed Type).

The Fire Detection Institute Fire Test Report *(see J.1.2.18.1)* is used as a basis for Table 17.6.3.5.1. The report does not include data on integration-type detectors. Pending development of such data, the manufacturer's published instructions will provide guidance.

Table 17.6.3.5.1 provides for spacing modification to take into account different ceiling heights for generalized fire conditions. Information regarding a design method that allows the designer to take into account ceiling height, fire size, and ambient temperatures is provided in Annex B.

A.17.6.3.5.3 The width of uniform temperature of the plume when it impinges on the ceiling is approximately 0.4 times the height above the fire, so reducing spacing below this level will not increase response time. For example, a detector with a listed spacing of 15 ft (4.6 m) or 225 ft^2 (21 m^2) need not be spaced closer than 12 ft (3.7 m) on a 30 ft (9.1 m) ceiling, even though Table 17.6.3.5.1 states that the spacing should be 0.34 × 15 ft (0.34 × 4.6 m), which equals 5.1 ft (1.6 m).

A.17.6.3.6 The linear space rating is the maximum allowable distance between heat detectors. The linear space rating is also a measure of the heat detector response time to a standard test fire where tested at the same distance. The higher the rating, the faster the response time. This Code recognizes only those heat detectors with ratings of 50 ft (15.2 m) or more.

A.17.7.1.1 The performance objective statement should describe the purpose of the detector placement and the intended response of the fire alarm control unit to the detector activation. This statement can include a narrative description of the required response time of the detectors, a narrative of the sequence of operations, a tabular list of programming requirements, or some other method.

The performance objective of a fire detection system is usually expressed in terms of time and the size fire the system is intended to detect, measured in British thermal units per second (Btu/sec) or kilowatts (kW). Typically, the fire alarm system designer does not establish this criterion. It is usually

obtained from the design documentation prepared by the designer responsible for the strategy of the structure as a whole. Where a prescriptive design is being provided, this requirement is fulfilled by stating in the design documentation that the design conforms to the prescriptive provisions of this Code.

A.17.7.1.2 The person designing an installation should keep in mind that, in order for a smoke detector to respond, the smoke has to travel from the point of origin to the detector. In evaluating any particular building or location, likely fire locations should be determined first. From each of these points of origin, paths of smoke travel should be determined. Wherever practicable, actual field tests should be conducted. The most desired locations for smoke detectors are the common points of intersection of smoke travel from fire locations throughout the building.

NOTE: This is one of the reasons that specific spacing is not assigned to smoke detectors by the testing laboratories.

A.17.7.1.3 In a performance-based design environment, the performance objectives for the fire alarm system are not established by the fire alarm system designer.

A fire protection strategy is developed to achieve those goals. General performance objectives are developed for the facility. These general objectives give rise to specific performance objectives for each fire protection system being employed in the facility. Consequently, the performance objectives and criteria for the fire alarm system are part of a much larger strategy that often relies on other fire protection features, working in concert with the fire alarm system to attain the overall fire protection goals for the facility.

In the performance-based design environment, the designer uses computational models to demonstrate that the spacing used for automatic fire detectors connected to the fire alarm system will achieve the objectives established by the system, by showing that the system meets the performance criteria established for the system in the design documentation. Consequently, it is imperative that the design objectives and performance criteria to which the system has been designed are clearly stated in the system documentation.

A.17.7.1.8 Product-listing standards include tests for temporary excursions beyond normal limits. In addition to temperature, humidity, and velocity variations, smoke detectors should operate reliably under such common environmental conditions as mechanical vibration, electrical interference, and other environmental influences. Tests for these conditions are also conducted by the testing laboratories in their listing program. In those cases in which environmental conditions approach the limits shown in Table A.17.7.1.8, the detector manufacturer's published instructions should be consulted for additional information and recommendations.

A.17.7.1.9 The velocities indicated in individual duct detector listings are based on applicable standards such as UL 268A, *Smoke Detectors for Duct Application*.

A.17.7.1.10 Smoke detectors can be affected by electrical and mechanical influences and by aerosols and particulate matter found in protected spaces. The location of detectors should be such that the influences of aerosols and particulate matter from sources such as those in Table A.17.7.1.10(a) are minimized. Similarly, the influences of electrical and mechanical factors shown in Table A.17.7.1.10(b) should be minimized. While it might not be possible to isolate environmental factors totally, an awareness of these factors during system layout and design favorably affects detector performance.

Δ **A.17.7.1.11** Stratification of air in a room can hinder air containing smoke particles or gaseous combustion products from reaching ceiling-mounted smoke detectors or fire–gas detectors.

Stratification occurs when air containing smoke particles or gaseous combustion products is heated by smoldering or burning material and, becoming less dense than the surrounding cooler air, rises until it reaches a level at which there is no longer a difference in temperature between it and the surrounding air.

Stratification also can occur when evaporative coolers are used because moisture introduced by these devices can condense on smoke, causing it to fall toward the floor. Therefore, it might be necessary to install smoke detectors on sidewalls or at locations below the ceiling to ensure rapid response.

In installations where detection of smoldering or small fires is desired and where the possibility of stratification exists, mounting a portion of the detectors below the ceiling should be considered. In high-ceiling areas, projected beam–type or air sampling–type detectors at different levels also should be considered. *(See Figure A.17.7.1.11.)* Video image smoke detectors can overcome the effects of stratification when they are capable of detecting any smoke within their field of view. That is, the smoke does not need to rise to the level of the detector for effective sensing.

A.17.7.2 Construction debris, dust (especially gypsum dust and the fines resulting from the sanding of drywall joint compounds), and aerosols can affect the sensitivity of smoke detectors and, in some instances, cause deleterious effects to the detector, thereby significantly reducing the expected life of the detector.

Table A.17.7.1.8 Environmental Conditions that Influence Smoke Detector Response

Detection Protection	Air Velocity >300 ft/min (>91.44 m/min)	Altitude >3000 ft (>914.4 m)	Humidity >93% RH	Temperature <32°F >100°F (<0°C >37.8°C)	Color of Smoke
Ion	X	X	X	X	O
Photo	O	O	X	X	X
Beam	O	O	X	X	O
Air sampling	O	O	X	X	O

X: Can affect detector response. O: Generally does not affect detector response.

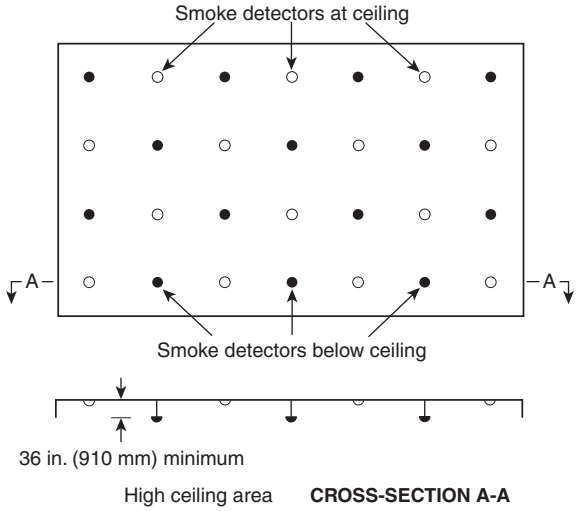
Table A.17.7.1.10(a) Common Sources of Aerosols and Particulate Matter Moisture

Moisture	Humid outside air Humidifiers Live steam Showers Slop sink Steam tables Water spray
Combustion products and fumes	Chemical fumes Cleaning fluids Cooking equipment Curing Cutting, welding, and brazing Dryers Exhaust hoods Fireplaces Machining Ovens Paint spray
Atmospheric contaminants	Corrosive atmospheres Dust or lint Excessive tobacco smoke Heat treating Linen and bedding handling Pneumatic transport Sawing, drilling, and grinding Textile and agricultural processing
Engine exhaust	Diesel trucks and locomotives Engines not vented to the outside Gasoline forklift trucks
Heating element with abnormal conditions	Dust accumulations Improper exhaust Incomplete combustion

Table A.17.7.1.10(b) Sources of Electrical and Mechanical Influences on Smoke Detectors

Electrical Noise and Transients	Airflow
Vibration or shock	Gusts
Radiation	Excessive velocity
Radio frequency	
Intense light	
Lightning	
Electrostatic discharge	
Power supply	

A.17.7.3 Throughout this Code, smoke detector sensitivity is referred to in terms of the percent obscuration required to alarm or produce a signal. Smoke detectors are tested using various smoke sources that have different characteristics (e.g., color, particle size, number of particles, particle shape). Unless otherwise specified, this Code, the manufacturers, and the listing agencies report and use the percent obscuration produced using a specific type of gray smoke. Actual detector response will vary when the characteristics of the smoke reaching the detector are different from the smoke used in testing and reporting detector sensitivity.



Δ **FIGURE A.17.7.1.11 Smoke Detector Layout Accounting for Stratification.**

A.17.7.3.1 The production sensitivity range should only be used as a benchmark for testing and should not be used as the sole basis for selection of devices. The percent per foot sensitivity marked on the smoke detector is derived from testing in a smoke chamber, usually referred to as the UL 268 Smoke Box. The measurements derived from this measurement apparatus are only valid in the context of the apparatus and cannot be used outside the context of the smoke box. The polychromatic light source employed in the smoke box results in measurements that are highly dependent upon smoke color and does not account for variations in light transmission as a function of wavelength that occurs as fuels and fire ventilation rates change or as smoke ages. Furthermore, the measurement apparatus uses a measurement of light obscuration by smoke to infer a measure of light reflectance when there is no correlation between these two optical characteristics.

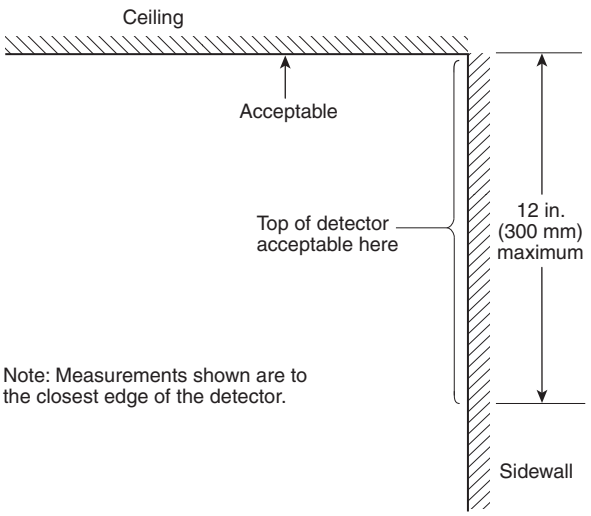
A.17.7.4.1 Except in the case of smoldering, low-energy fires, all smoke detectors, regardless of the type of technology, usually rely on the plume and ceiling jet produced by the fire to transport the smoke upward and across the ceiling to the detector, sampling port, or projected sensing light beam. Once sufficient concentration is attained at the detector, sampling port, or sensing light beam location and, in the case of spot-type detectors, sufficient flow velocity is attained to overcome the flow resistance into the sensing chamber, the detector responds with an alarm signal. Detectors are usually mounted at the ceiling plane to take advantage of the flow provided by the plume and the ceiling jet. A hot, energetic fire produces large plume velocities and temperatures and hot, fast ceiling jets. This minimizes the time it takes for the smoke to travel to the detector. A smoldering fire produces little, if any, plume and no appreciable ceiling jet. Far more time elapses between ignition and detection under this circumstance.

A.17.7.4.2 In high-ceiling areas, such as atriums, where spot-type smoke detectors are not accessible for periodic maintenance and testing, projected-beam-type or air-sampling-type detectors should be considered where access can be provided.

A.17.7.4.2.1 Refer to Figure A.17.7.4.2.1 for an example of proper mounting for detectors. Sidewall detectors mounted closer to the ceiling will respond faster.

A.17.7.4.2.2 Figure A.17.7.4.2.2 illustrates underfloor mounting installations.

A.17.7.4.2.3.1 The 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing is a guide for prescriptive designs. The use of such a spacing is based upon customary practice in the fire alarm community.



Δ FIGURE A.17.7.4.2.1 Example of Proper Mounting of Smoke Detectors.

Where there are explicit performance objectives for the response of the smoke detection system, the performance-based design methods outlined in Annex B should be used.

For the purposes of this section, "nominal 30 ft (9.1 m)" should be determined to be 30 ft (9.1 m) ±5 percent [±18 in. (460 mm)].

This Code does not allow prescriptive design for smoke detectors installed above 40 ft (12.2 m), but Table 17.6.3.5.1 should not be used to adjust the spacing of smoke detectors on high ceilings. NFPA's Fire Protection Research Foundation sponsored a research project, summarized in the report, *Smoke Detector Spacing for High Ceiling Spaces — Phase II*, to examine how smoke detector spacing might need to change based on ceiling height. Researchers used computational fluid dynamic software (FDS) to simulate smoke development at various ceiling heights, with and without a temperature gradient, to promote smoke stratification. Those considering a performance-based design should review the report.

A.17.7.4.2.3.1(2) This is useful in calculating locations in corridors or irregular areas *[see 17.6.3.1.1 and Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h)]*. For irregularly shaped areas, the spacing between detectors can be greater than the selected spacing if the maximum spacing from a detector to the farthest point of a sidewall or corner within its zone of protection is not greater than 0.7 times the selected spacing (0.7*S*).

A.17.7.4.2.4 Detectors are placed at reduced spacings at right angles to joists or beams in an attempt to ensure that detection time is equivalent to that which would be experienced on a flat ceiling. It takes longer for the combustion products (smoke or heat) to travel at right angles to beams or joists because of the phenomenon wherein a plume from a relatively hot fire with

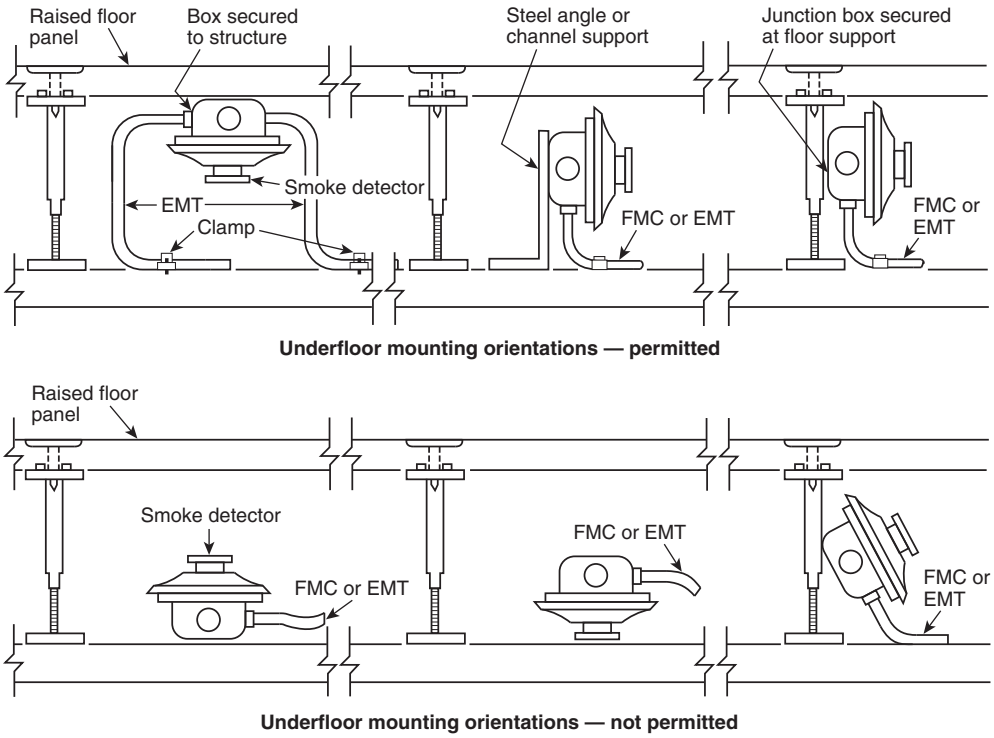


FIGURE A.17.7.4.2.2 Mounting Installations Permitted *(top)* and Not Permitted *(bottom)*.

significant thermal lift tends to fill the pocket between each beam or joist before moving to the next beam or joist.

Though it is true that this phenomenon might not be significant in a small smoldering fire where there is only enough thermal lift to cause stratification at the bottom of the joists, reduced spacing is still recommended to ensure that detection time is equivalent to that which would exist on a flat ceiling, even in the case of a hotter type of fire.

A.17.7.4.2.4.3(3) The geometry and reservoir effect is a significant factor that contributes to the development of velocity, temperature, and smoke obscuration conditions at smoke detectors located on the ceiling in beam pocket areas or at the bottom of beams as smoke collected in the reservoir volume spills into adjacent pockets. The waffle- or pan-type ceiling created by beams or solid joists, although retarding the initial flow of smoke, results in increased optical density, temperature rise, and gas velocities comparable to unconfined smooth ceilings.

For waffle- or pan-type ceilings with beams or solid joists, an alternative smoke detector grid arrangement (such as a shifted grid), with detectors located to take advantage of the channeling effect due to the reservoirs created by the beam pockets, will improve detector response and might allow greater spacing. See Figure A.17.7.4.2.4.3(3)(a) and Figure A.17.7.4.2.4.3(3)(b) for an example of shifted grids. The alternative smoke detector grid arrangement and spacing should be justified by an engineering analysis comparing the alternative smoke detector grid arrangement with the performance of smoke detectors on a level ceiling of equal height using 30 ft (9.1 m) smoke detector spacing.

Figure A.17.7.4.2.4.3(3)(a) illustrates the reservoir and channeling effect that results from the deep beam configuration. The strongest gas flows occur in a direction perpendicular to the beam opposite the fire location. The weaker flow occurs in a directional 45 degrees off the beam grid; however, the reservoir effect accounts for higher concentrations of smoke eventually flowing from the strong area reservoirs into the weak area reservoirs.

Figure A.17.7.4.2.4.3(3)(b) is a generic example illustrating how a smoke detection grid using 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing can be shifted to take advantage of the channeling and reservoir effect to optimize detection response. In the circle, the fire is split into four beam bays that must fill with smoke before appreciable flows occur into the next adjoining eight beam bays. This represents the worst case scenario for smoke to reach the detectors on the circle. The three other fire locations shown require the fire to initially fill only one or two bays before spilling to adjacent bays.

A.17.7.4.2.4.3(4) Corridor geometry is a significant factor that contributes to the development of velocity, temperature, and smoke obscuration conditions at smoke detectors located along a corridor. This is based on the fact that the ceiling jet is confined or constrained by the nearby walls without opportunity for entrainment of air. For corridors of approximately 15 ft (4.6 m) in width and for fires of approximately 100 kW or greater, modeling has demonstrated that the performance of smoke detectors in corridors with beams has been shown to be comparable to spot smoke detector spacing on an unconfined smooth ceiling surface.

A.17.7.4.2.4.4 A smoke detector should be placed within each beam channel. Computer modeling has shown that parallel beams (upslope) are very effective at channeling smoke, and smoke spillover is rarely detectable in adjacent parallel pockets.

A.17.7.4.2.4.5 Irregular area spacing guidance for level beam ceilings can be used. Computer modeling has shown that spot-type detectors should be located on the bottom of perpendicular beams.

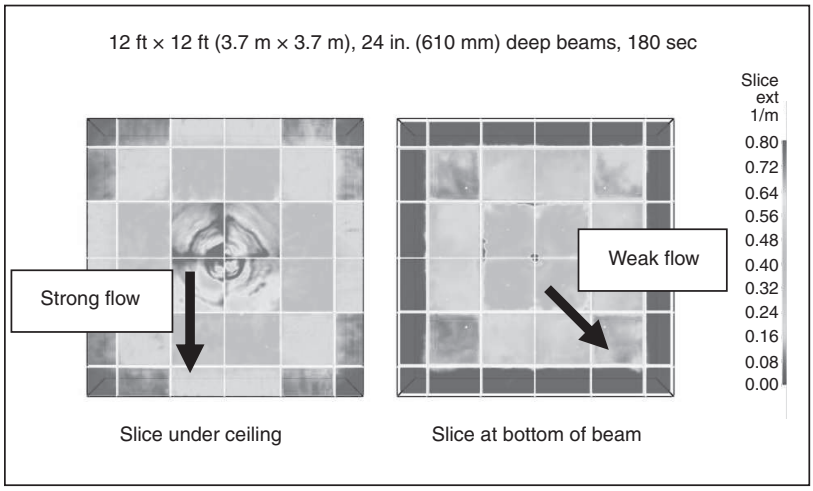
A.17.7.4.2.4.6 Computer modeling has shown that spot-type detectors should be located on the bottom of perpendicular beams and should be aligned with the center of pocket, as shown, in Figure A.17.7.4.2.4.6.

A.17.7.4.3 Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(a).

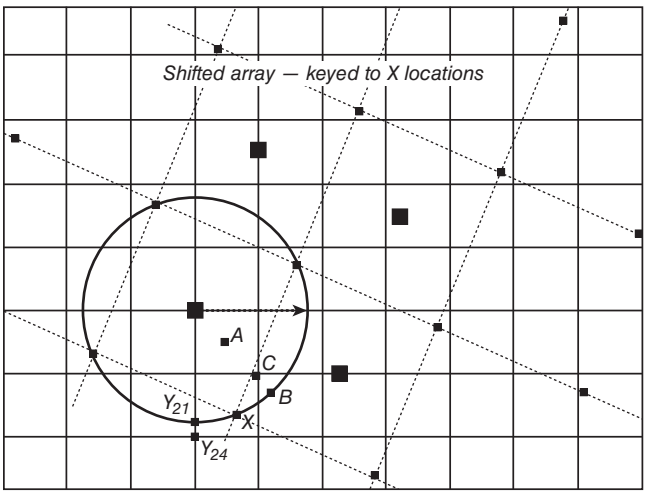
A.17.7.4.4 Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(b).

A.17.7.4.6.1.1 For an air-sampling-type smoke detector, the sensitivity at the detector is not equal to sensitivity at the sampling port. Sampling port sensitivity is dependent on two main factors:

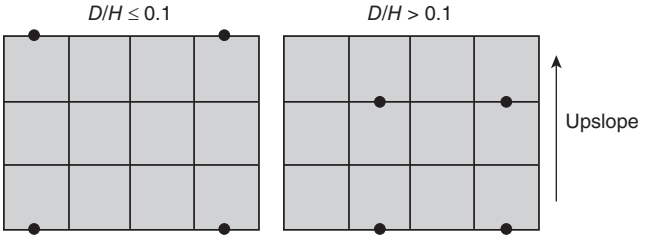
(1) The number of sampling ports in the piping network
(2) The set alarm sensitivity of the detector



Δ FIGURE A.17.7.4.2.4.3(3)(a) Reservoir and Channeling Effect of Deep Beams.



Δ FIGURE A.17.7.4.2.4.3(3)(b) Shifted Smoke Detection Grid to Optimize Detection for Deep Beam Effects.



Δ FIGURE A.17.7.4.2.4.6 Spot-Type Detector Spacing for Sloping Ceilings with Beam Pockets.

The sensitivity at each sampling port of an air-sampling-type smoke detector should not exceed its listed port sensitivity.

A.17.7.4.6.2.6 Identification can include means such as marking or use of a configuration management program that identifies locations.

A.17.7.4.6.2.7 A benchmark test point should be provided at the furthest end of each pipe run, opposite the end of the air-sampling-type smoke detector apparatus. This remote test point is intended to benchmark system performance at the time of initial commissioning and during routine test and inspection. The test point should be labeled to document benchmark system performance at the time of commissioning, using manufacturer-supplied labels intended for this purpose. Benchmark labels should be placed just above test points and be positioned so that they are visible without obstruction.

A.17.7.4.6.2.9 Where installed in areas having environmental conditions such as high temperature or humidity, radiation or corrosive atmospheres, all pipe network materials should be suitable for the specific environmental conditions anticipated.

A.17.7.4.6.3.1 Where the pipe network connects to the detector, refer to the manufacturer's published instructions for implementation of this connection.

A.17.7.4.6.3.3 Care should be exercised when attaching clamps to ensure that the pipe is not damaged and to allow for expansion and contraction of the pipe.

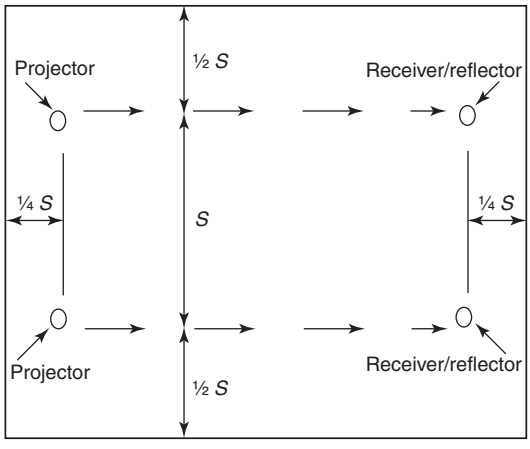
A.17.7.4.6.4.2 Electrical equipment cabinets are commonly ventilated vertically (bottom to top passive cooling) or horizontally (front to back passive cooling) or are fully enclosed with active internal cooling. For passively cooled applications, the sampling pipe can be located external to the cabinet with sampling ports directly in the main airflow of the exhaust vents or in the cabinet with the sampling port(s) located within 1 in. to 2 in. (25 mm to 50 mm) of the cabinet top. For fully enclosed cabinets, the sampling port is located in the cabinet within 1 in. to 2 in. (25 mm to 50 mm) from the cabinet top. In either case, the manufacturer's published installation instructions should be followed.

A.17.7.4.7 On smooth ceilings, a spacing of not more than 60 ft (18.3 m) between projected beams and not more than one-half that spacing between a projected beam and a *sidewall* (i.e., wall parallel to the beam travel) should be used as a guide. Other spacing should be determined based on ceiling height, airflow characteristics, and response requirements.

In some cases, the light beam projector is mounted on one end wall, with the light beam receiver or reflector mounted on the opposite wall. However, it is also permitted to suspend the projector and receiver/reflector from the ceiling at a distance from the end walls not exceeding one-quarter the selected spacing (*S*). *(See Figure A.17.7.4.7.)*

A.17.7.4.7.2 Projected beam smoke detection is often used in large open spaces with high ceilings where the use of spot-type detectors is impractical due to the problems of smoke stratification. In these spaces, there is questionable basis for the use of the prescriptive spacings presented in Section 17.7. However, beams can be installed such that, regardless of the fire origin, the plume will intersect at least one beam. To employ this strategy, the plume divergence is calculated as a function of the altitude at which the projected beam detectors are installed. The region of relatively uniform temperature and smoke density in a buoyant plume diverges at an angle of approximately 22 degrees, as shown in Figure A.17.7.4.7.2.

Another method involves assessing the smoke obstruction through the plume to determine the reduction in light from the receiver to the transmitter of the beam-type smoke detector to determine whether the detector might respond. ["Projected



S = Selected detector spacing

Δ FIGURE A.17.7.4.7 Maximum Distance at Which Ceiling-Suspended Light Projector and Receiver/Reflector Can Be Positioned from End Wall Is One-Quarter Selected Spacing *(S)*.

Beam Smoke Detectors — More Than Just a Substitute for Spot Detectors"; *Fire Protection Engineering*, Issue No. 23, Summer 2004, SFPE.]

A.17.7.4.7.8 Where the light path of a projected-beam-type detector is abruptly interrupted or obscured, the unit should not initiate an alarm. It should give a trouble signal after verification of blockage.

A.17.7.5.1 Detectors should not be located in a direct airflow or closer than 36 in. (910 mm) from an air supply diffuser or return air opening. Supply or return sources larger than those commonly found in residential and small commercial establishments can require greater clearance to smoke detectors. Similarly, smoke detectors should be located farther away from high velocity air supplies. See B.4.9.

A.17.7.5.4 Smoke might not be drawn into the duct or plenums when the ventilating system is shut down. Furthermore, when the ventilating system is operating, the detector(s) can be less responsive to a fire condition in the room of fire origin due to dilution by clean air.

Δ **A.17.7.6** Refer to NFPA *101* for the definition of smoke compartment; NFPA 90A for the definition of duct systems; and NFPA 92 for the definition of smoke zone.

A.17.7.6.1 Smoke detectors located in an open area(s) should be used rather than duct-type detectors because of the dilution effect in air ducts. Active smoke management systems installed in accordance with NFPA 92 should be controlled by total coverage open area detection.

A.17.7.6.2 Dilution of smoke-laden air by clean air from other parts of the building or dilution by outside air intakes can allow high densities of smoke in a single room with no appreciable smoke in the air duct at the detector location. Smoke might not be drawn from open areas if air-conditioning systems or ventilating systems are shut down.

A.17.7.6.3 Smoke detectors can be applied in order to initiate control of smoke spread for the following purposes:

(1) Prevention of the recirculation of dangerous quantities of smoke within a building
(2) Selective operation of equipment to exhaust smoke from a building
(3) Selective operation of equipment to pressurize smoke compartments
(4) Operation of doors and dampers to close the openings in smoke compartments

A.17.7.6.4.2 Smoke detectors are designed to sense the presence of particles of combustion, but depending on the sensing technology and other design factors, different detectors respond to different types of particles.

It is generally accepted that particle size distribution varies from sub-micron diameter particles predominant in the proximity of the flame of a flaming fire to particles one or more orders of magnitude larger, which are characteristic of smoke from a smoldering fire. The actual particle size distribution depends on a host of other variables, including the fuel and its physical make-up; the availability of oxygen, including air supply and fire–gas discharge; and other ambient conditions, especially humidity. Moreover, the particle size distribution is not constant, but as the fire gases cool, the sub-micron particles agglomerate and the very large ones precipitate. In other words, as smoke travels away from the fire source, the particle size distribution shows a relative decrease in smaller particles. Water vapor, which is abundantly present in most fires, when cooled sufficiently will condense to form fog particles — an effect frequently seen above tall chimneys. Because water condensation is basically clear in color, when it is mixed with other smoke particles, it can be expected to lighten the color of the mixture.

In almost every fire scenario in an air-handling system, the point of detection will be some distance from the fire source; therefore, the smoke will be cooler and more visible because of the growth of sub-micron particles into larger particles due to agglomeration and recombination. For these reasons, photoelectric detection technology has advantages over ionization detection technology in air duct system applications.

A.17.7.6.4.2.2 Detectors listed for the air velocity present can be permitted to be installed at the opening where the return air enters the common return air system. The detectors should be installed up to 12 in. (300 mm) in front of or behind the opening and spaced according to the following opening dimensions *[see Figure A.17.7.6.4.2.2(a) through Figure A.17.7.6.4.2.2(c)]*:

(1) *Width.*
   (a) Up to 36 in. (910 mm) — One detector centered in opening
   (b) Up to 72 in. (1.83 m) — Two detectors located at the one-quarter points of the opening
   (c) Over 72 in. (1.83 m) — One additional detector for each full 24 in. (610 mm) of opening
(2) *Depth.* The number and spacing of the detector(s) in the depth (vertical) of the opening should be the same as those given for the width (horizontal) in A.17.7.6.4.2.2(1).
(3) *Orientation.* Detectors should be oriented in the most favorable position for smoke entry with respect to the direction of airflow. The path of a projected-beam-type detector across the return air openings should be considered equivalent in coverage to a row of individual detectors.

Additional duct smoke detection is not required where the air leaves each smoke compartment or in the duct system before the air enters the return air system in the return air of a smoke compartment provided with total (complete) smoke detection compliant with 17.5.3 because the addition of duct

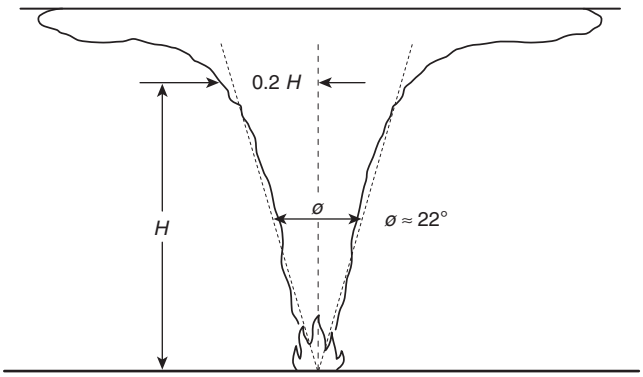
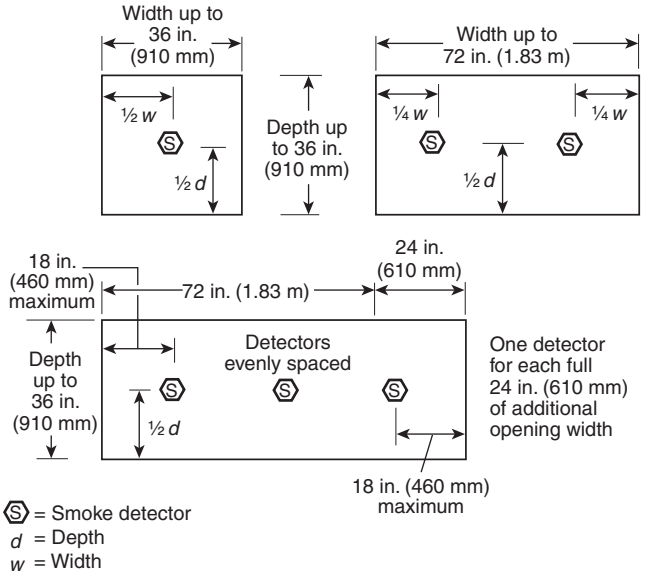
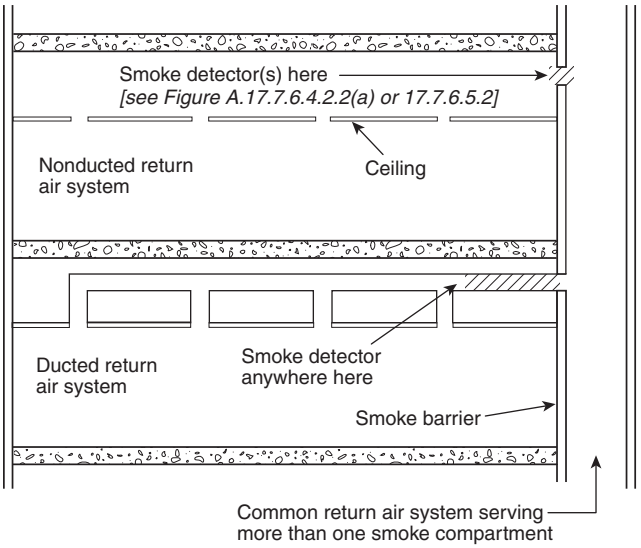


FIGURE A.17.7.4.7.2 The Plume Divergence of an Unconstrained Fire.



Δ FIGURE A.17.7.6.4.2.2(a) Location of Smoke Detector(s) in Return Air System Openings for Selective Operation of Equipment.



Δ FIGURE A.17.7.6.4.2.2(b) Location of Smoke Detector(s) in Return Air Systems for Selective Operation of Equipment.

smoke detection would essentially not add any substantial detection benefit.

Δ A.17.7.6.5.2 Where duct detectors are used to initiate the operation of smoke dampers, they should be located so that the detector is between the last inlet or outlet upstream of the damper and the first inlet or outlet downstream of the damper.

In order to obtain a representative sample, stratification and dead air space should be avoided. Such conditions could be caused by return duct openings, sharp turns, or connections, as well as by long, uninterrupted straight runs.

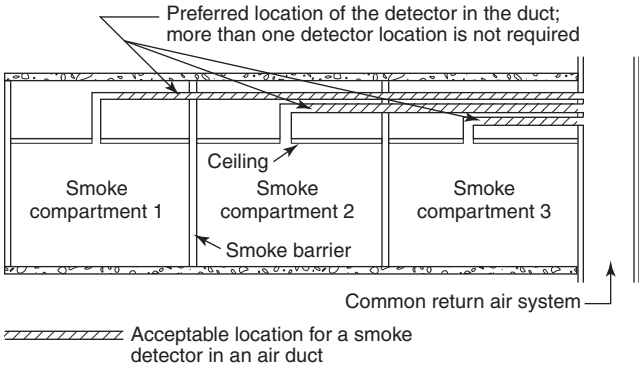


FIGURE A.17.7.6.4.2.2(c) Detector Location in Duct that Passes Through Smoke Compartments Not Served by Duct.

In return air systems, the requirements of 17.7.6.4.2.2 take precedence over these considerations. *[See Figure A.17.7.6.5.2(a) and Figure A.17.7.6.5.2(b).]*

Usually, it is necessary to manage smoke flow in buildings. Duct smoke detectors are used to shut down HVAC systems or initiate smoke management.

Filters have a serious effect on the performance of duct smoke detectors. The location of the detector relative to the filter and the source of smoke must be considered during the design process. Where smoke detectors are installed downstream from filters, they should be deemed to serve the purpose of providing an alarm indication of the occurrence of a fire in the HVAC unit (e.g., filters, belts, heat exchangers). These detectors usually serve the purpose of protecting building occupants from the smoke produced by an HVAC unit fire, or smoke ingress via the fresh air intake for the unit. They cannot be expected to serve the purpose of providing detection for the return side of the system.

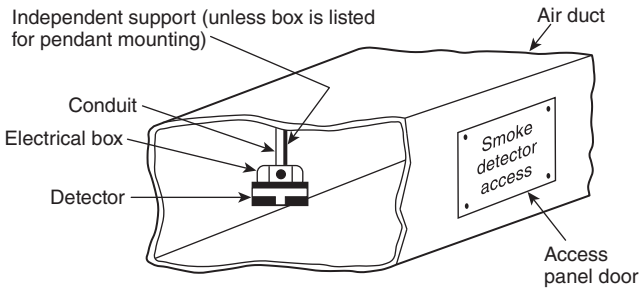
Where return side detection is required, that requirement should be fulfilled with separate detectors from those monitoring the supply side. In order to be effective, return air duct smoke detectors should be located such that there are no filters between them and the source of the smoke.

Sampling tubes should be oriented to overcome thermal stratification due to buoyancy of the smoke in the upper half of the duct. This condition occurs where duct velocities are low, buoyancy exceeds flow inertia, or the detector is installed close to the fire compartment. A vertical orientation of sampling tubes overcomes the effects of differential buoyancy.

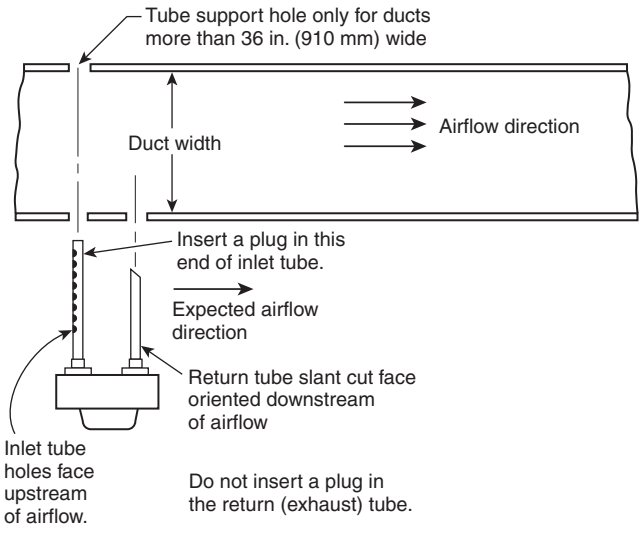
Where a detector is installed on a duct serving a single fire compartment, where the buoyancy exceeds the flow inertia of the air in the duct and the sampling tube cannot be oriented vertically, then the effects of thermal stratification can be minimized by locating the detector sampling tube in the upper half of the duct.

The thermal stratification is not a concern where the detector is installed far from the fire compartment or where the smoke is at or close to the average temperature in the duct.

A.17.7.6.6.4.1(C) If the depth of wall section above the door is 60 in. (1.52 m) or greater, additional detectors might be required as indicated by an engineering evaluation.



Δ **FIGURE A.17.7.6.5.2(a) Pendant-Mounted Air Duct Installation.**



Δ **FIGURE A.17.7.6.5.2(b) Inlet Tube Orientation.**

A.17.7.7.1.2 Air through the conduit system can flow around the outside edges of the detector and interfere with smoke reaching the sensing chamber. Additionally, the conduit system might provide a means for entry of dust, dirt, and insects into the back of the detector.

A.17.7.7.2 For the most effective detection of fire in high-rack storage areas, detectors should be located on the ceiling above each aisle and at intermediate levels in the racks. This is necessary to detect smoke that is trapped in the racks at an early stage of fire development when insufficient thermal energy is released to carry the smoke to the ceiling. Earliest detection of smoke is achieved by locating the intermediate level detectors adjacent to alternate pallet sections as shown in Figure A.17.7.7.2(a) and Figure A.17.7.7.2(b). The detector manufacturer's published instructions and engineering judgment should be followed for specific installations.

A projected-beam-type detector can be permitted to be used in lieu of a single row of individual spot-type smoke detectors.

Sampling ports of an air-sampling-type detector can be permitted to be located above each aisle to provide coverage that is equivalent to the location of spot-type detectors. The manufacturer's published instructions and engineering judgment should be followed for the specific installation.

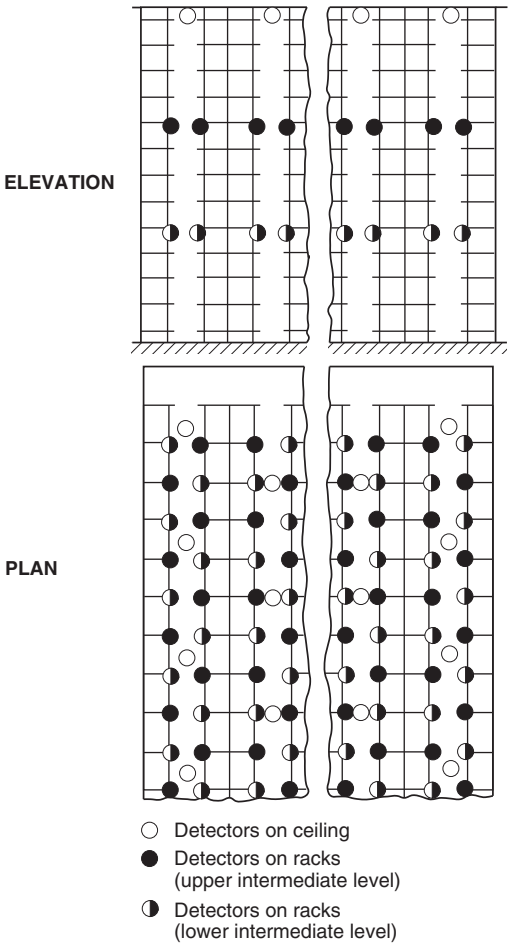


FIGURE A.17.7.7.2(a) Detector Location for Solid Storage (Closed Rack) in Which Transverse and Longitudinal Flue Spaces Are Irregular or Nonexistent, as for Slatted or Solid Shelved Storage.

Video smoke detectors can be a suitable option in rack storage if the manufacturer's recommendations for ambient lighting and other guidelines can be met. Smoke need not rise to the level of the detector to be sensed.

A.17.7.7.3.1 Detectors provided for the control of smoke spread are covered by the requirements of 17.7.6.

A.17.7.7.3.3 Smoke detector spacing depends on the movement of air within the room.

N **A.17.7.7.3.3.3** Data has not yet been presented that would enable the technical committee to determine the effect of high air movement on projected beam or air sampling detectors. The designer must depend on data provided in the manufacturer's published instructions.

A.17.7.8.3 Facility owners and managers might desire to use cameras and their images for purposes other than smoke detection. The intent of this paragraph is not to prohibit additional uses, but to ensure the integrity of the life safety smoke detection mission of the equipment.

A.17.7.8.4 Video image smoke detection control and software should be protected from tampering by passwords, software

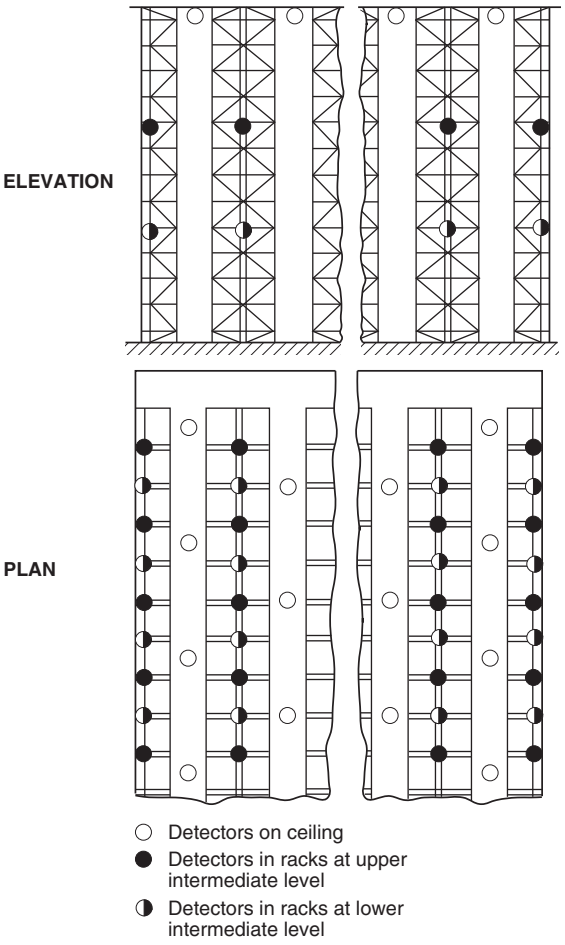


FIGURE A.17.7.7.2(b) Detector Location for Palletized Storage (Open Rack) or No Shelved Storage in Which Regular Transverse and Longitudinal Flue Spaces Are Maintained.

keys, or other means of limiting access to authorized/qualified personnel. Component settings include any control or programming that might affect the operation of coverage of the detection. This includes, but is not limited to, camera focus, field of view, motion sensitivity settings, and change of camera position. Any changes in component settings or ambient conditions that affect the design performance of the detector should initiate a trouble signal.

A.17.8.1 For the purpose of this Code, radiant energy includes the electromagnetic radiation emitted as a by-product of the combustion reaction, which obeys the laws of optics. This includes radiation in the ultraviolet, visible, and infrared portions of the spectrum emitted by flames or glowing embers. These portions of the spectrum are distinguished by wavelengths as shown in Table A.17.8.1.

A.17.8.2 Following are operating principles for two types of detectors:

(1) *Flame Detectors.* Ultraviolet flame detectors typically use a vacuum photodiode Geiger–Muller tube to detect the ultraviolet radiation that is produced by a flame. The photodiode allows a burst of current to flow for each ultraviolet photon that hits the active area of the tube. When the number of current bursts per unit time reaches a predetermined level, the detector initiates an alarm. A single wavelength infrared flame detector uses one of several different photocell types to detect the infrared emissions in a single wavelength band that are produced by a flame. These detectors generally include provisions to minimize alarms from commonly occurring infrared sources such as incandescent lighting or sunlight. An ultraviolet/infrared (UV/IR) flame detector senses ultraviolet radiation with a vacuum photodiode tube and a selected wavelength of infrared radiation with a photocell and uses the combined signal to indicate a fire. These detectors need exposure to both types of radiation before an alarm signal can be initiated. A multiple wavelength infrared (IR/IR) flame detector senses radiation at two or more narrow bands of wavelengths in the infrared spectrum. These detectors electronically compare the emissions between the bands and initiate a signal where the relationship between the two bands indicates a fire.

(2) *Spark/Ember Detectors.* A spark/ember-sensing detector usually uses a solid state photodiode or phototransistor to sense the radiant energy emitted by embers, typically between 0.5 microns and 2.0 microns in normally dark environments. These detectors can be made extremely sensitive (microwatts), and their response times can be made very short (microseconds).

A.17.8.2.1 The radiant energy from a flame or spark/ember is comprised of emissions in various bands of the ultraviolet, visible, and infrared portions of the spectrum. The relative quantities of radiation emitted in each part of the spectrum are determined by the fuel chemistry, the temperature, and the rate of combustion. The detector should be matched to the characteristics of the fire.

Almost all materials that participate in flaming combustion emit ultraviolet radiation to some degree during flaming combustion, whereas only carbon-containing fuels emit significant radiation at the 4.35 micron (carbon dioxide) band used by many detector types to detect a flame. *(See Figure A.17.8.2.1.)*

The radiant energy emitted from an ember is determined primarily by the fuel temperature (Planck's law emissions) and the emissivity of the fuel. Radiant energy from an ember is primarily infrared and, to a lesser degree, visible in wavelength. In general, embers do not emit ultraviolet energy in significant quantities (0.1 percent of total emissions) until the ember achieves temperatures of 3240°F (1727°C or 2000°K). In most cases, the emissions are included in the band of 0.8 microns to 2.0 microns, corresponding to temperatures of approximately 750°F to 1830°F (398°C to 1000°C).

Most radiant energy detectors have some form of qualification circuitry within them that uses time to help distinguish between spurious, transient signals and legitimate fire alarms. These circuits become very important where the anticipated fire scenario and the ability of the detector to respond to that

Table A.17.8.1 Spectrum Wavelength Ranges

Radiant Energy	μm
Ultraviolet	0.1–0.35
Visible	0.36–0.75
Infrared	0.76–220

Conversion factors: 1.0 μm = 1000 nm = 10,000 Å.

anticipated fire are considered. For example, a detector that uses an integration circuit or a timing circuit to respond to the flickering light from a fire might not respond well to a deflagration resulting from the ignition of accumulated combustible vapors and gases, or where the fire is a spark that is traveling up to 328 ft/sec (100 m/sec) past the detector. Under these circumstances, a detector that has a high-speed response capability is most appropriate. On the other hand, in applications where the development of the fire is slower, a detector that uses time for the confirmation of repetitive signals is appropriate. Consequently, the fire growth rate should be considered in selecting the detector. The detector performance should be selected to respond to the anticipated fire.

The radiant emissions are not the only criteria to be considered. The medium between the anticipated fire and the detector is also very important. Different wavelengths of radiant energy are absorbed with varying degrees of efficiency by materials that are suspended in the air or that accumulate on the optical surfaces of the detector. Generally, aerosols and surface deposits reduce the sensitivity of the detector. The detection technology used should take into account those normally occurring aerosols and surface deposits to minimize the reduction of system response between maintenance intervals. It should be noted that the smoke evolved from the combustion of middle and heavy fraction petroleum distillates is highly absorptive in the ultraviolet end of the spectrum. If using this type of detection, the system should be designed to minimize the effect of smoke interference on the response of the detection system.

The environment and ambient conditions anticipated in the area to be protected impact the choice of detector. All detectors have limitations on the range of ambient temperatures over which they will respond, consistent with their tested or approved sensitivities. The designer should make certain that the detector is compatible with the range of ambient temperatures anticipated in the area in which it is installed. In addition, rain, snow, and ice attenuate both ultraviolet and infrared radiation to varying degrees. Where anticipated, provisions should be made to protect the detector from accumulations of these materials on its optical surfaces.

A.17.8.2.2 Normal radiant emissions that are not from a fire can be present in the hazard area. When selecting a detector for an area, other potential sources of radiant emissions should be evaluated. Refer to A.17.8.2.1 for additional information.

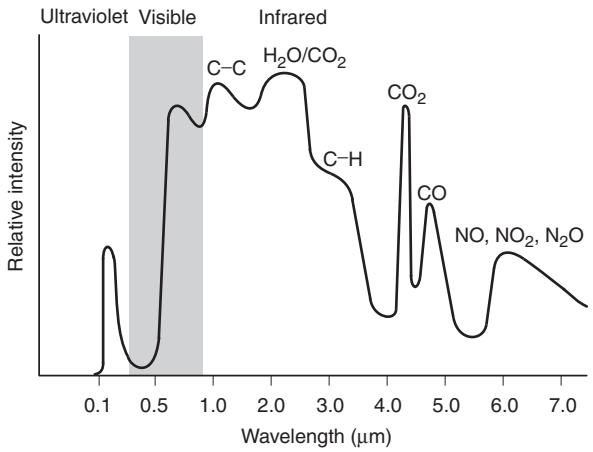


FIGURE A.17.8.2.1 Spectrum of Typical Flame (Free-Burning Gasoline).

A.17.8.3.1.1 All optical detectors respond according to the following theoretical equation:

Δ **[A.17.8.3.1.1]**

$$S = \frac{kPe^{-\zeta d}}{d^2}$$

where:
S = radiant power reaching the detector
k = proportionality constant for the detector
P = radiant power emitted by the fire
e = Naperian logarithm base (2.7183)
ζ = extinction coefficient of air
d = distance between the fire and the detector

The sensitivity (S) typically is measured in nanowatts. This equation yields a family of curves similar to the one shown in Figure A.17.8.3.1.1.

The curve defines the maximum distance at which the detector consistently detects a fire of defined size and fuel. Detectors should be employed only in the shaded area above the curve.

Under the best of conditions, with no atmospheric absorption, the radiant power reaching the detector is reduced by a factor of 4 if the distance between the detector and the fire is doubled. For the consumption of the atmospheric extinction, the exponential term zeta (ζ) is added to the equation. Zeta is a measure of the clarity of the air at the wavelength under consideration. Zeta is affected by humidity, dust, and any other contaminants in the air that are absorbent at the wavelength in question. Zeta generally has values between –0.001 and –0.1 for normal ambient air.

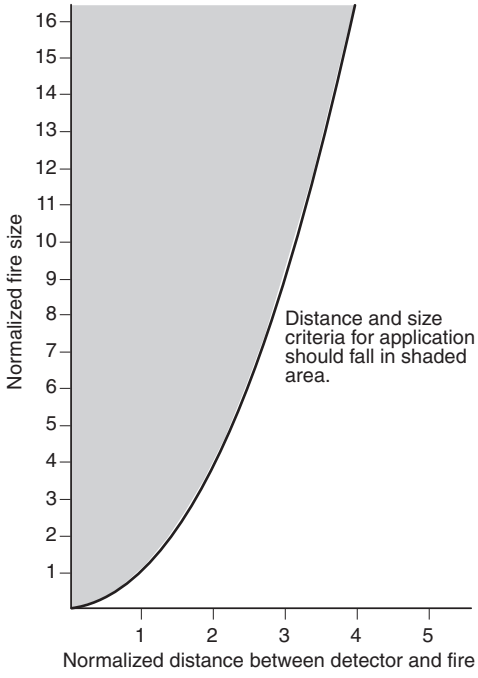


FIGURE A.17.8.3.1.1 Normalized Fire Size vs. Distance.

A.17.8.3.2.1 The following are types of application for which flame detectors are suitable:

(1) High-ceiling, open-spaced buildings such as warehouses and aircraft hangars
(2) Outdoor or semioutdoor areas where winds or drafts can prevent smoke from reaching a heat or smoke detector
(3) Areas where rapidly developing flaming fires can occur, such as aircraft hangars, petrochemical production areas, storage and transfer areas, natural gas installations, paint shops, or solvent areas
(4) Areas needing high fire risk machinery or installations, often coupled with an automatic gas extinguishing system
(5) Environments that are unsuitable for other types of detectors

Some extraneous sources of radiant emissions that have been identified as interfering with the stability of flame detectors include the following:

(1) Sunlight
(2) Lightning
(3) X-rays
(4) Gamma rays
(5) Cosmic rays
(6) Ultraviolet radiation from arc welding
(7) Electromagnetic interference (EMI, RFI)
(8) Hot objects
(9) Artificial lighting

A.17.8.3.2.3 The greater the angular displacement of the fire from the optical axis of the detector, the larger the fire must become before it is detected. This phenomenon establishes the field of view of the detector. Figure A.17.8.3.2.3 shows an example of the effective sensitivity versus angular displacement of a flame detector.

A.17.8.3.2.4 Virtually all radiant-energy-sensing detectors exhibit some kind of fuel specificity. If burned at uniform rates [W (J/sec)], different fuels emit different levels of radiant power in the ultraviolet, visible, and infrared portions of the spectrum. Under free-burn conditions, a fire of given surface area but of different fuels burns at different rates [W (J/sec)] and emits varying levels of radiation in each of the major portions of the spectrum. Most radiant energy detectors designed to detect flame are qualified on the basis of a defined fire under specific conditions. If employing these detectors for fuels other than the defined fire, the designer should make certain that the appropriate adjustments to the maximum distance between the detector and the fire are made consistent with the fuel specificity of the detector.

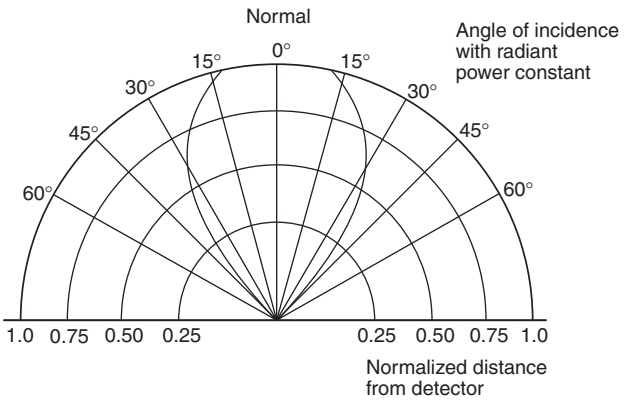


FIGURE A.17.8.3.2.3 Normalized Sensitivity vs. Angular Displacement.

A.17.8.3.2.6 This requirement has been satisfied by the following means:

(1) Lens clarity monitoring and cleaning where a contaminated lens signal is rendered
(2) Lens air purge

The need to clean detector windows can be reduced by the provision of air purge devices. These devices are not foolproof, however, and are not a replacement for regular inspection and testing. Radiant-energy-sensing detectors should not be placed in protective housings (e.g., behind glass) to keep them clean, unless such housings are listed for the purpose. Some optical materials are absorptive at the wavelengths used by the detector.

A.17.8.3.3.1 Spark/ember detectors are installed primarily to detect sparks and embers that could, if allowed to continue to burn, precipitate a much larger fire or explosion. Spark/ember detectors are typically mounted on some form of duct or conveyor, monitoring the fuel as it passes by. Usually, it is necessary to enclose the portion of the conveyor where the detectors are located, as these devices generally require a dark environment. Extraneous sources of radiant emissions that have been identified as interfering with the stability of spark/ember detectors include the following:

(1) Ambient light
(2) Electromagnetic interference (EMI, RFI)
(3) Electrostatic discharge in the fuel stream

A.17.8.3.3.2 There is a minimum ignition power (watts) for all combustible dusts. If the spark or ember is incapable of delivering that quantity of power to the adjacent combustible material (dust), an expanding dust fire cannot occur. The minimum ignition power is determined by the fuel chemistry, fuel particle size, fuel concentration in air, and ambient conditions such as temperature and humidity.

A.17.8.3.3.4 As the distance between the fire and the detector increases, the radiant power reaching the detector decreases. Refer to A.17.8.3.1.1 for additional information.

A.17.8.3.3.5 The greater the angular displacement of the fire from the optical axis of the detector, the larger the fire must become before it is detected. This phenomenon establishes the field of view of the detector. Figure A.17.8.3.2.3 shows an example of the effective sensitivity versus angular displacement of a flame detector.

A.17.8.3.3.6 This requirement has been satisfied by the following means:

(1) Lens clarity monitoring and cleaning where a contaminated lens signal is rendered
(2) Lens air purge

A.17.8.5.3 Facility owners and managers might desire to use cameras and their images for purposes other than flame detection. The intent of this paragraph is not to prohibit additional uses, but to ensure the integrity of the life safety flame detection mission of the equipment.

A.17.8.5.4 Video image flame detection control and software should be protected from tampering by passwords, software keys, or other means of limiting access to authorized/qualified

personnel. Component settings include any control or programming that might affect the operation of coverage of the detection. This includes, but is not limited to, camera focus, field of view, motion sensitivity settings, and change of camera position. Any changes in component settings or ambient conditions that affect the design performance of the detector should initiate a trouble signal.

N **A.17.10.2.1** Examples of applicable standards for gas detection equipment are UL 1484, *Residential Gas Detectors*, and UL 2075, *Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors*.

A.17.10.2.4 The engineering evaluation should include, but is not limited to, the following:

(1) Structural features, size, and shape of the rooms and bays
(2) Occupancy and uses of areas
(3) Ceiling heights
(4) Ceiling shape, surface, and obstructions
(5) Ventilation
(6) Ambient environment
(7) Gas characteristics of the gases present
(8) Configuration of the contents in the area to be protected
(9) Response time(s)

N **A.17.11.2.1** Selection of acoustic leak detection technology should be based on testing that demonstrates performance is in alignment with the proposed application. As an emerging technology, there are limited industry certification standards for such performance testing, therefore it is up to the AHJ to approve the application. Guidance is provided in EN 50724, *Fixed Ultrasonic Gas Leak Detectors (UGLD) — General requirements and test methods*.

N **A.17.11.2.2** Typical spot-type acoustic leak detectors rely on ultrasonic sound generated when pressurized gas is released. When liquids are present in the flow, ultrasonic sound waves might not be generated from the release. Typical line-type acoustic leak detectors rely on induced vibration generated by a material release and therefore might be able to detect single-phase gas or liquid release as well as multi-phase releases.

N **A.17.11.3.1(1)** The engineering evaluation should include the size of the leak in the same terms as the manufacturer's specification. This is typically expressed in terms of mass flow rate [lb/sec (kg/sec)].

N **A.17.11.3.1(3)** Examples of coverage include area, volume, or object.

N **A.17.11.3.4** Background noise in some frequencies might be filtered by some acoustic leak detectors. Additionally, some interference might exist beyond audible range. It is important that background noise in ranges that impact detection capability be considered in the spacing of the detectors.

A.17.13.2 Examples of such combustion effects are water vapor, ionized molecules, or other phenomena for which they are designed. The performance characteristics of the detector and the area into which it is to be installed should be evaluated to minimize nuisance alarms or conditions that would interfere with operation.

A.17.14.1 Additional documents such as NEMA BS 30003, *Applications Guide for Carbon Monoxide Alarms and Detectors*, and the FPRF technical report, *Development of a Technical Basis for Carbon Monoxide Detector Siting*, can also be used as supplemental resources to help with risk assessment, siting, and application considerations.

Δ **A.17.14.1(1)** By placing carbon monoxide detectors close to all permanent and temporary carbon monoxide sources, early detection of carbon monoxide is more likely to occur. Detectors should therefore be located as close as practicable to the carbon monoxide source, considering such factors as detector accessibility for inspection, testing, and maintenance; potential sources of detector damage or contamination; potential nuisance alarm sources; transient backdrafting spillage of flue gases during startup and operation; and ventilation supply and exhaust vents. For early detection, carbon monoxide detectors should be located on the ceiling over carbon monoxide sources. There is often some buoyancy of the heated combustion gases that can carry the carbon monoxide to the detector.

Carbon monoxide detectors should also be considered throughout the room or space that contains the carbon monoxide source to address either limited or no buoyancy of the carbon monoxide, adverse impacts by HVAC systems, and ambient airflows in the space that can carry carbon monoxide away from the source rather than up to the ceiling directly over the source.

Δ **A.17.14.1(2)** Detectors that are "centrally located" should be installed near the geometric center of a physical area (i.e., the centroid).

An HVAC zone is an area that is independently climatically controlled from other areas. The impact of HVAC systems should be considered when locating carbon monoxide detectors. HVAC systems can transport as well as mix and dilute carbon monoxide. The layout and operation of the HVAC system and whether the HVAC is constantly running or only running for a portion of the time and, therefore, not constantly distributing or mixing air in the building should also be considered.

•

A.17.14.1(4) Other considerations when locating carbon monoxide detectors include the presence and impact of closed doors and walls, which can compartmentalize areas within an individual HVAC zone or floor and prevent spread. The presence of doors can also allow carbon monoxide to accumulate more rapidly in certain areas if the doors are closed to contain the carbon monoxide and not allow it to spread and dilute the concentration.

N **A.17.14.2** Carbon monoxide detectors installed in unconditioned areas should be listed for the environment in accordance with 10.4.3. Unconditioned areas are intended to apply to enclosed areas, rooms, or spaces without continuous climate or HVAC controls. An example of an applicable standard for carbon monoxide detectors is UL 2075, *Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors*.

A.17.14.3 At present there is no product performance listing for duct-mounted carbon monoxide detectors because there is no peer-reviewed research to determine what the alarm thresholds for duct-mounted carbon monoxide detectors should be. There are considerable differences between the operation of a spot-type carbon monoxide detector and a duct-mounted carbon monoxide detector. The environment in ducts can be very harsh and could impact the carbon monoxide detector's sensing element. Furthermore, in most buildings, there are periods when the HVAC system is not moving significant quantities of air from the compartments it serves. As a result, the carbon monoxide detection system cannot be designed to rely on the HVAC system operation for the transport of carbon monoxide to the carbon monoxide detectors.

A.17.15.1 Piping between the sprinkler system and a pressure actuated alarm-initiating device should be galvanized or of nonferrous metal or other approved corrosion-resistant material of not less than ⅜ in. (9.5 mm) nominal pipe size.

A.17.15.2 The waterflow device or the combination of the waterflow devices and fire alarm system should be field configurable so that an alarm is initiated no more than 90 seconds after a sustained flow of at least 10 gpm (40 L/min).

Features that should be investigated to minimize alarm response time include the following:

(1) Elimination of trapped air in the sprinkler system piping
(2) Use of an excess pressure pump
(3) Use of pressure drop alarm-initiating devices
(4) A combination thereof

Care should be used when choosing waterflow alarm-initiating devices for hydraulically calculated looped systems and those systems using small orifice sprinklers. Such systems might incorporate a single point flow of significantly less than 10 gpm (40 L/min). In such cases, additional waterflow alarm-initiating devices or the use of pressure drop-type waterflow alarm-initiating devices might be necessary.

Care should be used when choosing waterflow alarm-initiating devices for sprinkler systems that use on–off sprinklers to ensure that an alarm is initiated in the event of a waterflow condition. On–off sprinklers open at a predetermined temperature and close when the temperature reaches a predetermined lower temperature. With certain types of fires, waterflow might occur in a series of short bursts of a duration of 10 seconds to 30 seconds each. An alarm-initiating device with retard might not detect waterflow under these conditions. An excess pressure system or a system that operates on pressure drop should be considered to facilitate waterflow detection on sprinkler systems that use on–off sprinklers.

Excess pressure systems can be used with or without alarm valves. The following is a description of one type of excess pressure system with an alarm valve.

An excess pressure system with an alarm valve consists of an excess pressure pump with pressure switches to control the operation of the pump. The inlet of the pump is connected to the supply side of the alarm valve, and the outlet is connected to the sprinkler system. The pump control pressure switch is of the differential type, maintaining the sprinkler system pressure above the main pressure by a constant amount. Another switch monitors low sprinkler system pressure to initiate a supervisory signal in the event of a failure of the pump or other malfunction. An additional pressure switch can be used to stop pump operation in the event of a deficiency in water supply. Another pressure switch is connected to the alarm outlet of the alarm valve to initiate a waterflow alarm signal when waterflow exists. This type of system also inherently prevents false alarms due to water surges. The sprinkler retard chamber should be eliminated to enhance the detection capability of the system for short duration flows.

A.17.16 Alarm initiation can be accomplished by devices that detect the following:

(1) Flow of water in foam systems
(2) Pump activation
(3) Differential pressure
(4) Pressure (e.g., clean agent systems, carbon dioxide systems, and wet/dry chemical systems)
(5) Mechanical operation of a release mechanism

N **A.17.17.1** An example of an applicable standard for manually actuated alarm-initiating devices is UL 38, *Manual Signaling Boxes for Fire Alarm Systems.*

A.17.17.9 Protective covers, also called pull station protectors can be installed over manually actuated alarm initiating devices to provide mechanical protection, environmental protection, and to reduce the likelihood of accidental or malicious activation. The protective covers must be listed to ensure that they do not hinder the operation of the pull stations and to ensure that they meet accessibility requirements for activation by persons with physical disabilities. The Code explicitly permits installing them over single- or double-action devices. When installed over a double-action device, the assembly effectively becomes a triple-action device. Some units include battery-operated audible warning signals that have been shown to deter malicious activations. To be effective, it is important that the regular staff or occupants be aware of the sound and investigate immediately in order to catch someone who might otherwise actuate the device without cause or to ensure that the device is actuated if there is a legitimate reason.

A.17.17.10.3 In environments where red paint or red plastic is not suitable, an alternative material, such as stainless steel, could be used as long as the box meets the requirements of 17.17.10.2.

A.17.17.10.5 It is not the intent of 17.17.10.5 to require manual fire alarm boxes to be attached to movable partitions or to equipment, nor to require the installation of permanent structures for mounting purposes only.

A.17.19.2.2.2 Many current manufactured dry pipe and preaction valves are mechanical valves that allow lower air pressures than differential valves. Manufacturers suggest that the air pressure signals on these valves activate between a 2 psi to 5 psi (0.14 bar to 0.34 bar) increase or decrease. In some cases, setting the low air signal at 5 psi (0.34 bar) might be too late of a notification and cause the valve to operate before maintenance personnel can address the situation. For example, if a dry pipe valve has a normal air pressure of 15 psi (1.0 bar) and the system operates at 8 psi (0.55 bar), this will only leave a 2 psi (0.14 bar) safety factor if the low air is set to operate at a 5 psi (0.34 bar) loss. Such a system would be better served with a low air signal of operation of 2 psi to 4 psi (0.14 bar to 0.28 bar) below normal air pressure.

A.18.1 Notification appliances should be sufficient in quantity, audibility, intelligibility, and visibility so as to reliably convey the intended information to the intended personnel during an emergency.

Notification appliances in conventional commercial and industrial applications should be installed in accordance with the specific requirements of Sections 18.4 and 18.5.

The Code recognizes that it is not possible to identify specific criteria sufficient to ensure effective occupant notification in every conceivable application. If the specific criteria of Sections 18.4 and 18.5 are determined to be inadequate or inappropriate to provide the performance recommended, approved alternative approaches or methods are permitted to be used.

Designers and AHJs are advised to consider alternative means in occupancies that have individuals with cognitive disa-

bilities. In addition, persons responsible for evacuation planning should consider specific training for individuals with cognitive disabilities to familiarize them with audible and visual signals and what responses are necessary based on their capabilities and any alternative means used.

A.18.1.5 Chapter 18 establishes the means, methods, and performance requirements of notification appliances and systems. Chapter 18 does not require the installation of notification appliances or identify where notification signaling is required. Authorities having jurisdiction, other codes, other standards, and chapters of this Code require notification signaling and might specify areas or intended audiences.

For example, Chapter 10 requires audible and visible trouble signals at specific locations. A building or fire code might require audible and visual notification throughout all occupiable areas. In contrast, a building or fire code might require complete coverage with audible signaling, but might only require specific areas or spaces to have visual signaling. It is also possible that a referring code or standard might require compliance with mounting and notification appliance performance requirements without requiring complete notification signaling system performance. An example might be where an appliance is specifically located to provide information or notification to a person at a specific desk within a larger room.

A.18.3.3.2 The intent is to prohibit labeling that could give an incorrect message. Wording such as "Emergency" would be acceptable for labeling because it is generic enough not to cause confusion. Fire alarm systems are often used as emergency notification systems, and therefore attention should be given to this detail.

Combination audible and visual notification appliances are permitted to have multiple visual elements each labeled differently or not labeled at all.

A.18.3.4 Situations exist where supplemental enclosures are necessary to protect the physical integrity of a notification appliance. Protective enclosures should not interfere with the performance characteristics of the appliance. If the enclosure degrades the performance, methods should be detailed in the manufacturer's published instructions of the enclosure that clearly identify the degradation. For example, where the appliance signal is attenuated, it might be necessary to adjust the appliance spacings or appliance output.

A.18.3.6 For hardwired appliances, terminals or leads, as described in 18.3.6, are necessary to ensure that the wire run is broken and that the individual connections are made to the leads or other terminals for signaling and power.

A common terminal can be used for connection of incoming and outgoing wires. However, the design and construction of the terminal should not permit an uninsulated section of a single conductor to be looped around the terminal and to serve as two separate connections. For example, a notched clamping plate under a single securing screw is acceptable only if separate conductors of a notification circuit are intended to be inserted in each notch. *[See Figure A.17.4.6(a).]*

Another means to monitor the integrity of a connection is to establish communication between the appliance and the control unit. The integrity of the connection is verified by the presence of communication. Monitoring integrity in this fashion might not require multiple terminals or leads, as previously described.

It should be noted that monitoring the integrity of the installation conductors and their connection to an appliance does not guarantee the integrity of the appliance or that it is operational. Appliances can be damaged and become inoperable or a circuit can be overloaded, resulting in failure when the appliances are called upon to work. Presently, only testing can establish the integrity of an appliance.

Δ **A.18.3.7** ***Notification Appliances.*** The goal of a properly designed and installed system is to ensure that the notification appliances will operate at the required output (e.g., sound pressure level, candela output, synchronization) and durations for system operations.

A key component of a notification appliance is its power consumption. The designer must account for the minimum and maximum power specifications of an appliance. Regulated "24 VDC" appliances must operate at a low of 16 VDC and at a maximum of 33 VDC to ensure its output characteristics are correct. For example, too low of a voltage at the appliance can result in visual appliances losing synchronization or audible appliances having low or no output.

When designing DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits, the appliance nameplate (listed) voltage and current consumption values are used. This will typically be "X mA @ 16 VDC" (for a 24 VDC appliance) where X is the actual listed or certified current draw of the appliance.

Power Sources. The type of power supply will impact the system design and operation. The system output, overcurrent protection methods, loading ratings or factors, inrush capabilities, and voltages should be evaluated. Some power supplies can have their worst-case output condition at brownout, which is when the incoming AC mains are at their lowest value, just before the power supply transfers to battery power. The manufacturer's documentation and direction should be followed.

N **A.18.3.7.1.2** ***Control Modules.*** These typically field-installed (i.e., not integrated directly into control units) addressable CMs provide electrical supervision of the DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits and provide control of the power riser coming into the CM. Any module or device that is in the power riser electrical path or that can impact the performance of the riser must be included in the system design, installation, and testing. Other examples of CMs can include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) Relay
(2) Coder
(3) Supervision
(4) Synchronization

N **A.18.3.7.1.2.1** Figure A.18.3.7.1.2.1 provides a block diagram of the internal sections of a typical DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit CM. The DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit CM can impact the voltage of the connected notification appliance circuit. This is typically a voltage drop, though some can boost the voltage. In either case, this is referred to in DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits as module voltage adjustment (MVA) and must be included in the overall system design.

For a CM on a DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit, Equation A.18.3.7.1.2.1a applies for control module start terminal voltage (CMSTV).

[A.18.3.7.1.2.1a]

$$\text{CMSTV} = \text{riser terminal} \pm \text{internal circuitry}$$

Equation A.18.3.7.1.2.1b is an example of Equation A.18.3.7.1.2.1a with values.

[A.18.3.7.1.2.1b]

$$17.41446 = 18.11446 - 0.7$$

In Equation A.18.3.7.1.2.1b, the following applies:

(1) The incoming CM power riser provides 18.11446 VDC.
(2) The MVA is 0.7 VDC.
(3) The CMSTV is 17.41446.
(4) The notification appliance circuit that is being controlled by this CM could tolerate up to a 1.41446 voltage drop on the circuit. This is calculated with the following:
   (a) CSMTV of 17.41446
   (b) Notification appliance low voltage rating of 16
   (c) 1.41446 = 17.41446 – 16

N **A.18.3.7.1.3** Figure A.18.3.7.1.3 depicts the overall power flow and areas of concern for a system.

Note: if the power riser is altered by the CM as the power comes in or out of the CM, that adjustment also needs to be included in the calculations.

N **A.18.3.7.1.4** Figure A.18.3.7.1.4 depicts how to measure the circuit length for a Class A DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit.

N **A.18.3.7.2.1** AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits, when active, use AC derived from an audio amplifier and are typically designed for a 1.0 or 0.5 electrical dB loss. The following example is for a circuit designed for a 0.5 dB loss:

[A.18.3.7.2.1a]

$$\text{db circuit loss} = 20 * \text{Log10}\frac{\text{load impedance}}{\text{load impedance+circuit resistance}}$$

[A.18.3.7.2.1b]

$$\text{load impedance} = \frac{\text{circuit voltage}^2}{\text{circuit wattage}}$$

An example of such dB circuit loss for a 70.7 VRMS system with a 19.2 watt load on 16 AWG stranded wire would result in the following:

[A.18.3.7.2.1c]

$$-0.15738 = 20 * \text{Log10}\frac{260.338}{260.338 + 4.76}$$

Load impedance is calculated as follows:

[A.18.3.7.2.1d]

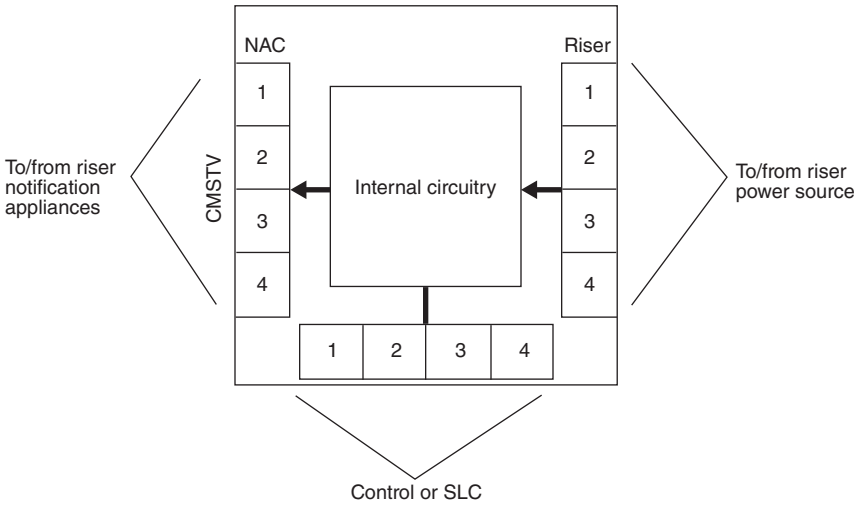
$$260.338 = \frac{70.7^2}{19.2}$$

To calculate wire length based on a given load, the following calculations can be used:

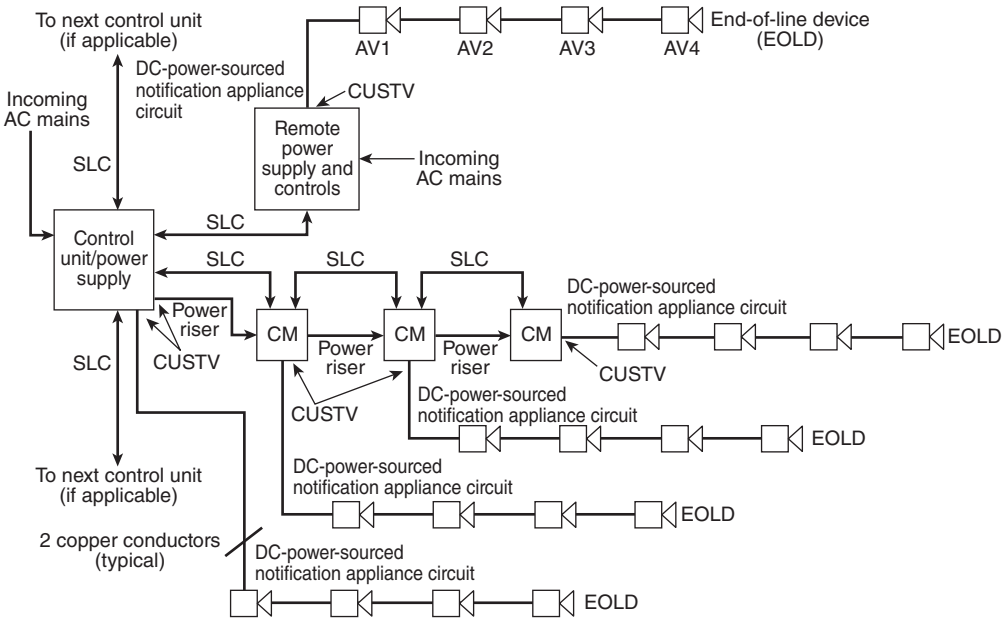
[A.18.3.7.2.1e]

$$R_L = \frac{V^2}{P} = \text{load resistance } (W)$$

where:
R_L = load resistance
V = amplifier output voltage (V)
P = power in load (W)

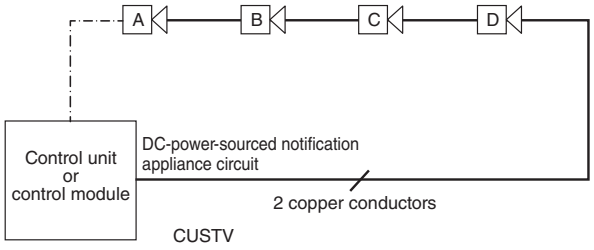


N **FIGURE A.18.3.7.1.2.1 DC-Power-Sourced Notification Appliance Circuit CM Internal Block Diagram.**



Notes:
(1) DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits are pairs of copper conductors.
(2) Total conductor length (pairs) of each DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit must be calculated.
(3) Power riser voltage adjustments must be factored into each DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit.

N FIGURE A.18.3.7.1.3 DC-Power-Sourced Notification Appliance Circuit End-to-End Concept Diagram.



Notes:
(1) Measure from power source to farthest appliance on longest side of circuit.
(2) DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits are pairs of copper conductors.
(3) Total conductor length (pairs) of DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit is from the circuit start to the farthest appliance along the longest path of the circuit. In the example above, maximum *path length* (bold line) is from the control unit or control module to Appliance A, through Appliance D, Appliance C, and Appliance B. The maximum *circuit length* is twice the path length. The return (dashed line) is not part of the circuit length calculation.

N FIGURE A.18.3.7.1.4 Class A Measurement for Circuit Length.

To solve for wire resistance, wire resistance (RW) is converted to wire length as follows:

[A.18.3.7.2.1f]

$$D = \frac{R_W}{R/_{1000\text{ ft (300 m) pair}}} \times 1000$$

where:

D = distance in feet
R_W = maximum allowable wire resistance
$R/_{1000\text{ ft pair}}$ = wire resistance per 1000 ft (300 m) pair

For a 0.5 dB loss calculation, the following applies:

[A.18.3.7.2.1g]

$$\text{max length} = \frac{59.25 \times \text{amplifier output}^2}{\text{wire resistance} \times \text{circuit load}}$$

where:

amplifier output = signal level in VRMS supplied by the amplifier driving the circuit wire resistance = resistance rating of the wire per 1000 ft (300 m) pair
circuit load = total watts required by the audio circuit

For 25.2 VRMS systems, the maximum circuit length based on wire resistance is as follows:

[A.18.3.7.2.1h]

$$\text{max length} = \frac{59.25 \times 635}{(\text{wire resistance} \times \text{circuit load})}$$

For 70.7 VRMS systems, the maximum circuit length based on wire resistance is as follows:

[A.18.3.7.2.1i]

$$\text{max length} = \frac{59.25 \times 4998}{(\text{wire resistance} \times \text{circuit load})}$$

N A.18.3.7.2.2 ***Control Modules.*** These typically field-installed (i.e., not integrated directly into control units) addressable CMs provide electrical supervision of the AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits and provide control of the audio power riser coming into the CM. Any module or device that is in the power riser electrical path or that can impact the performance of the riser must be considered in the system design, installation, and testing. Other examples of CMs can include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) Relay
(2) Coder
(3) Supervision
(4) Synchronization

Figure A.18.3.7.2.2 provides a block diagram of the internal sections of a typical AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit CM. For AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits, the module insertion adjustment (MIA) is factored into the calculations.

N A.18.3.7.2.3 Figure A.18.3.7.2.3 depicts the overall audio power flow and areas of concern for a typical system.

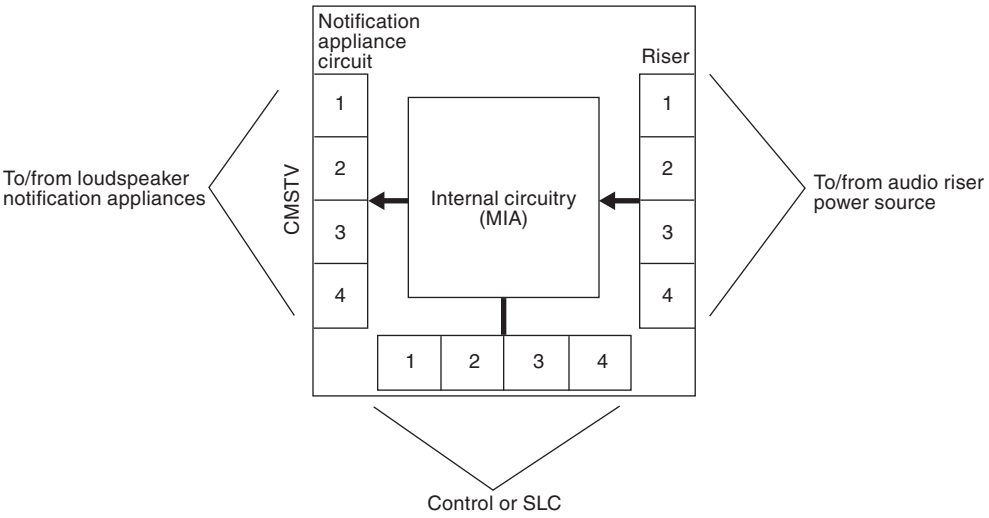
N A.18.3.7.2.4 Figure A.18.3.7.2.4 depicts how to measure the circuit length for a Class A or Class X AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit.

N A.18.3.7.3 Circuit calculations need to include total circuit length, which includes distances from panels up to above ceilings, vertically through floors, flexible drops down to suspended ceilings, and other such changes. It is critical to recognize that a 6 ft (1.8 m) flex drop with circuits down and back up adds 24 ft (7.3 m) of wire [red and black down 12 ft (3.7 m) + red and black back up 12 ft (3.7 m)]. In addition, there is to be 6 in. (150 mm) of loop in each junction box (above ceiling and at device box) in accordance with *NFPA 70*, therefore adding an additional 4 ft (1.2 m) of wire. Ten 6 ft (1.8 m) flex drops will, if not included in the total length, add an additional 280 ft (85.3 m) of wire to a circuit.

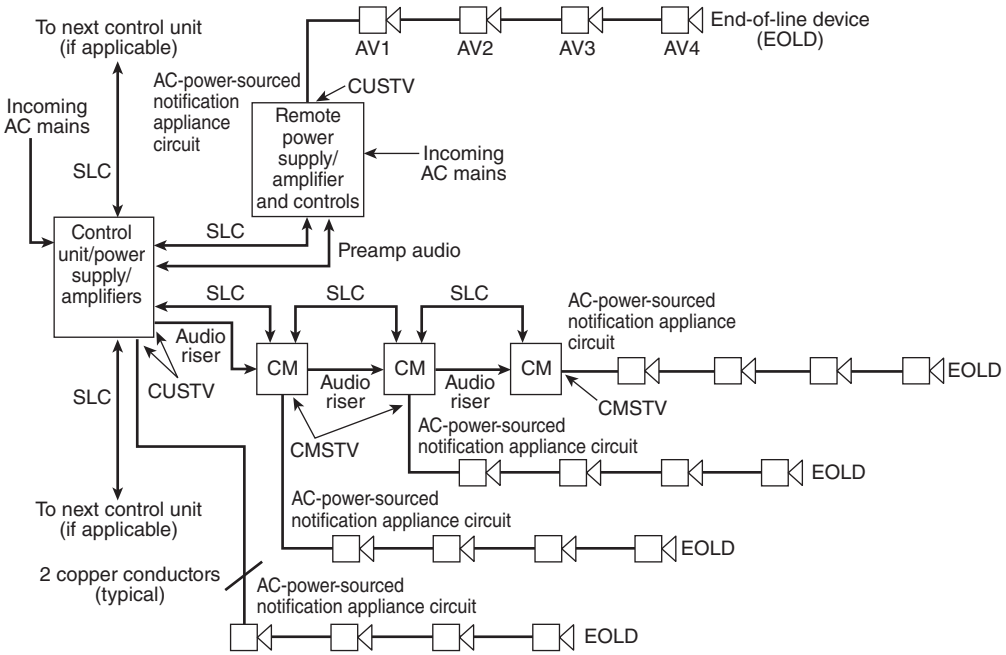
N A.18.3.7.4 The key design factor for DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits is voltage drop calculations. The key design factor for non-DC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits is line loss calculations. All conductors in a circuit must be considered, including drops, risers, whips, service loops, and any other conductors in a circuit.

There are two acceptable methods of calculation, as follows:

(1) End-line-loaded (ELL): ELL circuits are designed and tested based on the total circuit resistance and loss. This method assumes that all the appliances are at the end of the circuit and are activated at one time. This is the most conservative method and is the recommended design method for all systems.
(2) Point-to-point (PTP): PTP circuits are designed based on the individual segment and tested on total resistance and loss. This method requires that the designer know the exact wire distance between every appliance. If the installed values are different than the design values, the circuit might not work correctly. This method requires close coordination with the design and field work.

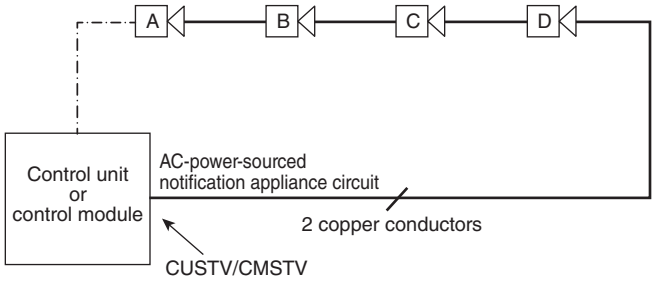


N FIGURE A.18.3.7.2.2 AC-Power-Sourced Notification Appliance Circuit CM Internal Block Diagram.



Notes:
(1) AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits are pairs of copper conductors.
(2) Total conductor length (pairs) of each AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit must be calculated.
(3) Audio riser voltage adjustments must be factored into each AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit.

N FIGURE A.18.3.7.2.3 AC-Power-Sourced Notification Appliance Circuit End-to-End Concept Diagram.



Notes:
(1) Measure from audio power source to farthest appliance on longest side of circuit.
(2) AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuits are pairs of copper conductors.
(3) Total conductor length (pairs) of AC-power-sourced notification appliance circuit is from the circuit start to the farthest appliance along the longest path of the circuit. In the example above, maximum *path length* (bold line) is from the control unit or control module to Appliance A, through Appliance D, Appliance C, and Appliance B. The maximum *circuit length* is twice the path length. The return (dashed line) is not part of the circuit length calculation.

N FIGURE A.18.3.7.2.4 Class A Measurement for Circuit Length.

A.18.4.1.1 The Code does not require that all audible notification appliances within a building be of the same type. However, a mixture of different types of audible notification appliances within a space is not the desired method. Audible notification appliances that convey a similar audible signal are preferred. For example, a space that uses mechanical horns and bells might not be desirable. A space that is provided with mechanical horns and electronic horns with similar audible signal output is preferred.

However, the cost of replacing all existing appliances to match new appliances can impose substantial economic impact where other methods can be used to avoid occupant confusion of signals and signal content. Examples of other methods used to avoid confusion include, but are not limited to, training of occupants, signage, consistent use of temporal code signal pattern, and fire drills.

Hearing protection can attenuate both the ambient noise level and the audible signal. Specifications from hearing protection manufacturers might allow the effect of hearing protection devices to be evaluated. In spaces where hearing protection is worn due to high ambient noise conditions, visual notification appliances should be considered.

In addition, where hearing protection is worn due to high ambient noise conditions, the audible signal and ambient noise measurements can be analyzed and the audible signal can be adjusted to account for attenuation caused by the hearing protection devices.

A.18.4.1.2 The maximum sound pressure level permitted in a space is 110 dBA. In the 2007 edition, this was reduced from 120 dBA in previous editions. The change from 120 dBA to 110 dBA was made to coordinate with other laws, codes, and standards.

In addition to the danger of exposure to a high sound level, long-term exposure to lower levels could also be a problem when, for example, occupants must traverse long egress paths to exit or technicians test large systems over extended time periods.

This Code does not presume to know how long a person will be exposed to an audible notification system. The limit of

110 dBA has been set as a reasonable upper limit for the performance of a system. For workers who could be exposed to high sound levels over the course of a 40-year employment history, OSHA (Occupational, Health and Safety Administration) has established a maximum permitted dose before a hearing conservation program must be implemented. A worker exposed to 120 dBA for 7.5 minutes a day for 40 years might be in danger of suffering a hearing impairment. The OSHA regulation includes a formula to calculate a dose for situations where a person is exposed to different sound levels for different periods of time. The maximum permitted by the regulation is an 8-hour equivalent dose of 90 dBA. It is possible to calculate the dose a person experiences when traversing an egress path where the sound pressure level varies as he/she passes close to, then away from, audible appliances. Table A.18.4.1.2 depicts OSHA permissible noise exposures.

A.18.4.1.3 In determining maximum ambient sound levels, sound sources that should be considered include air-handling equipment and background music in a typical office environment, office cleaning equipment (vacuum cleaner), noisy children in a school auditorium, car engines in an auto shop, conveyor belts in a warehouse, and a running shower and fan in a hotel bathroom. Temporary or abnormal sound sources that can be excluded would include internal or external construction activities (i.e., office rearrangements and construction equipment).

A.18.4.1.5.1 Audibility of a fire or emergency signal might not be required in all rooms and spaces. For example, a system that is used for general occupant notification should not require audibility of the signal in closets and other spaces that are not considered as occupiable spaces. However, a space of the same size used as a file room would be considered occupiable and should have coverage by notification appliances. Also, signaling intended only for staff or emergency forces might only have to be effective in very specific locations.

A.18.4.1.6 Because voice is composed of modulated tones, it is not valid to compare loudness measurements of tone signals with loudness measurements of voice signals. A voice signal that is subjectively judged to be equally as loud as a tone signal will actually produce a dB reading below that of the tone signal. The modulated tones of a voice signal can have the same or greater peak amplitude as that of a tone signal. However, because voice signals are modulated meters with fast or slow time, constants will show a lower dB or dBA reading.

Table A.18.4.1.2 Permissible Noise Exposures

Duration (hr)	L_A (dBA)
8	90
6	92
4	95
3	97
2	100
1.5	102
1	105
0.5	110
0.25	115
0.125 (7.5 minutes)	120

Source: OSHA, 29 CFR 1910.5, Table G-16, Occupational Noise Exposure.

A voice signal must have sufficient audibility to result in intelligible communication. Intelligibility modeling/measurements (subject based and instrument based) include audibility as well as many other factors when determining whether a voice signal is adequate or not adequate.

A.18.4.2.1 Section 10.10 requires that alarm signals be distinctive in sound from other signals and that this sound not be used for any other purpose. The use of the distinctive three-pulse temporal pattern signal required by 18.4.2.1 became effective July 1, 1996, for new systems installed after that date. It is not the intent to prohibit continued use of an existing consistent evacuation signaling scheme, subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction. It is also not the intent that the distinct pattern be applied to visible appliances.

Prior to the 2013 edition, the use of the temporal code 3 distinctive evacuation signal was intended only where evacuation of the building was the intended response. In order to eliminate the need for additional signals to mean "relocate," the signal is now permitted to be used where relocation or partial evacuation is the intended response. The simple result is people should not be in any area where the signal is sounding and that it is safe to be anywhere that signal is not sounding.

The temporal pattern can be produced by any audible notification appliance, as illustrated in Figure A.18.4.2.1(a) and Figure A.18.4.2.1(b).

A.18.4.2.2 The purpose of a minimum ring time is to assure that occupants have time to hear, understand, and act. When a signal stops, occupants might assume that no threat exists. Some jurisdictions might require longer ring times. Others might require visual appliances to continue to flash when audible signals have been silenced. Different jurisdictions and different buildings/areas require different emergency plans. Thus, the Code minimum ring time should be allowed to be different when approved by the AHJ. The Code specifically permits manual interruption. A jurisdiction might have an ordinance that does not allow owners/occupant to interrupt the signal, but would allow first responders to use the system as needed. In other cases, an approved emergency preparedness and emergency action plan might allow for manual interrup-

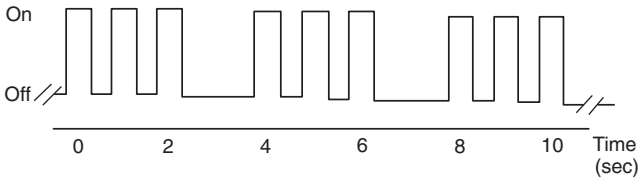


FIGURE A.18.4.2.1(a) Temporal Pattern Imposed on Signaling Appliances That Emit Continuous Signal While Energized.

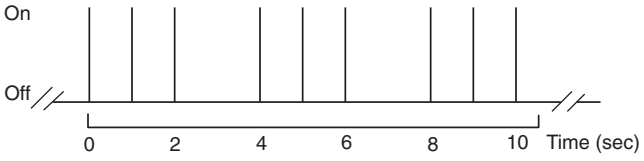


FIGURE A.18.4.2.1(b) Temporal Pattern Imposed on Single-Stroke Bell or Chime.

tion of the signal. The Code also has an allowance for MNS messages to interrupt the minimum ring time.

A.18.4.2.5 Coordination or synchronization of the audible signal within a notification zone is needed to preserve the temporal pattern. It is unlikely that the audible signal in one evacuation/notification zone will be heard in another at a level that will destroy the temporal pattern. Thus, it would not normally be necessary to provide coordination or synchronization for an entire system. Caution should be used in spaces such as atriums, where the sounds produced in one notification zone can be sufficient to cause confusion regarding the temporal pattern.

A.18.4.4 The typical average ambient sound level for the occupancies specified in Table A.18.4.4 are intended only for design guidance purposes. The typical average ambient sound levels specified should not be used in lieu of actual sound level measurements.

Sound levels can be significantly reduced due to distance and losses through building elements. Every time the distance from the source doubles, the sound level decreases by about 6 decibels (dB). Audible notification appliances are typically rated by manufacturers' and testing agencies at 10 ft (3 m) from the appliance. Subsequently, at a distance of 20 ft (6.1 m) from an audible appliance rated at 84 dBA, the sound level might be reduced to 78 dBA. At a closed door, the loss might be about 10 dB to 24 dB or more depending on construction. If the opening around the door is sealed, this might result in a loss of 22 dB to 34 dB or more.

A.18.4.4.1 Audio levels are commonly measured using units of decibels, or $^1/_{10}$ Bell, abbreviated dB. When measured using a sound level meter, the operator can select either an A-weighted, B-weighted, or C-weighted measurement. The C-weighted measurement is nominally flat from 70 Hz to 4000 Hz, and the B-weighted measurement is nominally flat from 300 Hz to 4000 Hz. The A-weighted measurement filters the input signal to reduce the measurement sensitivity for frequencies to which the human ear is less sensitive and is relatively flat from 600 Hz to 7000 Hz. This results in a measurement that is weighted to simulate the segment of the audio spectrum that provides the most significant intelligibility components heard by the human ear. The units used for measurement are still dB, but the shorthand for specifying use of the A-weighted filter is typically dBA. The difference between any two sound levels measured on the same scale is always expressed in units of dB, not dBA.

Table A.18.4.4 Average Ambient Sound Level According to Location

Location	Average Ambient Sound Level (dBA)
Business occupancies	54
Educational occupancies	45
Industrial occupancies	88
Institutional occupancies	50
Mercantile occupancies	40
Mechanical rooms	91
Piers and water-surrounded structures	40
Places of assembly	60
Residential occupancies	35
Storage occupancies	30
Thoroughfares, high-density urban	70
Thoroughfares, medium-density urban	55
Thoroughfares, rural and suburban	40
Tower occupancies	35
Underground structures and windowless buildings	40
Vehicles and vessels	50

The constantly changing nature of pressure waves, which are detected by ear, can be measured by electronic sound meters, and the resulting electronic waveforms can be processed and presented in a number of meaningful ways. Most simple sound level meters have a fast or slow time constant (125 ms and 1000 ms, respectively) to quickly average a sound signal and present a root mean square (RMS) level to the meter movement or display. This is the type of measurement used to determine the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds. Note that Chapter 14 requires this measurement to be made using the FAST time setting on the meter. However, this quick average of impressed sound results in fast movements of the meter's output that are best seen when talking into the microphone; the meter quickly rises and falls with speech. However, when surveying the ambient sound levels to establish the increased level at which a notification appliance will properly function, the sound source needs to be averaged over a longer period of time. See 3.3.32, Average Ambient Sound Level. Moderately priced sound level meters have such a function, usually called L_{eq} or equivalent sound level. For example, an L_{eq} of speech in a quiet room would cause the meter movement to rise gradually to a peak reading and slowly fall well after the speech is over. L_{eq} measurements are made over a specified time period and reported as $L_{eq,t}$, where t is the time period. For example, a measurement taken over 24 hours is reported as L_{eq24}.

L_{eq} readings can be misapplied in situations where the background ambient noises vary greatly during a 24-hour period. L_{eq} measurements should be taken over the period of occupancy. This is clarified by the definition of average ambient sound level *(see 3.3.32)*. Note that average in this context is the integrated average at a particular measurement location, not the average of several readings taken at different locations. For example, it would be incorrect to take a reading in a quiet bathroom and average it with a reading taken near a noisy machine to get an average to use for the alarm signal design. The alarm would probably be excessively loud in the quiet bathroom and not loud enough near the noisy machine.

In areas where the background noise is generated by machinery and is fairly constant, a frequency analysis can be warranted. It might be found that the high sound levels are predominantly in one or two frequency bandwidths — often lower frequencies. Notification appliances producing sound in one or two other frequency bandwidths can adequately penetrate the background noise and provide notification. The system would still be designed to produce or have a sound level at the particular frequency or frequency bandwidth of at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater.

In very high noise areas, such as theaters, dance halls, nightclubs, and machine shops, sound levels during occupied times can be 100 dBA and higher. Peak sounds might be 110 dBA or greater. At other occupied times, the sound level might be

below 50 dBA. A system designed to have a sound level of at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds might result in a required sound pressure level in excess of the maximum of 110 dBA. A viable option is to reduce or eliminate the background noise. Professional theaters or other entertainment venues can have road show connection control units *(see Section 520.50 of NFPA 70)* to which troupes can connect their light and sound systems. These power sources can be controlled by the system. In less formal applications, such as many nightclubs, designated power circuits could be controlled. Diligence needs to be exercised to ensure that the controlled circuits are used.

Also, in occupancies such as machine shops or other production facilities, care must be exercised in the design to ensure that the removal of power to the noise source does not create some other hazard. As with other emergency control functions, control circuits and relays would be monitored for integrity in accordance with Chapter 10, Chapter 12, and Chapter 23.

Appropriate audible signaling in high ambient noise areas is often difficult. Areas such as automotive assembly areas, machining areas, paint spray areas, and so on, where the ambient noise is caused by the manufacturing process itself, require special consideration. Adding additional audible notification appliances that merely contribute to the already noisy environment might not be appropriate. Other alerting techniques such as visual notification appliances, for example, could be more effectively used.

Other codes, standards, laws, or regulations, and the authority having jurisdiction determine where a signal must be audible. This Code section describes the performance requirement needed for a signal to be considered reliably audible.

A.18.4.4.3 Elevator cars are not required to have audible appliances. If they are provided, they can be designed at the lower levels permitted for private mode signaling. Note that for a protected premises fire alarm system, 23.8.6.2.4 explicitly states that the signal is not required to operate in elevator cars. Similarly, for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACS), 24.4.8.5 permits audible appliances to be installed, but requires that the evacuation signal not operate in the elevators. This permits loudspeakers to be installed and used for manual communication to elevator occupants.

A.18.4.4.5.3 In facilities where an amplified sound system is used for music and other voice amplification, such as live performances in theaters, auditoriums, and so on, and there are audible notification appliances installed at the same area of the facility, a fire alarm control relay or interface should be provided to automatically shut down the amplified music or voice system upon activation of the audible notification appliances. This automatic shutdown of the nonemergency sound system should be performed to allow for the emergency fire alarm system signal to sound and be audible to the occupants of the facility.

A.18.4.5.1 See A.18.4.4.1 for additional information on sound measurements and weighting scales.

A.18.4.5.2 For example, in critical care patient areas, it is often desirable to not have an audible notification even at reduced private mode levels. Each case requires consideration by the governing authority. Another example would be high noise work areas where an audible signal needed to overcome background noise at one time of day would be excessively loud and potentially dangerous at another time of lower ambient noise. A sudden increase of more than 30 dB over 0.5 seconds is considered to cause sudden and potentially dangerous fright.

A.18.4.6.1 See A.18.4.4.1 for additional information on sound measurements and weighting scales.

Chapter 18 addresses notification appliances connected to and controlled by a fire alarm or emergency communications system. This chapter does not address dwelling-unit protection, such as smoke alarms, and their audible signal characteristics. Requirements for single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems can be found in Chapter 29.

The intent of 18.4.6.1 is to require the use of the low-frequency signal in areas intended for sleeping and in areas that might reasonably be used for sleeping. Some of these rooms/areas include the following:

(1) Hotel guest rooms
(2) Common spaces of a hotel suite, such as living rooms, that have couches, beds, or sleeping furniture
(3) Common spaces within dwelling units, such as living rooms or dens, that have couches, beds, or sleeping furniture
(4) Areas and rooms with Murphy beds
(5) Doctor/staff sleeping rooms
(6) Nap rooms or sleeping areas in any occupancy

Sleeping areas that are provided with constant awake staff are not required to be provided with low-frequency audible notification appliances. Paragraph 18.4.6.1 does not require low-frequency notification in hallways, lobbies, and other tenantless spaces.

It is not the intent of 18.4.6.1 to preclude appliances or devices that have been demonstrated through peer-reviewed research to awaken occupants with hearing loss as effectively as those using the frequency and amplitude specified in 18.4.6.1.

All notification appliances and notification systems should be listed for low-frequency operation.

For increased protection in the sleeping area, tactile notification in accordance with Section 18.10 might be an effective means of awakening those who have normal hearing, as well as those who are hearing impaired.

A.18.4.6.3 The intent of this section is to require the use of the low frequency signal in areas intended for sleeping and in areas that might reasonably be used for sleeping. For example, this section requires a low frequency audible signal in a bedroom of an apartment and also in the living room area of an apartment as it might have sleeping occupants. However, it would not be required to use the low frequency signal in the hallways, lobby, and other tenantless spaces. In hotels, the guest rooms would require use of the low frequency signals, but other spaces that might require audible signals could use any listed audible appliances regardless of the frequency content of the signal being produced. This chapter of the Code addresses notification appliances connected to and controlled by a fire alarm or emergency communications system. This chapter does not address dwelling unit protection such as smoke alarms and their audible signal characteristics. Requirements for single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems can be found in Chapter 29.

It is not the intent of this section to preclude devices that have been demonstrated through peer-reviewed research to awaken occupants with hearing loss as effectively as those using the frequency and amplitude specified in this section.

Non-voice (e.g., horns) notification appliances should be listed as a "low frequency alarm" alarm appliance. Voice appliances and systems should be capable of 520 Hz ±10 percent with the appropriate harmonics.

For increased protection in the sleeping area, tactile notification in accordance with Section 18.10 might be an effective means of awakening those who have normal hearing, as well as those who are hearing impaired.

A.18.4.6.3(2) For the purposes of awakening, the low frequency signal can be produced by a listed stand-alone appliance or by a listed system consisting of a recorded waveform delivered through an amplifier and loudspeaker.

A.18.4.7 This subsection permits a more rigorous analysis and design for audible signaling. Acoustic design practice and psychoacoustic research have long recognized that for a signal to be audible, it need only penetrate the background noise in a one-third or a one octave band. The averaging resulting from A-weighted analysis and design is a simplification that often results in systems being overdesigned. This overdesign is not dangerous but can be costly and is certainly not needed for effective system performance.

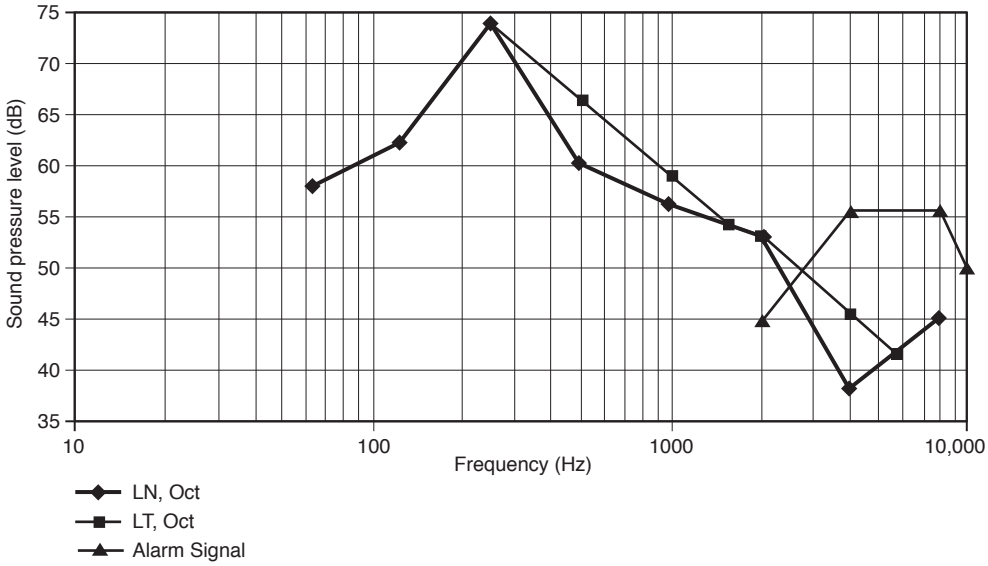
A.18.4.7.2 Noise at a lower frequency can mask a signal at an adjacent higher frequency. Thus, it is necessary to calculate the effective masked level of the noise in accordance with established procedures. Figure A.18.4.7.2 shows an example of an octave band analysis of noise along with the calculated effective masked threshold and the proposed alarm signal.

N **A.18.4.8** The intent of restricted audible mode operation (RAMO) is to be used for areas where loud sounds might be detrimental to typical occupants of the notification zones, such as early education classrooms or facilities that service people with autism spectrum disorder, other neurodiversities, or other conditions that might include sensitivity to noise, light, or other stimuli. The goal of RAMO is to ensure effectiveness of the system signals for the notification zone without causing undue distress on the occupants.

N **A.18.4.8.1.3** Lower frequency audible signals are less distressing to people with autism spectrum disorder, other neurodiversities, or sensitivity to higher frequency and louder audible signals. Note that the referenced paragraph addresses sleeping areas; however, RAMO audible appliances should have the capability to produce signals of 520 Hz ± 10 percent.

N **A.18.4.8.1.4** Although 18.4.5 is for written for private mode, the requirements are also applicable to RAMO notification zones. One of the key elements to note is that the system dB design is lowered from 15 dBA-fast over ambient to 10 dBA-fast and that visual notification appliances are required throughout the RAMO notification zones.

A.18.4.9.1 The sound content of directional sounders is very different from that of the traditional fire alarm audible notification appliances. Traditional fire alarm audible notification appliances have a strong tonal content, usually centered near the 3 kHz region. Directional sounders use broadband frequency content, usually covering most of the human audible frequency range, 20 Hz to 20 kHz. Figure A.18.4.9.1(a) compares the frequency content of a traditional fire alarm audible notification appliance to a directional sounder. This figure shows that while the fire alarm audible notification appliance clearly dominates the 3 kHz and upper harmonics, the broadband content of the directional sounder is 20 dB to 30 dB in other frequency bands or ranges. The fire alarm has an overall A-weighted sound level greater than the directional sounder and will be perceived as being louder. However, since the directional sounder has a wide spectral range, the signal



At the first octave band center frequency, the masked threshold of hearing, LT, Oct is equal to the noise level. For each subsequent center frequency, LT, Oct is the greater of either the noise level at that octave band, LN, Oct, or the masked threshold of the previous band less 7.5 dB.

FIGURE A.18.4.7.2 Threshold Masking Level Example.

penetrates the fire alarm signal in several other frequency bands as permitted by 18.4.7.

There are three main types of information that allow the brain to identify the location of a sound. The first two are known as binaural cues because they make use of the fact that we have two ears, separated by the width of our head. A sound that emanates from either side of the mid-line will arrive first at the ear closer to it and will be loudest at the ear closer to it. At low frequencies the brain recognizes differences in the arrival time of sound between the ears (interaural time differences). At higher frequencies the salient signal is the loudness/intensity difference between the sounds at each ear (interaural intensity differences). Refer to Figure A.18.4.9.1(b). For single frequencies, these cues are spatially ambiguous.

The inherent ambiguity has been described as the "cone of confusion." This arises from the fact that for any given frequency there are numerous spatial positions that generate identical timing/intensity differences. These can be graphically represented in the form of a cone, the apex of which is at the level of the external ear. The cone of confusion is the main reason for our not being able to localize pure tones.

The final piece of sound localization information processed by the brain is the head-related transfer function (HRTF). The HRTF refers to the effect the external ear has on sound. As a result of passing over the bumps or convolutions of the pinna, the sound is modified so that some frequencies are attenuated and others are amplified. Refer to Figure A.18.4.9.1(c). Although there are certain generalities in the way the pinnae modify sound, the HRTF is unique to each individual. The role of the HRTF is particularly important when determining whether a sound is in front of or behind us. In this instance the timing and intensity differences are negligible, and there is consequently very little information available to the central nervous system on which to base this decision. To locate the direction of a sound source, the larger the frequency content to overcome the ambiguities inherent to single tones, the better the accuracy.

A.18.4.9.2 *ITD*: A difference in arrival times of waveform features (such as peaks and positive-going zero crossings) at the two ears is known as the interaural time difference, or ITD. The binaural physiology is capable of using phase information from ITD cues only at low frequencies below about 1500 Hz. However, the binaural system can successfully register an ITD that occurs at a high frequency such as 4000 Hz if the signal is modulated. The modulation, in turn, must have a rate that is less than about 1000 Hz.

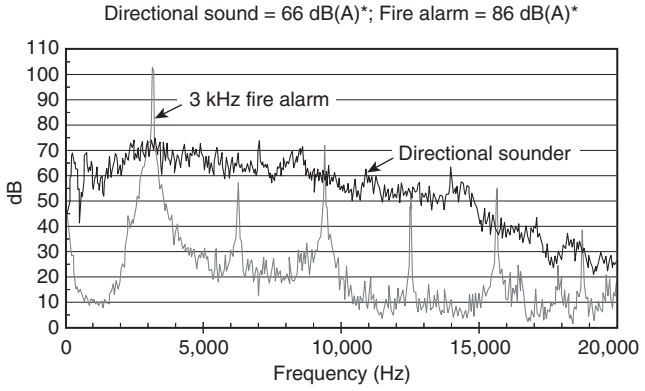
ILD: Comparison between intensities in the left and right ears is known as the interaural level difference, or ILD. ILD cues exist physically only for frequencies above about 500 Hz. They become large and reliable for frequencies above 3000 Hz, making ILD cues most effective at high frequencies.

ATF: The anatomical transfer function (ATF), also known as the head-related transfer function (HRTF), is used by listeners to resolve front–back confusion and to determine elevation. Waves that come from behind tend to be boosted in the 1000 Hz frequency region, whereas waves that come from the forward direction are boosted near 3000 Hz. The most dramatic effects occur above 4000 Hz.

These localization cues can be implemented simultaneously when the source signal is a broadband sound containing a range of low to high frequencies. For example, octave bands of 1 kHz (707 Hz–1414 Hz) for ITD, 4 kHz (2828 Hz–5856 Hz) for ILD, and 8 kHz (5657 Hz–11,314 Hz) for ATF would fall within the effective frequency ranges required in 18.4.7.

Additional information on sound localization and auditory localization cues is contained in the following *Physics Today* article, "How We Localize Sound."

The ability to pinpoint the location of a sound source is based on the physics of sound and the physiology of the human hearing mechanism. The brain processes a large amount of neural signals, some of which provide cues to the sound source's location. People are able to hear sound ranging from



* Measured at 10 ft in an anechoic room.

FIGURE A.18.4.9.1(a) Comparison of Frequency Content of a Traditional Fire Alarm Audible Notification Appliance to a Directional Sounder.

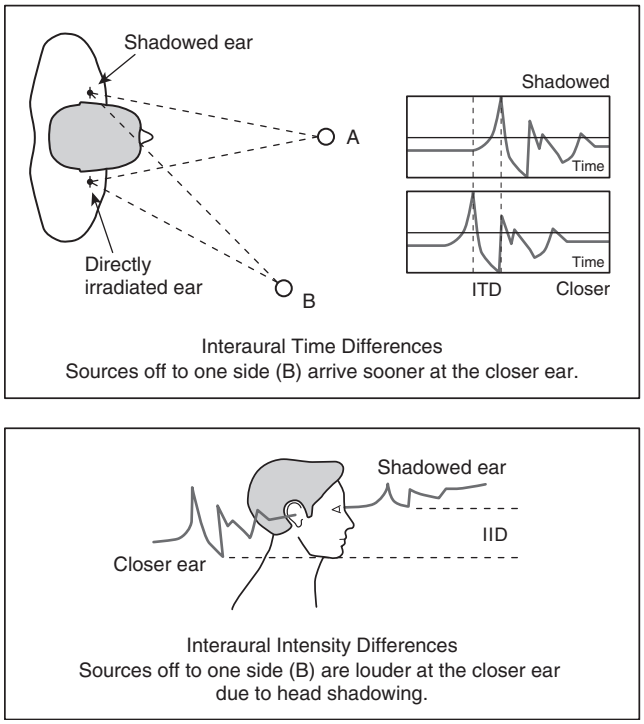


FIGURE A.18.4.9.1(b) Interaural Time and Intensity Differences of Sound.

about 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz. Unfortunately, pure tones in this frequency range provide only limited localization information. The primary localization cues are provided by interaural time differences (ITDs) (lower frequencies), interaural intensity differences (IIDs) (mid to higher frequencies), and the head-related transfer function (HRTF) (higher frequencies). In enclosed spaces that can be somewhat reverberant, the precedence effect (PE) also provides directional information.

The interaural time difference (ITD) and interaural intensity difference (IID) are termed binaural cues because they depend on both ears separated by the width of the head. At lower frequencies (i.e., longer wavelength), the time delay between arriving sound signals is detectable. ITD is most evident in frequencies below about 500 Hz with clicks or short bursts of sound. At higher frequencies (i.e., shorter wavelength), the loudness/intensity differences between the ears is more noticeable because of partial shielding of the more distant ear by the head. IID is most evident for frequencies above 3000 Hz.

The head-related transfer function (HRTF) relies on the effect of the external ear on perceived sound. The HRTF describes the transforming effect of the head, torso, and external ear on sound as it travels from the sound source to the ear canals. The HRTF changes depending on sound source location, providing an additional localization cue. HRTF operates over a range of frequencies but seems to be most effective in the 5000 Hz to 10,000 Hz range. Combined with the listener's head motion, HRTF provides an independent localization method to complement ITD and IID capabilities.

The precedence effect (PE) is important for discriminating between the direct sound signal and reflected sound, a common situation within buildings. The ear is capable of discerning and fixating on the first sound received (i.e., line-of-sight direct signal) and disregarding later signals (i.e., reflected sound). The acoustical signal arriving first at the ears suppresses the ability to hear other signals (including reverberation) that arrive up to about 40 milliseconds after the initial signal.

All of the preceding cues are utilized simultaneously when the source signal is broadband sound containing a range of low and high frequencies, and when the sound arrives in bursts rather than as steady state sound. The combination of different cues provides reinforcement and redundancy of information to enhance the ability to locate the sound source. Broadband sound tends to eliminate potential ambiguities that occur for pure tone or narrowband sound sources.

Other types of sound patterns can be used as directional sounders that can be used for audible exit marking. Some scientific research has been performed to develop a directional sounder that utilizes a tonal sound different from the example above. As with the directional sound example presented above, the development of this alternative signal is similarly rooted in the vast research data that exists for sound localization and directional auditory cues.

An example of an alternative directional sound signal can be a sequence of two harmonic two-tone complexes. This sequence starts with a complex of low fundamental frequencies of 262 Hz and 330 Hz having duration of 200 ms. This sound is then followed by a 200 ms silence. Next the sequence continues with a second sound that is a complex of low fundamental frequencies of 330 Hz and 392 Hz having a duration of 200 ms. After another 200 ms silence, this whole pattern is repeated.

Localizability was ensured by the dense harmonic structure of the signal, with closely spaced harmonics up to 20 kHz. In addition sharp signal onsets were included to aid the detection of interaural time differences, thus increasing localizability.

A.18.4.9.5 Where directional sounders are used, they should not be located on only a single exit. They should be located at all of the identified exits in the building. This is to ensure that in an evacuation or relocation the occupants utilize all of the exits and areas of refuge, not just those that have directional

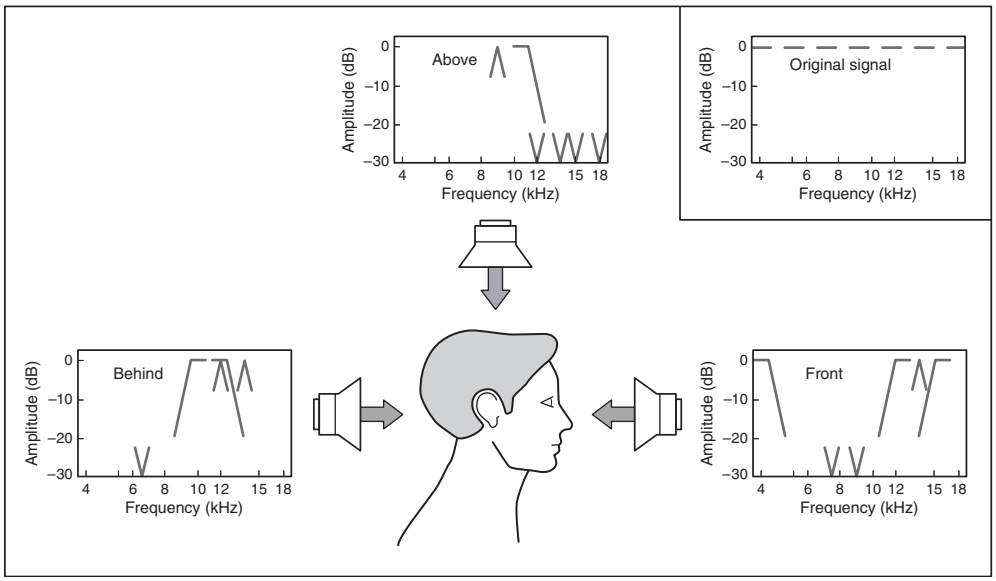


FIGURE A.18.4.9.1(c) Examples of Frequency-Dependent Attenuation for Sources in Front, Above, and Behind Listener.

sounders located near them. Some examples of exits would include the following:

(1) Code-complying exterior doors and exit discharge
(2) Code-complying exit passageway
(3) Code-complying interior stairs, including smokeproof enclosures
(4) Code-complying outside stairs
(5) Code-complying ramps
(6) Code-complying fire escapes
(7) Code-complying horizontal exits

A.18.4.12 See Annex D, Speech Intelligibility.

A.18.4.12.1 See the definition of acoustically distinguishable space in 3.3.6.

A.18.4.12.3 For example, based on the system design the following locations might not require intelligibility. See also Annex D.

(1) Private bathrooms, shower rooms, saunas, and similar rooms/areas
(2) Mechanical, electrical, elevator equipment rooms, and similar rooms/areas
(3) Elevator cars
(4) Individual offices
(5) Kitchens
(6) Storage rooms
(7) Closets
(8) Rooms/areas where intelligibility cannot reasonably be predicted

A.18.4.12.4 ADS assignments should be a part of the original design process. See the discussion in A.3.3.6. The design drawings should be used to plan and show the limits of each ADS where there is more than one.

All areas that are intended to have audible occupant notification, whether by tone only or by voice should be designated as one or more ADSs. Drawings or a table listing all ADSs should be used to indicate which ADSs will require intelligible voice communications and those that will not. The same drawings or table could be used to list audibility requirements where tones are used and to list any forms of visual or other notification or communications methods being employed in the ADS.

A.18.5 The mounting height of the appliances affects the distribution pattern and level of illumination produced by an appliance on adjacent surfaces. It is this pattern, or effect, that provides occupant notification by visual appliances. If mounted too high, the pattern is larger but at a lower level of illumination (measured in lumens per square foot or foot-candles). If mounted too low, the illumination is greater (brighter) but the pattern is smaller and might not overlap correctly with that of adjacent appliances.

A qualified designer could choose to present calculations to an authority having jurisdiction showing that it is possible to use a mounting height greater than 96 in. (2.44 m) or less than 80 in. (2.03 m), provided that an equivalent level of illumination is achieved on the adjacent surfaces. This can be accomplished by using listed higher intensity appliances or closer spacing, or both.

Engineering calculations should be prepared by qualified persons and should be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction, showing how the proposed variation achieves the same or greater level of illumination provided by the prescriptive requirements of Section 18.5.

The calculations require knowledge of calculation methods for high-intensity visual notification appliances. In addition, the calculations require knowledge of the test standards used to evaluate and list the appliance.

A.18.5.1 There are two methods of visual signaling. These are methods in which notification of an emergency condition is conveyed by direct viewing of the illuminating appliance or by means of illumination of the surrounding area.

Visual notification appliances used in the public mode must be located and must be of a type, size, intensity, and number so that the operating effect of the appliance is seen by the intended viewers regardless of the viewer's orientation.

A.18.5.1.2 Visual notification appliances for fire or emergency signaling might not be required in all rooms or spaces. For example, a system that is used for general occupant notification should not require visual signaling in closets and other spaces that are not considered as occupiable areas. However, a space of the same size used as a file room could be considered occupiable and should have coverage by notification appliances. Also, signaling intended only for staff or emergency forces might only have to be effective in very specific locations.

A.18.5.2.2 Occupant notification by visual signaling is not required by *NFPA 72* except in high noise areas *(see 18.4.1.1)*. Just as with audible occupant notification, the requirement to have such signaling originates from other governing laws, codes, or standards. Those other governing laws, codes, or standards specify the areas or spaces that require either audible, visual, or both types of occupant notification. *NFPA 72* then provides the standards for those systems.

A.18.5.3.3 Research indicates that equivalent indirect alerting is obtained between 0.1 milliseconds to 20 milliseconds. Testing above 20 milliseconds indicates that the effective candela must be increased to obtain equivalent alerting capability to that of shorter light pulse durations of 20 milliseconds or less. The effective candela rating should be increased by the value in Table A.18.5.3.3 to achieve equivalent alerting capability.

Δ **A.18.5.3.5** Effective intensity is the conventional method of equating the brightness of a flashing light to that of a steady-burning light as seen by a human observer. The units of effective intensity are expressed in candelas (or candlepower, which is equivalent to candelas). For example, a flashing light that has an effective intensity of 15 cd has the same apparent brightness to an observer as a 15 cd steady-burning light source.

Measurement of effective intensity is usually done in a laboratory using specialized photometric equipment. Accurate field measurement of effective intensity is not practical. Other units of measure for the intensity of flashing lights, such as peak candela or flash energy, do not correlate directly to effective intensity and are not used in this Code.

Visual notification appliances might be used to signal fire or other emergencies and might be intended to initiate evacuation, relocation, or some other behavior. Lights intended to initiate evacuation due to fire are required by the Code to be clear or white. Colored lights, such as amber/yellow lights, might be used in a combination system for any emergency (e.g., fire, bomb, chemical, weather) when the intent is for the

signal recipient to seek additional information from other sources (e.g., voice, text displays).

Example Scenario 1: A building has a fire alarm system used for general evacuation. A separate mass notification system is used to provide voice instructions and information in the event of non-fire emergencies. The fire alarm system would have white/clear visual notification appliances intended to alert occupants of the need to evacuate. The mass notification system would have amber/yellow visual notification appliances that are intended to signal the need to get additional information from either audible voice announcements, text or graphical displays, or other information sources controlled or operated from the mass notification system. In the event that both systems are activated at the same time, the visual notification appliances should be synchronized per 18.5.5.7.2.

Example Scenario 2: A building has a mass notification system that provides information and instructions for a variety of emergency situations, including fire. Fire alarm initiation might be by a stand-alone fire detection system or might be an integral part of the mass notification system. In the event of an emergency, textual audible appliances are used to provide information. Visual signaling could be accomplished using one set of clear or colored visual notification appliances to indicate the need to get additional information. Visual textual information can be provided by text or graphic display or other visual information appliances. The content of the audible and visual messages will vary depending on the emergency.

A.18.5.3.7 It is not the intent to establish viewing and synchronization requirements for viewing locations outdoors. As an example, there is no need for Floor No. 1 to be synchronized with Floor No. 2 if there is no visual coupling as in an atrium.

Studies have shown that the effect of visual notification appliances on photosensitive epilepsy lessens with distance and viewing angle.

As long as the composite flash rate is no greater than that produced by two listed visual notification appliances as allowed by 18.5.5.7.2, compliance is achieved.

Table A.18.5.3.3 Visual Notification Appliance Rating Multipliers for Equivalent Alerting Capability

Rated Light Pulse Duration (milliseconds)	Rating Multiplier
20	1.00
25	1.22
30	1.43
35	1.64
40	1.83
45	2.02
50	2.20
55	2.37
60	2.54
65	2.70
70	2.85
75	3.00
80	3.14
85	3.28
90	3.41
95	3.54
100	3.67

Example: A ballroom has multiple synchronized visual notification appliances operating during an emergency, the doors exiting the ballroom are opened, and the visual notification appliances outside in the lobby and corridor are also operating. The visual notification appliances in the corridor and lobby are synchronized with each other, but the visual notification appliances outside the ballroom are not synchronized with the visual notification appliances inside the ballroom. This would be an acceptable application because the composite flash rate does not exceed that allowed by 18.5.5.7.2.

A.18.5.4 The prescriptive requirements of Section 18.5 assume the use of appliances having very specific characteristics of light color, intensity, distribution, and so on. The appliance and application requirements are based on extensive research. However, the research was limited to typical residential and commercial applications such as school classrooms, offices, hallways, and hotel rooms. While these specific appliances and applications will likely work in other spaces, their use might not be the most effective solution and might not be as reliable as other visual notification methods.

For example, in large warehouse spaces and large distribution spaces such as super stores, it is possible to provide visual signaling using the appliances and applications of this chapter. However, mounting visual notification appliances at a height of 80 in. to 96 in. (2.03 m to 2.44 m) along aisles with rack storage subjects the visual notification appliances to frequent mechanical damage by forklift trucks and stock. Also, the number of appliances required would be very high. It might be possible to use other appliances and applications not specifically addressed by this chapter at this time. Alternative applications must be carefully engineered for reliability and function and would require permission of the authority having jurisdiction.

Tests of a system in large warehouse/super stores designed using the prescriptive approach of 18.5.5.7 showed that high ambient light levels resulted in both indirect and direct signaling effects. The signal-to-noise ratio produced by the operating visual notification appliances was low in many locations. However, with visual notification appliances located over the aisles or unobstructed by stock, indirect and some direct notification was sometimes achieved. Direct notification occurs even when occupants do not look up toward the ceiling-mounted visual notification appliances due to the extended cone of vision shown in Figure A.18.5.4(a). The visual notification appliance intensity and spacing resulting from the prescriptive design was generally sufficient for occupant notification by a combination of direct and indirect signaling. Testing showed that the best performance was achieved where visual notification appliances were directly over aisles or where visual notification appliances in adjacent aisles were not obstructed by stock. The performance-based design method will almost always result in aisles not having a line of visual notification appliances in them, because the spacing of visual notification appliances can be greater than the spacing of aisles. Also, it is recognized that aisles might be relocated after installation of the system. Good design practice is to place visual notification appliances over aisles, especially those that are likely to remain unchanged such as main aisles, and over checkout areas. Where reorganization of aisles results in visual notification appliances not in or over an aisle, or where that is the base design, it is important to have a clear view from that aisle to a nearby visual notification appliance. See Figure A.18.5.4(b). Some spaces might have marginal visual notification appliance effect (direct or indirect). However, occupants in these large stores and storage

occupancies move frequently and place themselves in a position where they receive notification via the visual notification appliances. In addition, complete synchronization of the visual notification appliances in the space produced a desirable effect.

Visual notification using the methods contained in 18.5.5.7 is achieved by indirect signaling. This means the viewer need not actually see the appliance, just the effect of the appliance. This can be achieved by producing minimum illumination on surfaces near the appliance, such as the floor, walls, and desks. There must be a sufficient change in illumination to be noticeable. The tables and charts in Section 18.5 specify a certain candela-effective light intensity for certain size spaces. The data were based on extensive research and testing. Appliances do not typically produce the same light intensity when measured off-axis. To ensure that the appliance produces the desired illumination (effect), it must have some distribution of light intensity to the areas surrounding the appliance. UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories*, specifies the distribution of light shown to provide effective notification by indirect visual signaling.

A.18.5.5.1 The requirements for the location of appliances within a building or structure are intended to apply to visual notification appliances applied in accordance with 18.5.5.7, 18.5.5.8, and 18.5.5.10. The mounting and location of appliances installed using the performance-based alternative of 18.5.5.9 can be located differently, provided they meet the intended performance requirements. Other appliances, such as graphic displays, video screens, and so on, should be located so that they meet their intended performance.

Where low ceiling heights or other conditions do not permit mounting at a minimum of 80 in. (2.03 m), visual notification appliances can be mounted at a lower height. However, lowering the mounting height reduces the area of coverage for that visual notification appliance. The performance-based methods of 18.5.5.9 can be used to determine the area of coverage. Visual notification appliance mounting height should not be lowered below the plane of normal human viewing [approximately 5 ft (1.5 m)] except where ceiling heights limit the mounting position.

The mounting height requirement of 80 in. to 96 in. (2.03 m to 2.44 m) does not address the possibility of conditions where ceiling heights are less than 80 in. (2.03 m). The range that is permitted [80 in. to 96 in. (2.03 m to 2.44 m)] ensures that visual notification appliances are not mounted too high, which would result in lower levels of illumination on surrounding walls and on the floor. The lower limit of the range ensures that a minimum percentage of the surrounding surfaces is illuminated and that the top of the illuminated pattern is at or above the plane of normal human viewing [approximately 5 ft (1.5 m)]. Wall mounting of visual notification appliances, which are listed only for wall mounting, can result in little or no illumination above the plane of the visual notification appliance. In the case of lower ceiling heights and mounting close to the ceiling, the level of illumination on the floor and surrounding walls is not reduced but the walls have a near 100 percent illuminated or "painted" area because the visual notification appliance is close to the ceiling. That is, there is little or no wall surface above the plane of the visual notification appliance that is not illuminated when the visual notification appliance is mounted close to the ceiling. Thus, when a

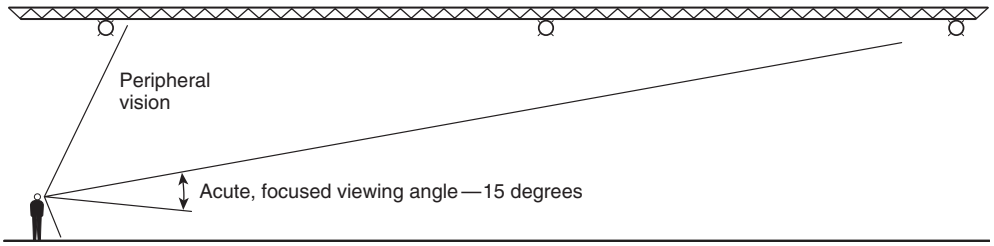
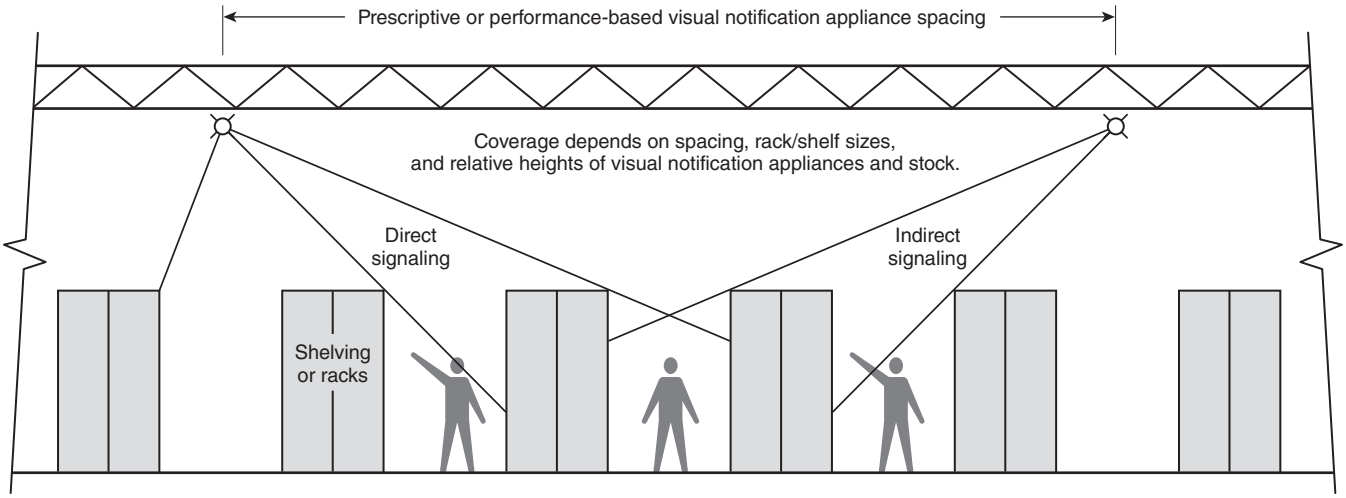


FIGURE A.18.5.4(a) Extended Cone of Vision. ***(Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)***



Δ **FIGURE A.18.5.4(b) Visual Notification Appliances in Stores.** ***(Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)***

visual notification appliance is mounted lower than the minimum [80 in. (2.03 m)] but still close to the ceiling, the only loss of signal is the smaller pattern produced on the horizontal plane (floor).

In the case where the only change is a lower mounting height due to a lower ceiling height, the room size covered by a visual notification appliance of a given value should be reduced by twice the difference between the minimum mounting height of 80 in. (2.03 m) and the actual, lower mounting height. For example, if a 15 cd effective visual notification appliance that normally covers a 20 ft (6.1 m) square space is being used and the height of the space is 63 in. (1.6 m) and the visual notification appliance is mounted at 59 in. (1.5 m), the visual notification appliance can only cover a 16.5 ft (5.0 m) square space: 20 ft –2 (80 in. – 59 in.) (1 ft/12 in.) = 16.5 ft (5.0 m).

The room size reduction assumes that the horizontal pattern on each side of the visual notification appliance is reduced by the same amount that the visual notification appliance height is reduced.

A.18.5.5.4 Visual notification appliances must be listed for either wall mounting or ceiling mounting. The effectiveness of ceiling-mounted appliances does not depend on them being mounted on a surface. Therefore, the Code permits them to be suspended below the ceiling using proper electrical installation methods. Appliances mounted parallel to the floor, whether on a ceiling or suspended, can sometimes significantly reduce installation costs and provide better coverage.

In convention spaces and areas with racking and shelving, wall-mounted appliances are frequently obstructed or subjected to mechanical damage. Ceiling mounting (or suspending) the appliances can prevent problems and increases the ability for the appliance to cover the floor area through direct and indirect signaling. See A.18.5.4.

A.18.5.5.5 Visual notification appliances must be listed for either wall mounting or ceiling mounting. The effectiveness of ceiling-mounted appliances does not depend on them being mounted on a surface. Therefore, the Code permits them to be suspended below the ceiling using proper electrical installation methods. Appliances mounted parallel to the floor, whether on a ceiling or suspended, can sometimes significantly reduce installation costs and provide better coverage.

In convention spaces and areas with racking and shelving, wall-mounted appliances are frequently obstructed or subjected to mechanical damage. Ceiling mounting (or suspending) the appliances can prevent problems and increases the ability for the appliance to cover the floor area through direct and indirect signaling. See A.18.5.4.

A.18.5.5.6 Obstructions to consider include, but are not limited to, light fixtures, duct work, structural elements, and video monitors. In corridors, it is the viewing of the appliance which is of concern. In rooms, it is the pattern of light produced on walls and floors that might be of concern.

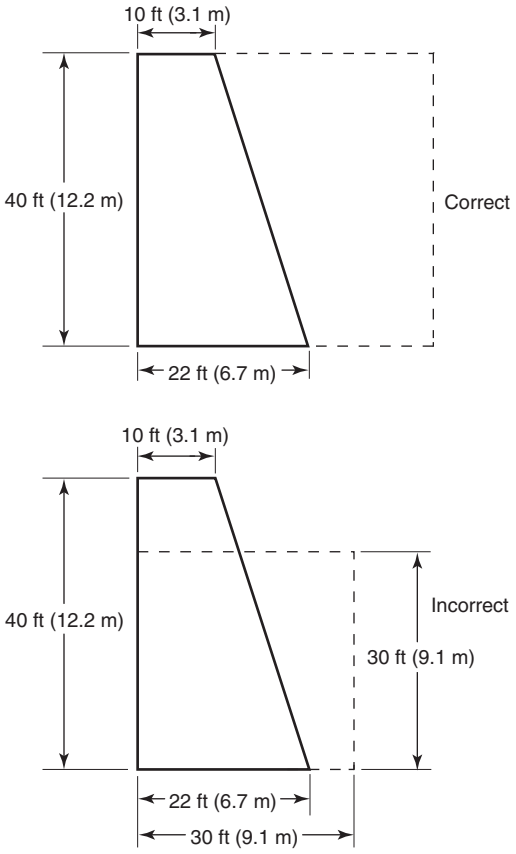
A.18.5.5.7 The visual notification appliance intensities listed in Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) or Table 18.5.5.7.1(b), 18.5.5.8, or Table 18.5.5.10.3 or determined in accordance with the performance requirements of 18.5.5.9 are the minimum required intensities. It is acceptable to use a higher intensity visual notification appliance in lieu of the minimum required intensity.

Areas large enough to exceed the rectangular dimensions given in Figure A.18.5.5.7(a) through Figure A.18.5.5.7(c) require additional appliances. Often, proper placement of appliances can be facilitated by breaking down the area into multiple squares and dimensions that fit most appropriately *[see Figure A.18.5.5.7(a) through Figure A.18.5.5.7(d)]*. An area that is 40 ft (12.2 m) wide and 80 ft (24.4 m) long can be covered with two 60 cd appliances. Irregular areas and areas with dividers or partitions need more careful planning to make certain that at least one 15 cd appliance is installed for each 20 ft × 20 ft (6.1 m × 6.1 m) area and that light from the appliance is not blocked.

A.18.5.5.7.1 In rooms with an average ambient level greater than 500 lx, visual notification appliance spacing should be reduced by 30 percent (i.e., listed spacing × 0.7) or the required effective candela should be increased by 100 percent (i.e., effective candela × 2.0).

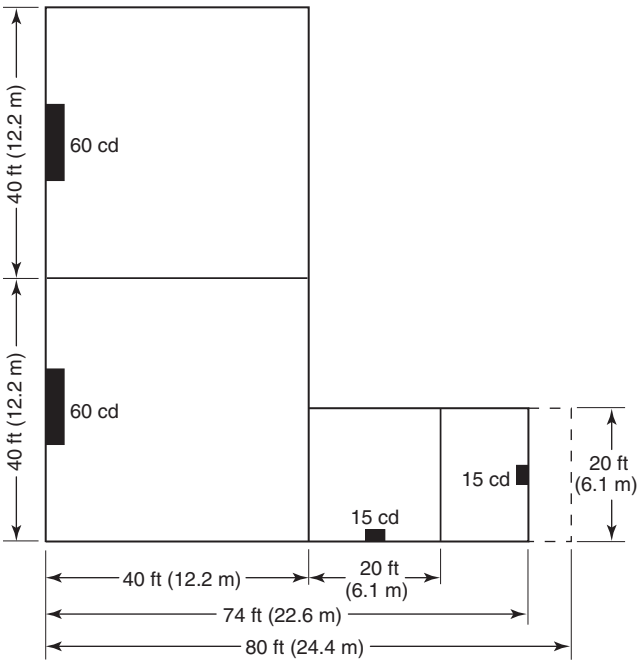
Ambient light levels have an effect on the proper candela ratings in indirect viewing of visual notification appliances. The amount of ambient light is normally from two sources: artificial lighting and natural light from outside.

In rooms or areas requiring artificial illumination, the ambient lux value for selecting candela values should be based on the maximum light intensity that the artificial light sources provide.



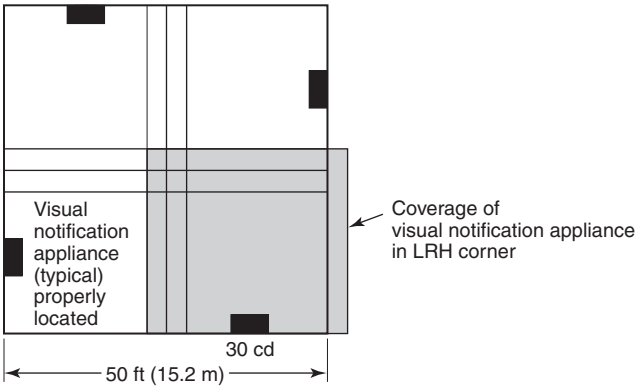
Note: Broken lines represent imaginary walls.

FIGURE A.18.5.5.7(a) Irregular Area Spacing.



Note: Broken lines represent imaginary walls.

FIGURE A.18.5.5.7(b) Spacing of Wall-Mounted Visual Notification Appliances in Rooms.



Δ **FIGURE A.18.5.5.7(c) Room Spacing Allocation — Correct.**

In rooms or areas that have natural outside light, the ambient lux value should be that of the maximum light level with the shades or curtains fully open during daylight hours and with the artificial lighting illuminated.

Ambient light can be measured using a calibrated light meter in the approximate center of the room, 4 ft (1.2 m) above the floor, with the sensor facing upward. The light meter should measure light level from 0 to 10,000 lx with a precision accuracy of ±5 percent.

For design purposes, typical ambient illumination for various locations and activities are shown in Table A.18.5.5.7.1 and can be used as a guide for the selection of appropriate visual signal intensity.

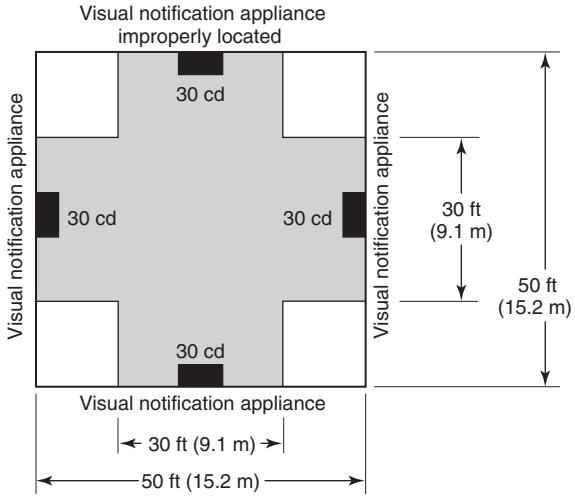


FIGURE A.18.5.5.7(d) Room Spacing Allocation — Incorrect.

Table A.18.5.5.7.1 Typical Ambient Illumination for Various Locations

Locations	Illumination (lx)
Unoccupied rooms (only emergency lighting active)	100–150
Warehouses, homes, theaters, archives	150
Classrooms	250
Normal offices, study library, show rooms, laboratories	500
Supermarkets, mechanical workshops	750
Detailed work spaces, operating rooms	1000

Note: Table derived from "Recommended Light Levels," published by National Optical Astronomy Observatory.

A.18.5.5.7.2(2) The field of view is based on the focusing capability of the human eye specified as 120 degrees in the Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) *Lighting Handbook: Reference and Application*. The apex of this angle is the viewer's eye. In order to ensure compliance with the requirements of 18.5.5.7.2, this angle should be increased to approximately 135 degrees.

Testing has shown that high flash rates of high-intensity visual notification appliances can pose a potential risk of seizure to people with photosensitive epilepsy. To reduce this risk, more than two visual notification appliances are not permitted in any field of view unless their flashes are synchronized. This does not preclude synchronization of appliances that are not within the same field of view.

A.18.5.5.7.6 This subsection is also intended to permit ceiling-mounted visual notification appliances to be suspended below the ceiling, provided the visual notification appliance height is not below the viewing plane for any ceiling height.

A.18.5.5.8 Because the occupants are usually alert and moving, and because their vision is focused by the narrowness of the space, corridor signaling is permitted to be by direct viewing of lower-intensity (15 cd) appliances. That is, the alert-

ing is intended to be done by direct viewing of the visual notification appliance, not necessarily by its reflection off of surfaces (indirect viewing) as required for rooms in 18.5.5.7.

Note that it is acceptable to use 18.5.5.7 (Spacing in Rooms) to determine the number and location of visual notification appliances in corridors. If 18.5.5.7 is used, it is not necessary to have a corridor visual notification appliance within 15 ft (4.6 m) of the end of the corridor.

See Figure A.18.5.5.8 for corridor spacing for visual notification appliances.

A.18.5.5.8.4 Visual notification appliances in corridors are permitted to be mounted on walls or on ceilings in accordance with 18.5.5.8. Where there are more than two appliances in a field of view, they need to be synchronized.

Note that it is acceptable to use 18.5.5.7 (Spacing in Rooms) to determine the number and location of visual notification appliances in corridors. If 18.5.5.7 is used, it is not necessary to have a corridor visual notification appliance within 15 ft (4.5 m) of the end of the corridor. It is not the intent of this section to require visual notification appliances at or near every exit or exit access from a corridor.

A.18.5.5.9 A design that delivers a minimum illumination of 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (footcandles) [0.4036 lumens/m^2 (lux)] to all occupiable spaces where visual notification is required is considered to meet the minimum light intensity requirements of 18.5.5.7.2(1). This level of illumination has been shown to alert people by indirect viewing (e.g., reflected light) in a large variety of rooms with a wide range of ambient lighting conditions.

The illumination from a visual notification appliance at a particular distance is equal to the effective intensity of the appliance divided by the distance squared (the inverse square law). Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) and Table 18.5.5.7.1(b) are based on applying the inverse square law to provide an illumination of at least 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) throughout each room size. For example, a 60 cd effective intensity appliance in a 40 ft × 40 ft (12.2 m × 12.2 m) room produces 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) on the opposite wall 40 ft (12.2 m) away [60 ÷ (40 ft)^2 or (60 ÷ (12.2 m)^2)]. This same 60 cd effective intensity appliance produces 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) on the adjacent wall 20 ft (6.1 m) away [60 × 25% ÷ (20 ft)^2 or (60 × 25% ÷ (12.2 m)^2)] where the minimum light output of the appliance at 90 degrees off-axis is 25 percent of rated output per UL 1638, *Visible Signaling Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems, Including Accessories*. Similarly, a 110 cd visual notification appliance will produce at least 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) in a 54 ft × 54 ft (16.5 m × 16.5 m) room. Calculated intensities in Table 18.5.5.7.1(a) and Table 18.5.5.7.1(b) have been adjusted to standardize the intensity options of presently available products and take into account additional reflections in room corners and higher direct viewing probability when there is more than one appliance in a room.

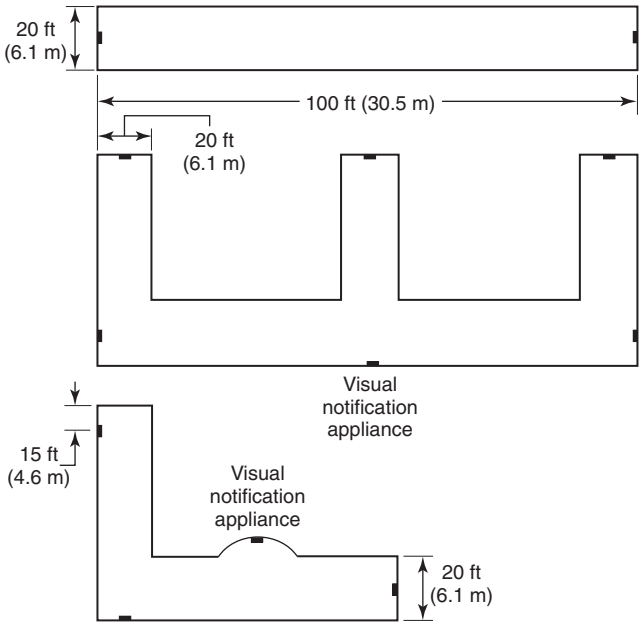


FIGURE A.18.5.5.8 Corridor Spacing for Visual Notification.

The application of visual notification appliances in outdoor areas has not been tested and is not addressed in this Code. Visual notification appliances that are mounted outdoors should be listed for outdoor use (under UL 1638, for example) and should be located for direct viewing because reflected light will usually be greatly reduced.

A.18.5.5.10.3 The required intensity of a visual notification appliance used to alert sleeping persons is dependent on how close it is to the ceiling. A visual notification appliance that is within 24 in. (610 mm) of the ceiling might be partially obscured by smoke at the time it is called upon to operate. Therefore, the Code requires it to have a higher candela effective rating. The most common way to use the table is to decide first where the appliance will be located. Then, determine how far that is from the ceiling. If the distance is greater than or equal to 24 in. (610 mm), the appliance is permitted to have an output of 110 cd eff. If the distance from the appliance to the ceiling is less than 24 in. (610 mm), the appliance must have a rated output of at least 177 cd eff.

For example, if an appliance is to be wall mounted, the lens is required by 18.5.5.1 to be mounted not less than 80 in. (2.03 m) and not greater than 96 in. (2.44 m) above the finished floor. If it intended to be installed at 90 in. (2.29 m) and the ceiling height is 10 ft (3 m), the distance to the ceiling would be 30 in. (760 mm). Table 18.5.5.10.3 then indicates that the appliance must have a light output rated at 110 cd eff (or greater).

A second example might be an appliance that is part of a smoke detector base. Smoke detectors are required by Chapter 17 of this Code to be located either on the ceiling or on a wall, no more than 12 in. down from the ceiling to the top of the detector. Therefore, a visual notification appliance on a smoke detector base will be less than 24 in. (610 mm) from the ceiling. Table 18.5.5.10.3, then indicates that the appliance must have a light output rated at 177 cd eff (or greater).

Note that the requirement for increasing the intensity when mounted close to the ceiling applies only to visual notification appliances used in sleeping areas to awaken sleeping people. It is assumed that in nonsleeping situations, a visual notification appliance is not needed to alert someone if there is a developing smoke layer.

A.18.5.5.10.4 For sleeping areas, the use of visual notification appliances with other intensities at distances greater than 16 ft (4.9 m) has not been researched and is not addressed in this Code.

Visual notification is intended to be provided in sleeping areas at a distance not to exceed 16 ft (4.9 m) from the expected location of a pillow on a bed located within the room. The intent of the visual appliance is to wake a hearing-impaired individual who is sleeping. Individuals with hearing impairments might also sleep in other areas including the living room, family room, and den of a dwelling unit and living areas of guest rooms within a hotel or motel. Visual notification complying with 18.5.5.10.3 would be a benefit to an individual with a hearing impairment in any areas that might reasonably be used for sleeping.

A.18.6 Though the number of visual notification appliances might be reduced in private operating mode settings, visual notification appliances might still need to be considered in spaces occupied by the public or the hearing impaired or subject to other laws or codes.

A.18.8.1.2 The tone signal is used to evaluate the sound pressure level produced by loudspeaker appliances because of the fluctuating sound pressure level of voice or recorded messages.

A.18.9 Textual and graphical visual appliances are selected and installed to provide temporary text, permanent text, or symbols. Textual and graphical visual appliances are most commonly used in the private mode for fire alarm systems. The use of microprocessors with computer monitors and printers has resulted in the ability to provide detailed information in the form of text and graphics to persons charged with directing emergency response and evacuation. Textual and graphical visual appliances are also used in the public mode to communicate emergency response and evacuation information directly to the occupants or inhabitants of the area protected by the system. For both private mode and public mode signaling, text and graphic annunciators can provide information about prealarm, alarm, trouble, and supervisory conditions. Because textual and graphical visual appliances do not necessarily have the ability to alert, they should only be used to supplement audible or visual notification appliances.

Textual and graphical visual information should be of a size and visual quality that is easily read. Many factors influence the readability of textual visual appliances, including the following:

(1) Size and color of the text or graphic
(2) Distance from the point of observation
(3) Observation time
(4) Contrast
(5) Background luminance
(6) Lighting
(7) Stray lighting (glare)
(8) Shadows
(9) Physiological factors

While many of these factors can be influenced by the equipment manufacturer and by the building designers, there is no readily available method to measure legibility.

A.18.9.4 Parts of this section on text characteristics are based on Section 703.5 of the updated accessibility guidelines in the US Access Board's ADA-ABA-AG.

A.18.9.4.2 Signs are more legible for persons with low vision when characters contrast as much as possible with their background. Additional factors affecting the ease with which the text can be distinguished from its background include shadows cast by lighting sources, surface glare, and the uniformity of the text and its background colors and textures.

Stroke width-to-height ratios are an important part of character legibility and are affected by contrast. Ratios for light characters on a dark background and dark characters on a light background differ because light characters or symbols tend to spread or bleed into the adjacent dark background. To accommodate these differences, recommendations for symbol stroke width-to-character height ratios are as follows:

(1) Positive image — Dark characters on a light background, ratio of 1:6 to 1:8
(2) Negative image — Light characters on a dark background, ratio of 1:8 to 1:10

Source: Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Human Factors Awareness Course.

A.18.9.4.4 The use of all uppercase characters in messages should be avoided as it decreases legibility. The exception is one- or two-word commands or statements such as stop, go, or exit stair.

A.18.9.4.7 Paragraph 18.9.4.7 and the associated table does not apply to text and graphics displayed on desktop monitors. The Code does not list any specific sizing requirements for desktop monitors. However, 18.9.3 does require them to be clear and legible at the intended viewing distance. Other requirements in 18.9.4 such as contrast, sans serif fonts, and so forth should still apply to desktop displays. The specific requirements of Table 18.9.4.7 are taken directly from Section 703.5 of the updated accessibility guidelines in the US Access Board's ADA-ABA-AG. The table has been reformatted to be consistent with other parts of *NFPA 72*.

A.18.9.4.8 The minimum height for textual and graphic visual appliances is given as 40 in. (1.02 m) above the ground or finished floor. However, the character or symbol sizes should be based on the height of the highest character or symbol displayed by the appliance.

A.18.10.2 Notification appliances including, but not limited to, supplemental tactile notification appliances are available for the deaf and hard of hearing. Tactile notification appliances can be capable of awakening people. Such appliances can, through hard wiring into the fire alarm system or by wireless methods, initiate in response to the activation of an audible smoke alarm.

Some tests show that visual notification appliances might not be effective in awakening some sleeping individuals during an emergency. Some tactile notification appliances can be more effective in awakening individuals, regardless of hearing levels, from sleep. See the FPRF report, *Review of Alarm Technologies for Deaf and Hard of Hearing Populations*, and A.29.5.10 for further details.

A.21.1 Fire alarm systems, signaling systems, and emergency communications systems are often part of a large, integrated system serving a building or area. Figure A.21.1 shows examples of individual systems that might be part of an integrated system.

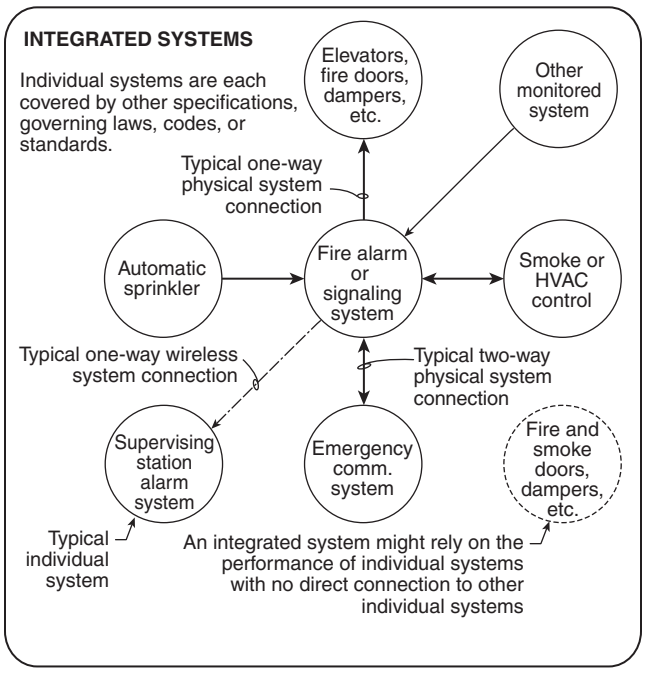


FIGURE A.21.1 Integrated Systems. ***(Source: R.P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)***

A fire alarm system might monitor the status of one of the other individual systems or provide a form of output to control another individual system, such as a smoke control system or an elevator controller.

In some cases, the fire alarm system shares information and control in two directions with another individual system. *NFPA 72* covers only the fire alarm or signaling system in the circuits powered by it, not any part of the other individual systems.

See NFPA 3 and NFPA 4 for additional information on integrated systems.

A.21.2.1 The performance of automatic emergency control functions refers to their normal operation. For instance, it is all right to shut down elevator mainline power when the system has been designed to do so.

N **A.21.2.2** Examples of emergency life safety operation include, but are not limited to, egress lighting and elevator operation.

A.21.2.4 Emergency control function interface devices can be located far from the device to be actuated, such as air-handling units and exhaust fans located on the roof. The requirement for monitoring installation wiring for integrity only applies to the wiring between the fire alarm control unit and the emergency control function interface device. For example, it does not apply to the wiring between the emergency control function interface device and a motor stop/start control relay, or between the emergency control function interface device and the equipment to be controlled (e.g., air-handling units and exhaust fans). The location of the emergency control function interface device within 3 ft (0.9 m) without metal raceway or metal armored cable or 20 ft (6 m) in metal raceway or metal armored cable applies to the point of interface and not to remotely located equipment.

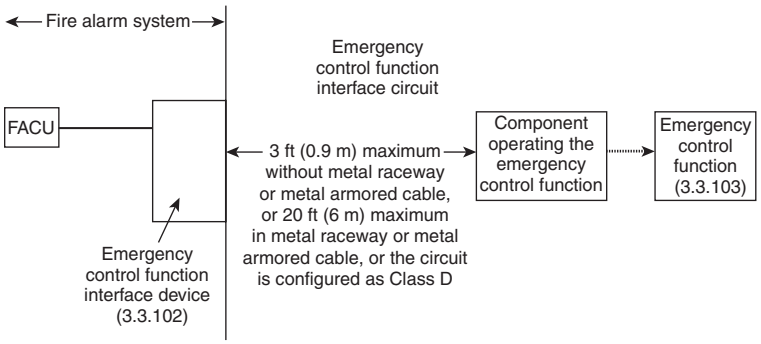
Where Class D circuits are utilized to actuate emergency control functions (such as but not limited to door closers, AHU shutdown, and damper controls), the fire alarm control point is not required to be within 3 ft (0.9 m) without metal raceway or metal armored cable or 20 ft (6 m) in metal raceway or metal armored cable of the interface point to the system or device to be controlled. It is important to note that in some cases these control circuits are not part of the fire alarm system but rather part of the other systems performing the functions. See 12.6.7 for reference, and see Figure A.21.2.4 for additional details.

A.21.3 The terms *machinery space*, *control space*, *machine room*, and *control room* are defined in *NFPA 70* and ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.

A.21.3.2 In facilities without a building alarm system, dedicated function fire alarm control units are required by 21.3.2 for elevator recall in order that the elevator recall systems be monitored for integrity and have primary and secondary power meeting the requirements of this Code.

The fire alarm control unit used for this purpose should be located in an area that is normally occupied and should have audible and visible indicators to annunciate supervisory (elevator recall) and trouble conditions; however, no form of general occupant notification or evacuation signal is required or intended by 21.3.2.

A.21.3.5 Smoke detectors should not be installed in outdoor locations or locations that are open to the weather (such as unenclosed elevator lobbies in open parking structures), because such environments can exceed the parameters of the detector listing and can result in unwanted alarms. *(See 21.3.10.)*



N **FIGURE A.21.2.4 Emergency Control Function Interface.**

A.21.3.7 Since it is permitted by ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, to have access for fire alarm initiating devices installed inside elevator hoistways, the following are examples for proposed methods for providing such access (other methods could be acceptable if approved by the authority having jurisdiction):

(1) Provide an access hatch door and associated protective guard for a spot type fire detector, where the fire detector is installed within the protective guard.
(2) Provide an air sampling-type detector as specified in 17.7.4.6 installed outside the hoistway with its sampling tube installed to sample the air within the hoistway.
(3) If heat detection is required, linear heat detectors with connection points located outside the hoistway or spot type heat detectors installed in accordance with A.21.3.7(1) are acceptable.
(4) If a waterflow switch is provided per 21.3.3.2, install the waterflow switch outside the hoistway. The use of a time delay capability for this device is acceptable in order to ensure that water supply pressure fluctuations do not initiate unwanted Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

A.21.3.8 This requirement applies to smoke and heat detectors installed in the hoistway. It is important to note that the hoistway includes the pit. The location of smoke or heat detectors will, most likely, require special consideration in order to provide the intended response of early detection of fire in the elevator pit. The location of these detectors will likely need to be below the lowest level of recall in order to provide an adequate response. Since there is no real ceiling at this location to allow installation using the spacing provisions of Chapter 17, the provisions of 17.7.4.1.3 and 17.4.8 should be considered, which allows detectors to be placed closer to the hazard in a position where the detector can intercept the smoke or heat. Also refer to A.21.3.14.2(3).

A.21.3.9 It should be noted that smoke detectors installed in hoistways can be a source of nuisance activation. Therefore, hoistways need smoke detectors specifically intended for those types of spaces (environments).

A.21.3.10 The objective of elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is to have the elevator automatically return to the recall level before fire can affect the safe operation of the elevator. This includes both the safe mechanical operation of the elevator, as well as the delivery of passengers to a safe lobby location. Where ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, specifies the use of fire alarm initiating devices used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, these devices are expected to provide the earliest response to situations that would require Phase I Emergency Recall Operations. The use of other automatic fire detection is only intended where smoke detection would not be appropriate due to the environment. Where ambient conditions prohibit the installation of smoke detectors, the selection and location of other automatic fire detection should be evaluated to ensure the best response is achieved. When heat detectors are used, consideration should be given to both detector temperature and time lag characteristics (Response Time Index). The consideration of a low temperature rating alone might not provide the earliest response. It should be noted that smoke detectors installed in hoistways can be a source of nuisance activation. Therefore, hoistways need smoke detectors specifically intended for those types of spaces (environments). Performance-based selection of specific automatic fire detection suitable for elevator hoistways can be based on Annex B as acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

A.21.3.14.1 Refer to the definition of *Group Automatic Operation* in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.

In addition to performing elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the Designated Level, the elevator system, upon receiving the fire alarm system output specified in 21.3.14.1(1), 21.3.14.1(2), or 21.3.14.1(3), will also actuate the elevator car visual signal (firefighter's hat) in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.

A.21.3.14.2 Refer to for the definition of *Group Automatic Operation* in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.

In addition to preforming elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the Alternate Level, the elevator system, upon receiving the fire alarm system output specified in 21.3.14.2(1), 21.3.14.2(2), or 21.3.14.2(3) will also actuate the elevator car visual signal (firefighter's hat) in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.

A.21.3.14.2(3) Where initiating devices are located in the elevator hoistway at or below the lowest level of recall, ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, requires that the elevator be sent to the upper recall level. Note that the lowest level of recall could be the designated level or alternate level as determined by the local authority for the particular installation. Also note that the elevator hoistway, as defined in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, includes the elevator pit.

A.21.4.1 When determining desired performance, consideration should be given to the temperature and response time characteristics/index (RTI) of both the sprinkler and the heat detector to ensure that the heat detector will operate prior to the sprinkler, because a lower temperature rating alone might not provide earlier response.

A.21.4.2 The purpose of spacing heat detectors in close proximity to each sprinkler is to ensure the operation of the disconnecting means upon heat detection prior to the operation of any sprinkler installed in those locations. Spot-type heat detectors or linear heat detectors are acceptable.

A.21.4.3 Care should be taken to ensure that elevator power cannot be interrupted due to water pressure surges in the sprinkler system. The intent of the Code is to ensure that the switch and the system as a whole do not have the capability of introducing a time delay into the sequence. The use of a switch with a time delay mechanism set to zero does not meet the intent of the Code, because it is possible to introduce a time delay after the system has been accepted. This might occur in response to unwanted alarms caused by surges or water movement, rather than addressing the underlying cause of the surges or water movement (often due to air in the piping). Permanently disabling the delay in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions should be considered acceptable.

A.21.4.4 Figure A.21.4.4 illustrates one method of monitoring elevator shunt trip control power for integrity.

A.21.5 The continuous monitoring of smoke and temperature is to allow the responding firefighters to know when the tenability conditions at the floor elevator lobbies are changing.

This can be accomplished at a minimum by monitoring elevator lobbies, machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, or control spaces smoke detector(s) for the presence of smoke and a minimum of three ranges of temperature in the elevator lobbies, machine rooms, machinery spaces, or control rooms that provide full bodily access for firefighters, as follows:

(1) Normal ≤90°F (32°C)
(2) Monitoring (supervisory) between 90°F (32°C) and 135°F (57°C)
(3) Unsafe (alarm) above 135°F (57°C)

Indications at the fire alarm control unit would typically be as follows:

For smoke:

(1) No indication for normal
(2) Red/alarm messaging or unsafe

For heat:

(1) Green (no indication on fire alarm control unit) for a normal range
(2) Amber/yellow/supervisory messaging for monitor range
(3) Red/alarm messaging for unsafe

Note 1: Temperature monitoring should not be required in areas or locations not accessible to firefighters, such as elevator control spaces and elevator machinery spaces located inside the elevator hoistway.

Note 2: If fire service access elevators or occupant evacuation elevators are provided in buildings not provided with a fire command center or emergency command center, such as low-rise buildings, the required annunciator(s) should be installed in another approved location as determined by the authority having jurisdiction.

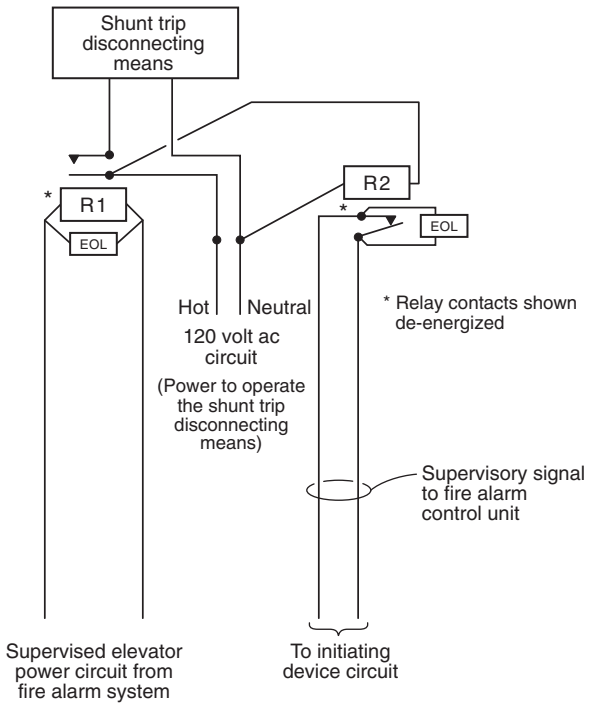


FIGURE A.21.4.4 Typical Method of Providing Elevator Power Shunt Trip Supervisory Signal.

In most cases, a separate annunciator would be recommended to provide an overall status of the elevator lobbies, machine rooms, or control rooms that provide full bodily access for firefighters in the building.

The lowest temperature defined in Table 17.6.2.1, Temperature Classification and Color Code for Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors, is 100°F (38°C), so a thermostat or other approved heat sensor(s) should be used to monitor temperatures less than 100°F (38°C).

A.21.6 Refer to the applicable building code for application requirements and definitions related to occupant evacuation elevators (OEE). OEE are not required by code, and they will be provided for a relatively limited number of buildings, mainly office use high-rise buildings over 420 ft (128 m) in lieu of a required additional stairway as a building code exception. They could also be provided on a voluntary basis in other buildings due to ADA or mobility of occupants concerns. It is highly recommended that those involved with design and installation of these systems become familiar with available information such as ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, Section 2.27, regarding occupant evacuation operation (OEO) and its nonmandatory Appendix V, "Building Features for Occupant Evacuation Operation." It will be imperative that a great amount of coordination and performance-based design be done between elevator and fire alarm system designers, installation contractors, and the authority having jurisdiction.

Figure A.21.6 demonstrates the basics of OEO. This is a simplified flowchart and is not intended to show all required inputs, outputs, or interfaces. This figure demonstrates some functions that are dictated by ASME A17.1/CSA B44 for reference only. Inclusion of elevator system operations in this figure is not intended to suggest that the fire alarm system is responsible for the feature.

A.21.6.2.2.1 The term *group automatic operation* is defined in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*. Other terms such as *elevator group* or *group of elevators* are used in Section 26.6 to refer to those elevators sharing a common landing call operation. For instance, if an elevator landing call is registered on a particular floor, any elevator that could respond to that call would be considered in that elevator group. Elevators in an *elevator group* typically share a lobby, hoistway, and/or machine/control room or control space.

A.21.6.2.2.2 When OEO is actuated either manually or automatically, it is applicable to all elevators serving the floors of the elevator evacuation zone. However, when a single elevator or elevator group is placed on manual Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, OEO continues to operate for the other elevator groups serving the elevator evacuation zone. Similarly, when a fire alarm initiating device(s) described in 21.3.14.1 and 21.3.14.2 is actuated, Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation will cause recall only to the elevator group and not to all elevators in the elevator evacuation zone not associated with that group of recalled elevators. See also 21.6.2.9.

A.21.6.2.4.1 This signal to the elevator system is caused by the activation of a fire alarm initiating device other than that which is described in 21.3.14.1 and 21.3.14.2.

A.21.6.2.4.2 The elevator evacuation zone would typically be the floor of an active alarm plus two floors above and two floors below the floor with the active alarm for a total of five floors or as otherwise determined by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.21.6.2.4.3 The elevator discharge level is considered the same level as the designated level of elevator recall for an individual elevator or a group of elevators. More than a single elevator discharge level can exist in a building.

A.21.6.2.4.6 If there are different elevator discharge levels in the building, then separate signals from the fire alarm system should be sent to each elevator group serving the active alarm floors to allow for OEO operation of those elevators when the alarm is not at the elevator discharge level. The fire alarm system should not send signal(s) to the elevator system to initiate OEO for a group of elevators when the first active alarm is at the discharge level for that group. Subsequent active alarms at any levels should not cause the fire alarm system to send signal(s) to the elevator system to initiate OEO for that group of elevators. When the first active alarm is not on the discharge level, the fire alarm system should send signals to the elevator system to initiate OEO for that group of elevators and all subsequent active alarms, including at the elevator discharge level.

A.21.6.2.5 The manual selection means such as a switch or a push button for each floor is intended in lieu of automatic initiating devices that could be impaired or out of service and would otherwise have actuated to provide automatic initiation in accordance with 21.6.2.4. Manual fire alarm boxes are not included because they are typically actuated at locations remote from the fire. The manual selection means could also serve to evacuate the building or portions of the building for non-fire-related emergencies. The manual selection means is required to provide a maintained nonlatching output(s) from the fire alarm system to the elevator system to prevent the need for fire alarm system reset upon a wrong or unwanted manual selection of a floor(s).

N **A.21.6.2.5.4** The AHJ should specify how the manual floor selection means expands the elevator evacuation zone in order for the fire alarm system designer to know if additional signal(s) to the elevator system are required or not.

A.21.6.2.6 The fire alarm system uses the floor identification to automatically establish an elevator evacuation zone for voice messaging purposes. The elevator system also uses the floor identification to determine the contiguous block of floors to be evacuated (elevator evacuation zone, see A.21.6.2.4.2). The elevator evacuation zone is updated to reflect changing condi-

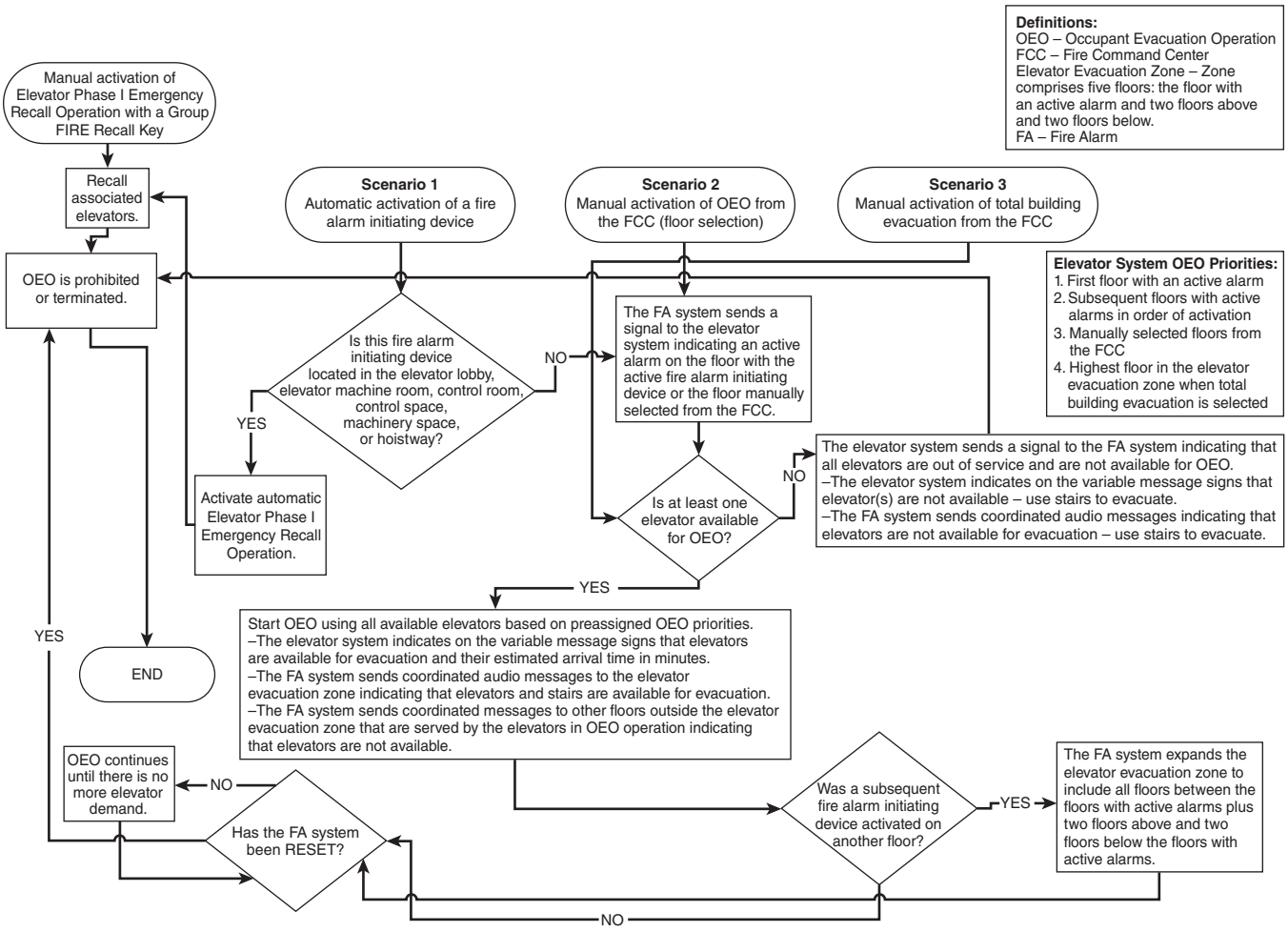


FIGURE A.21.6 Simplified Occupant Evacuation Operation (OEO) (Elevator system interface with the building fire alarm system based on ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Section 2.27.11, and *NFPA 72*, Section 21.6).

tions as indicated by the output signal(s). This information is sent to the elevator system and also used for occupant notification. The output signals from the fire alarm system can be in the form of contact closures or serial communications or other approved means. Coordination needs to be provided between the fire alarm system installer, the elevator system installer, and the authority having jurisdiction.

A.21.6.2.7 Prerecorded automatic voice messages provided by the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system need to be coordinated with the variable message signs provided separately by the elevator system to all affected elevator lobbies and floors served by the elevator(s) operating in OEO so that occupants will understand what to expect and how to react. Additional visual information will be provided in each affected elevator lobby by the elevator system to further inform occupants of the status of the elevators. Refer also to 24.3.6 and associated Annex A material (Messages for One-Way Emergency Communications Systems) for additional information. It is important to note that all elevator lobbies served by elevator(s) operating in OEO, both within the elevator evacuation zone and on other floors outside that zone, will be considered as affected lobbies, and they will be provided with variable messages controlled by the elevator system. The fire alarm system will not provide automatic voice messages in the affected elevator lobbies, but rather it will provide automatic messages to all floors having those affected lobbies via audible appliances located outside those lobbies. The messages provided by the fire alarm system and the elevator system on the affected floors and lobbies must be coordinated so as not to conflict with each other. It is especially important to address additional automatic or manual alarm actuation(s) and the impact on expanding the elevator evacuation zone and the corresponding voice messaging that has to adjust to the change. Table A.21.6.2.7 gives sample voice message content to be added to normal messaging (to be coordinated with the variable message display provided by the elevator contractor). Voice messaging is permitted to all other floor(s) in the building not in the elevator evacuation zone and not served by elevator(s) performing OEO in accordance with the facility emergency response plan approved by the authority having jurisdiction. For further information on voice messaging strategies refer to NIST Technical Note 1779, *General Guidance on Emergency Communication Strategies for Buildings* and *FPRF Elevator Messaging Strategies*.

A.21.6.2.7.3 This new message will require a signal(s) from the elevator system to the fire alarm system. This signal(s) will indicate to the fire alarm system that all elevators serving an elevator evacuation zone are not available due to Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation or due to other elevator condition(s) such as inspection, operation, and malfunction.

A.21.6.2.7.4 The emergency voice/alarm communications system's loudspeaker(s) located in each OEE lobby are not permitted to transmit automatic voice messages since they could interrupt occupants using the required OEE elevator lobby two-way communication system. Therefore, manual paging zones are required for those loudspeakers by applicable building code(s). The specific zone selection will be performed from a fire alarm system paging panel located in the Fire Command Center. Since a very large number of individual paging zones could be required, it is permitted to group all OEE lobbies' loudspeakers per floor or vertically per elevator group as a single paging zone. The OEE lobby paging zone will be dedicated to loudspeakers that only serve OEE lobbies and will be separate from all other loudspeakers outside of an OEE lobby.

A.21.6.2.9 Suspension of OEO can occur when an individual elevator or group of elevators is recalled by firefighters using key operated switch(es). It is important to recognize that OEO continues operation using the available elevator(s). The affected elevator(s) will return to OEO operation when firefighters' emergency operation has been reset.

A.21.6.2.10 Partial termination can occur when a particular group of elevators has been taken out of service because they have been recalled under automatic Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, but other elevator(s) in the elevator evacuation zone are still available for evacuation.

A.21.6.2.11 OEO will not actuate if no elevators are available. There are several instances where signals must be received from the elevator system. One of these is when the Elevator Phase I Emergency Recall key switch is used to manually initiate recall for all elevators. Another situation requiring a signal from the elevator system is when the elevator system cannot provide the intended operation. In this case the fire alarm system needs to know so it does not provide incorrect messaging to a floor(s). See also A.21.6.2.7.3.

A.21.7.2 This Code does not specifically require detection devices used to cause the operation of HVAC system smoke dampers, fire dampers, fan control, smoke doors, or fire doors to be connected to the fire alarm system.

A.21.10.1 Doors are commonly locked for various security reasons. Though doors are permitted to be locked to prevent ingress, doors are generally not permitted to be locked to restrict egress unless specifically permitted by governing laws, codes, and standards. Examples of special locking arrangements include delayed egress locking and access control locking. Approved locking requirements by governing laws, codes, and standards can vary extensively. For example, some might require all fire alarm initiating devices to immediately unlock electrically locked egress doors, while others might permit such doors to remain locked when a single manual fire alarm box is actuated. Some codes might also permit electrically locked doors to remain locked when a single smoke detector has actuated. These allowances are typically permitted only in sprinklered buildings and are generally used as additional

Table A.21.6.2.7 Sample Voice Message Content

Condition	Sample Voice Message
Specific block of floors being evacuated	"Elevators and stairs are available for evacuation."
Floors not in the elevator evacuation zone within an elevator group performing OEO	"Elevators are not available; they are temporarily dedicated to other floors."
On the discharge level	"Elevators are dedicated to evacuation. Do not enter elevator."
If some elevators have been recalled but other elevator(s) are still available	"Elevators and stairs are available for evacuation."
If all elevators serving a floor or elevator evacuation zone are recalled	"Elevators are out of service. Use stairs to evacuate."

safeguards to counter efforts to breach security, without compromising occupant safety.

A.21.10.3 A problem could exist when batteries are used as a secondary power source if a fire alarm control unit having 24 hours of standby operating power were to lose primary power and be operated for more than 24 hours from the secondary power source (batteries). It is possible that sufficient voltage would be available to keep the doors locked, but not enough voltage would be available to operate the fire alarm control unit to release the locks.

A.21.11 When a fire alarm evacuation signal actuates, the exit marking system will be actuated. In some cases, the activation might be sequenced to meet the fire safety plan of the property.

A.23.1.1 Chapter 23 is intended to cover alarm and signaling systems and their components, such as fire alarm, mass notification, carbon monoxide, and other signaling systems.

A.23.2.1 Systems can be installed for the purposes of life safety, property protection, or both. Evacuation or relocation is not a required output action for every system installed in accordance with Chapter 23.

A.23.2.2.1.1 Compatibility between software systems is necessary to ensure that the systems can communicate correctly and that the overall system can function as intended. Unfortunately, software that is compatible can become incompatible when the software is updated. Newer revisions of software might not maintain compatibility with older revisions. This paragraph requires that the fire alarm software or firmware that interfaces with software or firmware in another system is compatible. An example might be a smoke control system that gets information from the fire alarm system. The term "required" indicates that this compatibility requirement is intended for required functions (e.g., smoke control) and not for supplemental functions that are not part of the required operation of the fire alarm system. An example of a supplemental function might be an RS-232 port that connects to a terminal emulator program used for maintenance purposes. The term "functionally" is intended to ensure that the intended functionality is maintained by the software. It is trying to avoid a situation where a change in software revision might still be compatible but changes the available functionality so that the two systems no longer perform the intended functions, even though the software communicates correctly.

A.23.2.2.1.2 Compatibility between systems will be documented in one or the other (or both) of the manufacturer's installation documents for the compatible products and controlled by the listings agencies. This documentation will be referenced in the marking on the product. The documentation might be paper copy or electronic media (disk, website, etc.). When a software revision changes, the documentation can be consulted to ensure that it is still compatible with the software or firmware on the other side of the interface.

Δ **A.23.2.2.2** A commonly used method of protecting against unauthorized changes can be described as follows (in ascending levels of access):

(1) *Access Level 1.* Access by persons who have a general responsibility for safety supervision and who might be expected to investigate and initially respond to a fire alarm or trouble signal

(2) *Access Level 2.* Access by persons who have a specific responsibility for safety and who are trained to operate the control unit

(3) *Access Level 3.* Access by authorized service personnel to do the following:

(a) Reconfigure the site-specific data held within the control unit or controlled by it

(b) Maintain the control unit in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and data

(4) *Access Level 4.* Access by authorized service personnel to repair the control unit or to alter its site-specific data or executive software, thereby changing its basic mode of operation

A.23.3.3 Building codes provide requirements for systems such as sprinklers, fire alarm systems, standpipe systems, and so forth.

These requirements are based on the occupancy of a building. Inspection and testing verifies compliance to the code(s). Upon completion of all inspection and testing, the authority having jurisdiction will issue an occupancy permit, allowing people to utilize the building for its intended use.

Once the occupancy permits have been granted, these systems are not allowed to be removed or modified without the approval of the property or building or system owner or the owner's designated representative. See 23.6.3.5.

This can create issues when there is not a clear understanding of the separation between the fire protection system and the tenant equipment. Class N shared pathways allow for Level 1 or Level 2 pathways to be shared with life safety and non-life-safety equipment as long as the criteria outlined in 23.6.3 is met. The building system is allowed to leverage the tenant's equipment, and in this case the tenant is not allowed to remove or modify that equipment.

The use of Ethernet (wired or wireless) is an example where the tenant might have installed an Ethernet infrastructure that could easily be leveraged for the installation of additional fire alarm system capacity, but once that system is installed, tested, and inspected per the code, the IT team can no longer remove or modify the system without the approval of the property or building or system owner or the owner's designated representative.

A.23.3.4 Nonrequired fire alarm features are defined in 3.3.192. These are fire alarm systems or components that are not required by the building or fire codes and are installed voluntarily by a building owner to meet site-specific fire safety objectives. There is a need to properly document the nonrequired system and components. Nonrequired components must be operationally compatible in harmony with other required components and must not be detrimental to the overall system performance. It is for this reason that 23.3.4.1 mandates that nonrequired (voluntary) systems and components meet the applicable installation, testing, and maintenance requirements of this Code. It is not the intent of the Code to have the installation of nonrequired (voluntary) systems or components trigger a requirement for the installation of additional fire alarm components or features in the building. For example, if a building owner voluntarily installs a fire alarm control unit to transmit sprinkler waterflow signals to a central station, that does not trigger a requirement to install other fire alarm system components or features, such as manual fire alarm boxes, occupant notification, or electronic

supervision of sprinkler control valves. See also A.17.5.3.3 and A.18.1.5.

Alternatively, supervision and power requirements are required to be taken into account for the nonrequired components/systems on the required fire alarm systems.

A.23.3.5.1 The following functions are included in Annex A to provide guidelines for utilizing building systems and equipment in addition to proprietary fire alarm equipment in order to provide life safety and property protection. Building functions that should be monitored, initiated, or controlled during a fire alarm condition include, but should not be limited to, the following:

(1) Elevator operation consistent with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*
(2) Unlocking of stairwell and exit doors *(see NFPA 80 and NFPA 101)*
(3) Release of fire and smoke dampers *(see NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B)*
(4) Monitoring and initiating of automatic fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s) and equipment in accordance with the applicable NFPA standard(s)

A.23.3.5.2 Examples of dedicated function fire alarm systems with dedicated function FACUs that are included in this Code are sprinkler waterflow and supervisory systems *(see 23.8.5.5.1)* and elevator recall control and supervisory control units *(see 21.3.2)*.

Other types of dedicated function fire alarm systems with dedicated function FACUs include, but are not limited to, the following: two-way radio communications enhancement systems *(see Section 24.9)*, carbon monoxide detection systems *(see 3.3.38)*, gas detection systems *(see Section 17.10)*, suppression systems, and HVAC smoke detection systems. A dedicated function FACU could serve as a single control unit for one or more dedicated functions, and it should be labeled to include all such functions.

A.23.4.2.2 The intent of this paragraph is to prevent situations where the signaling line circuit to a device is required to be one class of operation, while the power circuits, running in the same raceways and subject to the same threats, are wired to a lower class of operation. This means that it is possible to have power wiring connected to a device that is of a different class than the signaling line or initiating device circuits. One example of where meeting the same minimum performance requirements would still allow different classes of wiring is where the performance requirements are based on distance or the number of devices attached to the wires. For example, if the signaling line circuit supplies 200 devices and the performance requirement is that not more than 10 devices be lost to a wiring fault, then the class of wiring on the signaling line circuit will be Class A, with isolators to protect against shorts. Where the power wires never supply more than 10 devices, the power wires could be wired as Class B.

A.23.6.1 The intent of 23.6.1 applies to both short-circuit faults and open-circuit faults.

Fire alarm and signaling system communications technologies have evolved to the point that SLCs are now the prevalent means of monitoring initiation devices, controlling output devices, and communicating between panels, annunciators, and controllers.

The extent of coverage of traditional IDCs is inherently limited based on the quantity of powered initiation devices or code limitations. Similarly, the extent and coverage of NACs also are limited by the power required to operate the devices. SLCs, unlike IDCs and NACs, have few limitations, and it is now common that a single SLC can monitor and control more than 250 devices. In addition, a single SLC can be the only pathway by which alarms are initiated, emergency control functions are controlled, and audible and visual notification appliances are actuated.

A total catastrophic failure of a fire alarm and life safety system due to a single open or short on an SLC can negate most, if not all, of this Code's requirements for specifying an acceptable minimum level of performance and reliability for the protection of life and property from fire.

Designers should carefully consider the potential that a single SLC short or open caused by a fire or inadvertent damage to the SLC could disable an entire SLC prior to the activation of an alarm condition along with the subsequent alarm signaling and emergency control functions.

With traditional IDCs and NACs, a single open, ground, or short fault on one circuit could not affect the performance of other IDCs, NACs, and emergency control circuits. As such, the occurrence of a single short or open could limit the extent of the failure to a particular zone or area.

One method for providing an acceptable level of performance and reliability of SLCs is to limit the potential catastrophic failure to one zone, in a way similar to how traditional IDCs and NACs have been and are now required to do.

A single zone could be designated in the following ways:

(1) By floor where an SLC would not span multiple floors
(2) By floor area, where a large floor would be split into multiple zones based on a maximum floor area size (e.g., 22,500 ft^2)
(3) By fire barrier or smoke barrier compartment boundaries, which an SLC would not cross
(4) By maximum length or circuit, where an SLC would not be longer than a predetermined length (e.g., 300 ft)

See the definition of *zone* (3.3.346) and Figure A.23.6.1(a) through Figure A.23.6.1(d) for additional clarification.

Figure A.23.6.1(a) depicts a Class B SLC with four zones. Wiring of more zones would require one isolator for each additional zone. The isolator can be integrated into the device or a separate component. If a single short or open occurs beyond the isolators, only one zone will be affected.

Figure A.23.6.1(b) depicts a Class A SLC with four zones. Wiring of more zones would require one isolator for each additional zone. The isolator can be integrated into the device or a separate component. If a single short or open occurs, only one zone will be affected. If a single open occurs, no devices will be affected.

Figure A.23.6.1(c) depicts a hybrid Class A SLC loop with Class B SLC branches serving four zones that is designated as a Class B SLC. Wiring of more zones would require one isolator for each additional zone. The isolator can be integrated into the device or a separate component. If a single short occurs, only one zone will be affected. If a single open occurs, it might affect only one zone.

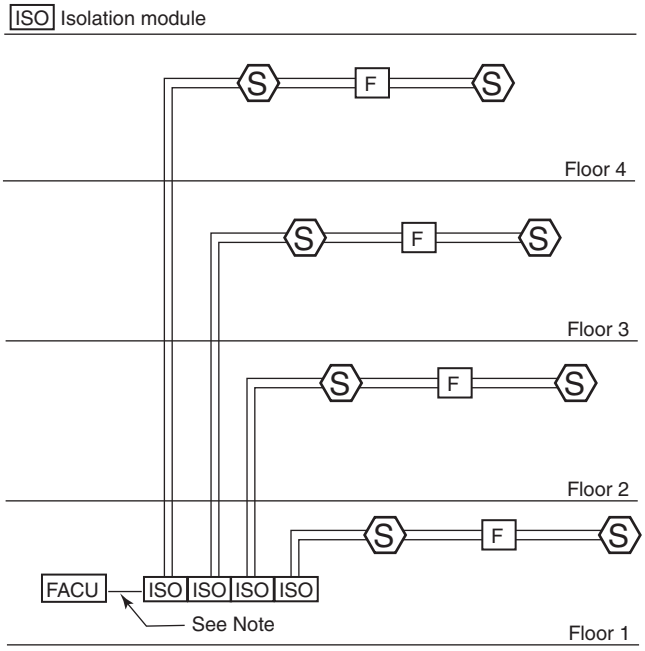
Figure A.23.6.1(d) depicts an incorrect Class B SLC configuration with four zones. If a single short or open occurs, one or more zones could be affected depending on the location of the single short.

A.23.6.1.3 The intent is to clarify that the requirement identified in 23.6.1 applies only to SLCs that connect to addressable devices and not to SLCs that interconnect fire alarm control units (FACU) or transponders.

A.23.6.1.3(3) In many cases, existing systems are partially modified with addressable devices being added as a part of the scope of work. In this case the SLC might not have been installed in a manner that could be easily modified to accommodate isolation modules and/or keep a single SLC loop confined to a single zone. This condition makes it clear that the requirements of SLC zones do not apply to existing systems that were not required to meet the zoning requirements of 23.6.1 when originally installed.

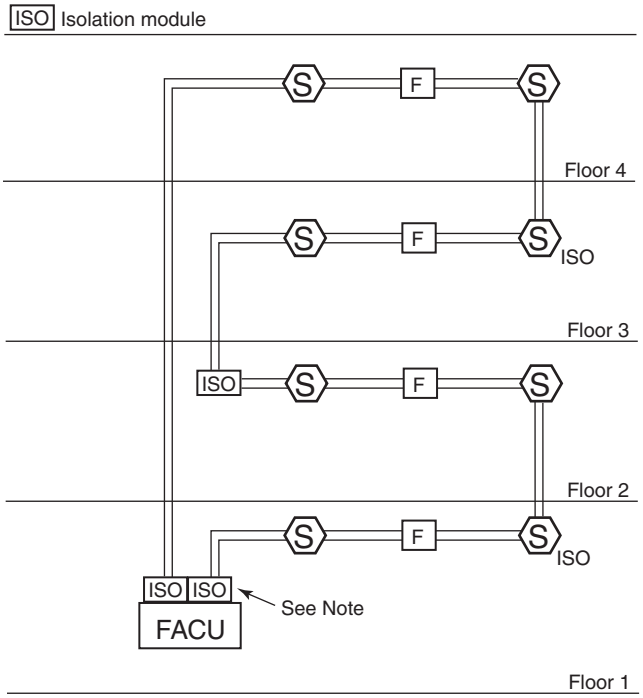
A.23.6.1.5 Possible scenarios in which a designer might choose to permit loss of more than one zone include a multistory building with a small floor plan footprint where a limited number of addressable devices are located on the floor (e.g., one manual fire alarm box and two automatic fire detection devices). In this scenario, the designer might choose to include multiple floors of devices on the same signaling line circuit because the loss of such devices due to a single SLC short or open would disable a limited number of devices.

Another scenario could include buildings with a small vestibule at the top of a stair that exits onto the roof of a building. The vestibule might contain one manual fire alarm box and one or two automatic fire detection devices that could be connected to the signaling line circuit on the floor below and considered the same zone.



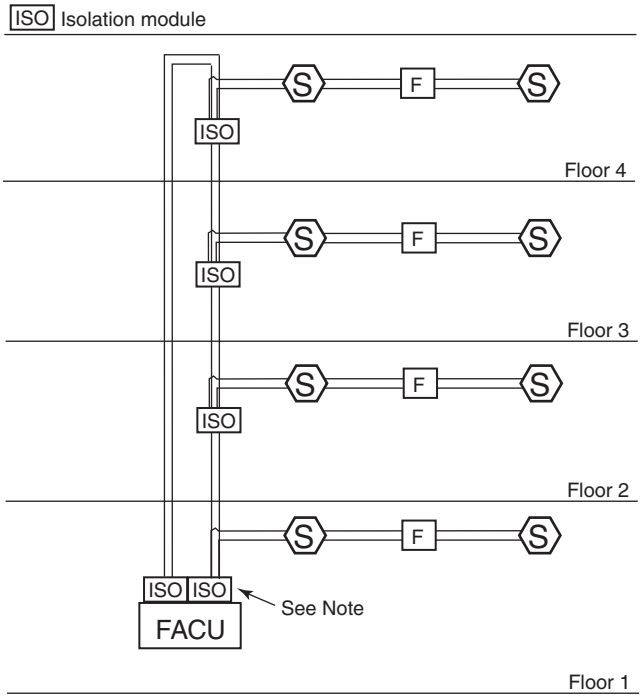
Note: Paragraph 23.6.1.3(2) allows an un-isolated circuit in metallic raceway or other equivalently protected method that does not exceed 3 ft (0.9 m) in length.

FIGURE A.23.6.1(a) Class B Isolation Method.



Note: The two isolation modules shown at the FACU are not required if the panel SLC controller is internally isolated from shorts between outgoing and return termination points.

FIGURE A.23.6.1(b) Class A Isolation Method.



Note: The two isolation modules shown at the FACU are not required if the panel SLC controller is internally isolated from shorts between outgoing and return termination points.

FIGURE A.23.6.1(c) Hybrid Isolation Method.

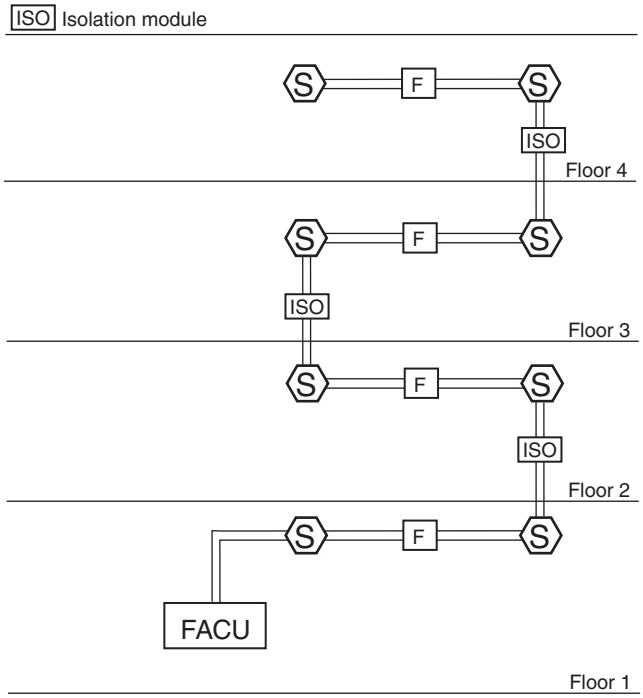


FIGURE A.23.6.1(d) Incorrect Use of Isolators on an SLC.

Designers providing documents for upgrades to an existing building where the control units and all fire alarm system devices are being replaced but some portion of the existing circuits are being reused might, because of constructability reasons, opt for combining zones and the associated risk of the loss of those devices due to a single SLC short or open.

The intent of 23.6.1.5 is not to impose an unnecessary burden on building owners with existing systems undergoing renovations, upgrades, or replacements. In these scenarios as well as others, the designer would be required to provide a documented, performance-based design approach to justify why the loss of more than one zone is acceptable. Documentation must be composed in accordance with 23.6.2.4 and be submitted in accordance with 7.3.7.5.

A.23.6.2 Class N systems should mitigate risk that could be present when a zone or area is serviced by a single Class N device. However, 23.6.2 is not intended to automatically require the installation of twice as many (or more) Class N devices as compared to a design based on Class A, B, or X pathways. The risks inherent to Class N are different from the risks inherent to Class A, B, or X.

Class A and B pathways are permitted to lose devices in a zone *(see Section 23.6)* upon a multiple ground-fault pathway failure. Class A and B pathways require a single ground to be annunciated as a trouble signal. The requirement is to annunciate the first ground fault and alert the user so that the ground fault can be addressed before a possible second ground fault occurs. Note that a second ground fault is also annunciated at the systems operator interface because communication is lost.

Class X pathways are not permitted to lose devices in a zone *(see Section 23.6)* upon a multiple ground-fault pathway failure that results in a short circuit across the pathway. Class X pathways require a single ground to be annunciated as a trouble signal. The requirement is to annunciate the first ground fault and alert the user so that the ground fault can be addressed before a possible second ground fault occurs.

By contrast, Class N is not required to report a trouble condition at the occurrence of the first ground fault because it limits the loss to a single device if another ground occurs. A second ground fault in the Class N pathway, like Class A and B pathways, annunciates a trouble condition at the systems operator interface because communication is lost.

In summary, the potential risk of a loss of fire alarm function in an area must be considered in Class N network design. Multiple ground faults might cause such a loss in an area, especially after no one was alerted of a trouble condition at the first ground fault.

The term "device" in this context should be understood in conjunction with the definition of Device (Class N) 3.3.80 and the associated annex material A.3.3.80. An area is a separated space within a zone where initiating devices or notification appliances are required. Examples include an office, conference rooms, or temporary partitioned banquet rooms where alarm notification is required. Factors to consider when determining the need for multiple Class N devices within an area or zone include the following: whether the space is acoustically and/or visually isolated; specific audible and visual indication of trouble to the occupants in that area for a related ground-fault pathway failure of any device/appliance in that area; the pathways to devices in the area are not susceptible to ground faults such as fiber-optic or wireless pathways.

Also, multiple devices are not required when devices/appliances are connected by redundant pathways. For example, consider the dual port devices deployed as per A.12.3.6(7). For example, the failure of a sole Class N initiating device might delay or prevent the timely initiation of an alarm.

Depending on the facility and the risks for that occupancy, areas serviced by single devices, without redundant pathways, that are susceptible to ground faults should be established by the system designer and approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Δ **A.23.6.2.3** This requirement is to ensure that devices without redundant pathways are not used to terminate additional equipment such that a loss of the pathway would result in more than one device failure to communicate and operate as intended. This stipulation does not apply to dual port devices as described in A.12.3.6(7), because these devices support redundant pathways. A dual port device that is used to daisy-chain additional devices without a redundant pathway would be prohibited.

The term "device" in this context should be understood in conjunction with the definition of Device (Class N) 3.3.80 and the associated annex material A.3.3.80.

A network-based audio amplifier is an example of an addressable device that can receive a digital audio input from the Class N pathway and then provide a notification appliance circuit (NAC) output with Class A, B, or X pathways. Other endpoint devices can similarly provide alternate class pathways for visual notification appliances (strobes) (NACs) or initiating devices (IDCs). From the perspective of the Class N pathway, communications terminates at this endpoint device. However, since these types of endpoints can support multiple notification

appliance devices or initiating devices, Class N path segments are still subject to the redundant pathway requirement unless protected in an enclosure or raceway less than 20 ft (6 m) in length. *[See Figure A.12.3.6(c).]*

A.23.6.2.4 This clause is a consequence of the definition of Class N, which permits a single pathway to be used when only one device is served. *[See 12.3.6(1).]* This exception to the requirement of redundant pathways allows for the loss of operational capability to a single device. Unplugging, grounding, or cutting any single Ethernet cable or conductor cannot affect more than one Ethernet device and cannot affect additional devices, Ethernet or otherwise, in the system.

A.23.6.3.3 All shared pathways defined as Class N should be documented, including all equipment connected to the shared pathways, interconnecting methods identifying required redundant communication pathways, end points, techniques used for proper supervision, and possible risk due to shared pathway failures. As an example, for wired Ethernet, the designer might want to use cabling techniques identified in standards such as ISO/IEC 14763-3, *Information technology — Implementation and operation of customer premises cabling — Part 3: Testing of optical fibre cabling*, to satisfy the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

A.23.6.3.3.1.2 Cable installations should be tested with appropriate field test measurement equipment in accordance with applicable standards such as TIA 526, *Standard Test Procedures for Fiber Optic Systems*, or other standards acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. For example, testing requirements for Category 5 or higher balanced twisted-pair cabling should include the following:

(1) Wire map (e.g., continuity, pairing)
(2) Length
(3) Insertion loss
(4) NEXT loss
(5) ACR-F (formerly called *ELFEXT*)
(6) Propagation delay and delay skew
(7) Return loss
(8) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss
(9) PSACR-F (formerly called *PSELFEXT*)

Testing requirements for fiber-optic cabling should include the following:

(1) Attenuation
(2) Optical bandwidth
(3) Length

A.23.6.3.3.2 All ports need to be properly identified and labeled. For example, Class N switches should be permanently labeled "LIFE SAFETY EQUIPMENT – NO UNAUTHORIZED USE," or plugs should be used to prevent access.

A.23.6.3.3.3.2 Life safety Class N network cabling, equipment, and infrastructure might include (but is not limited to) Ethernet switches, media converters, uninterruptible power supplies, separate life safety network dedicated branch circuit power, cabling cross connects, and both copper and optical fiber cabling.

A.23.6.3.5.2 Regular inspection, testing, and maintenance are conducted on life safety systems. In traditional systems a single certified entity was typically capable of servicing the fire alarm control unit, transport equipment, and/or wiring associated with it. Class N systems will often use modern network infrastructure that might fall outside the expertise of the life safety–certified entity, or other building systems could share the infrastructure used to create the Class N network. The property or building or system owner or the owner's designated representative has responsibility to maintain a list of certified entities that are capable of servicing and maintaining the life safety system and the Class N network. This is what *NFPA 72* refers to as a *management organization*. For example, if the Class N network runs through Ethernet switches and routers, the premises IT infrastructure should be maintained by service personnel as referenced in 10.5.3.3.

A.23.6.3.5.3 During inspection, testing, or maintenance it could be necessary to temporarily disable or test part of a life safety system. The *management organization* is responsible to ensure that other affected entities are notified and action plans put in place to ensure appropriate life safety coverage is maintained and appropriate notification is given to other entities such as the fire or security monitoring services.

A.23.6.3.6.1 When shared pathway Level 1 or Level 2 is employed, care should be taken to ensure that the life safety system(s) traffic has priority over other systems sharing the Class N network to maintain the required bandwidth. Other systems might have unspecified or unpredictable bandwidth usage (such as a manually controlled security camera); therefore, the analysis should specify the method(s) used to ensure the required life safety bandwidth is maintained under all circumstances. The network design analysis should show this and be signed by the property or building or system owner or the owner's designated representative responsible for the design for the authority having jurisdiction to review.

A.23.6.3.6.2 Primary and backup power should meet the requirements of *NFPA 72*. Life safety equipment and their connected equipment (Class N transport devices when not powered by the FACU) should utilize dedicated branch circuits for primary power. This is to prevent other loads from tripping a circuit breaker connected to the FACU and to prevent inadvertent disconnecting of primary power to the FACU.

The branch circuit disconnecting means (circuit breakers) should be clearly labeled and made only accessible to authorized personnel.

FACUs are required to have a secondary power source that must last for 24 hours of standby (nonalarm) power followed by either 5 (non-voice systems) or 15 (voice systems) minutes of alarm power. This is typically accomplished by backup batteries or by an emergency generator. All transport equipment not powered by the FACU has the same requirement. The analysis should document the calculation of all power requirements (standby and alarm) of the FACU and transport equipment to ensure that the system can meet this requirement. To meet this requirement, non-life-safety systems could be disconnected from the secondary power source.

A.23.6.3.6.2(2) Where Class N networks incorporate power over communications cables, outputs are rated based on various systems. Section 725.144 of *NFPA 70* limits the number of 4-pair cables that can be bundled based on the current provided by the power source for these systems. The current rating marked on the power source equipment as required by 725.121(C) of *NFPA 70* for the outputs can be used to apply the requirements of 725.144 of *NFPA 70*.

One of the more common systems uses Power over Ethernet (PoE) technology standardized in IEEE 802.3bt, *IEEE Standard*

Δ Table A.23.6.3.6.2(2) *NFPA 70* Cable Bundle Table 725.144 Viewed from a PoE Type Perspective

	24 AWG: Number of 4-Pair Cables in a Bundle Corrected to 120°F (49°C), per Table 310.15(B)(1)(1) of *NFPA 70*																	
	1–7			8–19			20–37			38–61			62–91			92–192		
	Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating		
IEEE 802.3bt Type Classification	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90
Type 1	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Type 2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Type 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*	Yes	Yes	Yes*	Yes	Yes
Type 4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No	Yes
	23 AWG: Number of 4-Pair Cables in a Bundle Corrected to 120°F (49°C), per Table 310.15(B)(1)(1) of *NFPA 70*																	
	1–7			8–19			20–37			38–61			62–91			92–192		
	Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating		
IEEE 802.3bt Type Classification	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90
Type 1	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Type 2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Type 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*	Yes	Yes
Type 4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
	22 AWG: Number of 4-Pair Cables in a Bundle Corrected to 120°F (49°C), per Table 310.15(B)(1)(1) of *NFPA 70*																	
	1–7			8–19			20–37			38–61			62–91			92–192		
	Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating			Temperature Rating		
IEEE 802.3bt Type Classification	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90	60	75	90
Type 1	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Type 2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Type 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Type 4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

Notes:
1. "Yes" indicates that the bundle size of the gauge and temperature cable is permitted for the IEEE Class in the leftmost column per *NFPA 70*. "No" designates bundle sizes that are not permitted.
2. IEEE 208.3bt: The PoE maximum permitted average current per conductor: Type 1: 175 mA, Type 2/3: 300 mA, Type 4: 433 mA.
*Section 725.144 (A) exception of *NFPA 70* for currents of not more than 300 mA for conductors 24 AWG or greater is applied for Types 1, 2, and 3.

for Ethernet, Amendment 2: Physical Layer and Management Parameters for Power over Ethernet over 4 pairs. The information in Table A.23.6.3.6.2(2) shows allowable bundle sizes. It is derived from Table 725.144 of *NFPA 70* but temperature adjusted to 120°F (49°C) ambient as required by 10.3.5 of this Code.

Currently IEEE 802.3bt recognizes four PoE Types (Types 1 through 4). Each Type establishes a maximum power limit as supplied by the power sourcing equipment (PSE), commonly a PoE switch. Type 1 is limited to 15.4 W, Type 2 to 30 W, Type 3 to 60 W, and Type 4 to 90 W.

A.23.6.3.7.1 Maintenance is a critical aspect of fire alarm systems, and a plan needs to be in place to empower continued operation of the fire alarm system. Shared Class N pathways present a unique concern in that non-fire-alarm technicians could perform maintenance or changes to the Class N equipment or pathways. For example, routine updates to software in the routers and switches or upgrades to address new non-fire-alarm needs. This could result in outages of the portions of the fire alarm system or affect the subsequent operation of the fire alarm system. It is crucial that the maintenance plan address policy and procedure to monitor, maintain, and test per Chapter 14 and control change of the shared pathways to contribute to continued intended operation of the fire alarm system. For example, 14.4.2.5 states that changes to system executive software require a 10 percent functional test of the system, including typical network infrastructure such as routers and switches that now need consideration as part of the life safety network maintenance plan.

A.23.6.3.7.2 Written procedures should address who can access the Class N network; how the procedures will be implemented; the level of retesting of the system needed when software updates to the Class N network infrastructure such as routers and switches are made; and the effect of changes on system response times to ensure required time limits are maintained.

A.23.6.3.7.2(3) The planned impairment process is used to control change in the system and inform stakeholders. Any activities that can affect the performance of the network or impact conclusions of a risk analysis should be presented to the organization referred to in 23.6.3.5 for approval. The organization should have a name (e.g., Life Safety Network Management Group). All stakeholders who could be affected by network outages should have representation in the organization.

A committee made up of members of the organization should meet on a regular basis and report to the organization. All planned impairments should have 7 days' notice. An emergency impairment (one with less than 7 days' notice) should meet very stringent standards for urgency. Outages and repair operations are dealt with on a case by case basis with the fire marshal's office, and the Department of Public Safety is included based on the operational impact.

All proposed changes and outages are to be presented to the organization for authorization, scheduling, and coordination. Once a change has been authorized and scheduled, an impairment notification is issued notifying all affected users. If specific mitigation actions, such as fire watch, are required, they are to be included in the impairment notification.

Impairment notifications are issued through the fire marshal's office, the Department of Public Safety, the Power Outages Group, or other groups depending on the systems affected.

A "login banner" is a programmable option for network switches and routers. This banner is the first thing that comes up on the screen when you log into the equipment. Where practical, network equipment used in life safety systems should have a login banner to notify service personnel that the network is a part of an active life safety system and any impairment should be coordinated with the named organization.

Δ **A.23.6.3.8** Although this section outlines some specific criteria and/or limitations, each application should be based on recognized performance-based design practices and the emergency response plan developed for the specific facility. Here are the general categories of questions that might be presented to the stakeholders responsible for Class N shared network design decisions. The actual questions for each project must be tailored to the area, the building, the campus, and the culture of the user organization and the nature of how the network is being shared. The requirements for the life safety network should be evaluated with respect to the types of emergency events and emergency response plan. The potential impact of these events upon the life safety network also should be evaluated.

(1) What types of emergency events could affect the life safety network (e.g., fire, security, safety, health, environmental, geological, meteorological, utility service disruption)?
(2) What is the anticipated or expected severity of the emergency events, that is, how will they impact the facility and its functions? Are they expected to be extreme or severe?
(3) What is the certainty of the emergency event, that is, is it happening now, is it very likely to occur, is it likely to occur, is it possible that it will occur in the future, is it unlikely to occur, or is its occurrence unknown?
(4) Natural hazards: What are the network risks to the implementation of the emergency response plan in response to natural hazard events? What are the types of emergency events that could be predicted to result from natural hazard events? For example, if flooding is possible in the surrounding area, how would a flood affect the life safety network while operating in its normal, monitored state? What would happen if a fire alarm occurred during a flood? How likely is it that a flood could damage the life safety network? What related events might impact the life safety network and equipment, such as a power outage?
(5) Human caused: What are the network risks to the implementation of the emergency response plan in response to accidental or intentional human acts? What are the types of emergency events that could be predicted from both within and outside the protected premises? What type of related damage might be expected to impact the life safety network and equipment, such as explosions?
(6) Technological caused: What are the network risks to the implementation of the emergency response plan in response to technologically caused events or failures and the types of emergency events that could be predicted to result from a technologically caused event both within and outside the protected premises? What type of related damage might be expected to impact the life safety network and equipment, such as a network attack?
(7) Network maintenance risks: What are the network risks to the implementation of the emergency response plan in response to a degradation of network software performance (e.g., an unintended degradation of performance due to software updates) or a degradation of physical network performance or implementation (e.g., physical damage, system modifications)? What types of emergency events could be predicted to result from a degradation of the life safety network? What type of related impairments might be expected to impact the components of the life safety network and equipment, such as environmental controls?

The questions suggested in items (1) through (7) are offered for consideration, and not all of them might be appropriate for every life safety network installation.

A.23.8.1.1 A system provided with an alarm verification feature as permitted by 23.8.5.4.1 is not considered a presignal system, since the delay in the signal produced is 60 seconds or less and requires no human intervention.

A.23.8.1.2.1.1(6) "Immediately actuated" means there are no delays imposed by the system other than the processing of the signal in accordance with 23.8.1.1.

A.23.8.1.2.1.2 The bypass means is intended to enable automatic or manual day, night, and weekend operation.

A.23.8.2 This Code addresses field installations that interconnect two or more listed control units, possibly from different manufacturers, that together fulfill the requirements of this Code.

Such an arrangement should preserve the reliability, adequacy, and integrity of all alarm, supervisory, and trouble

signals and interconnecting circuits intended to be in accordance with the provisions of this Code.

Where interconnected control units are in separate buildings, consideration should be given to protecting the interconnecting wiring from electrical and radio frequency interference.

N **A.23.8.2.2(2)** A stand-alone subsystem is a separate fire alarm or signaling control unit that is monitored by the main fire alarm or signaling control unit via dry contacts. *(See 23.8.2.9.2.)*

A.23.8.2.7.4 Where interconnected fire alarm control units have unsupervised form C contacts that change status during a trouble condition, annunciators installed at each control unit provide status indication.

A.23.8.2.11.1 Remote access is achieved by, but not limited to, the use of cellular technology, internet-based technology, or radio frequency technology. Paragraph 23.8.2.11 is intended to address the following activities: testing, maintenance, diagnostics, and software upgrade performed through remote access.

A.23.8.2.11.3(1) It is the intent to require two separate means of manually terminating the remote access connection with one of them being performed at the system control unit by a person on-site.

A.23.8.2.11.3(2) It is the intent that the remote connection be automatically terminated upon no activity or changes being performed for a period of one hour. The inactivity limitation of one hour is used as a reasonable time period.

A.23.8.2.11.4 Remote diagnostics involves queries of the system and does not involve changing the system.

A.23.8.2.11.4(1) It is the intent to require two separate means of manually terminating the remote access connection with one of them being performed at the system control unit by a person on-site.

A.23.8.2.11.4(2) It is the intent that the remote connection be automatically terminated upon no activity or changes being performed for a period of one hour. The inactivity limitation of one hour is used as a reasonable time period.

A.23.8.2.11.5(1) It is the intent to require two separate means of manually terminating the remote access connection with one of them being performed at the system control unit by a person on-site.

A.23.8.2.11.5(2) It is the intent that the remote connection be automatically terminated upon no activity or changes being performed for a period of one hour. The inactivity limitation of one hour is used as a reasonable time period.

A.23.8.4.1 The provisions of 23.8.4.1 apply to types of equipment used in common for fire alarm systems, such as fire alarm, sprinkler supervisory, or guard's tour service, and for other systems, such as burglar alarm or coded paging systems, and to methods of circuit wiring common to both types of systems. The intent of connecting non-fire systems with the fire alarm system is often to cause the non-fire systems to react appropriately when signaled by the fire alarm system.

A.23.8.4.2.1 Buildings are advancing with technologies in HVAC, security, elevators, energy controls, and lighting. Building operators and designers expect to be able to integrate various building systems with human interfaces.

First responders are embracing new technologies, and the fire life safety systems have a lot of information to assist them in emergency response and also system evaluation.

For the first time, *NFPA 72* introduces the use of the common PC workstation technology having the UL listing for "shock and hazard" to be a part of the total building system without the UL 864 listing, which was a hindrance to the advancements in technologies.

A.23.8.4.2.2.2 When the BSIU is not available to control the fire alarm system, the FACU within the room must be able to perform all the necessary controls of the fire alarm system without relying on the BSIU.

A.23.8.4.4 For systems such as carbon monoxide detection, fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device, emergency communications (mass notification), or intrusion, much of the benefit of a combination system comes from being able to use common wiring. If the equipment in the combination system is of equivalent quality to fire alarm equipment, and the system monitors the wiring and equipment in the same way as fire alarm equipment, then sharing of wiring is permitted. If the equipment is not of equivalent quality, isolation between the systems would be required.

A.23.8.4.7 Examples of signal classification are provided in Table A.23.8.4.7. This is not all-inclusive or prescriptive but is meant to illustrate a potential classification scheme. Actual schemes might vary depending upon the emergency response plan and/or requirements of the authority having jurisdiction. Mass notification systems are allowed to take priority over the fire alarm audible notification message or signal. This is intended to allow the mass notification system to prioritize emergency signals on the basis of risk to building occupants. The designer should specify the desired operation, in particular, as to what should occur immediately after the mass notification message has completed.

A.23.8.4.9.2 Response to carbon monoxide alarm signals could include, but not be limited to, any one of the following: immediate evacuation of occupants, immediate call to the fire department or other responding authorities, relocation of occupants to another portion of the building, investigation of the area identified, and/or opening of all doors and windows to the outside in the area identified.

A.23.8.4.10 See NFPA 10 for more information on portable fire extinguishers.

A.23.8.5.1.2 The manual means required by 23.8.5.1.2 is intended to provide a backup means to manually actuate the fire alarm system when the automatic fire detection system or waterflow devices are out of service due to maintenance and follow-up testing, or where human discovery of the fire precedes automatic sprinkler system or automatic detection system activation. The manual means is only intended for use by the system technician or the building owner and should be located by the sprinkler riser or fire alarm control unit.

During maintenance and follow-up testing, the manual fire alarm box required by 23.8.5.1.2 should be connected to a separate circuit that is not placed "on test" when the detection or sprinkler system is placed "on test." Aside from those instances where maintenance is needed, the manual fire alarm box required by this section is still subject to the periodic testing requirements outlined in Chapter 14.

A.23.8.5.3.2 Where power is supplied separately to the individual initiating device(s), multiple initiating circuits are not prohibited from being monitored for integrity by a single power supervision device.

A.23.8.5.4.1 The alarm verification feature should not be used as a substitute for proper detector location/applications or regular system maintenance. Alarm verification features are intended to reduce the frequency of false alarms caused by transient conditions. They are not intended to compensate for design errors or lack of maintenance.

A.23.8.5.4.6.3 Where a separate power source is provided for a duct smoke detector, consideration should be given to provide a secondary power source for the duct detector power source as a power failure to the duct detector will (or should) indicate a trouble condition on the fire panel. If the system is connected to an off-premises monitoring station, a trouble signal will be sent immediately upon power failure. This is in contrast to the intent and requirements to delay the off-premises reporting of primary power failures.

A.23.8.5.5 This Code does not specifically require a waterflow alarm initiating device to be connected to the building fire alarm system. Connection to the building fire alarm system would be determined by the requirements established by the authority having jurisdiction. See A.1.2.4.

A.23.8.5.5.3 Circuits connected to a signaling line circuit interface are initiating device circuits and are subject to these limitations.

A.23.8.5.6 This Code does not specifically require supervisory signal initiating devices to be connected to the building fire alarm system. Connections to the building fire alarm system would be determined by the requirements established by the authority having jurisdiction. See A.1.2.4. Some systems utilize nonelectrical methods to supervise conditions of the system such as chains on sprinkler control valves.

Supervisory signals are not intended to provide indication of design, installation, or functional defects in the supervised systems or system components and are not a substitute for regular testing of those systems in accordance with the applicable standard. Supervised conditions should include, but not be limited to, the following:

(1) Control valves 1½ in. (38.1 mm) or larger
(2) Pressure, including dry pipe system air, pressure tank air, preaction system supervisory air, steam for flooding systems, and public water
(3) Water tanks, including water level and temperature
(4) Building temperature, including areas such as valve closet and fire pump house
(5) Electric fire pumps, including running (alarm or supervisory), power failure, and phase reversal
(6) Engine-driven fire pumps, including running (alarm or supervisory), failure to start, controller off "automatic," and trouble (e.g., low oil, high temperature, overspeed)
(7) Steam turbine fire pumps, including running (alarm or supervisory), steam pressure, and steam control valves

A.23.8.5.6.3 Circuits connected to a signaling line circuit interface are initiating device circuits and are subject to these limitations.

A.23.8.5.6.4 Some ball valves installed on air pressure lines connected to a pressure switch for dry pipe sprinkler systems or certain types of preaction sprinkler systems will cause the air pressure that is trapped in the line between the valve and the supervisory signal initiating device to bleed off when the valve is turned to isolate the initiating device. This will cause the initiating device to operate and signal the low air supervisory condition. The arrangement is permitted by other standards and provides a fail-safe way to test a low air pressure signal without risking activation of the system.

A.23.8.5.8 See A.23.8.5.6.

A.23.8.6.2 The general purpose of the fire alarm audible and visual notification appliances is to alert occupants that there is a fire condition and for occupants to exit from the building.

Once the occupants are in the exit enclosures, high noise levels and light intensity from notification appliances could cause confusion and impede egress. There could be conditions that warrant the installation of notification appliances in exit passageways, but careful analysis is necessary to avoid impeding exiting from the building.

A.23.8.6.3.3 The building's emergency response plan might specify occupant notification only in the area(s) of initiation and at the control panel. Whole building evacuation might not be specified in the emergency response plan.

A.23.10.2 One or more of the following means might be considered acceptable to provide a level of survivability consistent with the intent of this requirement:

(1) Installing a fire alarm system in a fully sprinklered building in accordance with NFPA 13
(2) Routing notification appliance circuits separately
(3) Using short-circuit fault-tolerant signaling line circuits for controlling evacuation signals

Table A.23.8.4.7 Examples of Signal Classification

Life Safety	Property Protection	Trouble	Other
Fire alarm signals	Security signals	Battery fault	HVAC signals
Carbon monoxide alarm signals	Supervisory signals	AC power failure	Occupancy
Code blue signals	Access control	IDC faults	
Panic alarms		NAC faults	
Hazmat signals		SLC faults	
Severe weather warnings			
Flood alarms			
Mass notification signals			
Holdup alarm signals			

The requirement for notification appliances to operate in those notification zones that are not attacked by fire will also require that circuits and equipment that are common to more than one notification zone be designed and installed such that the fire will not disable them. For instance, a signaling line circuit used to control notification appliances in multiple notification zones should be properly designed and installed so that one fire would not impair more than one notification zone. Power supply requirements of Chapter 10 apply to these systems. The secondary power supply requirements of that chapter meet the intent of these survivability requirements.

A.23.11.7 Automatic fire suppression systems referred to in 23.11.7 include, but are not limited to, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems, carbon dioxide systems, Halon systems, and dry chemical systems.

A.23.12.4 Off-premises logging of fire alarm data can be useful to preserve information in the face of fire or building failure to facilitate accurate reconstruction of the event. It can also be beneficial to send data off-premises to incident command personnel to enhance situational awareness and response decisions and to maintain safe and efficient operations. Figure A.23.12.4 shows an example of a network to accomplish these goals.

Δ **A.23.16** The term *wireless* has been replaced with the term *low-power radio* to eliminate potential confusion with other transmission media such as fiber optics.

Low-power radio devices are required to comply with the applicable low-power requirements of 47 CFR 15, "Radio Frequency Devices."

A.23.16.1 Equipment listed solely for dwelling unit use would not comply with this requirement.

A.23.16.2 This requirement is intended to limit the impact from the failure of a battery operated receiver/transmitter in a given space. This requirement is not intended to prevent a single device that contains multiple function elements, such as a combination carbon monoxide and smoke detector, a detector with an independently controllable sounder, a notification appliance with visible and audible elements, and so forth. This requirement is intended to limit the number of functional elements to one of each independent type. For example, two manual fire alarm boxes could not rely on a single battery.

A.23.16.3.1 This requirement is not intended to preclude verification and local test intervals prior to alarm transmission.

A.23.16.3.1.3 This requirement ensures that an alarm is received in the rare event that the RF channel experiences interference.

A.23.16.3.1.5 Trouble and supervisory signals are not required to latch. Self-restoring trouble and supervisory signals are acceptable.

A.24.1.2 An emergency communications system could target the general building, area, space, campus, or region.

N **A.24.2.2** Emergency communications systems are unique for each given facility, therefore minimum required levels of performance, reliability, and quality cannot be established for each situation. See 24.3.12 for information that should be considered in a risk analysis.

N **A.24.2.3** Emergency situations are not limited to fire, human-caused events, and natural hazards, but also include any situa-

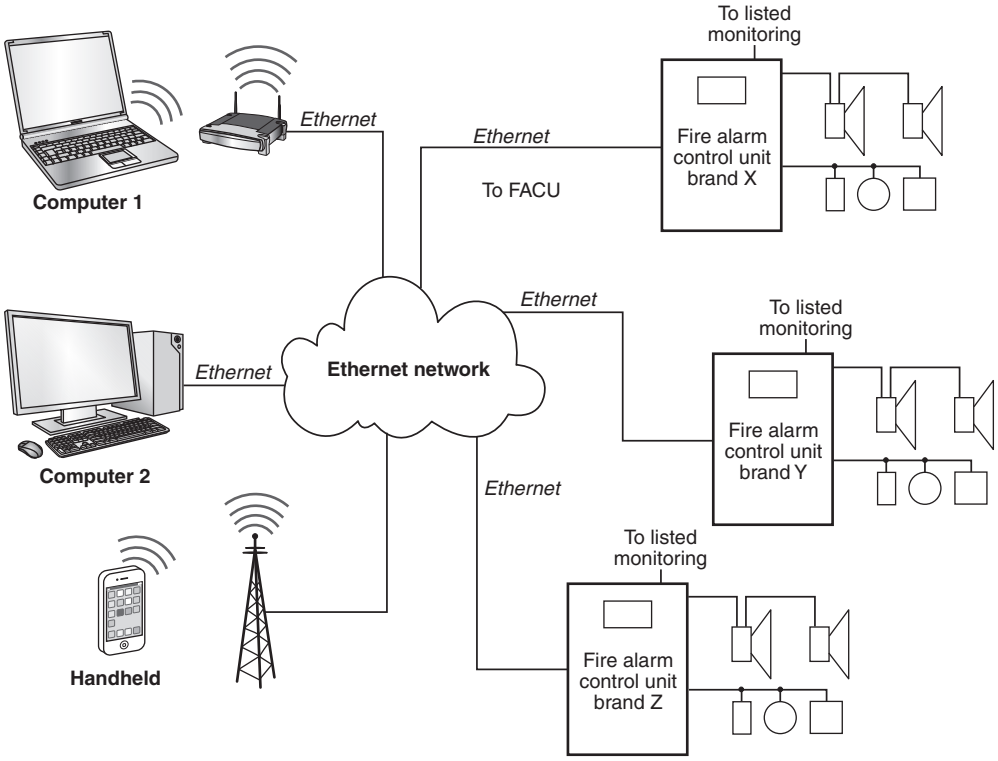


FIGURE A.23.12.4 Supplemental Reporting Network.

tion that presents an immediate threat of injury, death, or property loss. Natural hazard emergencies include events that create a risk of injury, death, or property damage, such as flooding, wind, earthquakes, landslides, volcanic eruptions, or avalanches.

A.24.3.1.1 In certain situations, it is important to provide a distributed sound level with minimal sound intensity variations to achieve an intelligible voice message. This differs from past fire alarm design practice that used fewer notification appliances but with each having greater sound pressure output levels. Nonemergency system design practice is to use more loudspeakers and less sound intensity from each loudspeaker. Besides improving intelligibility of the message, this approach minimizes annoyance to building occupants from the system and lessens the likelihood of tampering with the system by occupants because of loudspeakers being too loud. In other applications, such as outdoor signaling where reverberation is not a problem, intelligibility can be achieved by using fewer appliances or clusters of appliances covering larger areas.

Intelligibility is a complex function of the source audio, the acoustic response of the architectural features and materials of the immediate vicinity, and the dynamics created by the room's occupants. Refer to Annex D for more information on speech intelligibility and how it is predicted. Spacing loudspeakers closely can be an intelligibility-enhancing technique but can occasionally lead to opposite results when improperly designed. There are several techniques using directionality features that do not use closely spaced loudspeakers but rather use the room/space acoustic response in their favor.

A.24.3.1.2 In certain acoustically challenging areas, listed fire alarm loudspeakers might not be capable of producing an intelligible message. Non-fire-alarm listed loudspeakers are permitted to be installed in these limited areas. A failure of a non-listed loudspeaker should not disrupt the operation of listed fire alarm loudspeakers and operation of the fire alarm or mass notification control equipment. Typically, a dedicated loudspeaker circuit and other audio components such as amplifiers could be necessary to meet this functionality.

A.24.3.2 Users who speak too softly, too loudly, or who hold a microphone too close, too far, or at an incorrect angle can introduce distortion or cause reduced intelligibility of the spoken message. The characteristics of the system microphone are important ergonomic factors that affect voice intelligibility. Some microphones need to be held close to the mouth, perhaps an inch or less. Others need to be three or four inches away. How is the user to know what's ideal? A simple diagram next to the microphone can help. Some microphones are very directional and must be held flat in front of the mouth. These microphones are useful in small command centers, since they are less likely to pick up conversations off to the sides. On the other hand, microphones with a wider polar sensitivity are more forgiving for a user to hold comfortably while moving and doing other tasks. Their downside is that they will pick up extraneous noise in poorly designed command centers introduced into the microphone.

A.24.3.3 The requirements found in Article 708 of *NFPA 70* should be considered for emergency communications systems that are installed in vital infrastructure facilities classified as a designated critical operations area (DCOA). This includes facilities that, if destroyed or incapacitated, would disrupt national security, the economy, public health or safety and where enhanced electrical infrastructure for continuity of operation has been deemed necessary by governmental authority.

A.24.3.4 The features for a nonrequired system should be established by the system designer on the basis of the goals and objectives intended by the system owner.

A.24.3.5.2 Dedicated in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems are not required to monitor the integrity of the notification appliance circuits while active for emergency purposes. However, these circuits have to be monitored for integrity while active for non-emergency purposes. The building operator, system designer, and authority having jurisdiction should be aware that, in some situations, such a system could be subject to deliberate tampering. Tampering is usually attempted to reduce the output of a sound system that is in constant use, such as background music or a paging system, and that could be a source of annoyance to employees.

The likelihood of tampering can be reduced through proper consideration of loudspeaker accessibility and system operation.

Access can be reduced through the use of hidden or nonadjustable transformer taps (which can reduce playback levels), use of vandal-resistant listed loudspeakers, and placement in areas that are difficult to access, such as high ceilings (any ceiling higher than could be reached by standing on a desk or chair). Non-emergency operation of the system should always consider that an audio system that annoys an employee potentially reduces employee productivity and can also annoy the public in a commercial environment. Most motivations for tampering can be eliminated through appropriate use of the system and employee discipline. Access to amplification equipment and controls should be limited to those authorized to make adjustments to such equipment. It is common practice to install such equipment in a manner that allows adjustment of non-emergency audio signal levels while defaulting to a fixed, preset level of playback when operating in emergency mode. Under extreme circumstances, certain zones of a protected area might require a dedicated in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications zone.

A.24.3.6.1 See Annex G.

A.24.3.6.2 See Annex G.

A.24.3.7 One-way emergency communications systems are intended to broadcast information, in an emergency, to personnel in one or more specified indoor or outdoor areas. It is intended that emergency messages be conveyed either by audible or visual textual means or both. This section does not apply to bells, horns, or other sounders and visual notification appliances, except where used in conjunction with the desired operation of emergency messages and signaling.

Two-way emergency communications systems are divided into two categories, those systems that are anticipated to be used by building occupants and those systems that are to be used by firefighters, police, and other emergency services personnel. Two-way emergency communications systems are used both to exchange information and to communicate information, such as, but not limited to, instructions, acknowledgement of receipt of messages, condition of local environment, and condition of persons, and to give assurance that help is on its way.

NFPA 72 contains requirements that can impact the application of emergency communications systems. For instance, coordination of the functions of an emergency communications system with other systems that communicate audibly and/or visibly [such as fire alarm systems, security systems, public address (PA) systems] is essential in order to provide effective communication in an emergency situation. Conflicting or competing signals or messages from different systems could be very confusing to occupants and have a negative impact on the intended occupant response. Where independent systems using audible and/or visual notification are present, the emergency communications system needs to interface with those systems to effect related control actions such as deactivating both audible and visual notification appliances. The use of a single integrated combination system might offer both economic and technical advantages. In any case, coordination between system functions is essential. The coordination of emergency communications systems with other systems should be considered part of the risk analysis for the emergency communications system. *(See Figure A.24.3.7.)*

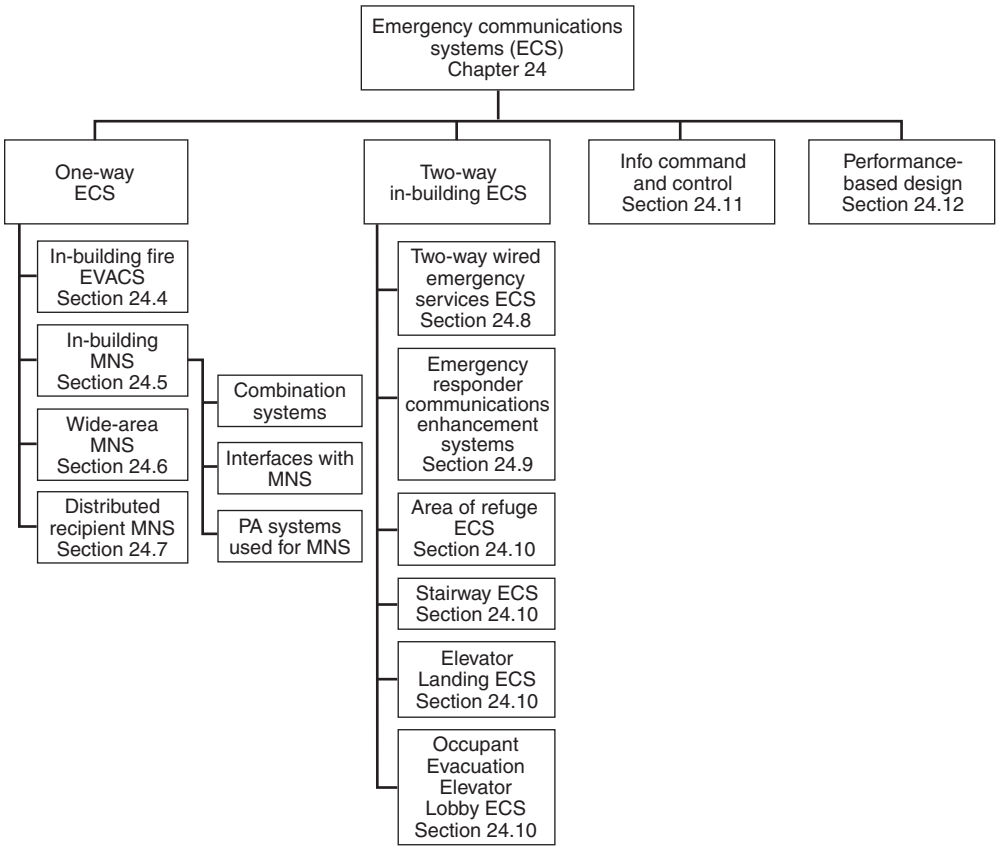
Additional documents such as ANSI/NEMA SB-40, *Communications Systems for Life Safety in Schools*, can also be used as supplemental resources to provide help with risk assessment and application considerations.

A.24.3.7.1 Other codes reference *NFPA 72* with respect to the emergency voice alarm communications (EVAC) systems or design and installation requirements. If EVAC systems are required, they are also required to be listed per UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*. However, owners or designers might identify risks in addition to fire that might also require additional emergency communications systems such as in-building mass notification system (MNS), wide-area MNS, or distributed recipient MNS. If an MNS is included in the design, a risk analysis is required by 24.3.12. In consideration of the risk analysis, related design could include combinations of the emergency communications systems options presented in 24.3.7.1. For example, depending on the specifics of the facility under consideration, the design could include combination systems or other combinations of separate EVAC UL 864 and equipment listed per UL 2572, *Mass Notification Systems*, as long as these systems are interfaced in compliance with Chapter 24 and are approved by the AHJ.

Pathway survivability of one-way emergency communications systems is dictated by 24.3.14.4 through 24.3.14.6.

A.24.3.7.2 Pathway survivability of two-way emergency communications systems is dictated by 24.3.14.7 through 24.3.14.16.

A.24.3.8 The layers can be used in combination. In all cases, the system design needs to follow the risk analysis and be integrated into the emergency response plan. Research has shown that more than one layer has been used to be effective. Multiple layers provide an extra level of notification (a safety net). The overall MNS application is likely to exploit a number of public and individual systems or components that combine to produce a reliable and robust solution to achieve emergency notification objectives.



Δ FIGURE A.24.3.7 Emergency Communications Systems.

Layer 1 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACS)
(2) In-building mass notification system (MNS)
(3) One-way voice communication systems (PA)
(4) Two-way voice communication systems
(5) Visual notification appliances
(6) Textual/digital signage/displays

Layer 2 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Wide-area outdoor MNS
(2) High power loudspeaker arrays (HPLAs)

Layer 3 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Short message service (SMS)
(2) Email
(3) Computer pop-ups
(4) Smartphone applications (apps)
(5) Reverse 911/automated dialing

Layer 4 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Radio broadcast (satellite, AM/FM)
(2) Television broadcast (satellite, digital)
(3) Location specific messages/notifications
(4) Weather radios
(5) Social networks

Also see *Optimizing Fire Alarm Notification for High Risk Groups Research Project — Waking effectiveness of alarms (auditory, visual and tactile) for the alcohol impaired*.

A.24.3.9 The design documents might include, but are not limited to, shop drawings, sequence of operations, battery calculations, notification appliance voltage drop and wattage calculations for visual notification appliances and loudspeakers, and product data sheets.

A.24.3.10 Fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACS) that are listed in accordance with UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, can be used for MNS only if they are also listed in accordance with UL 2572, *Mass Notification Systems*. A control unit only listed in accordance with UL 2572 cannot be used as a fire alarm control unit.

Δ **A.24.3.12** There are many credible risk assessment methodologies that can be utilized and/or referenced in conducting the risk assessment required in 24.3.12, some of which are listed as follows:

(1) *CARVER — Target Analysis and Vulnerability Assessment Methodology*, Washington, DC: US Department of Defense (see Field Manual 34-36, Special Operation Forces Intelligence and Electronics Warfare Operation, Sept. 30, 1991), www.defense.gov
(2) *General Security Risk Assessment Guidelines*, Alexandria, VA: American Society for Industrial Security International, www.asisonline.org
(3) NFPA 1660, Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association, www.nfpa.org
(4) NFPA 730, Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association, www.nfpa.org
(5) *Responsible Care Security Code of Management Practices*, Washington, DC: American Chemistry Council, www.americanchemistry.com
(6) AWWA J100, *Risk and Resilience Management of Water & Wastewater Systems*, Denver, CO: American Water Works Association, www.awwa.org
(7) *VAMCAP® Vulnerability Assessment Methodology for Critical Asset Protection*, Wilmington, DE: SafePlace Corporation, www.safeplace.com
(8) *Vulnerability Assessment Methodologies*, Albuquerque, NM: Sandia National Laboratories, www.sandia.gov
(9) *SFPE Guide to Fire Risk Assessment*, Gaithersburg, MD: Society of Fire Protection Engineers, www.sfpe.org

Refer to A.7.8.2(1) and Figure A.7.3.6 for a risk analysis checklist.

A.24.3.12.1 Although this chapter outlines some specific criteria and/or limitations, each application should be based on recognized performance-based design practices and the emergency response plan developed for the specific facility.

The risk analysis should identify which threats are significant enough that a mass notification system is required for an effective response. Significance of threats should be based on the likelihood of occurrence and the negative consequences if the threat does occur.

Here are the general categories of questions that might be presented to the senior manager responsible for mass notification decisions. The actual questions for each project must be tailored to the area, the building, the campus, and the culture of the user organization. Following is a brief description of potential content within the mass notification event questions:

(1) What is the type of emergency event — that is, is it fire, security, safety, health, environmental, geological, meteorological, utility service disruption, or another type of event?
(2) What is the urgency of the emergency event — that is, does it represent immediate danger, has it already occurred, is it expected to occur soon, is it expected to occur in the future, or is its occurrence unknown?
(3) What is the anticipated or expected severity of the emergency event — that is, how will it impact our facility and its functions, is it expected to be extreme, severe, and so on?
(4) What is the certainty of the emergency event — that is, is it happening now, is it very likely to occur, is it likely to occur, is it possible that it will occur in the future, is it unlikely to occur, or is its occurrence unknown?
(5) What is the location of the event, or from what direction is the emergency event approaching — that is, has it or will it be approaching from the north, south, east, or west?
(6) What zone or areas should receive the emergency message(s) — that is, is it a floor of a building, multiple floors of a building, the entire building, multiple buildings, a campus of buildings, an entire town or city, an entire state, an entire region of states, or an entire country?
(7) What is the validity of the emergency event — that is, has the emergency event been investigated and/or confirmed?
(8) What instructions should we send to our personnel — that is, should they evacuate the facility, should they shelter-in-place, should they shelter-in-place at a special location, should they proceed to a safe haven area, and other action oriented items?

(9) Are there any special instructions, procedures, or special tasks that we need to remind personnel about or to accomplish — that is, close your office door, open your office door, stay away from windows, do not use elevators, and other information relating to personnel actions?

The questions suggested in items (1) through (9) are offered for consideration, and not all of them might be appropriate for every mass notification system installation. It is important to remember that when an emergency event occurs, the response must be immediate and deliberate. Therefore, there is no time for indecision. So the questions selected to reside in the emergency messaging decision tree illustrated in items (1) through (9) must be straightforward and as simple as possible. They must also be tailored to the specific organization, culture, site, and unique requirements of each local environment.

A.24.3.12.10 When a code requires a risk analysis for mass notification systems to determine the need for an MNS, the stakeholders can determine the extent and types of coverage and systems needed. It might be found that the minimum code requirements already include what is needed for the risk of a project and that nothing additional is required. An example could be a small school that has an EVAC system; that system might be sufficient for emergency communications based on the risk analysis prepared by the stakeholders and approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.24.3.13 The emergency response plan should include, but not be limited to, the following elements:

(1) Emergency response team structure
(2) Emergency response procedures, as follows:
    (a) Building system related emergencies
    (b) Human-related emergencies
    (c) Terrorism-related emergencies
    (d) Weather-related emergencies
(3) Emergency response equipment and operations
(4) Emergency response notification, as follows:
    (a) Emergency message content
    (b) Emergency notification approval process
    (c) Emergency notification initiation process
(5) Emergency response training and drills, as follows:
    (a) Classroom training
    (b) Table-top training
    (c) Live drills

A.24.3.14.3 This section is not meant to preclude a performance-based pathway survivability approach. As with most performance-based approaches, documentation should be provided by the designer and maintained with system documentation for the life of the system. Written documentation of the approval from the authority having jurisdiction should also be maintained. A performance-based approach to pathway survivability could be equivalent to, less stringent than, or more stringent than the prescriptive approach in 24.3.14. Often a performance-based approach will result from a risk analysis.

This section is also not meant to preclude less stringent pathway survivability requirements supported by a risk analysis for those unique occupancies that employ emergency voice alarm/emergency communication systems for relocation or partial evacuation as part of their fire safety plan where relocation or partial evacuation could be readily superseded by total evacuation and where buildings are of a type other than Type I or Type II (222) construction where the pathway survivability performance requirement does not need to be for two hours. Examples include low-rise education and day-care occupancies, nursing homes, ambulatory health care occupancies, hotel and dormitory occupancies, and residential board and care occupancies.

Refer to Annex F for previous nomenclature and cross-reference.

A.24.3.14.4.2 The protection requirement would also apply to a signaling line circuit that extends from a master fire alarm control unit to another remote fire alarm control unit where notification appliance circuits might originate.

Refer to 24.4.8.6.6 for the specific requirements for the protection of fire alarm equipment.

A.24.3.14.4.3 The listing of 2-hour fire-rated cable systems [electrical circuit protective system(s)] requires it to be attached to a concrete wall or floor assembly constructed with a minimum of 2-hour rating or as otherwise identified by the UL FHIT systems assembly. In a fire event the wall or floor assembly could fail causing the pathway to fail. Two-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable is not required to be attached to a concrete assembly but is required to be supported per the manufacturer's installation instructions.

A.24.3.14.4.4 The listing of 1-hour fire-rated cable systems [electrical circuit protective system(s)] would likely require it to be attached to a wall or floor assembly that is constructed with a minimum of 1-hour rating. One-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) or fire-resistive cable is not required to be attached to a concrete assembly but is required to be supported per the manufacturer's installation instructions.

A.24.3.14.4.6.1 Chapter 12 has specific requirements for separation of Class N and Class X circuits to prevent physical damage to allow the redundant pathway to remain operational. For systems designed for relocation and partial evacuation, communication must remain operational during a fire. Conductors must be separated by fire-rated floors and walls or distance in a sprinkler-protected building to be survivable during a fire. Specific circuit separation requirements are provided in 24.3.14.4.6.3 for the communication to remain operational when redundant separated pathways are installed.

A.24.3.14.4.6.2 Chapter 23 has specific requirements for SLC zones such as requiring equipment on different floors to be isolated so a single fault on the pathway does not impact more than one notification zone. Rooms or enclosures required for protection of fire alarm equipment used for relocation and partial evacuation could contain equipment that serves multiple notification zones; therefore isolation would not be possible unless additional dedicated equipment and isolation for each notification zone is installed. Specific pathway survivability requirements for faults are provided in 24.3.14.4.6.4 when redundant separated pathways are installed.

A.24.3.14.4.6.3 In occupancies where relocation or partial evacuation is used, it is critical that the fire alarm system notification appliances remain operational in notification zones where the fire event is not occurring. Figure A.24.3.14.4.6.3 is a simplified riser diagram that illustrates how the communication and control circuits could be routed in a high-rise building. Building types (high-rise and institutional) where relocation or partial evacuation is used generally are required to be constructed with a 1-hour structural frame and floor

assembly; therefore routing circuits on separate floors would allow the fire alarm notification appliances to remain operational.

When installing conductors in dissimilar protected areas in 24.3.14.4.6.3(2), it is important to confirm the walls of the room are constructed such that the rating extends from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab, or deck above. If the rating is not continuous, additional protection of the fire alarm cable would be required to maintain protection of the cable. This could consist of fire-rated cables or conduit pathways. The rooms built with rated construction that provides the fire-rated separation would need to be constructed above and below each other to maintain the fire-rated separation. The rooms are not required to be located entirely directly above and below each other; however, fire alarm cable pathways would need to avoid being routed through the same rated enclosure.

A potential alternative to locating conductors in areas not separated by rated construction would be to install 1-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) cable, fire-resistive cable, or a fire-rated cable system. This alternative to a Level 1 is covered by a Level 4 pathway survivability.

A.24.3.14.4.6.4 During a fire, insulation on fire alarm cabling can melt causing the conductors to touch causing a short circuit. Entire communication and control circuits can be impacted by a short fault on the circuit unless isolation is provided. Short-circuit isolation could be provided that is integral to the equipment or could be through a separate dedicated module that is installed between were the circuit enters the room or enclosure and the first component used to provide occupant notification. Refer to Figure A.24.3.14.4.6.3.

A.24.3.14.9 Although in some instances areas of refuge might be installed in buildings that use general evacuation and not relocation/partial evacuation, it is still crucial that people awaiting assistance can communicate with emergency responders to facilitate their evacuation. Thus, their evacuation time might be prolonged, and therefore the emergency communications systems should be capable of operating reliably during a fire incident. The requirement of 24.3.14.9 applies to any building regardless of whether it uses general evacuation, relocation, or partial evacuation.

A.24.3.14.12.1 During a fire, insulation on communication circuit cabling can melt causing the conductors to touch causing a short circuit. Entire communication and control circuits can be impacted by a short circuit or other fault on the circuit unless isolation is provided. Short-circuit isolation could be provided that is integral to the control equipment or could be through a separate dedicated module that is installed between where the circuit enters the room or enclosure and the first component used to provide the occupant communication. In order to meet the requirement that a single open, ground fault, or short-circuit fault cannot affect operation of the circuit, the use of a Class N or Class X pathway in accordance with Chapter 12 is required.

A.24.3.14.13 Stairway communications systems are required, for example, by the *International Building Code* (IBC) on every fifth floor in a building where the stairway doors are locked to prevent re-entry onto a floor. Under non-fire emergency conditions, people who become inadvertently locked into the stairway can request assistance if they are unable to navigate all the way down to the level of discharge where doors would be unlocked. The locked doors require remote unlocking capabilities from the fire command center (per IBC) so that during a fire emergency all stairway doors can be unlocked, eliminating the intended need for these communication stations to be used during a fire. Consequently, protecting the pathways for these systems from attack by fire is usually unnecessary.

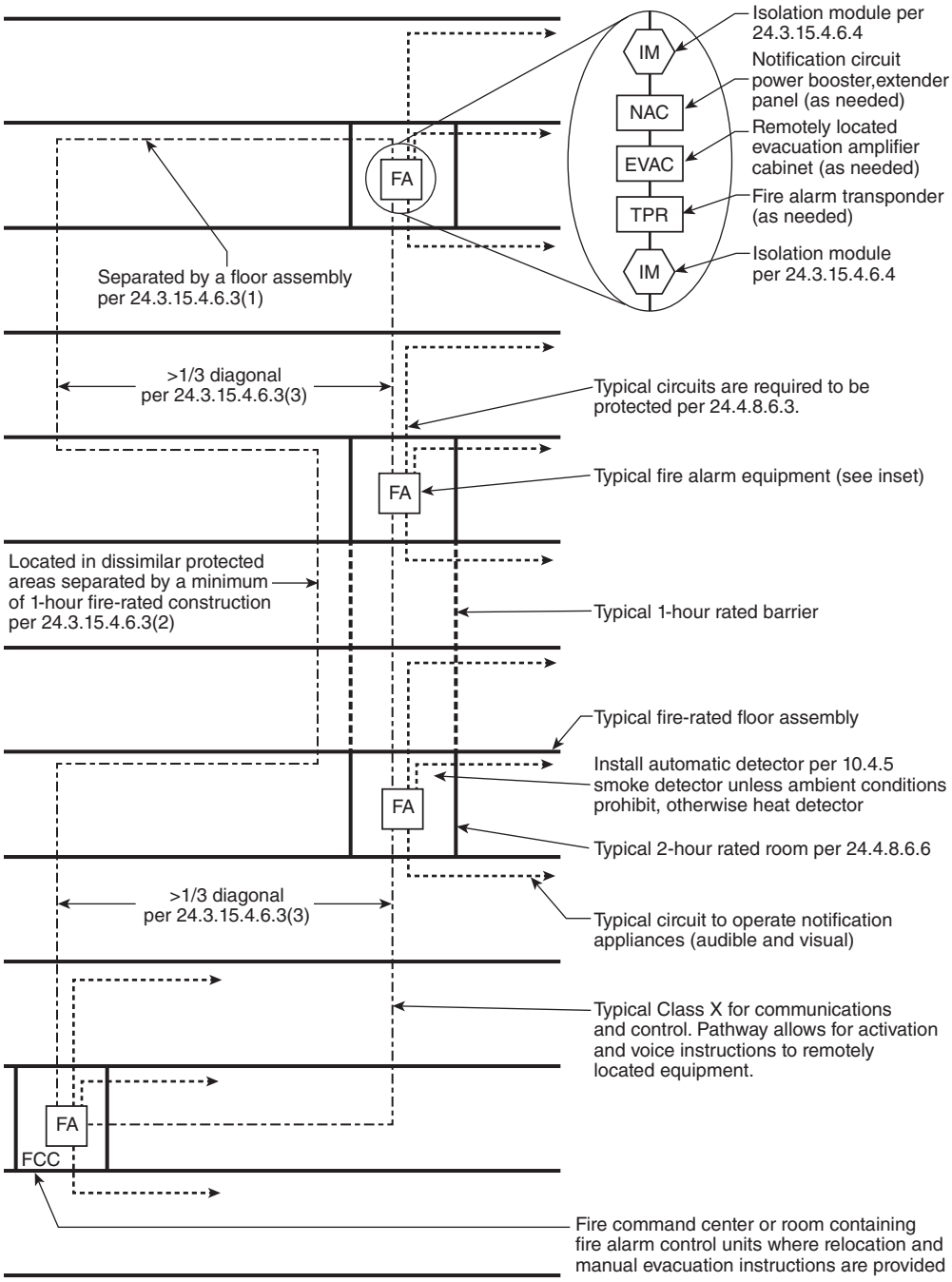
A.24.3.14.14 Despite the intended use of these systems as noted in A.24.3.14.13, should they be deployed in a building where they are specifically intended to be used during fire emergency evacuations, partial evacuation, or relocation, then it is more appropriate to treat them as area of refuge two-way communications systems and to apply those pathway survivability requirements.

A.24.4 Where used, recorded voice messages for fire emergency alarm systems should be prepared in accordance with this Code by persons who are experienced with the operation of building fire emergency alarm systems and are knowledgeable of the building's construction, layout, and fire protection plan, including evacuation procedures. The proposed voice messages should be approved by the authority having jurisdiction prior to being implemented. Persons who record the messages for fire emergency alarm systems should be able to read and speak the language used for the message clearly, concisely, and without an accent that would have an adverse effect on intelligibility.

It is not the intention that in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications service be limited to English-speaking populations. Emergency messages should be provided in the language of the predominant building population. If there is a possibility of isolated groups that do not speak the predominant language, multilingual messages should be provided. It is expected that small groups of transients unfamiliar with the predominant language will be picked up in the traffic flow in the event of an emergency and are not likely to be in an isolated situation.

A.24.4.2.1 Where an evacuation message is being provided, the three-pulse temporal signal specified in 18.4.2 should be provided unless otherwise dictated by the emergency response plan or authority having jurisdiction. This is regardless whether the cause of the evacuation is fire, carbon monoxide, gas leak, bomb threat, or any other emergency situation requiring evacuation of a building.

A.24.4.2.2.2 Generally speaking, in a standard building configuration with normal ceiling height [8 ft to 12 ft (2.4 m to 3.7 m)], normal ceiling construction (e.g., drop acoustical ceiling tiles), standard wall configurations, and finishes and carpeted floors, ceiling-mounted loudspeakers should be installed in all normally occupiable spaces and in corridors spaced at a maximum of twice the ceiling height or as determined by a commercially available computer acoustical/loudspeaker modeling program. Where wall-mounted loudspeakers are used, manufacturer recommendations should be reviewed and/or computer modeling should be employed. One of the goals of loudspeaker placement is to provide the shortest practical distance from the source (loudspeaker) to the recipient (person hearing the signal). In many applications, a combination of wall- and ceiling-mounted loudspeakers might be required. The audibility and intelligibility of the loudspeakers can be impacted by the tap/setting at which the loudspeaker is connected and should meet the audibility requirements of the Code while still having the message intelligible. Connecting to



Δ FIGURE A.24.3.14.4.6.3 Simplified Riser Diagram for a High-Rise Building with Relocation or Partial Evacuation.

a high setting to meet the audibility requirements of the Code could distort the intelligibility of the signal.

In an ADS that is a non-acoustically challenging area, designing for audibility will typically result in an intelligible system provided minimum loudspeaker guidelines are followed. Areas typically considered to be non-acoustically challenging include traditional office environments, hotel guest rooms, dwelling units, and spaces with carpeting and furnishings.

Special attention must be given to acoustically challenging ADSs. Such areas might incorporate appreciable hard surfaces (e.g., glass, marble, tile, metal) or appreciably high ceilings (e.g., atriums, multiple ceiling heights). These conditions will require more stringent design guidelines to ensure intelligibility (e.g., a closer than normal loudspeaker spacing with lower taps). This can help reduce the effect of excessive reverberation and result in better intelligibility. In extreme cases there could be areas where intelligibility is not attainable, but this can be acceptable if there is an ADS within 30 ft (9.1 m) where the intelligibility of the system is deemed adequate.

In an ADS where the ambient noise level exceeds 85 dB it is acknowledged that intelligibility might not be attainable and, in such a case, an alternative means of notification will likely be required.

Design guidance is provided in the NEMA SB-50, *Emergency Communications Audio Intelligibility Applications Guide*.

A.24.4.4.2 The intent of this low frequency tone is to accommodate those with mild to severe hearing loss. See also 18.4.6, A.18.4.6.1, and A.29.5.10. The effective date listed in Chapter 18 for using a low frequency signal has not been allowed in 24.4.4 because voice systems are easily adapted to comply, whereas the requirements of 18.4.6 also apply to stand-alone tone signaling appliances.

A.24.4.4.3 Sleeping accommodations are provided in occupancies such as healthcare, detention and correction, and other occupancies where it would not be necessary to utilize a low frequency tone that awakens those sleeping. For example, in a hospital, the voice message is used to notify staff members who are already awake. The staff will then respond to the appropriate location in the hospital to carry out their duties that could include awakening and relocating patients who could be in danger. In addition, fire drills are required to be conducted on a regular basis and providing a low frequency tone could unnecessarily awaken patients, which would be detrimental to their care.

A.24.4.5.1 The choice of the location(s) for the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications control equipment should also take into consideration the ability of the fire alarm system to operate and function during any probable single event. Although *NFPA 72* does not regulate either building construction or contents, system designers should consider the potential for an event that could damage the equipment, including remotely located control devices, to disable the system or a portion thereof. Where practical, it is prudent to minimize unnecessary fire exposures of fire alarm control equipment through the use of fire-rated construction or enclosures, by limiting adjacent combustibles and ignition sources, or other appropriate means.

A.24.4.6.1 Loudspeakers located in the vicinity of the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications control equipment or MNS equipment should be arranged so they do not cause audio feedback when the system microphone is used. Loudspeakers installed in the area of two-way telephone stations should be arranged so that the sound pressure level emitted does not preclude the effective use of the two-way telephone system. Circuits for loudspeakers and telephones should be separated, shielded, or otherwise arranged to prevent audio cross-talk between circuits.

A.24.4.7.1 Special suppression systems that are delivered through a total flooding or localized application include, but are not limited to, carbon dioxide, clean agents, halons, and other extinguishing agents. Special suppression systems require audible and visual warning alarms to provide personnel the opportunity to evacuate or to alert personnel not to enter the area of discharge that could be hazardous to life. A special suppression system discharge can be a life-threatening hazard for personnel who are not notified and, therefore, fail to react to the pre-discharge alarm. In such cases, pre-discharge and discharge alarms should be independent of the fire alarm loudspeakers that are used as part of the mass notification system. A special suppression system discharge could pose a greater threat to personnel that are located in the protected area, or that could enter the protected area, if the local signals were to be overridden and they did not receive the appropriate warning.

A.24.4.8 When a fire or other emergency occurs in a building, the usual goal is to evacuate the occupants or relocate them so that they are not exposed to hazardous conditions. The exception occurs in occupancies using stay-in-place/defend-in-place (SIP/DIP) [1] strategies. It might also be necessary to alert and provide information to trained staff responsible for assisting evacuation or relocation. Figure A.24.4.8 shows several key steps in a person's reaction and decision-making process [2].

Occupants rarely panic in fire situations [3,4]. The behavior that they adopt is based on the information they have, the perceived threat, and the decisions they make. The entire decision path is full of thought and decisions on the part of the occupant, all of which take time before leading to the development of adaptive behavior. In hindsight, the actions of many occupants in real fires are sometimes less than optimal. However, their decisions might have been the best choices given the information they had. Fire alarm systems that only use audible tones and/or flashing visual notification appliances impart only one bit of information: fire alarm. It has long been recognized that environments having complex egress situations or high hazard potentials require occupant notification systems that provide more than one bit of information [5]. To reduce the response time of the occupants and to effect the desired behavior, the message should contain several key elements [3,6].

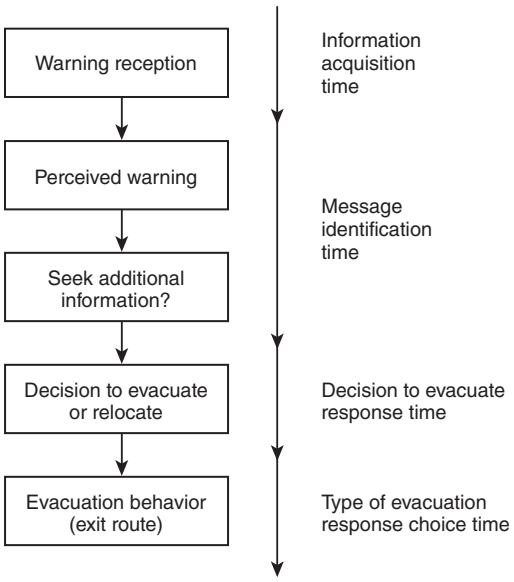
The key elements include the following:

(1) Tell occupants what has happened and where
(2) Tell occupants what they should do
(3) Tell occupants why they should do it

There does not seem to be any research that has tested actual message content to determine the best way to inform occupants. The problem is that each building and each fire is unique. Messaging is further complicated by the need to give different information to different people, depending on their location relative to the fire, their training, and their physical/mental capabilities.

Messages should use positive language and avoid negative instructions that could be misinterpreted due to unintelligible communications. For example, if you want people to leave an area, say so: "A fire has been reported in the area. For your safety, use the stairs to evacuate the area immediately." A bad example is: "The signal tone you have just heard indicated a report of an emergency. If your floor evacuation signal sounds after this message, do not use the elevator, walk to the nearest stairway and leave the floor. While the report is being verified, occupants on other floors should await further instructions." This message is too long, ambiguous, and subject to misunderstanding if not heard clearly. The word "not" might not be heard clearly, or it might be heard to apply to the entire remaining sentence. Similarly, care should be used in selecting and clearly enunciating words such as "fifth" and "sixth," which can sound the same if the system and environment lead to low intelligibility.

See A.24.3.6.1 for more information on methodology for improved message content, structure, and intelligibility. Refer to Annex D for more information on speech intelligibility and how it is predicted.



Δ **FIGURE A.24.4.8 Key Steps in Person's Reaction.**

Content of the message should be predicated on the emergency response plan, the nature of the building and its occupants, the design of the fire alarm system, and testing of the occupant reaction to the message. Caution is advised that the fire alarm system operation and message actuation might be initiated by a manual pull station or detector remote from the fire.

[1] Schifiliti, R. P., "To Leave or Not to Leave — That is the Question!", National Fire Protection Association, World Fire Safety Congress & Exposition, May 16, 2000, Denver, CO.

[2] Ramachandran, G., "Informative Fire Warning Systems," *Fire Technology*, vol. 47, no. 1, February 1991, National Fire Protection Association, 66–81.

[3] Bryan, J., "Psychological Variables That May Affect Fire Alarm Design," *Fire Protection Engineering*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Issue No. 11, Fall 2001.

[4] Proulx, G., "Cool Under Fire," *Fire Protection Engineering*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Issue No. 16, Fall 2002.

[5] General Services Administration, Proceedings of the Reconvened International Conference on Fire Safety in High Rise Buildings, Washington, D.C., October 1971.

[6] Proulx, G., "Strategies for Ensuring Appropriate Occupant Response to Fire Alarm Signals," National Research Council of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, *Construction Technology Update*, No. 43, 1–6, December 2000.

A.24.4.8.3.1 Research finds that pauses before repeating emergency messages are more effective than repeating messages consecutively.

For example, Section 5.2.4.2 of NIST Technical Note 1779, *General Guidance on Emergency Communication Strategies for Buildings* (Kuligowski, 2013) *[see G.2.2.1(11)(d)]* recommends emergency messaging repetition. It also recommends that emergency messaging be repeated at intervals, rather than consecutively. "The second (or third message), provided some interval of time later, may catch a different population who were either busy or distracted during the time period when the first warning message was issued." Paragraph 24.4.8.3.1 requires that EVAC messages used for fire emergency relocation or partial evacuation be repeated at least three times. Therefore, EVAC systems that transmit digitally stored audio messages are to be configured to meet these requirements. First responders and other individuals required to make live fire-related relocation or partial evacuation messages must also be trained to repeat the entire message sequence, including the alert tone, at least three times. The interval for repeating the messages should be established in the emergency response plan.

Δ **A.24.4.8.3.2** Since the duration of the alarm is indeterminate, audible alerts and messaging that are periodically suspended can contribute to an improved response by the occupants. Temporarily suspending the audible portion of the alarm can support a better community response to the instructions.

Approved alternative fire alarm notification schemes, such as sequences that contain only a fixed number of repetitions of the prerecorded messages and associated alert tones, or as indicated in 24.4.8.3.2, are permitted as long as the occupants are effectively notified and provided instructions in a timely and safe manner in accordance with the emergency response plan.

Research from the National Research Council of Canada, detailed in *Occupant Behaviour and Evacuation,* found that "[i]n public buildings, such as airport terminals or sport centres, occupant training is not practical; for these, much of the responsibility for safety will rest with staff. Consequently, staff training is paramount. Occupants are very likely to look for staff members to obtain information; they are regarded as knowledgeable, they are expected to know the situation, the best course of action and the closest exit. Whether heard on a loudspeaker or seen in uniform or wearing a name tag, staff are likely to be listened to."

The National Council on Disability publication, *Effective Emergency Management: Making Improvements for Communities and People with Disabilities,* found that "[p]eople with disabilities should not be viewed as one more special interest group that drains resources from the common pool. Accommodating this large group often translates into being better equipped to serve all people. Anyone, at any moment, can incur a disability, particularly during emergencies. (Kailes and Enders, 2007, p. 13)"

Furthermore, Shields, Boyce, and Silcock (1997) note that "staff trained in emergency evacuation should provide guidance to people who are evacuating public facilities. Familiar and trusted staff can alert a significant portion of the public in such instances and ensure an efficient evacuation." On the basis of census results, Morrow (1999) argues that a "sizable segment" of any community's population will need additional assistance during evacuation.

Fire-related emergency relocation instructions and nonevacuation messages are repeated a minimum of three times. For prerecorded messages, the actual number of times the message sequence plays is indeterminate and the interval between each sequence playing is not defined by code; the interval is intended to be defined in the emergency response plan. Paragraph 24.4.8.3.2 requires that the entire message sequence, including the tone, is again repeated after a pause. So if the tone and partial evacuation message is repeated three times as required by 24.4.8.3.1, then after pausing for an interval of time (time

periods are established according to the occupancy type and type of emergency — see the following paragraph), the entire message sequence (including tone) is repeated again three times, followed by another pause, and so on.

Research shows that effective messages should be repeated at intervals, not consecutively *(see Annex G)*. In determining the alternative interval times, consider the following:

(1) Too much time between message sequences could mislead occupants to thinking that the emergency has been resolved.
(2) Too much time between message sequences could insufficiently communicate the intended sense of urgency.
(3) Too little time between message sequences could impair the ability of occupants to comply with instructions, particularly for occupants that need assistance.
(4) Too little time between message sequences could make it difficult for occupants to mark a change in the message contents if partial evacuation or relocation instructions are changed and re-issued.
(5) Upon loss of primary power, secondary power is required to support continuous notification for only 15 minutes. This time could be extended based on the period of repetition of automatic messages. Too little time between message sequences could exhaust power reserves before emergency first responders arrive, compromising the responders' ability to manually transmit additional live evacuation or relocation messages.

N **A.24.4.8.3.3** Generally, only first responders or other trained authorized emergency personnel should be able to intentionally and manually silence or reset the automatic prerecorded message sequence; this ensures the safe evacuation or relocation of all occupants, regardless of the time it takes.

There might also be circumstances where messages are automatically changed (based on AHJ approval). For example, in a staged evacuation of a high-rise building, some floors might initially shelter in place to prevent congestion in the stairways. The message would change automatically, on a timed floor-by-floor basis, to instruct occupants to evacuate. In this case, each message is silenced and the next message takes over.

Chapter 24 stipulates that an emergency command center, which could be remote from a building, automatically control the output devices or change the message (which would also involve silencing a current message). A risk analysis is used to determine the circumstances when a message should be changed. One example could include changing an evacuation message to a shelter-in-place message if an active shooter/hostile event is occurring outdoors. Another example could include issuing an all-clear message across a campus of buildings after an incident.

Chapter 24 also requires that systems do not automatically resume playing a recorded message after that message is interrupted by a live page. Live pages have priority over prerecorded messages. Automatic resumption of the prerecorded message is permitted only when required by the emergency response plan.

A.24.4.8.4 Where a partial evacuation message is being provided, the three-pulse temporal signal specified in 18.4.2 should be provided unless otherwise dictated by the emergency response plan or authority having jurisdiction. This is regardless whether the cause of the evacuation is fire, carbon monoxide, gas leak, bomb threat, or any other emergency situation requiring partial evacuation of a building.

A.24.4.8.6.1 Along with the pathway survivability requirements, one or more of the following means could be considered acceptable to provide a level of survivability consistent with the intent of this requirement:

(1) Routing notification appliance circuits separately
(2) Using short-circuit, fault-tolerant signaling line circuits for controlling evacuation signals

The requirement for notification appliances to operate in those signaling zones that are not attacked by fire will also require that circuits and equipment that are common to more than one signaling zone be designed and installed such that the fire will not disable them. For instance, a signaling line circuit used to control notification appliances in multiple signaling zones should be properly designed and installed so that one fire would not impair the signaling line circuit, rendering the notification appliances serving more than one signaling zone inoperative.

A.24.4.8.6.3 Circuits are required to be protected as they pass through fire areas other than the one served. The purpose of this is to delay possible damage to the circuits from fires in areas other than those served by the circuits and to increase the likelihood that circuits serving areas remote from the original fire will have the opportunity to be actuated and serve their purpose. Circuits are considered protected when the pathway directly enters the notification zone from the rated room required by 24.4.8.6.6 and are not required to comply with the pathway survivability requirements in 24.3.14.4.

A.24.4.9.1 Paragraph 24.4.9.1 does not prohibit the provision of multiple notification appliance circuits within a notification zone.

A.24.5 This section covers the application, installation, location, performance, and maintenance of mass notification systems used for emergency purposes.

An in-building mass notification system is considered to be a system used to provide information and instructions to people in a building(s) or other space using intelligible voice communications and including visual signals, text, graphics, tactile, or other communication methods.

Mass notification systems can consist of fully independent systems with minimal or no interface with the building fire alarm system, systems that report trouble and supervisory signals through the fire alarm system, systems that share audible and visual notification circuits and appliances with the fire alarm system, or combination mass notification and fire alarm systems.

A.24.5.1 Although some minimum criteria are outlined for a particular feature, the feature might not be applicable for every project.

The information and instructions delivered by a mass notification system could be initiated manually by an operator or automatically by sensors or other systems and might be delivered to the target audience using prerecorded messages or live messages, or both, tailored to the situation and the audience.

Each mass notification system could be different, depending on the anticipated threat and the level of protection intended. As an example, a particular project might not require secure

radio transmissions. As such, criteria for such would not apply. However, if the authority having jurisdiction or design professional has specified secure radio transmissions, the minimum applicable criteria within this document would be required. Deviation from these minimum criteria would require approval of the stakeholders.

Mass notification systems can consist of fully independent systems with minimal or no interface with the building fire alarm system, systems that report trouble and supervisory signals through the fire alarm system, systems that share audible and visual notification circuits and appliances with the fire alarm system, or combination mass notification and fire alarm systems.

A.24.5.1.2(6) Other systems could include wide-area mass notification, distributed recipient mass notification, and regional and national alerting.

A.24.5.2.1 Authorized personnel could include building occupants who can readily access and originate messages in emergency situations. Depending on the individual facility, use of the mass notification system to originate non-emergency messages could also be permitted. The selection of authorized personnel should be based on a risk assessment and the building emergency response plan.

A.24.5.2.2 Authorized personnel could initiate message signaling over the mass notification system from either an emergency command center or a secondary (backup) control station(s). In cases where clusters of facilities within the same geographical region exist, one or more regional control stations could initiate message signaling. The mass notification system could permit activation of messages originated by mobile sentries and roving patrols using wireless activation devices. Since it is common practice to allow mass notification systems to be utilized for "nonemergency" messages, the emergency command center should incorporate a clearly marked and easy to operate means to distinguish between emergency and nonemergency use. Comprehensive training and a fail-safe default to the emergency mode of operation should be employed to ensure that no actual emergency message gets transmitted as a nonemergency broadcast.

A.24.5.2.3 As a general practice, the number of message selection switches included as part of the operating controls should be limited, so that authorized personnel can utilize the system with only minimal familiarity. This, of course, could be a different matter on an industrial or college campus where trained individuals are likely to be very familiar with the operation and use of the system. In that case, more selection switches could be beneficial.

A.24.5.2.5 It is recognized that there can be benefit for users at the ACU to identify which specific location is currently in control. This can be indicated through visual means or through an audible location code. This can be especially useful for emergency responders utilizing the ACU to know which remote location is in control. If incorporated into a system, such features can be enabled or disabled by authorized personnel or as directed through the risk analysis.

A.24.5.2.10 During emergencies, building occupants should periodically receive an audible clue that the emergency notification given by the mass notification system is still in effect. This also can help building occupants and emergency response personnel recognize that the mass notification system is overriding fire alarm notification appliances. The audible signal could consist of a simple signal such as a chirp of sufficient duration to be recognized by the usual building occupants and, typically, by occupants who are not hearing disabled.

A.24.5.3.1 The mass notification system could permit activation of messages originated by mobile sentries and roving patrols using wireless activation devices.

A.24.5.3.4 Generally, each separate building should be provided with a separate in-building mass notification system; however, some facilities (such as a campus-type high school with multiple separate buildings) might be more effectively served by a single in-building mass notification system. Alternately, a risk analysis could determine that a wide-area mass notification system provides the optimal capability for mass notification.

A.24.5.4.1 Alternate methods that achieve the desired statistical availability could be deemed acceptable in lieu of monitoring the integrity of circuits, signaling channels, or communication pathways where consistent with the risk analysis and emergency response plan.

An example of an alternate method could include an attendant monitored system, which is a device or system intended to be constantly operated and maintained by competent and experienced personnel either locally or from a remote station. ANSI/NEMA SB-40, *Communications Systems for Life Safety in Schools*, references "operational integrity" in relation to systems that are used regularly for routine purposes and suggests that such systems would be statistically more available due to a lower risk of falling into a state of disrepair. ANSI/NEMA SB-40 also addresses system readiness in relation to constant use, and recommends that, to the greatest extent possible, equipment used in emergency communication should be used daily in routine situations. Therefore, it is important to consider the level to which a system is constantly operated and the level of operator training when preparing a risk analysis. Based on the occupancy of the premise, the risk analysis, and the emergency response plan, the designer and authority having jurisdiction can more easily determine whether it is appropriate for loudspeaker circuits to utilize alternate methods for equivalency. Such a constantly operated system could be determined to achieve a statistically significant availability to satisfy an authority having jurisdiction.

A.24.5.7 The risk analysis should identify what emergency situations will take priority over the fire alarm evacuation signal. Should a tornado warning for the area take priority over an active fire in the building? Should a breach of security at the campus entry gate take priority over an active fire in the building? If a manual fire alarm pull box has been actuated, it might be a terrorist action to have people leave the building and walk into an exterior threat. In such a case, mass notification input is intended to override the fire alarm evacuation signals to redirect the occupants based on the conditions.

A.24.5.9.2 Devices such as gas or chemical sensors and detectors, weather alert signals, or other such signals can be desirable to connect to the mass notification system to provide a faster response to emergency conditions.

A.24.5.10 Refer to 24.5.2 for requirements related to operation of the system by authorized personnel. It is recognized that, based on the risk analysis, control equipment and circuits could need different levels of protection for different facilities.

Access to the fire alarm/mass notification interface should be consistent with the action outlined in the emergency response plan. It could have been prior practice in some jurisdictions to locate the fire alarm control unit in the main lobby of a facility. However, it might not be appropriate to locate the mass notification system autonomous control unit within the lobby if the general public would have access to deactivate mass notification system components. Based on the risk analysis, it could be appropriate to locate the autonomous control unit within a secured room while providing local operating consoles for use by other authorized personnel.

A.24.5.12.1 Mass notification systems can include a system local operating console(s) for authorized occupants to readily access and originate messages in emergency and nonemergency situations. The quantity and location(s) of an LOC(s) should be determined by the risk analysis and the facilities emergency response plan.

Δ **A.24.5.13.1** The following is an example scheme for message prioritization, from highest (1) to lowest (5), for consideration during the risk analysis:

(1) Live voice messages from personnel in the building should be the highest priority. If systems provide control locations that are usable by nonauthorized personnel, these controls should be disabled or overridden during emergency operations.
(2) Automatic fire alarm messages/other high priority messages as determined by risk analysis criteria.
(3) External messages originated by a wide-area mass notification system.
(4) Message priority for emergency conditions such as severe weather warnings, gas leaks, chemical spills, and other hazardous conditions should be determined by risk analysis criteria and defined in the emergency response plan.
(5) Nonemergency messages, such as general announcements and time function signaling (e.g., work breaks, class change), should have the lowest priority.

A.24.5.13.6(2) Unless the risk analysis determines otherwise, the fire alarm system should always be automatically returned to normal functionality. If the fire alarm system is automatically returned to normal functionality, the building emergency response plan should state that no user intervention is required. When manual intervention is required to return the fire alarm system to normal, specific instructions should be in place in the emergency response plan explaining how the fire alarm system notification appliances should be reactivated. These instructions should be located at the fire alarm and mass notification control units. Individuals responsible for manually returning the fire alarm system to normal should be properly trained in the procedure.

A.24.5.14 Control functions need to be accessible for those intended to use them. This requirement is not intended to require that the control enclosure be within the dimensions, but rather the respective buttons, latches, microphone, and other items the user will need to have within reach and view. Figure A.24.5.14(a) applies when the horizontal reach is less than 10 in. (254 mm). Figure A.24.5.14(b) applies when the horizontal reach is between 10 in. (254 mm) and 24 in. (610 mm).

A.24.5.18 Care in location and placement is critical to the survivability of the textual visual appliance and maximizing its effectiveness. Locate the textual visual appliance away from direct sunlight or direct local area lighting. Avoid locating the textual visual appliance near heating and air-conditioning ducts.

A.24.5.18.2 The requirement of 24.5.18.2 does not imply that multiple primary methods of visual appliances cannot exist in a common area. Both visual notification appliance and graphical or textual appliances are designated as primary where the authority having jurisdiction declares both to be required. When textual audible notification is required, consideration is warranted for high-noise areas and for a person who is deaf or hard of hearing being capable of clearly receiving instructions.

As mass notification systems are deployed, the more complex emergency management communication requirements that go beyond what can be indicated by a visual notification appliance and a tone are being addressed. The intelligibility requirements of an MNS/ECS are a direct reflection of this reality. However, for a person who is deaf or hard of hearing, no degree of intelligibility might be sufficient. Additionally, there are physical spaces where intelligibility is impossible or impractical to provide. In designating a primary visual notification appliance, it is easy to assume that a visual notification appli-

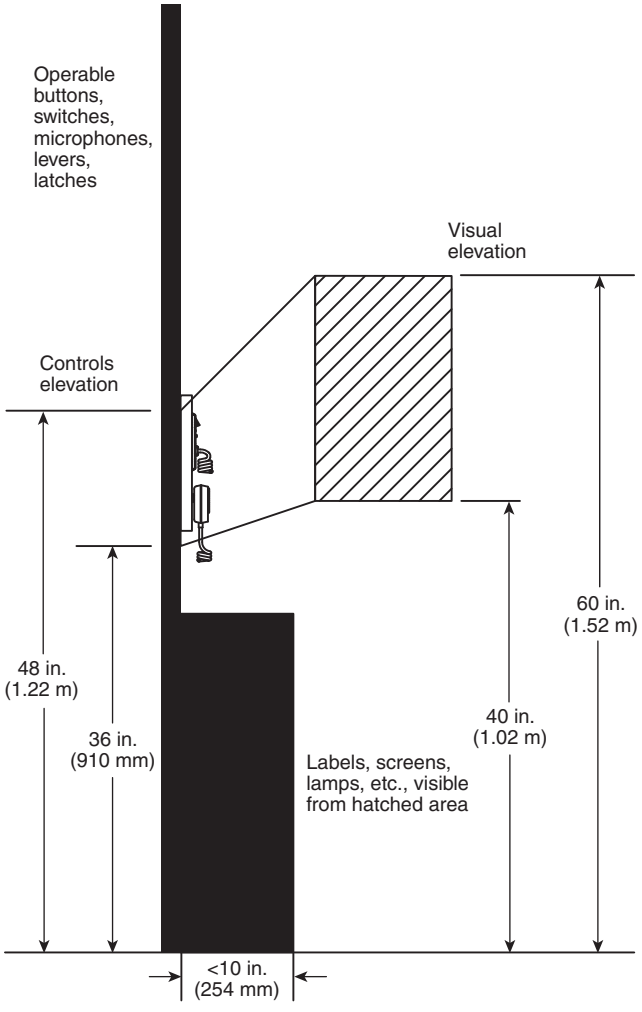


FIGURE A.24.5.14(a) Horizontal Reach of Less Than 10 in. (254 mm).

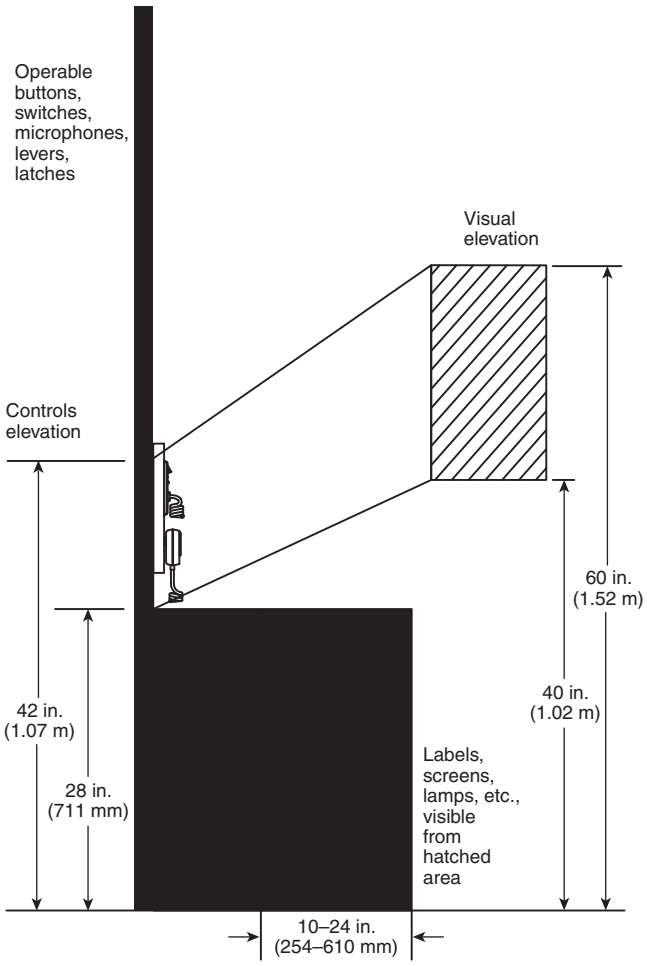


FIGURE A.24.5.14(b) Horizontal Reach of 10 in. (254 mm) to 24 in. (610 mm).

ance is sufficient and all other visual notification is automatically supplemental.

However, where the risk analysis and an emergency response plan require the communication of MNS textual audible instructions for occupants, a visual notification appliance should not be considered a sufficient primary notification appliance where intelligibility cannot be achieved or where consideration for lone individuals or groups of individuals who are deaf or hard of hearing might prevent them from responding appropriately to emergency instructions.

A.24.5.20 The video display can be a video appliance used to facilitate mass notification. Information displayed could be video, graphic, text, or audio. Information can be transmitted over a video distribution network, MATV, or CATV system. These messages can be standardized or customized for specific applications or situations. Dynamic text elements can be derived from secure data or updated in real time, either locally or remotely. Messages can be controlled by authorities to update and alter content with manual overrides from authorized security, police, and so forth to ensure up-to-date and real-time information. The same can be accomplished with remote control from an emergency command center. Examples of interfaces used for real-time control include USB, Ethernet, RS-232, and GPI.

A.24.5.22.1.3 Where automatic transmission is required to a supervising station, it should be performed in accordance with the emergency response plan. The purpose for disabling or overriding the fire alarm system notification appliances during simultaneous fire and mass notification events is so that occupants will not receive conflicting messages and fail to respond correctly. Fire alarm notification that should be overridden during a mass notification system activation could include audible notification appliances, visual notification appliances, textual notification appliances, and video notification appliances.

A.24.5.22.3.1 As part of the risk analysis and emergency response plan, consideration should be given to future interfacing in-building mass notification systems with a wide-area mass notification system if it does not presently exist. In-building mass notification systems should be designed to allow future interface with a wide-area mass notification system.

A.24.5.23.1 A combined system can include an autonomous control unit and fire alarm control unit supplied from different manufacturers or placed in separate equipment enclosures; however, the autonomous control unit and fire alarm control unit should be integrated in their controls and performance to meet the requirements of this Code.

A.24.5.24.2 When a professional-grade public address system, an engineered sound reinforcement system, or a pro-audio sound system does not meet all the performance requirements of Chapter 24, it can still be evaluated and documented with a risk analysis and permitted for use as an emergency communications system with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction. For example, consider a professional-grade public address system that includes outdoor-class loudspeakers not listed for fire. In the risk analysis, an argument could be made that the system is allowable for use during a non-fire-related evacuation of the structure, a lock-down or lock-out condition, or a reverse evacuation.

Another example could be an attendant monitored system, which is a device or system intended to be constantly operated and maintained by competent and experienced personnel either locally or from a remote station. Consider a professional-grade public address system, an engineered sound reinforcement system, or a pro-audio sound system that has a history of reliability, is used regularly by trained personnel, but does not support the monitoring for integrity requirements of *NFPA 72*. When coupled with appropriate equivalency information provided within the risk analysis, such a system could be deemed acceptable to an authority having jurisdiction for specific occupancies and uses.

The risk analysis should also consider the need for secondary power. Typically, public address systems, engineered sound reinforcement systems, and pro-audio sound systems do not include integrated secondary power. So, if the application requires secondary power, it would usually need to be provided through an alternate means such as backup generator or an ESS. For an ESS in particular, care should be taken to determine the required capacity to support a minimally acceptable operational period. See Section 10.6, Power Supplies, which highlights concerns and issues such as continuity, capacity, and various options.

A.24.6 Wide-area mass notification systems are generally installed to provide real-time information to outdoor areas. These systems are normally provided with, and operated from, two or more emergency command centers. Communications between emergency command centers and in-building mass notification systems is provided. Communications between the emergency command centers and regional or national command systems could also be provided. Wide-area mass notification systems are often those such as campus giant voice systems, military base public address systems, civil defense warning systems, large outdoor visual displays, and so forth.

A.24.6.2 A commonly used method of protecting against unauthorized changes using multiple levels of password protection can be described as follows (in ascending levels of access):

(1) *Access Level 1.* Access by persons who have a general responsibility for safety supervision, and who might be expected to investigate and initially respond to an alarm or trouble signal.
(2) *Access Level 2.* Access by persons who have a specific responsibility for safety, and who are trained to operate the control unit.
(3) *Access Level 3.* Access by persons who are trained and authorized to take control over a given area of a site to allow local paging, which might be different from that of another area. Note: This might require a higher form of access to the local control.
(4) *Access Level 4.* Access by persons that serve in a system administrator capacity and are authorized to make changes to the system and its associated software.

A.24.6.3 A wide-area mass notification system could have the capability to communicate with other notification systems on the site, such as the telephone alerting system, paging system, cell phone, pager, PDA activation, e-Blast, message scrolling, reverse 911, fax transmission, and highway advisory radio and sign control system (used for dynamic control of radio information and traffic signs for emergency information and traffic management).

A.24.6.5 High power loudspeaker arrays should be designed with directional characteristics that will minimize the distortion of voice signals by interface from other zones and will minimize the transmission of voice or tone signals into environmentally sensitive areas or off the site.

A.24.6.5.1(B) Refer to Annex D for more information on speech intelligibility and how it is predicted.

Normal weather conditions should be specified as appropriate for the geographic location.

In outdoor areas, such as in industrial areas with many multistory buildings, the maximum distance of personnel from an outdoor loudspeaker often has to be significantly reduced to retain acceptable intelligibility of the voice message. Loudspeakers that provide directional capability should be used. These can be mounted on building exteriors if the loudspeakers do not radiate unacceptable levels of sound into the building on which they are mounted.

At some sites, it could be necessary to control the amount of sound that propagates in undesirable directions, such as into civilian communities adjacent to the site boundaries or into wildlife areas with protected or endangered animal species. Additionally, in some areas, it might be necessary to mount wide-area mass notification loudspeakers on the side of a building while simultaneously preventing an unacceptable increase in that building's interior noise levels.

A.24.6.5.4 At a minimum, the high power loudspeaker array controller should be located above known high water level during historic floods. In northern states, the high power loudspeaker array should be located above known snow levels. When selecting high power loudspeaker arrays, care should be taken to ensure the equipment is rated to operate between the high and low temperature range and other anticipated environmental conditions for the geographical location of installation. The system designer should inquire about this information as part of the risk analysis.

A.24.6.7.2 High power loudspeaker arrays should be mounted not to exceed the OSHA and FEMA Technical Bulletin, *Outdoor Warning Systems*, Version 2.0, for occupational noise exposure limits or an absolute limit of 123 C-weighted decibels (dBC) as referenced in FEMA to anyone in the immediate vicinity of the appliances.

A.24.6.9 High power loudspeaker arrays and their supporting structures should have a minimum design wind speed of 100 miles/hr [161 km/hr (86.8 kn)]. The supporting structure should be sized to accommodate the static and dynamic loads produced by the sound systems and all attachments. Seismic loads are generally site specific.

A.24.7 Distributed recipient mass notification systems are enterprise-class systems for the management of, and mass distribution of, emergency notification messages within buildings, throughout installations, across entire geographical regions, or throughout a worldwide military command. Using distributed recipient mass notification systems, designated system operators would be able to rapidly and reliably inform appropriate personnel of homeland security levels (including chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear threats; hazardous weather conditions; and many other critical events), possibly with near real-time response capability.

A distributed recipient mass notification system is meant to communicate to a wide range of targeted individuals and groups. These systems might use mass dialing systems, including reverse 911, email, SMS, or other directed communications methods to broadcast information. They might also use wired or wireless networks for one- or two-way communications and/or control between a building or area and an emergency services organization (information, command, and control).

Although classified as one-way ECS, distributed recipient mass notification systems could be capable of centrally tracking, in real time, all alerting activities for each individual recipient, including sending, receiving, and responding to alerts, and be able to generate reports based on tracked information. Distributed recipient mass notification systems could be able to provide ability to collect and report user responses to alerts, such as "I am safe," "I need assistance," and "I am not in affected area."

Distributed recipient mass notification systems could incorporate a predefined library of signals and messaging appropriate for, but not limited to, the following:

(1) Presidential alert message
(2) Homeland security levels
(3) Terrorism threats, watches, or warnings
(4) Evacuation routes
(5) Emergency directives

(6) Personnel recall requirements
(7) Federal, DOD, police, fire, local, or installation-specific warning and notification requirements
(8) Amber alerts

The distributed recipient mass notification system could be capable of monitoring emergency notifications from multiple data sources [such as Wireless Emergency Alert (WEA), National Weather Service, Emergency Managers Weather Information Network (EMWIN), Naval Meteorology and Oceanography (METOC), and others as determined locally] and automatically sending out notifications to designated facilities and personnel based on predefined rules.

A mass notification system could also be capable of reaching out to all online personnel by leveraging a highly secure, redundant, Web-based IP network architecture to manage the entire mass notification process. Agencies and organizations can create role-based uses such as operators, administrators, and recipients, based on their access rights across multiple facilities, campuses, and installations. System rules could be established to determine operator permissions and actions such as creating and activating scenarios, as well as the extent and geography of alerts and delivery systems and devices that should be used. Such a Web-based mass notification system would employ an open, standards-based architecture. The system could be integrated with existing user directories to support organizational hierarchy and emergency response groups. It could be structured to allow emergency criteria–based targeting of emergency alerts.

Additionally, this annex material provides information on ongoing development of system requirements for net-centric alerting systems (NCAS) that will be based on IP technologies. This annex is not mandatory, but is provided to stimulate development of suitable requirements and standards. Consequently, user suggestions and feedback on this annex are highly encouraged and requested. Methods to ensure reliability and robustness in off-normal or emergency conditions are of particular concern. The required amount of and method for isolating alerting functions from normal, non-alerting system functions needs development.

NCAS leverage the IP network infrastructure to instantly reach those personnel who have access to nearly any IP-connected devices [such as pop-up alerts on personal computers (PC), text messages to cellular telephones, electronic mail messages, and voice messages to voiceover-IP (VoIP) telephones and PCs]. Additionally, NCAS could be used to actuate, through a single user interface, other (IP based and non-IP based) alerting systems, such as wide-area alerting systems and traditional dial-up telephone alerting systems.

NCAS can be installed independently or at a central location. In a centrally managed NCAS configuration, personnel and facilities in the regional operations center's particular area of coverage could be alerted instantly by events, either from any individual installation, or centrally from the regional operations center. Using management tools, designated operators from each installation in the region could log in via a web browser and have complete access to their own portion of the NCAS. The regional operations center would retain the ability to centrally monitor and manage all portions of the system, including supervisory and trouble conditions of the different system components and integrated components.

The NCAS would incorporate a Web-based management and alert activation application through which all operators and administrators could gain access to the system's capabilities, based on the users' permissions and the defined access policy. Such a management application would incorporate management of the alert activation flow through all delivery methods, as well as end-user management, operators' permission and access, tracking and reporting, and all administrative aspects of the system.

Distributed recipient mass notification systems could interface and interoperate with other types of mass notification capabilities, including wide-area and in-building mass notification systems. During emergencies, systems operators should not need to send notifications using multiple alerting systems. The distributed recipient mass notification system, particularly NCAS, might be able to provide the capability to integrate user interfaces and consolidate access to multiple mass notification and alerting systems.

A.24.7.1 Distributed recipient mass notification systems could enable the management of the notification flow, including users' management, groups targeting, operators' permissions, access policies, predefined emergency scenarios, and response tracking and reporting.

A.24.7.2 Distributed recipient mass notification systems could be capable of sending alert messages in a prioritized method to target recipients according to the following:

(1) Hierarchical organizational structure (as would be imported from an active directory)
(2) Organizational roles
(3) Specific distribution lists [e.g., hazardous materials (HAZMAT) response teams]
(4) Specific distribution (e.g., person who is deaf or hard of hearing or others with disabilities that warrant prioritized notification)
(5) Dynamic groups created through on-the-fly queries of the user directory
(6) Geographical locations (e.g., entire bases, zones within bases)
(7) IP addresses (required for targeting devices in specific physical locations)

Distributed recipient mass notification systems should provide mechanisms to update user and targeting data (e.g., user data import, integration with personnel directories, and self-user registration).

Distributed recipient mass notification systems could use a Web-based user interface, support locally designated standard network ports and protocols, and provide open interfaces to support interoperability, such as extensible markup language (XML) and common alerting protocol (CAP) based emergency messages. *(See OASIS Standard CAP-V1.2, OASIS Common Alerting Protocol, Version 1.2.)*

A.24.7.5 Distributed recipient mass notification systems would be capable of sending alert messages to end-users (recipients) via multiple delivery methods, including the following:

(1) Audio-visual network alerts to desktops and laptops via desktop pop-up
(2) Text alerts to mobile phones and pagers
(3) Text alerts to electronic mail (e-mail) clients
(4) Text alerts to social networks
(5) Audio alerts to phones

(6) Audio alerts to existing wide-area or building voice and or mass notification systems
(7) Network alerts to any other IP-connected devices via standard XML and CAP protocols

The system could be extendable to support additional delivery methods in the future as this technology develops.

A.24.7.6 A distributed recipient mass notification system could support multiple server and multiple site configurations to achieve a "hot standby" failover configuration (i.e., no down time in case of failure in a single server), as well as to support higher load scenarios (e.g., more users). This could be accomplished with premises-based systems or hosted configurations.

Backup configuration can either be a net-centric system architecture located behind internet firewalls or hosted off-premises, outside the owner's internet firewall utilizing a hosted software and hardware configuration operated and maintained by DRMNS provider(s), or incorporate features of both configurations.

A.24.8 Two-way, in-building emergency services communications systems are used by firefighters, police, and other emergency services personnel. This does not preclude equipment outside of the protected premises.

A.24.8.6 Consideration should be given to the type of telephone handset that firefighters use in areas where high ambient noise levels exist or areas where high noise levels could exist during a fire condition. Push-to-talk handsets, handsets that contain directional microphones, or handsets that contain other suitable noise-canceling features, can be used.

A.24.8.19 Two-way, in-building wired emergency services communications systems (i.e., firefighters' telephone systems) are intended to provide emergency service personnel and designated building occupants with a supervised, reliable communication system that is completely independent of other in-building communication systems. The survivability of two-way, in-building wired emergency services communications systems is paramount as they are intended for use during and throughout the duration of a fire or other emergency event. This kind of functionality requires that measures are taken to ensure that the system is designed, installed, and maintained in such a manner that they can survive and function under extreme conditions.

Pathway survivability of two-way emergency communications systems is dictated by 24.3.14.7 through 24.3.14.16.

Δ **A.24.9** The intent of these systems is to provide reliable radio communications for first responders within all buildings in their jurisdiction. The building codes now require these systems in lieu of firefighter telephones.

NFPA 1225 is followed by 911 centers, dispatchers, and municipal radio operations centers. It is the best standard to follow for these systems.

Dedicated firefighter telephone (FFT) systems were required in high-rise buildings to enable first responders to communicate within the building and to communicate primarily with the fire ground commander located at the fire command center. Although two-way radio communications enhancement systems were allowed in earlier years, the radio systems were not as reliable as they are today. FFTs were also generally supplied by the manufacturers of the fire alarm systems, which meant that designers, authorities having jurisdiction, and installers wrongly assumed the FFTs were required as part of the life safety system. [They were required if an emergency responder radio communications system (ERRCS) was not installed.] Today the opposite is true. Since 2009, the building and fire codes require the ERRCS, allowing the FFT only by permission of the authority having jurisdiction.

Δ **A.24.10** Generally, two-way emergency communications systems for rescue assistance include area of refuge two-way emergency communications systems, stairway communications systems, elevator landing communications systems, and occupant evacuation elevator lobby communications systems. All are members of the same system type fulfilling the same functions in different locations. These systems are required to be installed in different buildings by applicable building codes, and they are considered life-safety emergency communication systems to be used by building occupants during fire and nonfire emergencies. Because they are similar and all are two-way emergency communications systems, it is appropriate that they are mandated by a common set of requirements. These systems are different in nature from the two emergency communications systems specified in 24.3.7.2(1) and 24.3.7.2(2) for firefighter telephones (FFTs) and emergency responder communication enhancement systems that are meant to be used by firefighters or other first responders or emergency personnel.

Areas of refuge are typically areas that have direct access to an exit, where people who are unable to use stairs can remain temporarily in safety to await further instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation or other emergency situations. It is, therefore, important that a method to communicate exists between that remote location and a constantly attended location either within the building or at an off-premises remote location where appropriate action for assistance can be initiated by trained personnel.

Stairway communications systems are typically provided in high-rise buildings between the fire command center and remote points located at not less than every fifth floor in stairways where the stairway doors are locked from the stair side to prevent building re-entry. It is important that a method to communicate exists between that remote location in the stairs and a constantly attended location either within the building or at an off-premises remote location so that appropriate action for assistance can be initiated.

Elevator car communications systems should not be confused with an elevator landing communications system, or an occupant evacuation elevator lobby communications system. The elevator car two-way communications system is installed in accordance with the requirements of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*. Inspection and testing of elevator car two-way communications systems is performed in accordance with ASME A17.2, *Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks*.

Area of refuge is not defined in *NFPA 72*; rather, as stipulated in 18.4.9.5, the term is defined by the applicable building code or fire code. For example, the IBC identifies *area of refuge* as a place where occupants can wait who are unable to use a stairway. NFPA *101* provides a broader definition. Conversely, the term *area of rescue assistance* is more generic but is not defined in *NFPA 72*, NFPA *101*, or the IBC.

A.24.10.3 The remote call stations are also known as *call boxes*. The master control station is the main operator control device

for the system, which includes a visual display of the specific active remote call station location(s). Large systems with numerous remote call stations might also include additional (sub) control unit(s) and multiple master control stations that could expand the overall capacity of the system. The secondary power supply is required in case of a loss of the primary power supply.

A.24.10.3.2 The central control point is typically the fire command center in high-rise buildings or any other approved location in low-rise or other buildings not provided with a fire command center.

A.24.10.3.3 Typically, the fire command center is not occupied during non-fire emergencies, and therefore the system should have dial-out capability to an off-premises constantly attended monitoring station. During fire emergencies, firefighters will be in the fire command center, and they will be able to provide assistance and guidance to occupants in need.

A.24.10.6 To ensure a timely response to a call for assistance, the call is to be forwarded to an approved off-premises constantly attended location, such as a supervising station, 911 communications center, or other monitoring location. Typically, when the person in need is able to communicate, it is expected that the monitoring personnel can quickly establish the exact location of the building and the location within the building the call was made from and communicate this information to the emergency responders. However, if the person initiating the call is unable to provide the specific location within the building (or unable to communicate at all), the appropriate emergency responders will be dispatched to the specific building address. They should be able to locate the master control station at the building's central control point and establish the exact call location within the building on the master control station display.

All systems should have this capability, even if installed in a facility that currently has a constantly attended location, such that if that location was defunded in the future, the installed system would already have the capability to automatically forward off-premises.

A.24.10.7 One method by which a signal is transmitted to the off-premises monitoring station uses telephone connections in conjunction with caller ID to identify the phone number and a name associated with the building. The call is initially identified at the off-premises monitoring location via caller ID information (provided by the telephone service), a prerecorded message, or other approved means, prior to initiating the two-way communications. Information provided can be used to access a database of building addresses and other related information to aid emergency responders attending the location. The intention of this section is to ensure that off-premises monitoring personnel have instant access to the building address so that emergency responders can be immediately dispatched to the correct location.

A.24.10.9 Generally, the building code, specification engineer, or system designer will identify the proposed locations of the remote call stations, as well as the master control station. These locations should be submitted for approval by the authority having jurisdiction based on Chapter 7 requirements. Installation and other requirements found in Section 24.10 should be coordinated with the requirements of the building code in force.

A.24.10.14 Generally, area of refuge two-way emergency communications systems, stairway communications systems, elevator landing communications systems, and occupant evacuation elevator lobby communications systems are members of the same type of system. Since it is common to install these different systems in the same building, there is no prohibition against any combination of these systems being installed in a common building as a single amalgamated system with a single master control station and remotely located call stations.

A.24.10.15 If the microphone is to be used by authorized personnel, backup personnel should be assigned and trained on its proper usage.

A.24.11 An emergency communications system information, command, and control is intended to include wired or wireless networks for one- or two-way communications and/or control between a building or area and an emergency command center and could include an emergency services organization or public alarm reporting system. In a very basic configuration, a system and the receiving facility could be a supervising station system. However, there can be more complex systems that allow control of building systems and communications to building occupants from a remote location, including a municipal or other public alarm reporting command center or possibly even from a mobile command vehicle using secure communications.

A.24.11.1 For the purposes of this chapter, an emergency command center is considered to be a mass notification system facility(s), with communications and control equipment serving more than one building, where responsible authorities receive information from premises sources or systems, or from (higher level) regional or national sources or systems, and then disseminate appropriate information to a building, multiple buildings, outside campus areas, municipalities, or a combination of these in accordance with the emergency response plan established for the premises. A mass notification system could include at least one emergency command center with optional secondary/alternate emergency command centers.

A.24.11.1.1 The location of the emergency command center should be coordinated with the first responders. The primary emergency command center should be located at the command post, emergency operations center, or some such similar location. A redundant emergency command center, if required, should be located at a physically separate location, such as a police station, fire station, or similar facility.

Generally, the primary emergency command center should be housed in a building or portion of a building separated from the rest of the facility and having a 2-hour fire-resistive-rated separation.

The mass notification system might require activation of messages originated by mobile sentries and roving patrols using wireless activation devices. In cases where clusters of facilities within the same geographical region exist, one or more regional control stations might also exercise control.

A.24.11.1.4 The emergency command center should be staffed by qualified personnel who would monitor the system and take action appropriate to the emergency response plan established for the specific premises.

A.24.11.1.5 It is imperative that individuals expected to initiate or deliver emergency messages be properly trained in the expected operations. Individuals must be familiar with the equipment, its location, and functions if they will be expected to react properly in an emergency. In an emergency situation. people only react according to instinct or habit. If the individual has not had proper and repeated training over the emergency expectations, they could lack the proper instinct or habit.

Reading an employee manual is generally not an effective means of training for an emergency. To be effective, training must be reinforced with multiple means such as text, audio, visual, and, most importantly, hands-on experience. Regular drills allowing for delivery of live messages indicating an emergency condition is important. Many people have a very difficult time communicating clearly and effectively in an emergency situation when they are excited or fearful. If live messages are to be effective, they must be short, to the point, and in a calm tone conveying exactly what is expected. Screaming into the microphone, for instance, would not be appropriate. Actual message content will depend on the emergency response plan in place for the respective business and the response to an unfolding event. Situations such as an intruder in a building have become more common today and, as such, should be considered and planned for.

A.24.11.3 Different messages or signals could be prerecorded or live voice, tones, and so forth.

A.24.11.6 Text notification via wireless devices and desktop computer notification could be an effective means for delivering mass notification messages to multiple recipient groups. Supplementary wireless text messaging could be effective in reaching remote personnel. Desktop notification is particularly effective when more complex information must be conveyed, and it can be a cost-effective interim solution prior to, but not in lieu of, installing an in-building mass notification system.

A.24.12 The risk analysis forms the basis for the emergency response plan.

Ensuring accurate information dissemination to the right people, at the right place, and at the right time is essential to the mitigation of threat actions and consequences. Trained personnel are charged with making such decisions in real time. Quite often, the instructions provided to personnel in affected areas pertain to acting in specific defensive ways so as not to expose them to danger. A typical example is the case of a chemical or biological agent attack wherein the right response is to relocate to secure areas within the building while sealing doors and windows and shutting down air intakes, rather than to leave the building and be exposed to the attacking agent.

In cases of bomb threats, where specific information is available, directions for evacuation are to be given; these directions require more specificity than simply the instruction "Evacuate the building." In most cases, the evacuation route might depend on threat intelligence and is likely to be different from that specified in an emergency response plan. Most people can tell where the fire comes from but do not always know where the bomb is. Automatic evacuation of a building, a common procedure in cases of a fire, is to be avoided, since it might expose personnel to even greater danger.

One of the reasons for implementing a mass notification system is the threat of terrorism. Terrorism attacks tend to be well organized and are often planned with details to inflict the widest degree of damage that is possible. The mass notification system must be designed to withstand various attack scenarios and survive even if some damage has already occurred.

Each design of a mass notification system should be specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each facility for which it is designed. Although this chapter outlines some specific criteria and/or limitations, each design should be based on recognized performance-based design practices.

The mass notification system should take into account various considerations, such as those indicated in this chapter. The particular design might or might not incorporate these provisions.

Considerations for developing a mass notification system are as follows:

(1) Specific design for the facility
(2) Account for anticipated risks
(3) Use of live and/or prerecorded messaging
(4) Interfacing with other building emergency communications systems
(5) Interfacing with wide-area notification systems
(6) Ability to control the HVAC and access control systems
(7) Access to system components
(8) Survivability of the system
(9) Communication link redundancy and security
(10) Redundancy and security of the emergency command center
(11) Ability to customize and add to prerecorded message library
(12) Messages should be tailored to the situation and audience
(13) Scripted messages for live voice messages
(14) Proper training of individuals that operate the system

A.24.12.2 The design professional(s) as part of the design team should be experienced in multiple areas considered essential for conducting the risk analysis and performance design based on the scope and size of the project. Areas of experience can include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) Applying recognized performance-based design concepts
(2) Conducting hazard and operability studies
(3) Technical aspects of fire alarm system design
(4) Technical aspects of emergency communication systems
(5) Security risks and/or terrorist threats
(6) Building code requirements and limitations with respect to egress
(7) Human response to emergency conditions
(8) Development of emergency response plans
(9) Other qualifications relative to the needs of the user/risk

The design professional(s) will often be a part of the engineering design team preparing project documents and specifications. However, the design professional can work for or be obtained by a qualified installation company. The design professional should be bound by professional licensing guidelines to ensure that the risk analysis is conducted in an objective manner based on user needs and not based on product or employment.

A.24.12.6.3 Communication and coordination between and among the various members of the design team is an important element to achieving the goals for performance of the system.

A.24.12.6.6 The *SFPE Engineering Guide to Performance-Based Fire Protection* provides guidance on the elements of a design brief.

A.26.1 Table A.26.1 provides a tool for users of the Code to easily and systematically look up requirements for protected premises, central station service, remote supervising station, and proprietary supervising station alarm systems.

A.26.1.1 Supervising station alarm systems include the equipment at the protected premises as well as the equipment at the supervising station itself. While the operational requirements relating to the signals sent off-premises fall under the scope of Chapter 26, the requirements of Chapter 23 also apply. For example, for protected premises fire alarm systems, refer to Figure A.26.1.1.

A.26.2.1.2 The term *immediately* in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 90 seconds from receipt of an alarm signal.

A.26.2.1.3(3) Events can be general alarm signals or other fire alarm signals not identified individually by point or zone.

A.26.2.2 The term *immediately* in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 90 seconds from receipt of an alarm signal or at the end of the verification time by the supervising station until the initiation of retransmission to the communications center.

A.26.2.2(1) It is recognized that individual fire departments will have a preference on whether verification is used in certain occupancies based on many variables such as department-specific staffing or response protocols, occupancy staffing, and occupancy risk. This section allows the fire authority to specifically select those occupancies where verification is allowed. It should be understood that the use of the alarm verification process could delay the response to the alarm by up to an additional 90 seconds.

A.26.2.2(4) The 90-second allowance for a supervising station to call the protected premises to verify the validity of the received alarm signal is in addition to the time allowed for the supervising station to initiate the retransmission to the communications center.

A.26.2.2(6) It is important to notify the communications center that an alarm signal was verified and that fire conditions exist at the protected premises or that some other type of an emergency exists. Fire departments typically have a substantially larger response for confirmed structure fires.

A.26.2.2(7) If an alarm signal cannot be reliably confirmed as a nuisance alarm, then it should be immediately retransmitted. This might include situations where no contact is made within the premises, or where the persons within the premises cannot verify the source of the alarm within the allowable 90 seconds, or other related scenarios.

A.26.2.2(8) When verification of a fire alarm signal results in a signal not being reported to the communications center, it is important that fire department personnel be made aware of the alarm and the reason for nondispatch so that problematic systems can be identified.

Δ **A.26.2.4.1.3** If a carbon monoxide detector cannot be reset in accordance with Chapter 14, it could indicate that carbon monoxide is still present in the premises. Until such time that carbon monoxide can be excluded as the source of the alarm, the assumption should be that carbon monoxide is present and appropriate life safety precautions should be followed.

A.26.2.5.2.2 Scheduled impairments include interruptions caused by construction or building damage. In addition, natural disasters can result in long-term system impairments that are not intended to require 24-hour reminders.

A.26.2.7 Changing where signals go from an existing to a new or different supervising station facility is sometimes done simply by changing a call-forward phone number. Or, within a supervising station, a new receiving computer and software can be constructed and lines changed over. Often, the account data are manually entered into the new system. Sometimes the data are transferred electronically. Errors can be made, causing the supervising station to get undefined alarms or incorrect account data, resulting in incorrect response by the supervising station. When such changes are made, the only viable way to ensure correct operation is to conduct an end-to-end test.

A.26.2.7.1 The phrase "notified in writing" can include any form of correspondence that can be verified upon request, such as a letter, fax, email or other means of documented transfer of information from one entity to another.

N **A.26.2.11.2.1** ASPs can use one or more communications pathways between a fire alarm system installed at a protected premises and its own facility(ies), and between its own facility(ies) and the supervising station. Permitted pathways can include those cited in 26.6.3, 26.6.4, or 26.6.5.

A.26.3.2 There are related types of contract service that often are provided from, or controlled by, a central station but that are neither anticipated by, nor consistent with, the provisions of 26.3.2. Although 26.3.2 does not preclude such arrangements, a central station company is expected to recognize, provide for, and preserve the reliability, adequacy, and integrity of those supervisory and alarm services intended to be in accordance with the provisions of 26.3.2.

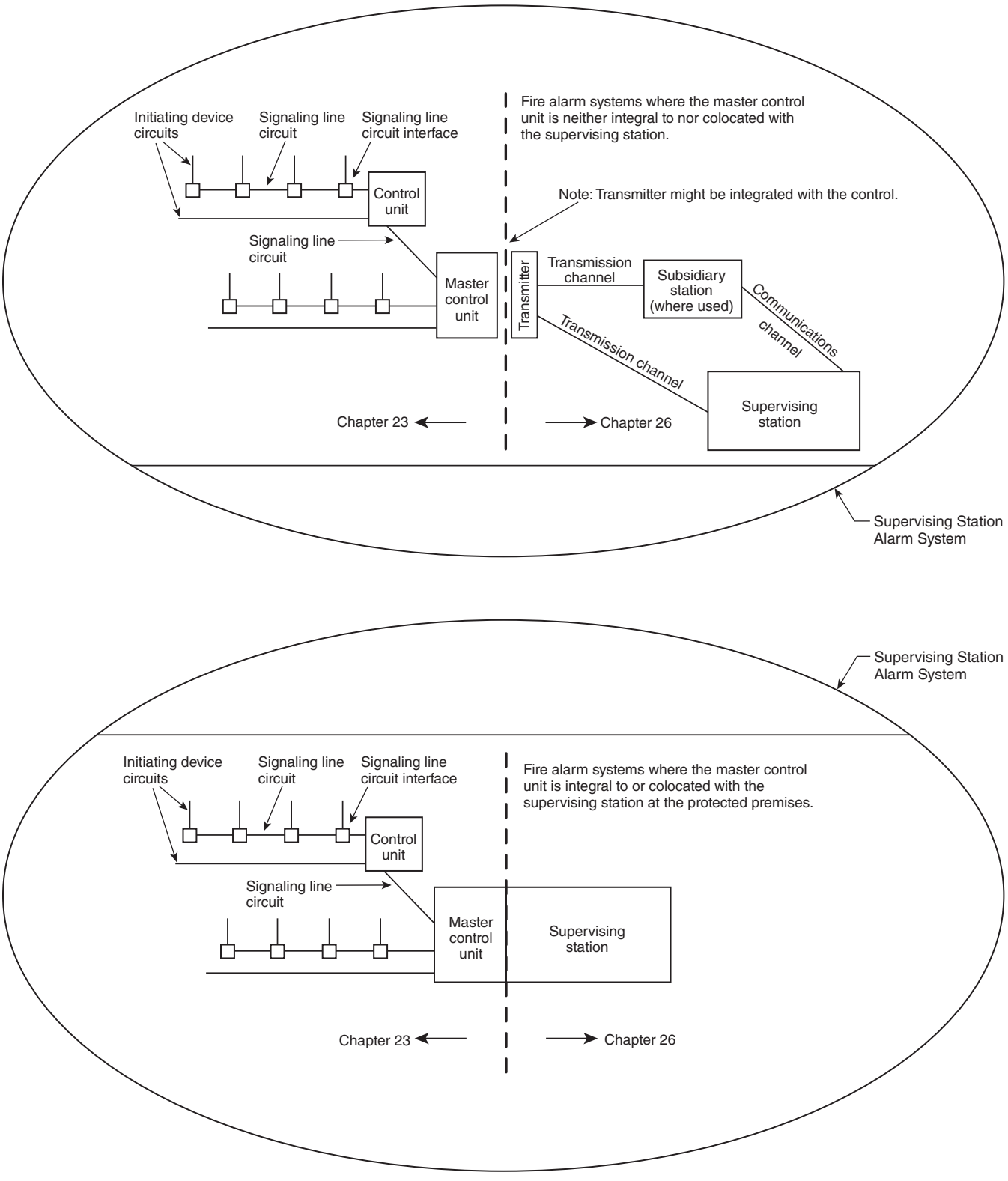
Table A.26.1 Alarm System Performance Criteria

Attribute	Protected Premises Fire Alarm System	Central Station Service Alarm System	Remote Supervising Station Alarm System	Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System
Applicability	All fire alarm systems	Supervising station service provided by a prime contractor. There is a subscriber *(26.3.2, 26.3.3, and 26.3.4)*.	Where central station service is neither required nor elected, properties under various ownership monitored by a remote supervising station *(26.5.1.1 and 26.5.1.2)*	Supervising station monitoring contiguous or noncontiguous properties under one ownership and responsible to the owner of the protected property *(26.4.2.1 and 26.4.2.2)*
Listing	Equipment listed for the use intended *(10.3)*	Equipment listed for the use intended *(10.3)*. Compliance documentation *(26.3.4)*.	Equipment listed for use intended *(10.3)*	Equipment listed for use intended *(10.3)*
Design	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*
Compatibility	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*
Performance and limitations	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 86°F (30°C) *(10.3.5)*	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 86°F (30°C) *(10.3.5)*	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 86°F (30°C) *(10.3.5)*	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 86°F (30°C) *(10.3.5)*
Documentation	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6)*. Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.1 *(23.4.3.3)*.	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6)*. Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.1 *(23.4.3.3)*.	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6)*. Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.1 *(23.4.3.3)*.	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6)*. Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.1 *(23.4.3.3)*.
Supervising station facilities	None	UL 827-compliant for the supervising station and any subsidiary station *(26.3.5.1 and 26.3.5.2)*	Communications centers or other location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction *(26.5.3)*	Fire-resistive, detached building or cut-off room not near or exposed to hazards. Access restricted, NFPA 10, 26-hour emergency lighting *(26.4.3)*.

(continues)

Table A.26.1 *Continued*

Attribute	Protected Premises Fire Alarm System	Central Station Service Alarm System	Remote Supervising Station Alarm System	Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System
Testing and maintenance	Chapter 14	Chapter 14. Pass code must be provided to place system into test mode *(26.3.8.3.5.6)*.	Chapter 14	Chapter 14
Runner service	No	Yes Alarm — arrive at the protected premises within 2 hours where equipment needs to be reset. Guard's tour — 30 minutes. Supervisory — 2 hours. Trouble — 4 hours. *(26.3.8)*	No	Yes Alarm — arrive at the protected premises within 2 hours where equipment needs to be reset. Guard's tour — 30 minutes. Supervisory— 2 hours. Trouble — 4 hours. *(26.4.6.1.6)*
Operations and management requirements	None	Prime contractor provides all elements of central station service under a variety of contractual arrangements *(26.3.3)*	None	Supervising station is under same ownership and management responsibility as premises being supervised*(26.4.2.1)*
Staff	None	Minimum of two persons on duty at supervising station. Operation and supervision primary task *(26.3.7)*.	Minimum of two persons on duty at supervising station at all times. Other duties permitted per the authority having jurisdiction *(26.5.5)*.	Two operators of which one is permitted to be the runner. When runner is not in attendance at station, time between contact not to exceed 15 minutes. Primary duties are monitoring alarms and operations of station *(26.4.5)*.
Monitor supervisory signals	Control unit and command center *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*	Control unit, command center, and central station *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*	Control unit, command center, and remote supervising station *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*	Control unit, command center, and proprietary supervising station *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*
Retransmission of signals	None	Alarm to public service communications center and subscriber. Supervisory, trouble, and guard service to designated personnel *(26.3.8)*.	Alarm to public service communications center when monitored privately. Supervisory and trouble signals to owner's designated representative *(26.5.6)*.	Alarm to public service communications center and plant brigade. Supervisory, trouble, and guard service to designated personnel *(26.4.6.1.6)*.
Retransmission time	None	Alarm — immediate. Supervisory — immediate. Guard's tour supervisory — without unreasonable delay. Trouble — immediate. *(26.3.8)*	Alarm — immediate. Supervisory — immediate. Trouble — immediate. *(26.5.6)*	Alarm — immediate. Supervisory — immediate. Guard's tour supervisory — at once. Trouble — immediate. *(26.4.6.1.6)*
Records	Current year and 1 year after *(7.7.1)*	Complete records of all signals received must be retained for at least 1 year. Reports provided of signals received to authority having jurisdiction in a form it finds acceptable *(26.3.9)*.	At least 1 year *(26.5.8.1)*.	Complete records of all signals received shall be retained for at least 1 year. Reports provided of signals received to authority having jurisdiction in a form it finds acceptable *(26.4.7)*.



Δ FIGURE A.26.1.1 Supervising Station Alarm System.

A.26.3.4 The terms *certificated* and *placarded*, which appeared in previous editions of *NFPA 72*, were considered by some to be too specific to two listing organizations and were replaced with more generic wording. The concept of providing documentation to indicate ongoing compliance of an installed system continues to be reflected by the current language.

There are two distinct services offered by organizations that list fire alarm service provided by prime contractors and central stations. The first is the listing of these alarm services, which requires the companies to demonstrate they have the knowledge and ability to install, test, service, and maintain central station alarm systems and/or monitor and appropriately retransmit on receipt of various signals from protected premises alarm systems.

The second part of the service provided by listing organizations is the certification of individual protected premises fire alarm systems to bring the alarm systems under their ongoing audit inspection program or systematic follow-up program. Under this program, systems are certified by the listing organization, and documentation of this is to be provided, posted, and handled as described in 26.3.4 through 26.3.4.8. The method used to document compliance with this portion of the program varies among listing organizations and includes the issuance of certificates, placards, or other documentation.

There is nothing in this Code that requires all protected premises alarm systems monitored by a listed central station to be tested, maintained, serviced, monitored, and responded to in accordance with Section 26.3. This is often misunderstood by code users, owners, and AHJs, who think that merely specifying that these systems be monitored by a central station with a fire alarm listing gets them full central station service. Full compliance with central station alarm system requirements involves using alarm companies with fire alarm listings and having the listing organization certify the protected premises alarm system.

A.26.3.4.1 The documentation in this section should not be confused with the documentation required in Chapter 7, which is typically provided by the alarm company and covers the design, acceptance, and completion of new systems. Instead the documentation in this section is provided by the listing organization and could be in the form of a certificate, placard, or other document used by the listing organization.

A.26.3.4.2(2) The record of completion *(see Chapter 10)* can be used to fulfill this requirement.

A.26.3.4.5 It is the prime contractor's responsibility to remove all compliance markings (certification markings or placards) when a service contract goes into effect that conflicts in any way with the requirements of 26.3.4.

A.26.3.4.6 The prime contractor should be aware of statutes, public agency regulations, or certifications regarding alarm systems that might be binding on the subscriber. The prime contractor should identify for the subscriber which agencies could be an authority having jurisdiction and, if possible, advise the subscriber of any requirements or approvals being mandated by these agencies.

The subscriber has the responsibility for notifying the prime contractor of those private organizations that are being designated as an authority having jurisdiction. The subscriber also has the responsibility to notify the prime contractor of changes in the authority having jurisdiction, such as where there is a change in insurance companies. Although the responsibility is primarily the subscriber's, the prime contractor should also take responsibility for seeking out these private authority(ies) having jurisdiction through the subscriber. The prime contractor is responsible for maintaining current records on the authority(ies) having jurisdiction for each protected premises.

The most prevalent public agency involved as an authority having jurisdiction with regard to alarm systems is the local fire department or fire prevention bureau. These are normally city or county agencies with statutory authority, and their approval of alarm system installations might be required. At the state level, the fire marshal's office is most likely to serve as the public regulatory agency.

The most prevalent private organizations involved as authorities having jurisdiction are insurance companies. Others include insurance rating bureaus, insurance brokers and agents, and private consultants. It is important to note that these organizations have no statutory authority and become authorities having jurisdiction only when designated by the subscriber.

With both public and private concerns to satisfy, it is not uncommon to find multiple authorities having jurisdiction involved with a particular protected premises. It is necessary to identify all authorities having jurisdiction in order to obtain all the necessary approvals for a central station alarm system installation.

The phrase "in writing" can include any form of correspondence that can be verified upon request, such as a letter, fax, email or other means of documented transfer of information from one entity to another.

A.26.3.6.6 Two telephone lines (numbers) at the central station connected to the public switched telephone network or a managed facilities-based voice network, each having its own telephone instrument connected, and two telephone lines (numbers) available at the communications center to which a central station operator can retransmit an alarm meet the intent of this requirement.

A.26.3.8.3.1.1(1) Nothing in this section is intended to prevent communication with the subscriber in less than 15 minutes from the receipt of the signal.

A.26.3.8.3.3 It is anticipated that the central station will first attempt to notify designated personnel at the protected premises. When such notification cannot be made, it might be appropriate to notify law enforcement or the fire department, or both. For example, if a valve supervisory signal is received where protected premises are not occupied, it is appropriate to notify the police.

A.26.3.8.3.3(1) The term immediately in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 4 minutes from receipt of a supervisory signal by the central station until the initiation of communications with a person(s) designated by the subscriber.

A.26.3.8.3.4(1) The term immediately in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 4 minutes from receipt of a trouble signal by the central station until initiation of the investigation by telephone.

A.26.3.8.3.5.3 The term immediately in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling

should take a maximum of 4 minutes from receipt of a trouble signal by the central station until initiation of the investigation by telephone.

A.26.4.3.1 Consideration should be given to providing the following features for a proprietary supervising station location:

(1) Fire resistive construction meeting the requirements of adopted building codes
(2) Air handling systems isolated from common building systems

As a useful guide for determining the nature of the design and integrity necessary to achieve proper protection, the proprietary supervising station building or that portion of a building occupied by a proprietary supervising station should compare the construction, fire protection, restricted access, emergency lighting, and power facilities to the requirements stated in the latest edition of UL 827, *Central-Station Alarm Services*.

A.26.4.3.6 It is the intent of this Code that the operator within the proprietary supervising station should have a secure means of immediately retransmitting any signal indicative of a fire to the public fire department communications center. Automatic retransmission using an approved method installed in accordance with Sections 26.3 through 26.5, and Chapter 27 is the best method for proper retransmission. However, a manual means can be permitted to be used, consisting of either a manual connection following the requirements of Section 26.3, Section 26.5, and Chapter 27, or, for proprietary supervising stations serving only contiguous properties, a means in the form of a municipal fire alarm box installed within 50 ft (15.2 m) of the proprietary supervising station in accordance with Chapter 27 can be permitted.

A.26.4.4.1.3 Depending on a building's size and configuration, specific location information received by the proprietary supervising station could be warranted. This information could assist responding individuals by allowing them to respond directly to areas of the building where signals have been initiated. An example of a building where this might be beneficial might be a multi-floor building or one with a large building footprint. Signals from smaller buildings, such as a fast food restaurant or a gas station convenience store, would likely only need to be general in nature. It should be noted that this section does not specifically call for point identification, but the specific device location information provided by such a system would meet the requirements of the section.

A.26.4.4.3 Proprietary station procedures should include periodic review of nonrestored signals. One method for such a review could be by the use of equipment that would automatically redisplay the information.

A.26.4.6.1.3.3 Regardless of the type of retransmission facility used, telephone communications between the proprietary supervising station and the fire department should be available at all times and should not depend on a switchboard operator.

A.26.4.6.1.6.3(5) The phrase "written notice" can include any form of correspondence that can be verified upon request, such as a letter, fax, email or other means of documented transfer of information from one entity to another.

A.26.5.2.2(1) Chapter 14 permits the building owner or his designated representative to perform these services if they are qualified. In this situation, the documentation could be a declaration of qualification signed by the building owner. Multiple service providers are permitted.

Δ **A.26.5.3** At a minimum, the room(s) containing the remote supervising station equipment should have a 1-hour fire rating, and the entire structure should be protected by an alarm system complying with Chapter 23.

As a useful guide for determining the nature of the design and integrity necessary to achieve proper protection, the remote supervising station building or that portion of a building occupied by a remote supervising station should compare the construction, fire protection, restricted access, emergency lighting, and power facilities to the requirements stated in UL 827, *Central-Station Alarm Services*.

If the remote supervising station is located within an emergency response agency (ERA), the ERA should consider meeting the requirements of NFPA 1225.

A.26.5.3.1.4 A listed central station might be considered an acceptable alternate location for receipt of fire alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

A.26.5.3.2 A listed central station might be considered an acceptable alternate location for receipt of trouble signals.

A.26.6.1 Refer to Table A.26.6.1 for communications methods.

N **A.26.6.1.1(2)** For a fire alarm system that relies on a DACS to establish communications channels between the protected premises and the supervising station via the PSTN or MFVN, the requirement to supervise circuits between the protected premises and the supervising station is considered to be met if the communications channel is periodically tested in accordance with 26.6.4.2.5. It is not the intent of this section to regulate the PSTN or other MFVNs.

A.26.6.2.2 It is not the intent of Section 26.6 to limit the use of listed equipment using alternate communications methods, provided these methods demonstrate performance characteristics that are equal to or superior to those technologies described in Section 26.6. Such demonstration of equivalency is to be evidenced by the equipment using the alternate communications methods meeting all the requirements of Chapter 10, including those that deal with such factors as reliability, monitoring for integrity, and listing. It is further expected that suitable proposals stating the requirements for such technology will be submitted for inclusion in subsequent editions of this Code.

A.26.6.2.4 The communications cloud is created by multiple telephone lines and multiple paths on the Internet. Under these circumstances, the requirements of Chapters 10 and 14, as required by 26.1.2, do not apply to devices comprising the communications cloud.

N **A.26.6.2.6** Since many authorities are now requiring change in monitoring permits to verify compliance with new technology configurations, hardware, and programming, it has become important for protected premises and contracted vendors to not only properly identify the communications technologies and hardware to be implemented, but also make sure the application of such technologies and pathways are implemented in conformance with this Code. It is the responsibility of the building owner or its designees to ensure that any changes to the communications pathway, technologies, or hardware at the protected premises are compliant.

Δ Table A.26.6.1 Communications Methods for Supervising Stations

Criteria	Performance-Based Technologies (see 26.6.3)	Digital Alarm Communicator Systems (see 26.6.4)	Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems (see 26.6.5.1)	One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems (see 26.6.5.2)
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) approval when applicable	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Conform to *NFPA 70*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Monitoring for integrity of the transmission and communications channel	Monitor for integrity	Both the premises unit and the system unit monitor for integrity in a manner approved for the means of transmission employed. A single signal received on each incoming DACR line once every 6 hours.	Systems are periodically polled for end-to-end communications integrity.	Test signal from every transmitter once every 24 hours
Annunciate, at the supervising station, the degradation and restoration of the transmission or communications channel	Within 60 minutes for a single communication path and within 6 hours for multiple communication paths	Within 4 minutes using alternate phone line to report the trouble	Not exceed 90 seconds from the time of the actual failure	Only monitor the quality of signal received and indicate if the signal falls below minimum signal quality specified in this Code
Redundant communication path where a portion of the transmission or communications channel cannot be monitored for integrity		Employ a combination of two separate transmission channels alternately tested at intervals not exceeding 6 hours	Redundant path not required — supervising station always indicates a communications failure	Minimum of two independent RF paths must be simultaneously employed
Interval testing of the backup path(s)		When two phone lines are used, test alternately every 6 hours. Testing for other back-up technologies, see 26.6.4.2.4.2.	Backup path not required	No requirement, because the quality of the signal is continuously monitored
Annunciation of communication failure or ability to communicate at the protected premises	Systems where the transmitter at the local premises unit detects a communication failure, the premises unit will annunciate the failure within 200 seconds of the failure	Indication of failure at premises due to line failure or failure to communicate after from 5 to 10 dialing attempts	Not required — always annunciated at the supervising station that initiates corrective action	Monitor the interconnection of the premises unit elements of transmitting equipment, and indicate a failure at the premises or transmit a trouble signal to the supervising station.
Time to restore signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment	Where duplicate equipment not provided, spare hardware required so a repair can be effected within 30 minutes.	Spare digital alarm communicator receivers required for switchover to backup receiver in 30 seconds. One backup system unit for every five system units.	Where duplicate equipment not provided, spare hardware required so a repair can be effected within 30 minutes	Where duplicate equipment not provided, spare hardware required so a repair can be effected within 30 minutes

(continues)

Δ Table A.26.6.1 *Continued*

Criteria	Performance-Based Technologies (see 26.6.3)	Digital Alarm Communicator Systems (see 26.6.4)	Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems (see 26.6.5.1)	One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems (see 26.6.5.2)
Loading capacities for system units and transmission and communications channels	512 independent alarm systems on a system unit with no backup. Unlimited if you can switch to a backup in 30 seconds.	See Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 for the maximum number of transmitters on a hunt group in a system unit	512 buildings and premises on a system unit with no backup. Unlimited if you can switch to a backup in 30 seconds.	512 buildings and premises on a system unit with no backup. Unlimited if you can switch to a backup in 30 seconds.
End-to-end communication time for an alarm	90 seconds from initiation of alarm until displayed to the operator and recorded on a medium from which the information can be retrieved	Off-hook to on-hook not to exceed 90 seconds per attempt. 10 attempts maximum. 900 seconds maximum for all attempts.	90 seconds from initiation until it is recorded	90% probability to receive an alarm in 90 seconds, 99% probability in 180 seconds, 99.999% probability in 450 seconds
Record and display rate of subsequent alarms at supervising station	Not slower than one every 10 additional seconds	Not addressed	When any number of subsequent alarms come in, record at a rate not slower than one every additional 10 seconds	When any number of subsequent alarms come in, record at a rate not slower than one every additional 10 seconds
Signal error detection and correction	Signal repetition, parity check, or some equivalent means of error detection and correction must be used.	Signal repetition, digital parity check, or some equivalent means of signal verification must be used.	Not addressed	Not addressed
Path sequence priority	No need for prioritization of paths. The requirement is that both paths are equivalent.	The first transmission attempt uses the primary channel.	Not addressed	Not addressed
Carrier diversity		Where long distance service (including WATS) is used, the second telephone number must be provided by a different long distance service provider where there are multiple providers.	Not addressed	Not addressed
Throughput probability		Demonstrate 90% probability of a system unit immediately answering a call or follow the loading in Table 26.6.4.3.2.4. One-way radio backup demonstrates 90% probability of transmission.	Not addressed	90% probability to receive an alarm in 90 seconds, 99% probability in 180 seconds, 99.999% in probability 450 seconds

(continues)

Δ **Table A.26.6.1** *Continued*

Criteria	Performance-Based Technologies (see 26.6.3)	Digital Alarm Communicator Systems (see 26.6.4)	Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems (see 26.6.5.1)	One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems (see 26.6.5.2)
Unique premises identifier	If a transmitter shares a transmission or communication channel with other transmitters, it must have a unique transmitter identifier.	Yes	Yes	Yes
Unique flaws	From time to time, unique flaws might be present in a communication system. Requirements must be written for unique flaws.	If call forwarding is used to communicate to the supervising station, verify the integrity of this feature every 4 hours.	None addressed	None addressed
Signal priority	If the communication method is shared with any other communication method, prioritizing alarm signals should be considered.	Chapter 10 on fundamentals requires that alarm signals take priority over supervisory signals unless there is sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.	Chapter 10 on fundamentals requires that alarm signals take priority over supervisory signals unless there is sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.	Chapter 10 on fundamentals requires that alarm signals take priority over supervisory signals unless there is sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.
Sharing communications equipment on premises	If the transmitter is sharing on-premises communications equipment, the shared equipment must be listed for the purpose (otherwise the transmitter must be installed ahead of the unlisted equipment).	Disconnect outgoing or incoming telephone call and prevent its use for outgoing telephone calls until signal transmission has been completed.	Not addressed	Not addressed

N **A.26.6.2.6(5)** The identification of fire alarm system communications pathways by the building owner or its designees is critical to the integrity and sustainability of these systems. Therefore, the marking of such pathways and their integrated shared equipment is equally important for the integrity of the fire alarm system to make sure that no changes to these pathways at the protected premises are made without proper AHJ notification. Due to the wide variety of circumstances and conditions that might need to be labeled, the means of labeling is left to AHJ approval. Suggested language for the marking or signage of these pathways and shared equipment might include language similar to, "This is part of a communications systems pathway, no changes to this equipment or configurations shall be made without notifying the local AHJ," or more simply, "Fire communications pathway, notify AHJ BEFORE modification."

Δ **A.26.6.3** Certain legacy technologies (e.g., active multiplex, McCulloh, directly connected non-coded and private microwave) have been removed from the text of the document. Existing systems using these technologies are acceptable, because all these technologies also comply with the general requirements of 26.6.3.

The object of 26.6.3 is not to give details of specific technologies but rather give basic operating parameters of the transmission supervision rates of technologies. The following list represents examples of current technologies that can be configured to meet the requirements and the intent of 26.6.3:

(1) Transmitters using Internet protocol (IP)
(2) IP transmission over the public open Internet or over private IP facilities maintained by an organization for its own use
(3) Transmitters using various (non-dialup) digital cellular technologies

Wired IP Transmission. There are two types of wired IP transmission devices. One type connects the IP network directly to the FACU (integrated IP or native IP). The second uses an intermediary module that can include the following:

(1) IP dialer capture module
(2) IP data capture module (e.g., RS-232, keypad bus, RS-485)
(3) Relay contact monitoring module

Devices referred to as "IP dialer capture modules" (an IP communicator used with a DACT) are transmission devices that connect to the DACT output of the FACU and convert the output data stream to IP. As such, they are considered to use IP technology in their connection to the IP network. Therefore, they should be treated in this Code under the performance-based technologies requirements of 26.6.3 and not under the digital communicator systems requirements of 26.6.4.

It should be noted that certain FCC-licensed carriers might provide interface hardware that is similar in function but not considered part of the alarm system equipment including DACT functions. Such carrier-provided interface equipment is considered part of the telecommunications network equipment and can be considered a functional gateway to the carrier network. It is not considered customer premises equipment or alarm signaling equipment. Such equipment is always provided by the carrier and wired accordingly on the network side of the FCC server name indication (SNI) or demarcation point (demarc). Such equipment will always carry the appropriate performance-based listing meeting the appropriate standard.

Digital Cellular. To accommodate an increase in demand for mobile wireless communications as well as introducing new services over that same network, wireless voice communications no longer use dedicated connections to pass voice band frequencies. In place of the voice band, the voice conversation is converted into a stream of bits and packaged within data packets that conform to messaging protocols. The packets are addressed to a destination point, delivered into the network, received by the destination point, and converted back into intelligible voice-grade messages. The message exchange through this wireless data network is done through well-known defined protocols such as "global system for mobile" communications (GSM) for voice communications as well as code division multiple access (CDMA) for both voice and data and general packet radio service (GPRS) for mobile data services. These protocols have been developed to operate in an optimal way for the intended application. For example, GSM can efficiently establish voice-grade connections that deliver an appropriate level of intelligible voice quality but might not be good enough to pass tones that represent data. Data transmission is better served by GPRS and CDMA where a connection into the wireless network is always available without having to "dial," and large amounts of data can be efficiently transmitted. However, the data passed using GPRS or CDMA are not coded tones such as dual tone multi-frequency [DTMF (Contact ID)] but are computer-type messages similar to IP.

When using digital cellular, a DACT might be used.

For example, the digital cellular device might be used to back up the DACT or, if properly supervised, be used as a stand-alone device. If used, the DACT is connected to a digital cellular radio device that connects to the cellular network by means of an antenna. The digital cellular radio device is constantly connecting to the wireless network and is always ready to attempt to transmit to a destination address without having to "dial" a number. The radio device recognizes that the alarm panel is attempting to place a call by the DACT's "off-hook" signaling. The radio device accepts the DACT tone signaling, converts it into a packeted data stream, and sends the packets into the wireless network for delivery to a preassigned destination address.

It should be noted that FCC-licensed carriers might provide similar services. These services are often optimized to consider both IP and cellular connectivity as needed. The telecommunication network equipment provided by such carriers will often present a single gateway to multiple communication technologies or pathways. In these cases, a DACT device will continue to function as legacy equipment capable of transmitting traditional tones, including frequency shift keying (FSK) or DTMF media. The carrier network can continue to carry both tone- and pulse-type signals if configured by the carrier. These carrier circuits are intended to permit legacy alarm DACT communication protocols to continue to function and communicate over the carrier network using different carrier-determined mediums, including combinations of IP, WAN, and cellular connectivity (as determined by the carrier).

Δ **A.26.6.3.5** When considering a fire alarm system using a single communications pathway to the supervising station, the risk exposure that results from the loss of that pathway for any period of time and for any reason should be considered. Some of these outages can be regular and predicable and others transitory.

One example of a single technology used to produce two pathways is the use of a digital cellular premises unit communicating with two or more cell towers. In this case, the supervising station and the protected premises must be made aware if communications degrade to below two towers. Another example is the use of two different cellular carriers to produce the two pathways. Similarly, in this case, the supervising station and the protected premises must be made aware if communications degrade to one carrier.

N **A.26.6.3.11.3** Latency and jitter conditions are important network metrics to consider because communications equipment transmitting fire alarm signals over internet protocol is sensitive to such conditions, which can impact communications integrity and signal reliability. Latency is the measurement of time for a packet of data to transmit from Point A to Point B. Jitter is the measurement of the fluctuation of latency time when two devices are talking to each other.

A.26.6.3.12.1 Most communications equipment is not specifically listed for fire alarm applications, but is listed in accordance with applicable product standard for general communications equipment and is acceptable. Two examples of commonly applied listing standards are UL 60950-1, *Information Technology Equipment — Safety — Part 1: General Requirements*, and UL 62368-1, *Audio/Video, Information and Communication Technology Equipment — Part 1: Safety Requirements.*

•

A.26.6.3.13.1.2 The requirement in 26.6.3.13.1.2 does not exempt first communications path transmitters and first communications path premises equipment necessary for the transmission of alarm, supervisory, trouble, and other signals from secondary power capacity requirements provided in 26.6.3.13. This section does not permit the communications paths to be considered multiple communication paths under 26.6.3.4.

A.26.6.4.1 A DACT can be used as a signaling interface from a fire alarm control unit to another means of signal transmission. Typically this is in either Ademco Contact ID or SIA format. In this case, the use of a DACT is not for the direct transmission of signals via a connection through a telephone line, but rather to another means of signal transport, because there are no phone lines utilized in the communication path. The other transmission means will then transmit the signal data via another listed means, which is found in 26.6.3 or 26.6.5.

A.26.6.4.2.1 Special care should be used when connecting a DACT to a digital service such as DSL or ADSL. Filters or other special equipment might be needed to communicate reliably.

N **A.26.6.4.2.1.3** Communication carriers have equipment that is normally installed in accordance with Federal Communications Commission–approved (FCC-approved) telecommunications network standards meeting industry standards for safety, security, and environmental protection as required by the specific installation situation. Examples of authorized common carriers include Incumbent Local Exchange Carriers (ILEC), Local Exchange Carriers (LEC), Competitive Local Exchange Carriers (CLEC), and FCC-licensed cellular service carriers as defined by the FCC to provide telecommunication services for the state or jurisdiction in which the service will be rendered.

A.26.6.4.2.3 To give the DACT the ability to disconnect an incoming call to the protected premises, telephone service should be of the type that provides for timed-release disconnect. In some telephone systems (step-by-step offices), timed-release disconnect is not provided.

A.26.6.4.2.3.3 A DACT can be programmed to originate calls to the DACR telephone lines (numbers) in any alternating sequence. The sequence can consist of single or multiple calls to one DACR telephone line (number), followed by transmissions on the alternate path or any combination thereof that is consistent with the minimum/maximum attempt requirements in 26.6.4.2.3.3.

N **A.26.6.4.2.4.1** The requirements in 26.6.4.2.4 are not intended to prevent a system using a DACT from employing two transmission channels from a managed facilities-based voice network (MFVN) in accordance with 26.6.4.2.1.

A.26.6.4.2.4.2(6) Where two telephone lines (numbers) are used, care should be taken to assign the primary DACT telephone line (number) to a nonessential telephone line (number) at the protected premises so that the primary line used in the premises is not unnecessarily interrupted.

A.26.6.4.2.5(4) Where two telephone lines (numbers) are used, care should be taken to assign the primary DACT telephone line (number) to a nonessential telephone line (number) at the protected premises so that the primary line used in the premises is not unnecessarily interrupted.

A.26.6.4.2.5(8) Because call forwarding requires equipment at a telephone company central office that could occasionally interrupt the call forwarding feature, a signal should be initiated whereby the integrity of the forwarded telephone line (number) that is being called by DACTs is verified every 4 hours. This can be accomplished by a single DACT, either in service or used solely for verification, that automatically initiates and completes a transmission sequence to its associated DACR every 4 hours. A successful signal transmission sequence of any other type within the same 4-hour period should be considered sufficient to fulfill this requirement.

Call forwarding should not be confused with WATS or 800 service. The latter, differentiated from the former by dialing the 800 prefix, is a dedicated service used mainly for its toll-free feature; all calls are preprogrammed to terminate at a fixed telephone line (number) or to a dedicated line.

A.26.6.4.3.2.1 The timed-release disconnect considerations as outlined in A.26.6.4.2.3 apply to the telephone lines (numbers) connected to a DACR at the supervising station.

It might be necessary to consult with appropriate telephone service personnel to ensure that numbers assigned to the DACR can be individually accessed even where they are connected in rotary (a hunt group).

A.26.6.4.3.2.4 In determining system loading, Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 can be used, or it should be demonstrated that there is a 90 percent probability of incoming line availability. Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 is based on an average distribution of calls and an average connected time of 30 seconds per message. Therefore, where it is proposed to use Table 26.6.4.3.2.4 to determine system loading, if any factors are disclosed that could extend DACR connect time so as to increase the average connect time, the alternate method of determining system loading should be used. Higher (or possibly lower) loadings might be appropriate in some applications.

(1) Some factors that could increase (or decrease) the capacity of a hunt group are as follows:
   (a) Shorter (or longer) average message transmission time can influence hunt group capacity.
   (b) The use of audio monitoring (listen-in) slow-scan video or other similar equipment can significantly increase the connected time for a signal and reduce effective hunt group capacity.
   (c) The clustering of active burglar alarm signals can generate high peak loads at certain hours.
   (d) Inappropriate scheduling of 6-hour test signals can generate excessive peak loads.

(2) Demonstration of a 90 percent probability of incoming line availability can be accomplished by the following in-service monitoring of line activity:
   (a) Incoming lines are assigned to telephone hunt groups. When a DACT calls the main number of a hunt group, it can connect to any currently available line in that hunt group.
   (b) The receiver continuously monitors the "available" status of each line. A line is available when it is waiting for an incoming call. A line is unavailable for any of the following reasons:
      i. Currently processing a call
      ii. Line in trouble
      iii. Audio monitoring (listen-in) in progress
      iv. Any other condition that makes the line input unable to accept calls
   (c) The receiver monitors the "available" status of the hunt group. A hunt group is available when any line in it is available.
   (d) A message is emitted by the receiver when a hunt group is unavailable for more than 1 minute out of 10 minutes. This message references the hunt group and the degree of overload.

A.26.6.5.1.4 The intent of the plurality of control sites is to safeguard against damage caused by lightning and to minimize the effect of interference on the receipt of signals. The control sites can be co-located.

A.26.6.5.2 Originally the concept of one-way private radio was codified for a one-way system requiring at least two receiving towers or repeaters. Other similar systems have been developed that use this basic principle. Among them is the concept of the "mesh network" where a premises transmitter can access multiple nearby transmitters.

It is difficult to reliably test redundant paths on a mesh radio network without significant impact on the system and considerable efforts of time and personnel.

A remedy is to have the mesh network system equipment generate a report at the protected premises or supervising station showing redundant pathways. Additionally, the mesh system equipment at the protected premises and at the supervising station periodically determine the number of viable redundant paths and generate a trouble signal whenever the number falls below two paths, as is required by 26.6.5.2.

A.26.6.5.2.4 It is intended that each RAT communicate with two or more independently located RARSRs. The location of such RARSRs should be such that they do not share common facilities.

NOTE: All probability calculations required for the purposes of Chapter 17 should be made in accordance with established communications procedures, should assume the maximum channel loading parameters specified, and should further assume that 25 RATs are actively in alarm and are being received by each RARSR.

A.26.6.6.1 The signal information can be permitted to be provided in coded form. Records can be permitted to be used to interpret these codes.

A.26.6.6.2(4) Any signal that would dictate a different response, such as carbon monoxide alarms or mass notification alarms, should be individually identifiable so the appropriate response to the event can be initiated. There are more types of alarms and other signals that are being received at supervising stations and that require different responses by supervising station operators. These signals could be other than fire, but still life safety in nature, and must be uniquely identified because their signal is indicative of a different response.

A.26.6.6.3 An example of a critical assembly is an assembly in which a malfunction prevents the receipt and interpretation of signals by the supervising station operator.

A.26.6.6.4 In order to expedite repairs, it is recommended that spare modules, such as printed circuit boards, displays, or printers, be stocked at the supervising station.

A.26.6.6.5 For all forms of transmission, the maximum time to process an alarm signal should be 90 seconds. The maximum time to process a supervisory signal should be 4 minutes. The time to process an alarm or supervisory signal is defined as that time measured from receipt of a signal until retransmission or subscriber contact is initiated.

When the level of traffic in a supervising station system reaches a magnitude such that delayed response is possible, even if the loading tables or loading formulas of this Code are not exceeded, it is envisioned that it will be necessary to employ an enhanced method of processing.

For example, in a system where a single DACR instrument provided with fire and burglar alarm service is connected to multiple telephone lines, it is conceivable that, during certain periods of the day, fire alarm signals could be delayed by the security signaling traffic, such as opening and closing signals. Such an enhanced system would perform as follows, upon receipt of a signal:

(1) Automatically process the signals, differentiating between those that require immediate response by supervising station personnel and those that need only be logged
(2) Automatically provide relevant subscriber information to assist supervising station personnel in their response
(3) Maintain a timed, unalterable log of the signals received and the response of supervising station personnel to such signals

A.27.1.7 Auxiliary alarm systems include the equipment at the protected premises as well as the equipment connecting it to the public emergency alarm reporting system. While the operational requirements relating to the signals sent off-premises fall under the scope of Chapter 27, the requirements of Chapter 23 also apply.

A.27.2.1 When choosing from available options to implement a public emergency alarm reporting system, the operating agency should consider which of the choices would facilitate the maximum reliability of the system, where such a choice is not cost prohibitive.

A.27.2.3 Consideration should be given to the fact that devices could be installed in areas that are exposed to higher or lower temperatures, moisture, or other environmental conditions that could be more severe than ambient conditions found in a typical building. As an example, equipment could be installed inside a building in a boiler room, basement, attic, and so forth, where temperatures actually exceed ambient conditions outside the building. It is recommended that the authority having jurisdiction consider all possible installation locations and environmental conditions and that the equipment selected be designed to operate within the most extreme conditions to which it could be exposed.

A.27.4.3.3 Nonfederal radio frequencies are licensed by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). Federal radio frequencies are assigned by the NTIA. Most frequencies available for FCC licensing require frequency coordination in order to limit interference from other users. Authorities having jurisdiction should use licensed, coordinated radio frequencies for wireless networks in order to minimize interference.

Outside of the United States similar regulatory bodies provide coordination and licensing such as Industry Canada.

A.27.5.2.5.1(1) Figure A.27.5.2.5.1(1) illustrates a Form 4A arrangement.

A.27.5.2.5.1(2) Figure A.27.5.2.5.1(2) illustrates a Form 4B arrangement.

A.27.5.3 Subsection 27.5.3 provides requirements for circumstances in which a municipality or government agency has situated a communications center at a location remote from the alarm processing equipment for the public emergency alarm reporting system. This might occur when the municipality or government agency has moved the communications center to combine services with other emergency dispatching, such as police emergency and medical services, or to combine with neighboring towns or cities (regionalization). In such cases, it might be impractical to relocate the alarm processing equipment.

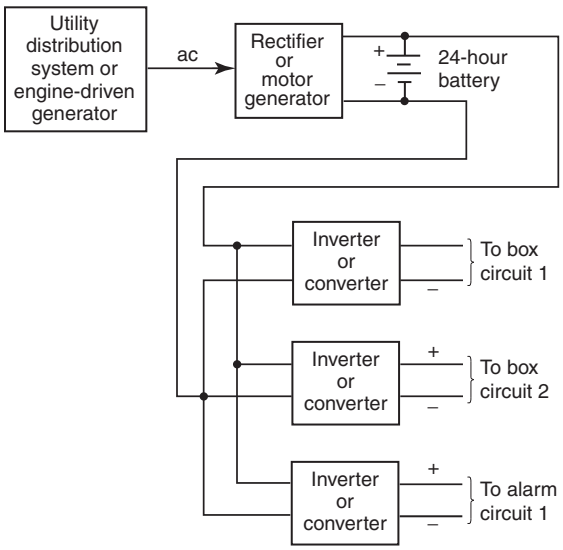


FIGURE A.27.5.2.5.1(1) Form 4A.

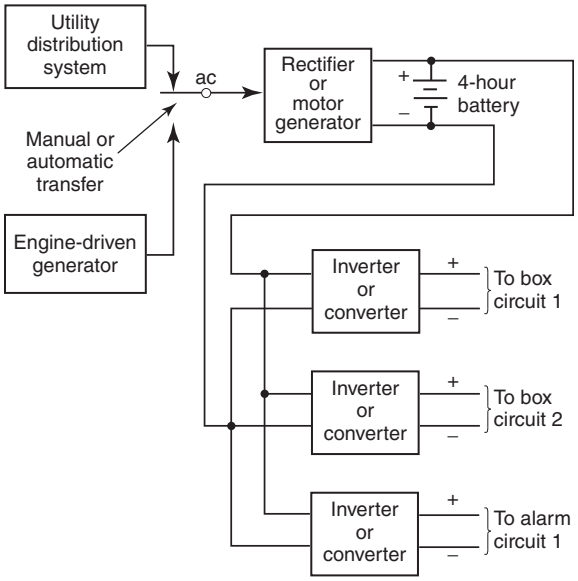


FIGURE A.27.5.2.5.1(2) Form 4B.

A.27.5.5.1.1 Figure A.27.5.5.1.1 illustrates a Type A receiving network.

A.27.5.5.1.4 Figure A.27.5.5.1.4 illustrates the separate functional requirements and power source requirements for systems that function with wireless network repeater systems in accordance with 27.5.5.1.4.

A.27.5.5.3.3 See A.27.6.6.2.

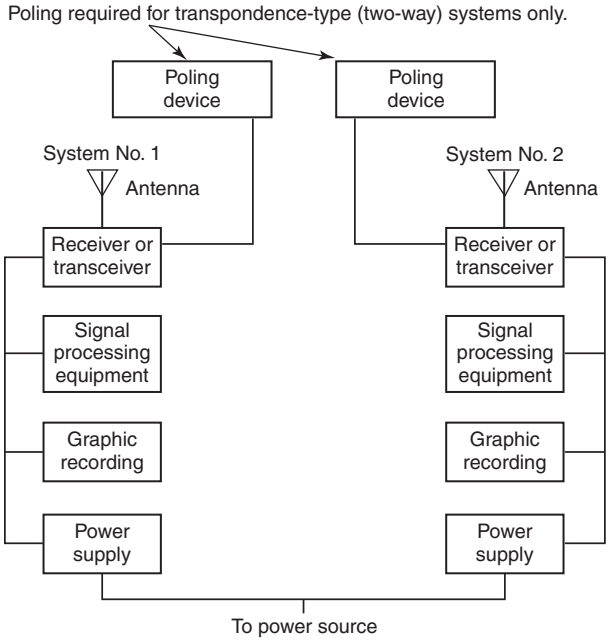


FIGURE A.27.5.5.1.1 Type A System Receiving Networks.

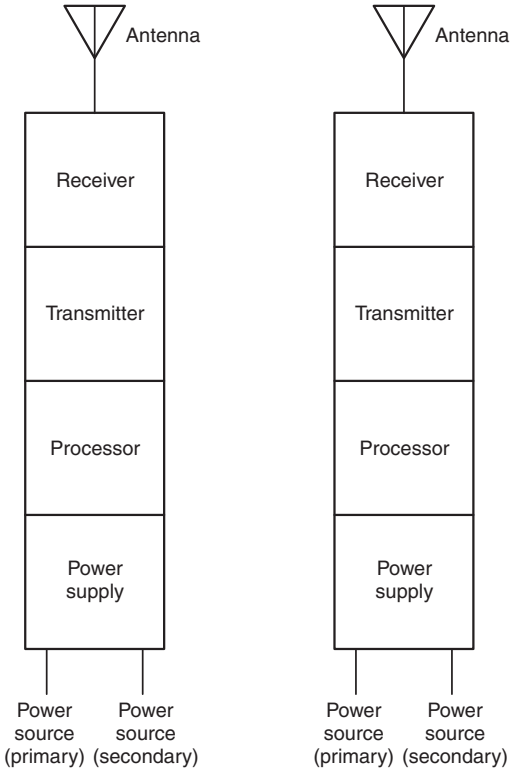


FIGURE A.27.5.5.1.4 Repeater Wireless Network/System.

A.27.6.1 There are three types of alarm boxes covered under Chapter 27. They are the publicly accessible box, auxiliary box, and master box.

(1) The publicly accessible box has a manual control that can be operated by the public. This type of alarm box is typically located outside on a pole or building and was previously called a street box. The box type was renamed because it is not necessarily located on or near a street.
(2) An auxiliary box is part of an auxiliary alarm system and can be automatically activated either by initiating devices in limited applications or by a protected premises alarm system (Chapter 23). An auxiliary box can be located inside or outside a building.
(3) The master box is a combination box that can be manually operated (publicly accessible) and automatically activated by the auxiliary alarm system (auxiliary box). The master box is typically located outside on a pole or building.

A.27.6.1.4 If the operating mechanism of a box creates sufficient sound to be heard by the user, the requirements are satisfied.

A.27.6.2 Publicly accessible alarm boxes were commonly referred to as "street boxes" in previous editions of the Code. Applications of these boxes are no longer limited to street locations.

N **A.27.6.2.1.2(2)** Use of the word *identified* is not intended to require an identification on the box, but that the box is suitable for the specific purpose. *(See 3.3.147.)*

A.27.6.2.1.6 Where the intent is for complete coverage, it should not be necessary to travel in excess of one block or 500 ft (150 m) to reach a box. In residential areas, it should not be necessary to travel in excess of two blocks or 800 ft (240 m) to reach a box.

A.27.6.2.1.10 The current supply for designating lights at boxes should be secured at lamp locations from the local electric utility company.

Alternating-current power can be permitted to be superimposed on metallic fire alarm circuits for supplying designating lamps or for control or activation of equipment devices for fire alarm or other emergency signals, provided that the following conditions exist:

(1) Voltage between any wire and ground or between one wire and any other wire of the system does not exceed 150 volts, and the total resultant current in any line circuit does not exceed ¼ ampere.
(2) Components such as coupling capacitors, transformers, chokes, or coils are rated for 600-volt working voltage and have a breakdown voltage of at least twice the working voltage plus 1000 volts.
(3) There is no interference with fire alarm service under any conditions.

A.27.6.2.1.11.2 Environmental and ambient conditions should be considered in the selection of the wiring method to be employed.

A.27.6.3.1.2 Environmental and ambient conditions should be considered in the selection of the wiring method to be employed.

A.27.6.3.1.3 Figure A.27.6.3.1.3 shows the interconnecting wiring that is intended to meet Level 2 survivability.

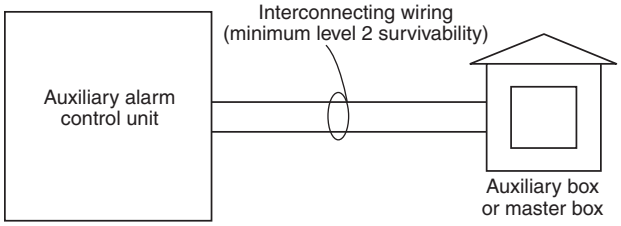


FIGURE A.27.6.3.1.3 Interconnecting Wiring from Auxiliary Alarm System to Auxiliary Box or Master Box Installed in Rigid Metal Conduit, Intermediate Metal Conduit, or Electrical Metallic Tubing.

A.27.6.3.2.2.1 The local energy-type system *[see Figure A.27.6.3.2.2.1(a) and Figure A.27.6.3.2.2.1(b)]* is electrically isolated from the public emergency alarm reporting system and has its own power supply. The tripping of the transmitting device does not depend on the current in the system. In a wired circuit, receipt of the alarm by the communications center when the circuit is accidentally opened depends on the design of the transmitting device and the associated communications center equipment (i.e., whether or not the system is designed to receive alarms through manual or automatic ground operational facilities). In a radio box–type system, receipt of the alarm by the communications center depends on the proper operation of the radio transmitting and receiving equipment.

A.27.6.6.2 The transmission of an actual emergency-related message, initiated at the same time it is preselected for a test

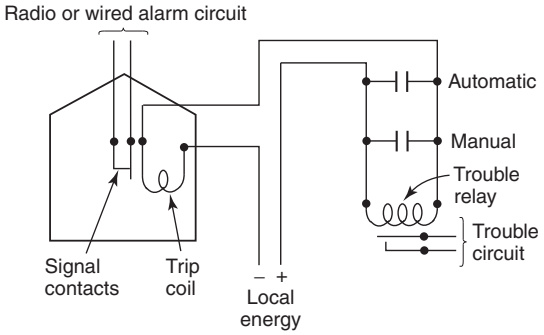


FIGURE A.27.6.3.2.2.1(a) Local Energy-Type Auxiliary Alarm System — Radio or Wired.

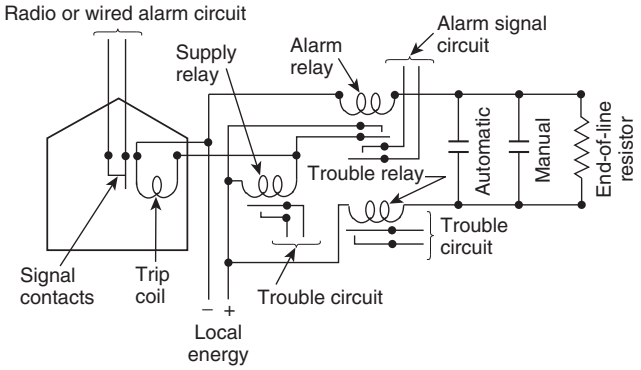


FIGURE A.27.6.3.2.2.1(b) Local Energy-Type Auxiliary Alarm System with Supply and Alarm Relay — Radio or Wired.

message, and, in turn, preempts said test message, must satisfy the intent of 27.6.6.2.

A.27.6.6.7 Examples of priority levels as follows:

(1) Priority 1 — fire
(2) Priority 2 — ECS
(3) Priority 3 — medical
(4) Priority 4 — supervisory
(5) Priority 5 — monitored for integrity signals
(6) Priority 6 — tamper
(7) Priority 7 — test

Additionally, within each signal category, additional priorities can be required such as Fire 1, Fire 2, Fire 3, and so forth.

A.27.7.1.6.2 There could be environmental conditions that necessitate the use of rigid nonmetallic conduit.

A.27.7.3 All requirements for circuit protection do not apply to coded radio reporting systems. These systems do not use metallic circuits.

A.27.8.1 The public emergency alarm reporting system infrastructure can be used to facilitate the operation of wide-area signaling, which might include voice, and which some communities now use for emergency notifications to the public.

N **A.27.8.6** Faults are to be annunciated at the head end of both the public reporting system and the ECS. The intent is to ensure that a responsible party is notified of the fault so the system can be repaired. Suggested locations include user interface locations, constantly attended locations, the fire command center, or the facility director's office or shop.

A.29.1.1 This chapter provides a number of requirements related to fire warning equipment and carbon monoxide warning equipment that are deemed to be the practical and necessary minimum for average conditions at the present state of the art.

Chapter 29 does not attempt to cover all equipment, methods, and requirements that might be necessary or advantageous for the protection of lives and property from fire.

Smoke alarms in compliance with the 8th edition of UL 217, *Smoke Alarms*, and the 7th edition of UL 268, *Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems,* have passed a new performance test to help reduce nuisance alarms from normal cooking. This end-product performance and listing requirement aligns with 29.11.3.4(6) of this Code. Smoke alarms complying with these UL standards will be listed "for resistance to common nuisance sources from cooking" and are suitable for installation at distances from cooking appliances outlined in this Code.

The technologies used in smoke alarms and detectors manufactured prior to the effective date of the new standards include ionization smoke detection and photoelectric smoke detection. These detection types are defined in 3.3.290.2 and 3.3.290.4 and are further explained in A.3.3.290.2 and A.3.3.290.4. Ionization smoke detection is more responsive to invisible particles produced by most flaming fires. Photoelectric smoke detection is more responsive to the visible particles produced by most smoldering fire.

A.29.1.3 An example of the applicable code within the NFPA set of codes and standards is NFPA *101*. Other codes such as local building codes are other examples to be considered.

The requirements of Chapter 29 are intended to apply to installations in the following new and existing locations:

(1) One- and two-family dwelling units
(2) Sleeping rooms of lodging and rooming houses
(3) Individual dwelling units of apartment buildings
(4) Guest rooms, sleeping rooms, and living areas within guest suites of hotels and dormitories
(5) Day-care homes
(6) Residential board and care facilities
(7) Other locations where applicable laws, codes, or standards specify a requirement for the installation of smoke alarms

A.29.1.5 Installations in manufactured homes are under the jurisdiction of the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD). The rules for installation are addressed in the Federal Manufactured Housing Construction Safety Standards (available at https://www.hud.gov).

A.29.2 *Fire Danger in the Home.* In 2009, fire was the third leading cause of unintentional injury deaths in the home and the sixth leading cause of unintentional injury deaths overall (*Injury Facts*, 2011, National Safety Council).

Seventy-nine percent of the fire fatalities in 2015 resulted from residential fires — 82.7 percent resulted from fires in one- and two-family dwellings, including manufactured homes; 15.5 percent were caused by apartment fires; and 1.7 percent resulted from fires in other residential occupancies ("Fire Loss in the United States during 2015," Hylton J.G. Haynes, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division).

Approximately half (52 percent) of the home (dwellings and apartments) fire fatalities resulted from fires reported between 11:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m., the common sleeping hours ("Home Structure Fires," Marty Ahrens, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division, September 2016).

Almost three-quarters (71 percent) of all reported fire injuries occurred in the home, with more than one-half (73 percent) in one- and two-family dwelling units (including manufactured housing), and more than one-fifth (27 percent) apartments ("Fire Loss in the United States During 2015," Hylton J.G. Haynes, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division).

It is estimated that each household will experience five (usually unreported) fires per lifetime and one in four fires serious enough to report to a fire department per lifetime ("A Few Facts at the Household Level," NFPA Fire Analysis Division, July 2009).

Fire Safety in the Home. NFPA 72 is intended to provide reasonable safety for persons in family living units. Reasonable fire safety can be produced through the following three-point program:

(1) Minimizing fire hazards
(2) Providing fire warning equipment
(3) Having and practicing an escape plan

Minimizing Fire Hazards. This Code cannot protect all persons at all times. For instance, the application of this Code might not provide protection against the following three traditional fatal fire scenarios:

(1) Smoking in bed
(2) Leaving children home alone
(3) Cleaning with flammable liquids such as gasoline

However, Chapter 29 can lead to reasonable safety from fire when the three-point program is observed.

Fire Warning Equipment. There are two types of fire to which household fire warning equipment needs to respond. One is a rapidly developing, high-heat fire. The other is a slow, smoldering fire. Either can produce smoke and toxic gases.

Family Escape Plan. There is often very little time between the detection of a fire and the time it becomes deadly. This interval can be as little as 1 or 2 minutes. Thus, this Code requires detection means to give a family some advance warning of the development of conditions that become dangerous to life within a short period of time. Such warning, however, could be wasted unless the family has planned in advance for rapid exit from their residence. Therefore, in addition to the fire warning equipment, this Code assumes that the residents have developed and practiced an exit plan.

Planning and practicing for fire conditions with a focus on rapid exit from the residence are important. Drills should be held so that all family members know the action to be taken. Each person should plan for the possibility that exit out of a bedroom window could be necessary. An exit out of the residence without the need to open a bedroom door is essential.

Household fires are especially dangerous at night when the occupants are asleep. Fires produce smoke and deadly gases that can overcome occupants while they are asleep. Furthermore, dense smoke reduces visibility. Most fire casualties are victims of smoke and gas inhalation rather than burns. To warn against a fire, Chapter 29 provides smoke detector (alarm) requirements in accordance with 29.8.1, and the associated annex recommends heat or smoke detectors (alarms) in all other major areas.

A.29.3.1 Terms used by testing laboratories for equipment that is listed or labeled under the definitions of this Code could include certified, approved, listed, recognized, and so forth.

A.29.3.3 This Code establishes minimum standards for the use of fire warning equipment. The use of additional alarms or detectors over and above the minimum standard is encouraged. The use of additional devices can result in a combination of equipment (e.g., a combination of single- and multiple-station alarms or a combination of smoke alarms or smoke detectors that are part of a security/fire system and existing multiple-station alarms). Though a combination is allowed, one type of equipment must independently meet the requirements of the Code. Compliance with the requirements of the Code cannot rely on the combination of the following fire warning equipment:

(1) Single-station alarms
(2) Multiple-station alarms
(3) Household fire alarm system (includes a security/fire system with smoke alarms or smoke detectors)

It is encouraged that the highest level of protection be used where possible. For example, if multiple-station alarms are added to an occupancy with compliant single-station alarms, the multiple-station alarms should be installed to replace all of the single-station alarms. Similarly, if a monitored household fire alarm system is added to a house that has compliant multiple-station alarms, monitored smoke alarms or smoke detectors should be installed to replace the multiple-station alarms or be installed to provide the same required coverage.

A.29.5.1 The use of the distinctive three-pulse temporal pattern fire alarm evacuation signal has been recommended by this Code since 1979. It has since been adopted as both an American National Standard [ANSI/ASA S3.41, *Audible Emergency Evacuation (E2) and Evacuation Signals with Relocation Instructions (ESRI)*] and an International Standard (ISO 8201, *Alarm systems — Audible emergency evacuation signal — Requirements*).

These standards are available at

https://webstore.ansi.org/.

The standard fire alarm evacuation signal is a three-pulse temporal pattern using any appropriate sound. The pattern consists of the following in this order:

(1) An "on" phase lasting 0.5 second ±10 percent.
(2) An "off" phase lasting 0.5 second ±10 percent for three successive "on" periods.
(3) An "off" phase lasting 1.5 seconds ±10 percent *[see Figure A.29.5.1(a) and Figure A.29.5.1(b)]*. The signal should be repeated for a period appropriate for the purposes of evacuation of the building, but for not less than 180 seconds. A single-stroke bell or chime sounded at "on" intervals lasting 1 second ±10 percent, with a 2-second ±10 percent "off" interval after each third "on" stroke, is permitted *[see Figure A.29.5.1(c)]*.

The minimum repetition time is permitted to be manually interrupted.

A.29.5.4 The four-pulse temporal (T4) pattern is illustrated in Figure A.29.5.4.

A.29.5.5 It is recommended that the voice notification message be intelligible, audible, and appropriate for the hazard. Care should be taken to avoid excessive silence during the message. Figure A.29.5.5(a) through Figure A.29.5.5(c) provide examples of acceptable combinations of the emergency evacuation signal and voice messages.

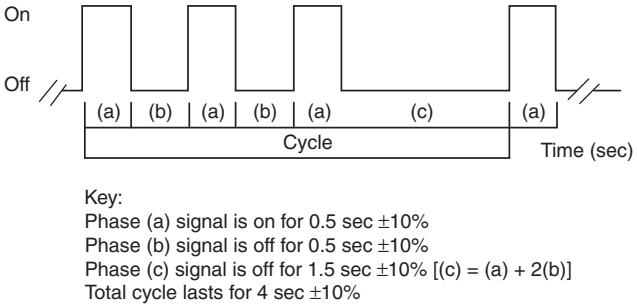


FIGURE A.29.5.1(a) Temporal Pattern Parameters.

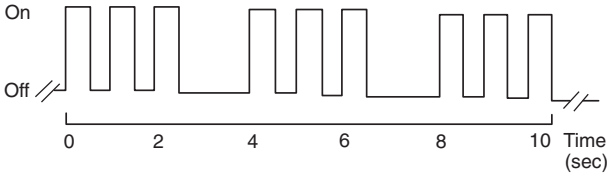


FIGURE A.29.5.1(b) Temporal Pattern Imposed on Signaling Appliances That Emit Continuous Signal While Energized.

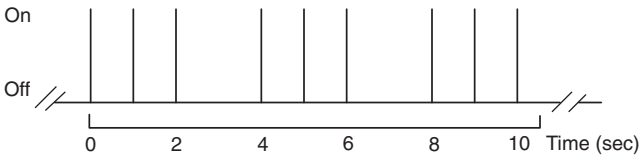
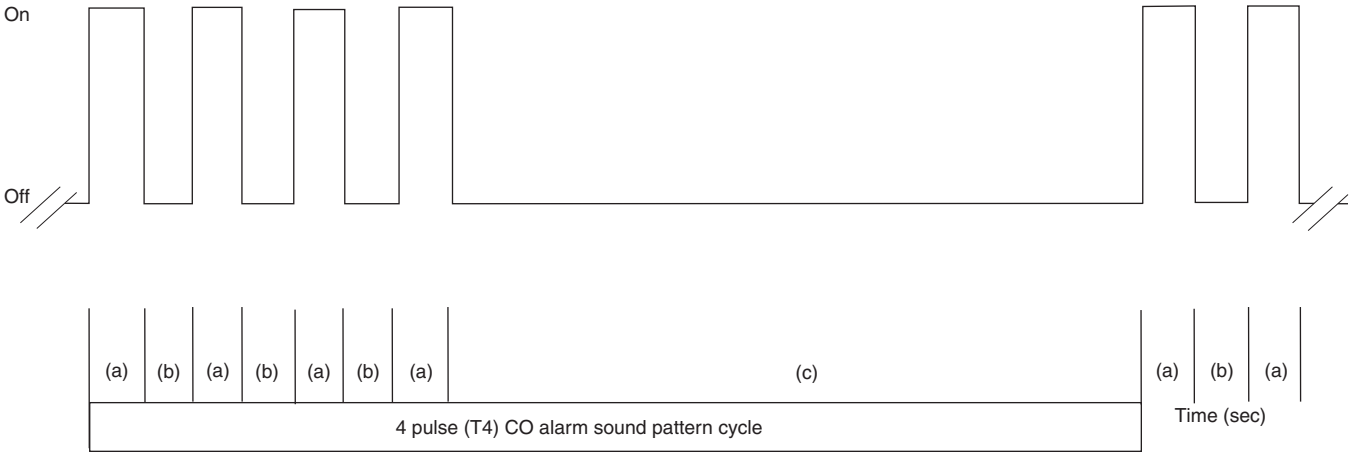


FIGURE A.29.5.1(c) Temporal Pattern Imposed on Single-Stroke Bell or Chime.

A.29.5.6 Temporal pattern parameters with voice allowance are shown in Figure A.29.5.6(a), Figure A.29.5.6(b), and Figure A.29.5.6(c).

A.29.5.8 Visual notification appliances can awaken sleeping persons, provide verification that there is a fire alarm condition, and serve to alert persons when they are not in contact with a tactile appliance. See the FPRF report, *Review of Alarm Technologies for Deaf and Hard of Hearing Populations*, for further details.

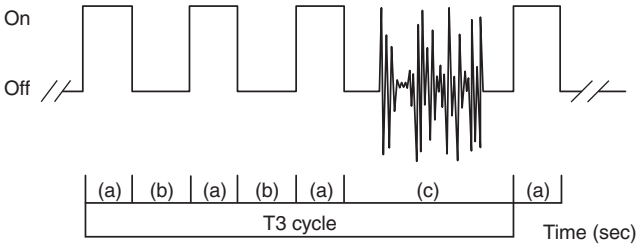


Key:
Phase (a) = 100 milliseconds (±10%).
Phase (b) = 100 milliseconds (±10%).
Phase (c) = 5 seconds (±10%), should be permitted to increase to 60 seconds (±10%) after 4 minutes.

Δ FIGURE A.29.5.4 Four-Pulse Temporal Pattern.

Alarm initiation — eight T3 cycles minimum.								Two T3 cycles minimum — repeat as desired.		
T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	Voice — 10-seconds maximum	T3 cycle	T3 cycle
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)		(1)	(2)

Δ FIGURE A.29.5.5(a) Temporal Pattern Parameters with Eight T3 Cycles Minimum with 10-Second Voice Allowance.



Key:
Phase (a) signal is on for 0.5 sec ±10%.
Phase (b) signal is off for 0.5 sec ±10%.
Phase (c) signal is off for 1.5 sec ±10% [(c) = (a) + 2(b)].
Phase (c) signal can incorporate voice notification.
Total cycle lasts for 4 sec ±10%.

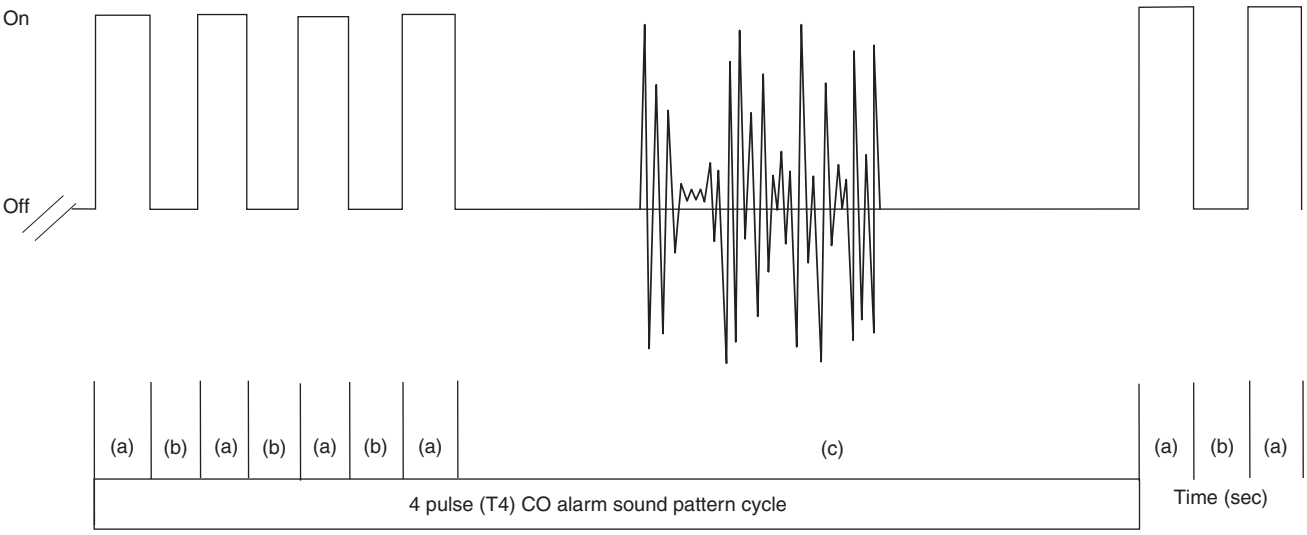
Δ FIGURE A.29.5.5(b) T3 Temporal Pattern Parameters with 1.5-Second Voice Allowance.

Alarm initiation — eight T3 cycles minimum. Optional voice allowed in any T3 cycle.								Two T3 cycles minimum — repeat as desired.		
T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	Voice — 10-seconds maximum	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)		(1)	(2)

Δ FIGURE A.29.5.5(c) Temporal Pattern Parameters with 10-Second Voice Allowance in Any T3 Cycle.

Alarm initiation — six T4 cycles (30 seconds minimum).						Two T4 cycles minimum — repeat as desired.		
T4 cycle	T4 cycle	T4 cycle	T4 cycle	T4 cycle	T4 cycle	Voice — 10 seconds maximum	T4 cycle	T4 cycle
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)		(1)	(2)

Δ FIGURE A.29.5.6(a) Temporal Pattern Parameters with Six T4 Cycles with 10-second Voice Allowance.



Key:
Phase (a) = 100 milliseconds (±10%).
Phase (b) = 100 milliseconds (±10%).
Phase (c) = 5 seconds (±10%).
Phase (c) = cycle can incorporate voice notification.
Total cycle lasts 5.8 seconds ±10%.

Δ FIGURE A.29.5.6(b) T4 Temporal Pattern Parameters with 1.5-second Voice Allowance.

Alarm initiation — six T4 cycles minimum. Optional voice allowed in any T4 cycle.						Two T4 cycles minimum — repeat as desired.		
T4 cycle with voice	T4 cycle with voice	T4 cycle with voice	T4 cycle with voice	T4 cycle with voice	T4 cycle with voice	Voice — 10 seconds maximum	T4 cycle with voice	T4 cycle with voice

Δ FIGURE A.29.5.6(c) Temporal Pattern Parameters with 10-second Voice Allowance in Any T4 Cycle.

***N* A.29.5.9** As requirements around the disclosure of disabilities are defined in various laws, the owner, under the Fair Housing Act or the Americans with Disabilities Act, might have responsibility to provide, install, and make ready for use a device when a request is received.

A.29.5.10 Governing laws, codes, or standards might require a certain number of accommodations to be equipped for those with hearing loss or other disabilities. Based on sleep studies to assess the waking effectiveness of different types of alarm signals, a low-frequency alarm signal with a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz has been shown to provide improved awakening for people with hearing loss when compared to typical alarms from high-frequency piezoelectric sounders used in most smoke alarms (Bruck and Thomas, 2009). Visual alarm signals, such as xenon strobes or LED strobes, have been shown to be ineffective at waking people with mild to severe hearing loss (Thomas and Bruck, 2009; Ashley and Du Bois, 2005).

As for all alarm signals, effectiveness of the installed notification for the specific occupants should be tested by the occupants, if possible. The low-frequency alarm signal can be provided by the sounder in a smoke alarm or by a separate notification appliance. It is not the intent of this section to preclude devices that have been demonstrated, through peer-reviewed research, to awaken occupants with hearing loss as effectively as those using the frequency and amplitude specified in this section.

Low-frequency or tactile notification appliances such as bed shakers have been shown to be effective in waking those with normal hearing to profound hearing loss (CSE NIH report, 2005; Bruck and Thomas, 2009; Bruck, Thomas, and Ball, NFPA RF report, 2007; Ashley and Du Bois, 2005; UL 1971, 2018).

Tactile signaling has been studied and found to be an effective way to alert and notify sleeping persons. However, there are many variables that have not been tested that might affect the reliability of their performance.

Some of the appliance variables include the mass of the appliance, the frequency of vibration, and the throw or displacement of the vibrating mass. Occupant variables that might affect the reporting of test results and the effectiveness of the appliance include the person's age, how long a person has lived with their hearing loss, and what sleep stage the person is experiencing when the appliance operates. The type of mattress might also have an effect of the performance of certain tactile appliances. Mattress variables can include mattress thickness, mattress firmness, memory foam mattresses, pillow top mattresses, water beds, air beds, and motion isolation mattresses. Users of tactile appliances are cautioned to test how well they sense the effect of an appliance.

•

A.29.6.1 Working smoke alarms cut the risk of dying in reported home structure fires in half. Victims who are intimate with the fire or are incapable of taking action to escape might not benefit from the early warning. For these people, other strategies such as protection in-place or assisted escape or rescue would be necessary.

A.29.6.2 *Family Escape Plan.* There often is very little time between the detection of a fire and the time it becomes deadly. This interval can be as little as 1 or 2 minutes. Thus, this Code requires detection means to give a family some advance warning of the development of conditions that become dangerous to life within a short period of time. Such warning, however, could be wasted unless the family has planned in advance for rapid exit from their residence. Therefore, in addition to the fire warning equipment, this Code requires exit plan information to be furnished.

Planning and practicing for fire conditions with a focus on rapid exit from the residence are important. Drills should be held so that all family members know the action to be taken. Each person should plan for the possibility that exit out of a bedroom window could be necessary. An exit out of the residence without the need to open a bedroom door is essential.

Special Provisions for the Disabled. For special circumstances where the life safety of an occupant(s) depends on prompt rescue by others, the fire warning equipment should include means of prompt automatic notification to those who are to be depended on for rescue.

A.29.6.2.3 The normal path of egress does not include windows or other means of escape.

A.29.6.3 Assumptions — equipment is as follows:

(1) Maintenance. Good fire protection requires that the equipment be maintained periodically. If the system owner or responsible party is unable to perform the required maintenance, a maintenance agreement should be considered.
(2) Reliability of fire alarm systems. Fire alarm systems located in dwelling units and having all of the following features are considered to have a functional reliability of 95 percent:
    (a) Utilizes a control unit
    (b) Has at least two independent sources of operating power
    (c) Monitors all initiating and notification circuits for integrity
    (d) Transmits alarm signals to a constantly attended, remote monitoring location
    (e) Is tested regularly by the homeowner and at least every 3 years by a qualified service technician
(3) Reliability of fire alarm systems without remote monitoring or with wireless transmission. Fire alarm systems for dwelling units with all of the preceding features except (d) or systems that use low-power wireless transmission from initiating devices within the dwelling units are considered to have a functional reliability of 90 percent.
(4) Reliability of other systems. Fire alarm systems for dwelling units comprised of interconnected smoke alarms where the interconnecting means is monitored for integrity are considered to have a functional reliability of 88 percent. If the interconnecting means is not supervised or the alarms are not interconnected, such systems are considered to have a functional reliability of 85 percent.

Δ **A.29.7** Hazardous concentrations of carbon monoxide can accumulate in a residence, generally from improperly operating fuel-burning equipment, insufficient make-up air into the residence or space, or blocked chimneys or vents. However, there are many other potential sources of carbon monoxide within a home, including, but not limited to, the following:

(1) Malfunctioning fossil fuel–burning equipment
(2) Wood stoves
(3) Fireplaces
(4) Idling automobiles in attached garages
(5) Portable equipment such as gasoline-powered lawn and garden equipment and electric power generators
(6) Barbecues

Carbon monoxide is odorless, tasteless, and colorless; therefore, its presence is undetectable by smell, taste, or sight. Carbon monoxide can be mixed and migrate throughout a residence through the HVAC system. Carbon monoxide alarms meeting the requirements of UL 2034, *Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms*, and carbon monoxide detectors meeting the requirements of UL 2075, *Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors*, that are installed in accordance with this standard should provide a significant level of protection against fatal carbon monoxide exposure.

The installation of additional carbon monoxide alarms could result in a higher degree of protection. Adding alarms to rooms where fuel-burning equipment is located could provide

earlier warning of carbon monoxide hazards caused by those sources. Additional alarms located in rooms normally closed off from the required alarms could increase the escape time, since the carbon monoxide concentration needed to force the carbon monoxide out of the closed rooms to the alarms would not be necessary. As a consequence, the installation of additional carbon monoxide alarms should be considered.

Carbon monoxide alarms or detectors are not substitutes for proper maintenance, inspection, and testing of fuel-burning equipment. Fuel-burning equipment should be used, maintained, tested, and inspected according to the manufacturers' instructions.

Carbon monoxide detectors/alarms are cross sensitive to hydrogen, an explosive gas that can be given off by recharging lead-acid batteries. Where households include recharging stations (e.g., for golf carts), the alarm should be located away from the recharging location.

A.29.7.1.1 Where sleeping areas are separated and the audibility of the alarm or detector to occupants within each sleeping area could be seriously impaired, more than one unit could be needed.

At times, depending on conditions, the audibility of notification appliances could be seriously impaired when occupants are in the bedroom area. For instance, there might be a noisy window air conditioner or room humidifier generating an ambient noise level of 55 dBA or higher. The detection device alarms need to penetrate through the closed doors and be heard over the bedroom's noise levels with sufficient intensity to awaken sleeping occupants. Test data indicate that alarms with ratings of 85 dBA at 3 m (10 ft) that are installed outside the bedrooms can produce about 15 dBA over ambient noise levels of 55 dBA in the bedrooms. This sound pressure is likely to be sufficient to awaken the average sleeping person.

Alarms or detectors located remote from the bedroom area might not be loud enough to awaken the average person. In such cases, it is recommended that units be interconnected in such a way that the operation of the remotely located detector or alarm causes an alarm of sufficient intensity to penetrate the bedrooms. The interconnection can be accomplished by the following:

(1) Installation of a system
(2) Wiring together of multiple-station alarms
(3) Use of line carrier or radio frequency transmitters/receivers
(4) Adding supplemental notification appliances

• *N* **A.29.7.1.2** The location for effective performance is not generally dependent on mounting height. The density of carbon monoxide is similar to that of air at room temperature, and carbon monoxide generally mixes readily with air. In a room with fuel-burning equipment, there can be benefit to have a carbon monoxide alarm or carbon monoxide detector mounted high on a wall or the ceiling due to the thermal plume from the equipment.

A.29.8.1 All hostile fires in dwelling units generate smoke and heat. However, the results of full-scale experiments conducted over the last several decades in the United States, using typical fires in dwelling units, indicate that detectable quantities of smoke precede detectable levels of heat in nearly all cases (NBS GCR 75-51, *Detector Sensitivity and Siting Requirements for Dwellings*, 1975; NBS GCR 77-82, *Detector Sensitivity and Siting Requirements for Dwellings Phase 2*, 1977; and NIST Technical Note 1455-1, *Performance of Home Smoke Alarms, Analysis of the Response of Several Available Technologies in Residential Fire Settings,* 2008). In addition, slowly developing, smoldering fires can produce smoke and toxic gases without a significant increase in the room's temperature. Again, the results of experiments indicate that detectable quantities of smoke precede the development of hazardous thermal atmospheres in nearly all cases.

For the preceding reasons, the required protection in this Code utilizes smoke alarms as the primary life safety equipment for providing a reasonable level of protection against fire.

The installation of additional alarms of either the smoke or heat type should result in a higher degree of protection. Adding alarms to rooms that are normally closed off from the required alarms increases the escape time because the fire does not need to build to the higher level necessary to force smoke out of the closed room to the required alarms. As a consequence, it is recommended that the householder consider the installation of additional fire protection devices. However, it should be understood that Chapter 29 does not require additional smoke alarms over and above those called for in 29.8.1. Refer to Figure A.29.8.1(a) through Figure A.29.8.1(d) where required smoke alarms are shown.

Where to Locate the Required Smoke Alarms. Fifty-three percent of home fire deaths were reported between 11:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m. Persons in sleeping areas can be threatened by fires in the remainder of the unit; therefore, smoke alarms are best located in each bedroom and between the bedroom areas and the rest of the unit as shown in Figure A.29.8.1(b). In dwelling units with more than one bedroom area or with bedrooms on more than one floor, more than one smoke alarm is required, as shown in Figure A.29.8.1(c).

In addition to smoke alarms outside of the sleeping areas and in each bedroom, Chapter 29 requires the installation of a smoke alarm on each additional level of the dwelling unit, including the basement. These installations are shown in Figure A.29.8.1(d). The living area smoke alarm should be installed in the living room or near the stairway to the upper level, or in both locations. The basement smoke alarm should be installed in close proximity to the stairway leading to the floor above. Where installed on an open-joisted ceiling, the smoke alarm should be placed on the bottom of the joists. The smoke alarm should be positioned relative to the stairway so as to intercept smoke coming from a fire in the basement before the smoke enters the stairway.

Are More Smoke Alarms Desirable? The required number of smoke alarms might not provide reliable early warning protection for those areas separated by a door from the areas protected by the required smoke alarms. For this reason, the use of additional smoke alarms for those areas for increased protection is recommended. The additional areas include dining room, furnace room, utility room, and hallways not protected by the required smoke alarms. The installation of smoke alarms in kitchens, attics (finished or unfinished), or garages is not normally recommended, because these locations occasionally experience conditions that can result in improper operation.

A.29.8.1.1 Occupancies where smoke alarms are typically required include residential, residential board and care, or day-care home. The term *residential occupancy* is defined in 3.3.265 and includes one- and two-family dwellings; lodging or rooming houses; hotels, motels, and dormitories; and apartment

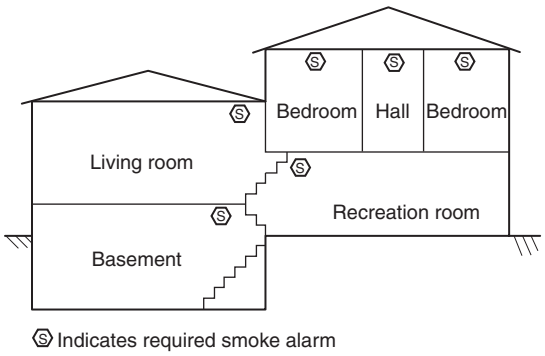


FIGURE A.29.8.1(a) Split Level Arrangement.

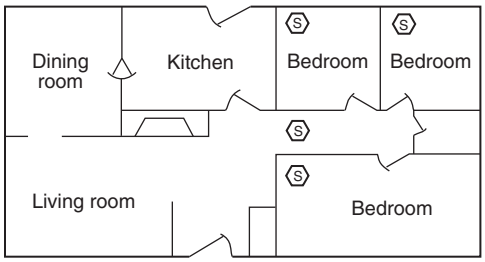


FIGURE A.29.8.1(b) Smoke Alarm Should Be Located Between Sleeping Area and Rest of Dwelling Unit, as Well as in Each Bedroom.

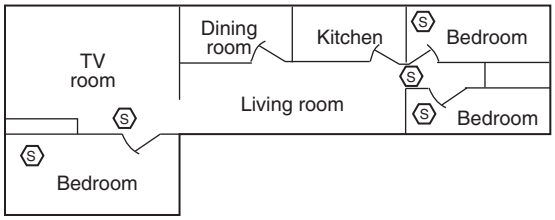


FIGURE A.29.8.1(c) In Dwelling Units with More Than One Sleeping Area, Smoke Alarm Should Be Provided to Protect Each Sleeping Area in Addition to Smoke Alarms Required in Bedrooms.

buildings. The term *residential board and care occupancy* is defined in 3.3.264 and includes both small and large facilities. NFPA *101* specifies a small facility to be one with sleeping accommodations for not more than 16 residents. The term *day-care home*, defined in 3.3.73, is a specific category of day-care occupancy. It should be noted that applicable laws, codes, or standards might include conditions that could impact the applicability of these requirements. The local authority should be consulted for specific details.

A.29.8.1.1(1) The term *sleeping room* applies to several occupancies including: one- and two-family dwellings; lodging or rooming houses; hotels, motels, and dormitories; apartment buildings; residential board and care facilities; and day-care homes. The term *guest room*, defined in 3.3.137, is an accommodation that includes sleeping facilities. It applies in the context of hotel and dormitory occupancies.

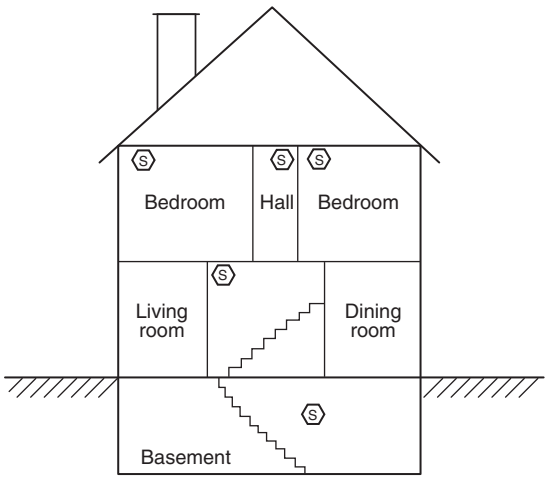


FIGURE A.29.8.1(d) Smoke Alarm Should Be Located on Each Level in Addition to Each Bedroom.

A.29.8.1.1(2) The term *dwelling unit* is defined in 3.3.92 and applies to one- and two-family dwellings and dwelling units of apartment buildings (including condominiums). The distance referenced for the location of the required smoke alarm should be measured on a horizontal projection of the ceiling and along the path of egress travel by an occupant.

A.29.8.1.1(5) The term *guest suite* is defined in 3.3.138, and the term *living area* is defined in 3.3.163.

A.29.8.1.3.1 The distance referenced for the spacing of smoke alarms should be measured on a horizontal projection of the ceiling. One smoke alarm per 500 ft^2 (46 m^2) is evaluated by dividing the total interior square footage of floor area per level by 500 ft^2 (46 m^2). The requirements do not preclude the installation of smoke alarms on walls in accordance with 29.11.3.3. Some building configurations, such as division of rooms and open foyers or great rooms, dictate that alarms be located so that they do not cover distinctly separate 500 ft^2 (46 m^2) areas but rather provide overlapping coverage relative to this spacing requirement.

A.29.8.2.1.1 As of the 2007 edition of *NFPA 72*, the Code required the interconnection of alarms for both new and existing construction. The introduction of wireless interconnect smoke alarms allows installation of interconnect devices in existing construction without the need for ac wiring modifications that once were required to retrofit interconnected alarms. Work by the US Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) has concluded that interconnection of alarms is an important factor that can affect proper notification and life safety [1, 2]. The CPSC study shows that interconnected smoke alarms alerted residents to the fire more than twice as often as noninterconnected alarms. A Victoria University study [3] also emphasizes the need for interconnected alarms. The study indicates that interconnected smoke alarms in every room in every dwelling would lead to about 50 percent fewer fatalities.

(1) Green, M. A., and Andres, C. "2004-2005 National Sample Survey of Unreported Residential Fires." CPSC, 2009.
(2) Ahrens, M. "Factors in Smoke Alarm Performance." National Fire Protection Association. December 2009.

(3) Thomas, I., and Bruck, D. "Smoke Alarms in Dwellings: Timely Activation and Effective Notification." Victoria University. June 2010.

A.29.8.2.2 One of the common problems associated with smoke alarms and detectors is the nuisance alarms that are usually triggered by products of combustion from cooking, smoking, or other household particulates. While an alarm for such a condition is anticipated and tolerated by the occupant of a dwelling unit through routine living experience, the alarm is not permitted where it also sounds alarms in other dwelling units or in common use spaces. Nuisance alarms caused by cooking are a very common occurrence, and inspection authorities should be aware of the possible ramifications where the coverage is extended beyond the limits of the dwelling unit.

Δ **A.29.9.4(3)** Restraining means are not intended to be used where the alarm is designed to be plugged directly into a receptacle without a cord.

A.29.10.2 The UL listing for smoke alarms addresses two categories of these devices: one for applications where sensitivity testing is not required (UTGT), and one for applications where sensitivity testing is required (UTHA). Refer to the testing requirements for these devices in Chapter 14.

A.29.10.3.1 UL 2034, *Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms*, includes a level below which the alarm should not respond.

A.29.10.4.1 The linear space rating is the maximum allowable distance between heat detectors. The linear space rating is also a measure of detector response time to a standard test fire when tested at the same distance. A higher rating corresponds to a faster response time. This Code recognizes only those heat detectors with ratings of 50 ft (15.2 m) or more.

A.29.10.4.2 A heat alarm or heat detector with a temperature rating somewhat in excess of the highest normally expected ambient temperature is specified in order to avoid the possibility of premature response of the heat alarm or heat detector to non-fire conditions.

Some areas or rooms of the dwelling unit can experience ambient temperatures considerably higher than those in the normally occupied living spaces. Examples are unfinished attics, the space near hot air registers, and some furnace rooms. This fact should be considered in the selection of the appropriate temperature rating for fixed-temperature heat alarm or heat detectors to be installed in these areas or rooms.

A.29.10.6.2 Listed household fire alarm systems have a means to allow users to cancel or abort an actuate fire alarm signal when they know it is an unwanted alarm.

A.29.10.7.8 Such input and output devices include, but are not limited to, relay modules, notification appliances, phone dialers, system control units, heat detectors, and manual fire alarm boxes.

A.29.10.8.2.4 Receiving units that stay in alarm for 30 seconds or 1 minute longer than the transmitting alarm would provide additional protection if the first alarm is damaged due to a very fast growing fire. The persisting alarm signal would provide additional notification to occupants. This option needs to be considered in light of the potential for the longer alarm signals on receiving smoke alarms being a potential nuisance to occupants during test and other nuisance alarm events.

A.29.10.9.1 *NFPA 72* does not require single- and multiple-station alarms and household alarm systems to send signals off-premises. However, if such supervision is elected by the owner or required by some other governing laws, codes, or standards, this section requires that it be done in accordance with other parts of this Code, except as noted.

A.29.10.9.2 Upon receipt of a carbon monoxide alarm signal, supervising station personnel should perform the following actions in the order listed:

(1) Where required by the emergency response agency, immediately retransmit indication of the carbon monoxide alarm signal to the communications center.
(2) The immediate retransmission should be permitted to be delayed by not more than 90 seconds where the jurisdiction permits the supervising station to first contact the protected premises to determine if the alarm was initiated by the activation of a test.
(3) Contact the responsible party(s) in accordance with the notification plan.
(4) Once contacted, the subscriber should be informed to take action in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions, or where the manufacturer's published instructions are not available, the subscriber should be advised to take the following actions:
    (a) Immediately move to fresh air, either outdoors or by an open door or window.
    (b) Verify that all occupants are accounted for.
    (c) Do not reenter the premises or move away from an open door or window until the emergency service responders have arrived, the premises have been aired out, and the alarm remains in its normal condition.

A.29.10.9.7 Where 29.10.9.7, which provides for screening alarm signals to minimize response to false alarms, is to be implemented, the following should be considered:

(1) Was the verification call answered at the protected premises?
(2) Did the respondent provide proper identification?
(3) Is it necessary for the respondent to identify the cause of the alarm signal?
(4) Should the public service fire communications center be notified and advised that an alarm signal was received, including the response to the verification call, when an authorized respondent states that fire service response is not desired?
(5) Should the public service fire communications center be notified and advised that an alarm signal was received, including the response to the verification call, for all other situations, including both a hostile fire and no answer to the verification call?
(6) What other actions should be required by a standard operating procedure?

A.29.10.10.1 All control units that use IP or cellular communication to transmit off-site or have devices that are connected wirelessly have an increased risk and should be designed for cybersecurity as determined by the manufacturer. The cybersecurity should comply with, but not be limited to, one of the following:

(1) ANSI/ISA 62443, *Security for Industrial Automation and Control Systems Series*